



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



CLASSICAL WORKS.

---

Harvard College  
Library



BOUGHT  
FROM THE GIFT OF  
CHARLES HERBERT THURBER

Zump and Bonnell. By THOMAS A. THACHER, of Yale Col.  
12mo, 194 pages.

## STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

**Horace, The Works of.** With English Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By J. L. LINCOLN, Professor of Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 575 pages.

**Livy.** Selections from the first five books, together with the twenty-first and twenty-second books entire. With a Plan of Rome, and a Map of the Passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the use of Schools. By J. L. LINCOLN, Prof. of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 329 pages.

**Quintus Curtius: Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great.** Edited and illustrated with English Notes, by WILLIAM HENRY CROSBY. 12mo. 385 pages.

**Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline.** With Notes and a Vocabulary. By BUTLER and STURGIS. 12mo. 397 pages.

It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition heretofore published in this country.

**The Histories of Tacitus.** With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of Latin and Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 453 pages.

**Tacitus's Germania and Agricola.** With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER. 12mo. 193 pages.

**Virgil's Æneid.\*** With Explanatory Notes. By HENRY FRIEZE, Professor of Latin in the State University of Michigan. (Recently published.) 12mo. 598 pages.

The type is unusually large and distinct. The work contains eighty-five engravings, which delineate the usages, customs, weapons, arts, and mythology of the ancients, with a vividness that can be attained only by pictorial illustrations.

## GREEK TEXT-BOOKS.

**A First Greek Text-Book.** Introductory Reader. By A. H. ARNOLD. (Recently published.) 12mo.

GUSTAVUS HAHN, D.D., LL.D.

the First Latin

Prose Composi-

248 pages.

ME.



Received of

Thos L Smith.

Puttland High School.

Puttland,

Vermont.

Jan. 15, 1897.



*Thos. L. Smith*

A

*Revised,*

*1. 22 '77. Arnold*

*R. H. S.*

# PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION

TO

# LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

---

BY

THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M. A.

RECTOR OF LYNDON,

AND LATE FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

CAREFULLY REVISED AND CORRECTED

BY REV. J. A. SPENCER, A. M.

THIRTIETH AMERICAN EDITION

NEW YORK:

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,

549 & 551 BROADWAY.

1872.

Entered according to Act of Congress in the year 1911 by

J. APPERTON AND COMPANY

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the  
Southern District of New York.

## EXPLANATION OF ABBREVIATIONS, &c.

---

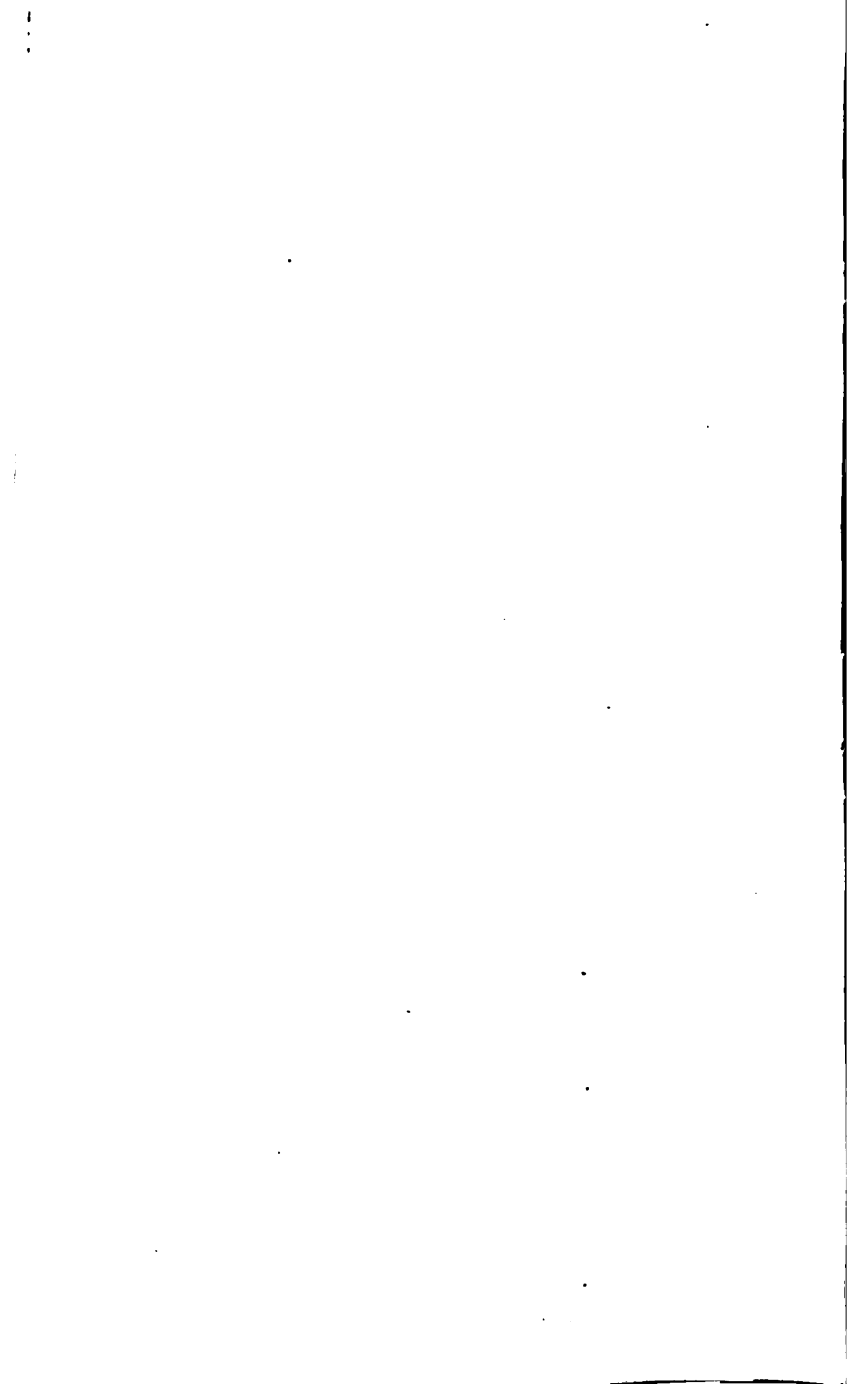
D., G., H., K., R., Z., stand respectively for *Döderlein*, *Grotzsch*, *Habicht*, *Krüger*, *Ramshorn*, and *Zumpt*.

Numerals above the line refer to the *Table of Differences*; if followed by a *curve*, to the *Cautions*.

An accent after a word, thus (parent<sup>ʹ</sup>) shows it to be somewhat *emphatic*.

Words printed in *italics* in the Exercises are meant to call attention to something that has been said respecting them, or to some point which should be carefully attended to in connection with them.

Two or more words connected together by hyphens show that they are to be translated into Latin by one word; as "branches-of-learning," *doctrinæ*; "admirably-skilled," *peritissimus*, &c.



## P R E F A C E .

---

THE present volume contains the First Part of Mr. Arnold's Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition ; the introductory portion of the Second Part (as published by the Author) on the Order of Words in Latin ; and nearly all the Longer Latin Exercises, Part I., a work which was published separately, but intended to follow immediately in order the use of the First Part of the Prose Composition.

This arrangement was adopted for the purpose of embracing as much valuable matter as possible within the compass of a reasonably sized volume. The First Part is complete in itself, and, so far as it goes, admirably fulfils the design of the author ; yet, as the Exercises consist of single, short, and unconnected sentences, it was deemed advisable to introduce other and longer Exercises, in which the student should be taught practically how to arrange his ideas in passages of considerable length, and in which are involved most of the minutiae and intricacies of the Latin idiom. For this purpose Part II. of the present volume is most excellently adapted. The work on the Latin Particles, which was published by the author as the Second Part of the Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition, is a production of much value and importance, and is devoted to a lengthened and full elucidation of the difficulties which stand in the way of one who would become a thorough and accomplished Latinist. It is intended—should the classical public demand it—to issue this work at an early date.

The principal advantages which the present volume offers over works of a similar kind are these. It contains a copious but concise illustration of Latin Synonymes drawn mainly from the standard treatise of Döderlein on this subject ; there is, through-



out, a careful and precise notation of the Differences of Idiom between the Latin and English languages; a frequent calling the attention of the student, by way of Cautions, to nice points which might otherwise escape his notice; and a constant repetition, under new forms and combined with new matter, of what has gone before—the *iterum iterumque* of Virgil—till both the words and expressions, with their peculiarities, are fastened in the memory. In addition to this, the Exercises are wholly in English, that is, the English is given to be turned into the corresponding Latin; and full and very carefully arranged Vocabularies precede or accompany each Exercise. This plan is far superior—in the Editor's judgment—to the common mode of giving all the Latin words in the Latin order, simply requiring that the sentence be made grammatically correct by the use of the right cases, moods, tenses, &c. By such a course the pupil is not obliged to study and exercise his powers of reflection and observation to any great extent; but only to be tolerably well acquainted with grammatical forms and usages; he learns to expect the helps of the Latin words; he pays little regard to the peculiarities of the Latin order; and is very apt to be sadly puzzled when an English sentence or passage is given to him to be turned into Latin. On the contrary, by using Mr. Arnold's method the student is compelled to examine well and constantly the mode which the Romans had of expressing their ideas, and in what respect it differs from our own, as well in regard to the choice as the collocation of words and sentences; and almost of necessity his memory has to be stored with a large supply of words and phrases for continual use.

Great care has been bestowed upon the volume, for the purpose of securing accuracy and clearness of arrangement; and it is trusted that it will not be found inferior to any issues of the American press.

J. A. S.

NEW-YORK, *March 16th*, 1846.

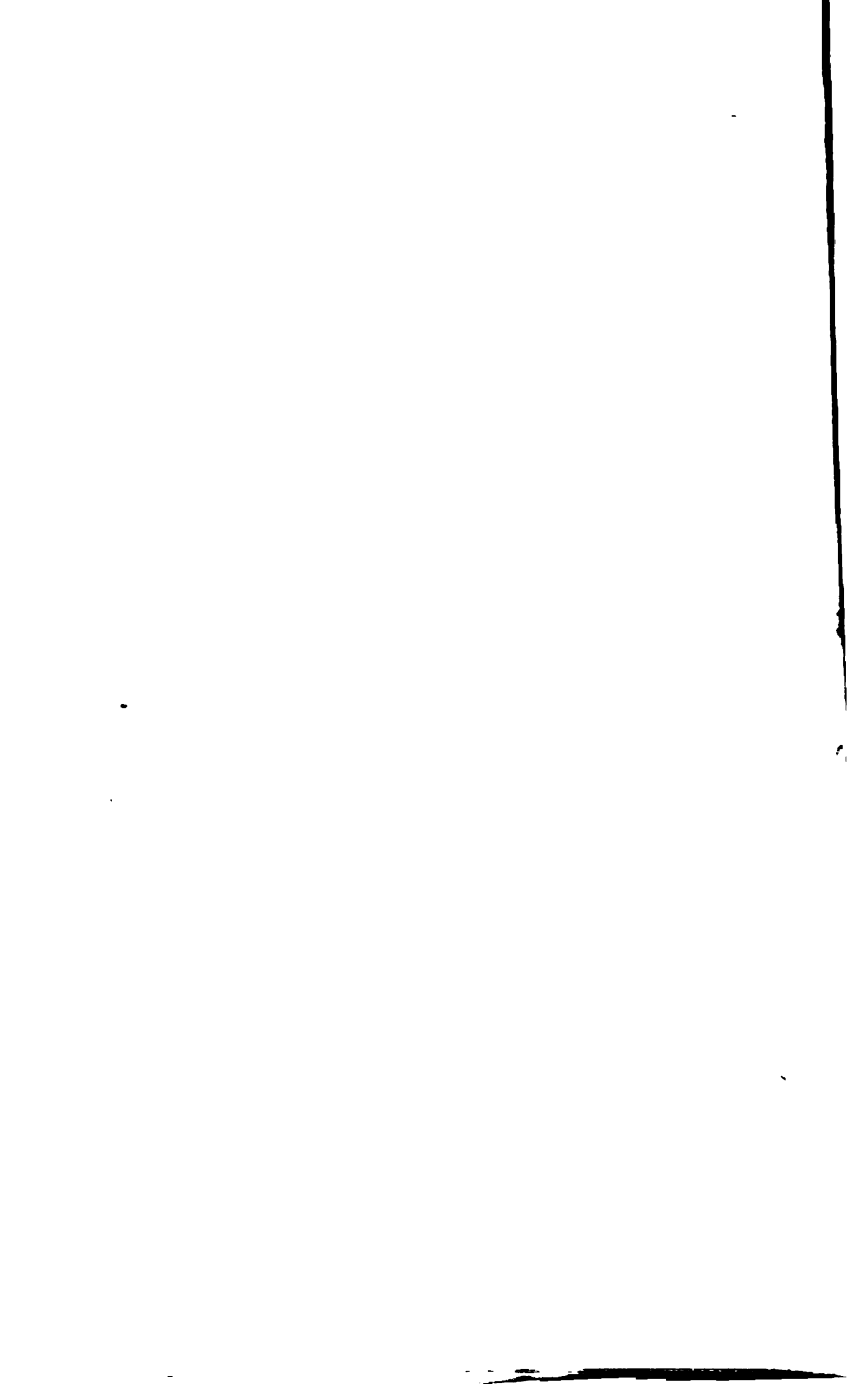
# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

## PART I.

		PAGE
	INTRODUCTORY REMARKS ON THE ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS IN A	
	LATIN SENTENCE.....	13
I. § 1.	Nominative Case and Verb.....	18
II. 2.	Accusative with Infinitive.....	19
	3. Accusative with Infinitive continued.....	21
III. 4.	Agreement of Adjective with Substantive.....	22
IV. 5.	The Relative.....	24
	6. Infinitive used substantively.....	27
	7. Relative continued. (Fundamental Rule for the employment of subjunctive tenses.).....	29
	8. Relative continued.....	31
	9. Relative continued. Rel. with Superlative: 'The first <i>who</i> ' ..	32
V. 10.	<i>Ut ne</i> , expressing a <i>purpose</i> .....	31
	11. <i>Ut</i> expressing a <i>consequence</i> . <i>Quo. Ne prohibitive</i> .....	35
	12. English infinitive translated by <i>ut</i> with subj. } [Vocabulary of Verbs followed by <i>ut</i> .] }	37
	13. <i>Ut</i> , &c. continued. ' <i>That nobody</i> , &c. } [Vocab. of Phrases followed by <i>ut</i> .] }	39
	14. <i>Quin</i> after negative sentences. [Vocab. of Verbs, &c. followed by <i>quin</i> .].....	41
	15. <i>Quominus</i> . [Vocab. of Verbs followed by <i>quominus</i> .] .....	45
VI. 16.	Interrogative Sentences .....	45
	17. Interrogative Words .....	45
	18. Dependent Questions .....	46
	19. Double Questions. <i>An</i> in single questions.....	47
	20. <i>May, can</i> , &c. as principal Verbs.....	49
VII. 21.	Apposition .....	52
	22. Nominative after the Verb. <i>Attraction</i> of the Predicate. [Vocab. of <i>Apposition Verbs</i> .].....	54
	23. Dative after <i>esse</i> .....	56

SECT.	PAGE
VIII. 24. The Genitive.....	56
25. The Genitive continued. Partitives. <i>Genitivus Qualitatis</i> . <i>Opus est. Summus mons, &amp;c. (64)</i> .....	60
26. The Genitive after Adjectives.....	66
27. The Genitive continued.....	68
28. The Genitive continued.....	70
29. The Genitive continued. <i>Impersonals</i> with gen. ....	74
IX. 30. The Dative. [Vocab. of Adjectives with dat., &c.].....	76
31. The Dative continued. [Vocab. of Verbs governing the dat.]	79
32. The Dative continued. [Vocab. of Compounds of <i>esse</i> .]... }	82
[Vocab. of Verbs that take <i>dat.</i> or <i>acc.</i> 84.].....	
33. The Dative continued. Verbs with two constructions... }	86
[Vocab. of Verbs that take <i>dat.</i> of <i>person</i> with <i>acc.</i> of <i>thing</i> ; or <i>acc.</i> of <i>pers</i> with <i>abl.</i> of <i>thing</i> .—Vocab. of Verbs with different constructions in different mean- ings.].....	
34. Verbs that take a second Dative. <i>Est mihi nomen</i> .....	88
[Vocab. of Verbs followed by <i>two</i> Datives.].....	89
X. 35. The Accusative. [Vocab. of <i>transitive</i> Compounds of <i>in-</i> <i>trans.</i> Verbs.].....	90
36. The Accusative continued.....	93
XI. 37. The Ablative.....	96
38. The Ablative continued. [Vocab. of Verbs governing the <i>abl.</i> ]	99
XII. 39. The Vocative. <i>Attraction</i> of the Vocative.....	102
XIII. 40. The Passive Voice.....	104
41. The Passive Voice continued.....	107
XIV. 42. Time.....	110
XV. 43. Place. Space.....	115
XVI. 44. Gerunds and Partic. in <i>dus</i> . [ <i>Epistola scribenda.</i> ].....	
[Vocab. of words following the constr. of the proper names of places, 122.].....	117
XVII. 45. Participles. Ablative Absolute.....	129
46. Participles continued. Participles expressing a <i>purpose</i> ....	126
47. Participles continued. The Supines.....	128
XVIII. 48. Pronouns.....	131
49. Pronouns continued. <i>Is hic, iste, ille</i> .....	133
50. Pronouns continued. On the translation of <i>any</i> .....	137
51. Pronouns continued. On the prefixes and affixes of the Inter- gatives.....	140
XIX. 52. Comparison.....	142
XX. 53. Remarks on some of the Tenses.....	145
54. Remarks on the Tenses continued.....	149
XXI. 55. Forms of Conditional Propositions (435).....	152
56. Conditional Propositions continued.....	156
57. Conditional Propositions in dependent sentences.....	160
XXII. 58. On <i>Oblique</i> Narration.....	162
59. <i>Oblique</i> Narration continued. Mood in subordinate Clauses. Dependence on an infinitive.....	165

SECT.		PAGE
XXIII. 60.	<i>Qui</i> with Subjunctive. [Vocab. of phrases, &c., with which <i>qui</i> takes the subj.] .....	169
61.	<i>Qui</i> with the Subjunctive continued .....	171
XXIV. 62.	<i>Quum</i> with the Indicative.....	} 174
	[Vocab. of Conjunctions that govern the subj. 494.]....	
XXV. 63.	<i>Antequam</i> and <i>Priusquam</i> .....	179
XXVI. 64.	<i>Dum, donec, quoad</i> , &c. [Vocab. of Adverbs with gen.]....	181
XXVII. 65.	<i>Quod</i> .....	183
XXVIII. 66.	The Roman Calendar .....	186
XXIX. 67.	Connection of Propositions by the Relative, &c. ....	189
XXX. 68.	On the Roman way of reckoning money .....	192
69.	On the division of the <i>As</i> , the method of reckoning <i>fractions</i> , <i>interest</i> , &c.....	194
	Tables for Reference.	
	I. Genders.....	196
	II. Formation of the Perfect and Supine.....	197
	Table of Differences of Idiom, &c.....	202
	Questions on the Cautions.....	211
	Questions on the Syntax.....	214



## INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

---

### *On the Arrangement of Words in a Latin Sentence.*

1. The general distinction between the English and Latin order is this :

2. ☞ In Latin the *governed* and *dependent* words generally stand before the words *on which they depend* ; so that in simple sentences, the verb, when not particularly *emphatic*, stands at the end of the sentence.

3. Thus in simple narrative, after the conjunction comes the *subject* (nom. case) ; then the *governed cases* with *adverbs* and expressions of *time, place, manner, &c.*, and last of all the *verb*.

4. But if the verb is *emphatic*, it must be placed earlier in the sentence.—Quod non *dedit* fortuna, id non eripit. Mirabile videtur, quod non *rideat* haruspex, &c. Non *intelligunt* homines, quam magnum, vectigal sit parsimonia.

For it must always be remembered that—

5. ☞ *The degree of prominence and emphasis to be given to a word, is that which mainly determines its position in the sentence.*—And,

6. a) The *two emphatic* positions in a sentence are the *beginning* and the *end* ; “by the former our attention is *excited*, and on the latter it *rests*.” (Crombie.)
- b) Add to this, that the more *unusual* a position is for any word, the more *emphatic* it is *for that word*. Thus, “arbores seret diligens agricola, quarum adspiciet baccam ipse *nunquam*.” (Cic.)
- c) A word that generally stands close by another receives *emphasis by separation* from it ; especially if it be thus brought near the beginning or end of a sentence. *Voluptatem* percepi *maximam*!. Propterea quod *aliud* iter haberent *nullum*!. *Edui equites* ad Cæsarem *omnes* revertuntur.
- d) Another principle affecting the position of words is the harmonious arrangement of syllables ; the *flow* of the sentence.

7. GENITIVE. The genitive, whether dependent on a substantive or adjective, stands first if it be the *more emphatic*; if not, not. But it is rendered more emphatic by *separation*; see 6, c).

a) It probably somewhat *prefers* the position before the governing noun, when that is not *decidedly* emphatic.

b) When the governing substantive has an adjective with it, the order is generally *adj., gen., subst.* (*Vera animi magnitudo.*)

8. ATTRIBUTIVE AND ITS SUBSTANTIVE. Of these the *more emphatic* stands first. But see 6, c).

a. A very short precedes a longer word: hence the *demonstratives* usually stand before their nouns, and *monosyllable substantives* before their adjectives.

9. APPPOSITION. Here too the more emphatic precedes: but *generally* the word in *apposition* stands last.

a. This is particularly the case with *titles*, &c., in apposition to *proper names*.

Q. Mucius *Augur*; Agis *rex*; Pythagoras *Philosophus*. But, *urbs* Roma; though Cyprus *insula*, Hypanis *fluvius*.

10. WORDS DEPENDENT ON ADJECTIVES. Here too the more emphatic precedes, with something of a *preference* for placing the *dependent* words first.

11. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. The *more emphatic* first.

12. INFINITIVE DEPENDENT ON VERB. The more emphatic first; generally the infinitive.

a. Of *two* infinitives, the more emphatic first.

13. ADVERBS. Generally, immediately before the words they belong to. *Quoque* immediately after its word. *chance always be*

14. Words that modify the meaning of an adjective are usually placed between it and the substantive. (*Proelio magis ad eventum secundo, quam, &c.*)

15. OPPOSITION and contrasted notions.

a) A *repeated* word, or a word *akin* to a word already used in the sentence, is generally brought as near to that word as possible. *Timor timorem pellit. Nulla virtus virtuti contraria est. Virtutum in aliâ alius vult excellere. Aliis aliunde est periculum.*

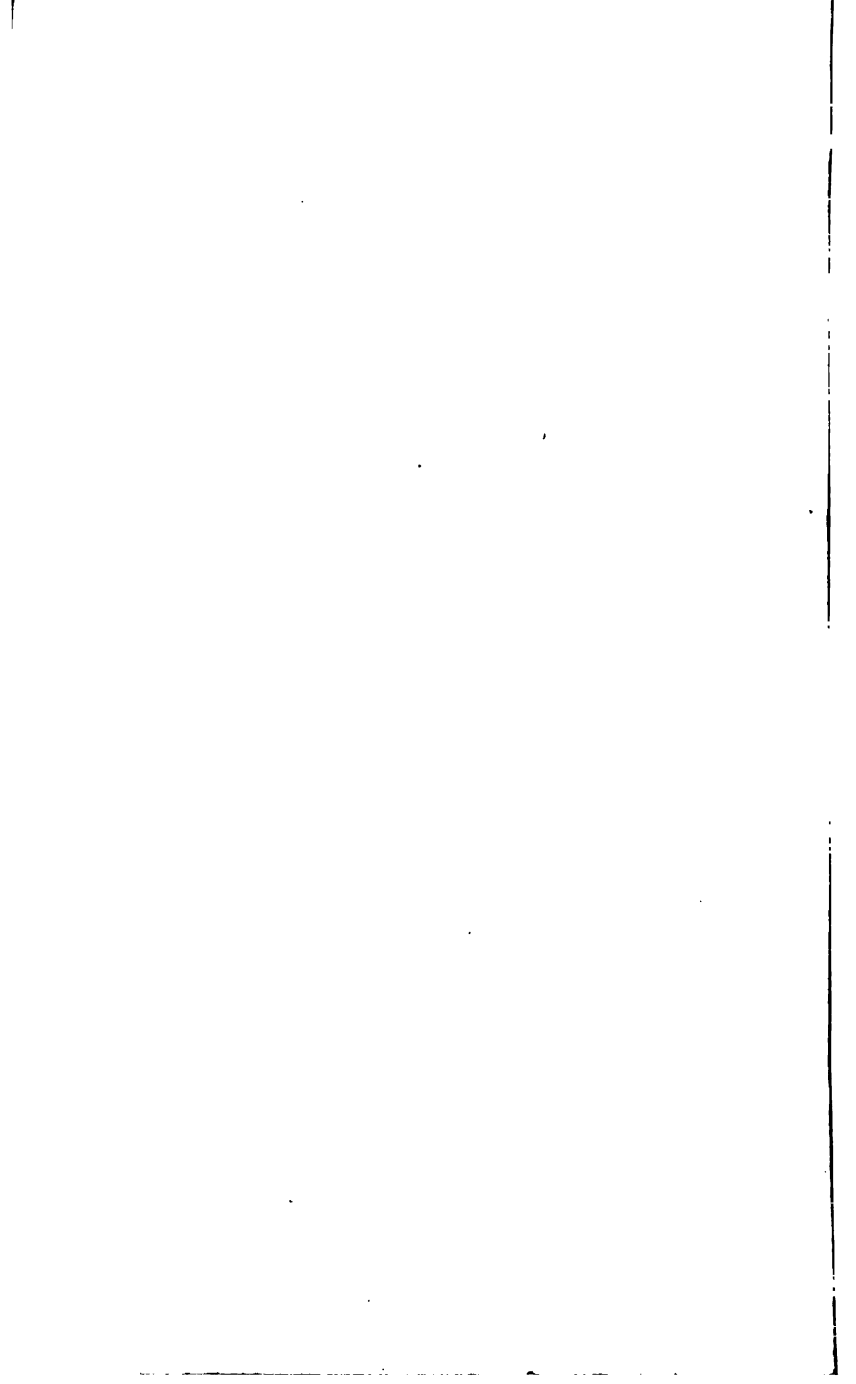
b) Of two contrasted *clauses* or *groups* of words, of parallel construction, the order of the first is often *reversed* in the second:

so that two of the *antithetical* words are as far apart as possible  
*Fragile corpus animus sempiternus movet. Ratio nostra consentit ; pugnat oratio. Quæ me moverunt, movissent eadem te profecto.*

✂ *Enim, vero, autem, quoque, quidem* (with of course the *enclitics*), cannot be the first words of a clause.

*enim, autem, quoque, vero, quidem.*





PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION  
TO  
LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.

---

The common concords are taken for granted ; that—

(1.) A verb agrees with its nominative case in *number* and *person*.

(2.) An adjective, pronoun, or participle, agrees with its *substantive* in *gender*, *number* and *case*.

(3.) A *transitive* verb, whether active or deponent, takes after it an accusative of the *person* or *thing acted upon*.

(4.) Verbs of *existence* (such as *be, become, turn out, &c.*) ; passive verbs of *being called, considered, chosen, &c.*, take a substantive or adjective after them in the *nominative* case.

(5.) The thing *by which* stands in the *ablative* ; the person *by whom*, in the *ablative* with the preposition *a* or *ab*.

(6.) One substantive *depending* upon another is put in the *genitive* case.

---

*Obs.* When a pronoun is the nominative case to a verb, it is not expressed in Latin ; except for the sake of *emphasis* or particular distinction.

(a) In the same way the *possessive* pronoun is seldom expressed, when there can be no doubt as to *whose* the thing is. See 3 (a).

(β) When there *is* any distinction to be expressed, as, for instance, when *I* am opposed to *you*,\* the pronouns must be expressed.

---

\* The pron. is expressed, even when the distinction is only between two actions of the same person. *Ejeci ego te armatis hominibus, non dejecti.*

## I.

§ 1. *Nominative Case and Verb.*

2. (a) When two or more nominative cases singular come together, they take a *plural* verb,<sup>a</sup> which agrees with the nominative case of the *most worthy*<sup>b</sup> person.

(b) The verbs *est* and *sunt* are often omitted.

3. (a) Et ego<sup>c</sup> et Balbus sustulimus manus, *Both I and Balbus lifted up our hands.*

(b) Amici veterimi optimi, *The oldest friends are the best.*

## 4. VOCABULARY 1.

And,	et; que <i>enclitic</i> ; atque; ac <sup>d</sup>
If,	si.
Both—and,	et—et.
Hand,	mānus, ūs, <i>f.</i>
Sister,	soror, ōris, <i>f.</i>
Well,	bēnē.
Hunger	fāmes, is, <i>f.</i>
Seasoning, }	condimentum, l. <i>n.</i>
Sauce, }	
Army,	exercitus, ūs, <i>m.</i>

<sup>a</sup> The verb is often however in the singular, agreeing with one of the nominatives, and being understood with the other. This is the common construction with *et—et*; *quum—tum*, &c., when both the nominatives are *singular*, and of the *same person*.

<sup>b</sup> The *first* person is said to be *more worthy* than the second, the second than the third.

<sup>c</sup> For “Balbus and I,” the Romans, putting “I” first, said “*Ego et Balbus.*” When therefore Cardinal Wolsey said “*Ego et Rex meus,*” he was a good grammarian but bad courtier.

<sup>d</sup> Et joins words each of which is considered *independently*, and as of *equal importance*: ATQUE (= *adque*) or AC, which is an abridged (and less emphatic) form of the same word, adds a notion that is, if anything, of *more importance* than the preceding one (= ‘and also,’ ‘and moreover’): QUE joins a word closely to another, as an *appendage* to it, as *belonging* to it, and often as forming one complex notion with it.

When *et* connects *principal clauses*, *subordinate* ones and single words must be connected by *que*, or (if *similar notions*) *atque*.

*Atque* is used before vowels or consonants, but especially before vowels.

*Ac* is used before *consonants* (though not *very often* before the *k* sounds); but not before *vowels* or *h*. Mr. Allen shows that *ac* (though very rarely met with before *g*, *q*) is not very uncommon in Cicero before *c*. So also Zumpt.

War,	bellum, i. n.
A Gaul,	Gallus, i. m.
Many,	multi, æ, a.
Very many,	permulti,* æ, a.
Cæsar,	Cæsar, Cæsāria, m.
To lift up,	tollere, sustul, sublāt.
To be in good health, }	
To be well, }	valere, valū, valū.
To wage (properly to carry),	gerere, gess, gest.
To conquer,	vincere, vic, vict.

## Exercise 1.

5.<sup>1</sup> If you and the army<sup>2</sup> are-in-good-health, it is well (p. 14, 13). 2 Both you and Balbus lifted up (your) hands. 3 Both *you and I* (1 Obs. β) have waged many<sup>3</sup> wars. 4 Both you and Balbus have waged very-many<sup>4</sup> wars. 5 The best<sup>5</sup> sauce (is) hunger. 6 The Gauls were conquered by Cæsar. 7 Hands were lifted up both by you and by Balbus. 8 If you and your sister are-in-good-health, it is well.

## II.

## § 2. Accusative with Infinitive.

6. The *infinitive* takes before it not the nominative, but the *accusative*.<sup>1</sup>

- Many sentences that in English are joined to a verb by the conjunction '*that*,' are expressed in Latin by the accusative and *infinitive*.
- In turning such sentences into Latin '*that*' must be omitted; the English *nominative* turned into the *accusative*; and the English verb into the *infinitive mood* of the same tense.
- The accusative with the infinitive follows verbs (*sentendi et declarandi*) of *feeling, knowing, wishing, hearing, believing, thinking, &c.*; and such expressions as, it is *certain, manifest, true, &c.*

\* *Per* in composition with an adjective, adds to it the meaning of '*very*.'

<sup>1</sup> *Exercitusque*. *Que* must always be appended to the latter of the two words connected by it.

<sup>2</sup> This idiom is not *uncommon* in English, though far less common than in Latin.

"I ordered *him to be dismissed*" (for 'I ordered *that he should be dismissed*').

"I saw *him to be a knave*" (for 'I saw *that he was a knave*').

10. (a) Respondeo, *placēre* et mihi *locum*, *I answer* that the place pleases *me* too.  
 (b) Respondit, *placēre* et sibi *locum*, He answered *that* the place pleased *him* too.  
 (c) Sentimus *calēre ignem*, *nivem esse* albam, dulce *mel*,  
*We know-by-our-senses*, that fire is hot ; that snow is white, honey sweet.

## 11. VOCABULARY 2.

To answer,	respondēre, respond, respons.
To understand,	intelligēre, intellex, intellect.
To deny,	negāre, āv, āt.
To sin,	peccāre, āv, āt.
I remember,	mēmīni, Imper. memento ; pl. mementote.
To know-by-the-senses,	sentīre, sens, sens.
To injure, offend-against,	violāre, āv, āt.
Law,	lex, lēgis, f.

## CAUTIONS.

12. [C. I.] ⚡ *Him, her, them* (or *he, she, they*, when they are to be translated by the *accusative*) must be translated by the proper case of *sui*, when they and the *nominative of the verb* stand for the *same person*.  
 Also, in the same case, *his, hers, its, theirs*, must be translated by *suus*.

13. { He *says* that it *pleases* him.  
 { He *said* that it *pleased* him.

In English the dependent verb (by a kind of *attraction*) assumes the *past form*, when the verb it depends on is in a past tense.

Hence——

- ⚡ [C. II.] *In a sentence with 'that' dependent on a past tense, the perfect is to be translated by the present (and imperfect) infinitive, whenever the notion expressed by it is not to be described as over before the time of the principal verb.*<sup>a</sup>  
 ⚡ [C. III.] 'Should' after 'that' is to be translated by the present infinitive, *when it does not express either duty or a future event.*

<sup>a</sup> Thus "he said that it pleased him"—when ? at the time of his saying it ? (*placuisse*) ; before the time of his saying it ? (*placuisse*).

## Exercise 2.

- 14./ He answered that he<sup>1</sup>\* had waged many' wars. 2 He *denies* that he has sinned (or : *says* that he has *not* sinned).<sup>2</sup>† 3 He *says* that he does *not*<sup>2</sup> understand. 4 He *says* that Cæsar will *not*<sup>2</sup> offend-against the laws. 5 Remember that hunger is the best sauce. 6 He answered that he understood.<sup>2</sup> 7 He answered, that both you and Balbus were-in-good-health. 8 Both you and Balbus have sinned.

#

§ 3. Accusative with Infinitive continued.

15. (a) After *hope, promise, undertake, &c.*, the *future infinitive* is used with the *accusative* of the pronoun ; and (b) after *pretend*, the *acc.* of the pronoun.

16. (a) *Sperat* plerumque adolescens diu se *victurum* (esse),<sup>1</sup>

*A young man generally expects to live a long time.*

(b) *Simulat se furere, He pretends to be mad.*

☞ [C. iv.] 'Would,' 'should,' after a past tense are future forms :

- { He *says* that he *will* come.  
{ He *said* that he *would* come.

## 17. VOCABULARY 3.

A business,	negotium, i, n.
A journey,	iter, itinēris, n.
To hope,	sperāre, āv, at.
To come,	vēnīre, vēn, vent.
To promise,	pollicēri, pollicitus ; promittēre, promissus, e promissus. <sup>1</sup>
To undertake, engage,	recipēre, io, recip, recept.

\* These Numerals, followed by a curve, refer to the *Cautions*.

† These Numerals refer to the *Table of Differences of Idiom*.

1 For 'he promises to come' = he promises that he will come.

He hopes to live = he hopes that he shall live.

He pretends to be mad = he pretends that he is mad.

1 With the compound infinitives *esse* is often omitted.

1 Promittere (to give it forth) is the general word for *promising*, whether good or evil. Polliceri is to offer from one's own free-will and inclinations, used only of promising good. Pollicor being used for free and gracious promises.

To finish, accomplish,	conficere, lo, conficere, confect.
To pretend,	simulare, <sup>m</sup> av, at
To be mad,	furere, (neut. : <i>no perf. or supine.</i> )
To (my, your, &c.) satisfaction, satisfactorily, } successfully,	ex sententiâ
To have a prosperous voyage, ex sententiâ navigare.	

## Exercise 3.

18. / Solon pretended to be mad. 2I will pretend to be mad. 3 He promised to come. 4 I engage to finish the business to your satisfaction. 5 I hope that you will have a prosperous voyage. 6 The business has been finished by Balbus. 7 I hope to finish the business. 8 He was pretending to be mad. 9 I promised to finish the business. 10 He answered, that Caius had had a prosperous voyage. 11 He answered that he would<sup>1</sup> finish the business. 12 He says that he will not<sup>2</sup> come. 13 He has accomplished his journey satisfactorily.

## III.

## § 4. Agreement of Adjective with Substantive.

19. (a) When an adjective agrees with several singular nouns it will be in the plural number, and agree with the *most worthy*.

20. (b) If the substantives are things that *have not life*, the adjective is usually in the *neuter* gender.

21. (c) When the noun is 'man,' 'woman,' 'thing,' it is seldom expressed in Latin.

[C. v.] 'Thing' should be expressed by 'res' (fem.) when the adjective alone would leave it doubtful whether *men* or *things* were meant.

Thus 'of men, things' not *multorum*, but *multarum rerum*

*promitto* would naturally be often used of promising what has been requested. Hence—

*Ulro polliceor; promitto (saepe) rogatus :*

*Nec mala polliceor, mala sed promittere possum.*

<sup>m</sup> Quae non sunt simulo; quae sunt ea dissimulantur.

<sup>n</sup> The pronoun should be expressed (*ex mea sententiâ, &c.*) whenever to leave it out would cause an ambiguity.

22. (a) *Castor et Pollux ex equis pugnare visi sunt*, Castor and Pollux were seen to *fight on horseback*.  
 (b) *Inter se contraria sunt beneficium et injuria*, A benefit and an injury are contrary to each other.  
 (c) *Boni sapientesque ex civitate pelluntur*, The good and wise are banished (literally, driven from the state).  
 (d) *Præterita mutare non possumus*, We cannot change the past.  
 (e) *Omnia mea mecum porto*, I am carrying all my property with me.

23. Obs. 1. The neuter plural without a substantive is generally used in Latin, where we use the singular. Thus——

<i>much</i> ,	<i>very much</i> ,	<i>every thing</i> ,	<i>the past</i> ,
<i>multa</i> ,	<i>permulta</i> ,	<i>omnia</i> ,	<i>præterita</i> ,
<i>little</i> (few things),		<i>very little</i> ,	
<i>pauca</i> ,		<i>perpauca</i> .	

24. Obs. 2. The neuter adj. is used in Latin without a substantive, where we might substitute 'things,' but really use some more appropriate noun, as *property*, *objects*, *possessions*, *performances*, &c.

[C. VI.] Obs. *Cum* is written *after*, and as *one word with*, the ablatives *me*, *te*, &c.; *mecum*, *tecum*, *cum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*.

#### 25. VOCABULARY 4.

Contrary,	<i>contrarius</i> , a, um.
(to each other, after contrary)	<i>inter se</i> ( <i>between themselves</i> ).
Good, better, best,	<i>bonus</i> , <i>melior</i> , <i>optimus</i> .
Wise,	<i>sapiens</i> , tis.
Deaf,	<i>surdus</i> , a, um,
Parent,	<i>parens</i> , tis, <i>com. gen.</i>
Virtue,	<i>virtus</i> , tis, <i>f.</i>
Vice,	<i>vitium</i> , i. n.
Blind,	<i>cæcus</i> , a, um.
All my property,	<i>omnia mea</i> °.
To owe,	<i>debere</i> , <i>debu</i> , <i>debit</i> .
To banish,	<i>pellere ex civitate</i> ( <i>to drive out</i> , <i>to drive</i> ).
To be ignorant-of	<i>ignorare</i> , æv, æt. ( <i>acc.</i> )
To see,	<i>cernere</i> , <i>crêv</i> , <i>crêt</i> (properly to separate; hence, to distinguish; to see clearly; the proper word to express the possession of distinct vision).

° The other possessives, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, &c., must be used for *thy*, *his*, *our* &c., *property*.



To carry,	portāre, āv. āt.
To hear,	audīre, īv. it.
To speak,	lŏqui, locūtus, or loquutus.
To fight on horseback,	ex equo, or ex equis <sup>p</sup> pugnāre.

## Exercise 4.

26. / They are banishing *the good and wise*. 2 We are all ignorant of *many things*. 3 Virtue and vice are *contrary* to each other. 4 A *blind man* does not see. 5 *The good and wise* have been banished. 6 A *deaf man* does not hear. > Hear much (23); speak little (p. 14, 15, *b.*) 4 We shall carry *all our property* with us. 9 He spoke *very little*. / 6 Both you and Balbus are ignorant of *many things*. // He says that he is *not*<sup>2</sup> well. // They will hear *little*<sup>1</sup>: they will speak *much* (p. 14, 15, *b.*). / 3 We owe *very much* to our parents. / 4 Remember that you owe *very much*<sup>1</sup> to your parents. / 5 He says that he will *not*<sup>2</sup> fight on horseback.

## IV.

§ 5. *The Relative.*

27. The relative pronouns

<i>qui,</i>	<i>qualis,</i>	<i>quantus,</i>	<i>quot,</i>
answer respectively to			
<i>is,</i>	<i>talis,</i>	<i>tantus,</i>	<i>tot.</i>

28. In a relative sentence,
- <sup>a</sup>

☞ Each clause has its own verb, and its own independent construction.

29. A relative pronoun agrees with some case of a substantive which is expressed in the preceding sentence. The substantive to which it thus refers is called its
- antecedent*
- (or
- fore-going*
- substantive).

The antecedent, in a sentence *fully* expressed, would be expressed *twice*; and it sometimes is expressed twice in Latin: this, however, is but seldom the case, and the antecedent is *generally* omitted in the *relative clause*.

30. (c) Sometimes however the antecedent is expressed in the

<sup>p</sup> *Ex equo*, if we are speaking of *one* person; *ex equis*, if of more.

<sup>a</sup> The clause in which the relative stands is called the *relative clause*; the other, the *principal*, or *antecedent* clause.

*relative*, and omitted in the *principal* clause ; and (d) when this is the case, the relative clause is often *placed first* ; the antecedent being expressed in *it*, and represented in the principal clause (though not *always*) by the proper case of ' *is* ' or ' *hic* .'

31. The ' *is* ,' however, is often omitted, especially when ' *man* ' or ' *thing* ' is meant, or, when the verbs govern the same case.

If the antecedent would be in *different cases* in the two clauses, ' *is* ' or ' *hic* ' is but seldom omitted.\*

32. (a) *Nunlum animal, quod sanguinem habet, sine corde esse potest, No animal that has blood, can be without a heart.*  
 (b) *Arbôres seret diligens agricôla, quarum adspiciet baccam\* ipse nunquam, The industrious husbandman will plant trees, a berry of which he will himself never behold.*  
 (c) *Accepi quas literas ad me dedisti, I have received the letters which you sent me.*  
 (d) *Bestiæ in quo loco natæ sunt, ex eo se non commôvent, Animals do not move themselves from the neighbourhood (place) in which they were born.*

[C. VII.] Many English verbs *become* transitive by the addition of a *preposition* ; for instance, *to smile at*, &c.

It often happens that the corresponding Latin verb is *already transitive*, so that the preposition is not to be expressed. To determine whether the preposition *belongs* (as it were) *to the verb*, turn the sentence into the passive : when, if the preposition still *clings to the verb* (adverbially), it is generally not to be expressed in Latin.

Of course a verb, compound or single, must be sought for, that is equivalent to the verb and preposition together ; as *to deride* = *laugh at*.

### 33. VOCABULARY 5.

Obs. Substantives in *us* from the root of the supine (which end therefore in *tus* or *eus*) are of the fourth declension ; except, of course, those that, like *legatus*, denote *persons*.

\* It is, however, sometimes :

*Quos cum Matio pueros miseram, epistolam mihi attulerunt. (Cic.)*

— *Quæ prime innocentis mihi defensio est oblata, suscepi.*

\* A *berry* ; any little round fruit, not a *nut* ; e. g. of the *olive*, *cedar*, *juniper*, &c

\* Thus : —

'He laughs at Cassius.'

'Cassius is laughed at.' Therefore to *laugh-at* is virtually one verb

No,	nullus, a, um. <i>Gen. nullius.</i>
Animal,	animal, ālis, n.
Blood,	sanguis, inis, m.
Without,	sine (governs <i>ablat.</i> ).
Heart,	cor, cordis, n.
Tree,	arbor, ōris, f.
Fruits (of the earth, a crop),	fruges, <i>G. frugum, f.</i>
—— (of trees,)	fructus, ūs, <sup>a</sup> m.
Field,	ager, agri, m.
In vain,	nequidquam, frustra.*
Harvest,	messis, is, f.
Praise,	laus, laudis, f.
Easily,	facile.
Not yet,	nondum.
Right,	rectus, a, um.
To till, cultivate,	colere, colu, cult.
To bear, produce,	fēro, tili, lātum.
To deserve,	mereri, meritus.
To deserve well, &c., of,	—— de (with <i>ablat.</i> ).
To praise,	laudare, āv, āt.
To believe,	crēdere, credid, credit ( <i>dat.</i> ).
To deceive,	decipere, io, decēp, decept.
To behold,	adspicere, io, adspex, adspect.
Self, myself, himself, &c., in nom.,	ipse (which stands for all these, the pro nouns ego, tu, &c., not being ex- pressed.)

☞ 'What' as a relative = *that which* ; *those (things) which*.

### Exercise 5.

34. | No animals, which have blood, can be without a heart.  
2 Not every field which is sown, bears a crop. 3 (He) who easily  
believes is easily deceived. 4 'What is right', is praised. 5 (Those  
things) which are right' are praised. 6 Both you and I<sup>1</sup> have been  
deceived. 7 Praise what deserves praise. 8 (He) who does not till  
his field, in vain hopes for<sup>2</sup> a harvest. 9 He *says* that he has *not*<sup>3</sup>  
been deceived. 10 I shall not easily believe Balbus'. 11 Balbus has

\* *Fructus arboribus, fruges nascuntur in agris.* But this is only true of  
*fruges*; and of *fructus*, as opposed to *fruges*. *Fructus* is the general name for  
produce, and may be spoken of *land* as well as of trees; and in *poetry* we find  
*frugibus* (Columella's poem on Gardening), and *fruge* (Hor.) of the fruit of  
trees.

\* *Nequidquam* (to no purpose, in vain), so far as nothing has resulted from a  
thing done: *frustra* (in vain), of a person who has not attained his purpose. D

deserved well of me. <sup>1</sup>The business which you promised <sup>to</sup> finish,<sup>2</sup> has not yet been finished. <sup>3</sup>I have planted a tree, the fruit of which I shall myself never<sup>4</sup> behold. <sup>5</sup>He is pretending <sup>to</sup> have finished<sup>3</sup> the business <sup>to</sup> his satisfaction.<sup>4</sup>

§ 6. *Infinitive used substantively.*

35. (a) Sometimes an *infinitive mood*, or a *sentence*, is the *nominative case* to a *verb*; and sometimes it is used as the *substantive* to an *adjective*; and sometimes as the *antecedent* to a *relative*: and in this case the adjective and the relative must be in the *neuter gender*.

When an infinitive or sentence is the nominative to a verb, it generally *follows* it in English, and the pronoun '*it*' stands as its representative before the verb;—as, "It is sweet to hear."

Of course this '*it*' is not to be translated into Latin.

36. (b) When the relative has a sentence for its antecedent, we often find *id\* quod* or *quæ res*. (Here *id* and *res* are in *apposition* to the former sentence.)

37. (a) *Turpe est mentiri*, It is disgraceful to lie.

(b) *Multæ civitates, a Cyro defecerunt; quæ res multorum bellorum causa fuit*, Many states revolted from Cyrus, a circumstance which was the cause of many wars.

(c) *Timoleon, id\* quod difficilior putatur, sapientius tulit secundam quam adversam fortunam*, Timoleon, which is thought more difficult, bore a prosperous more wisely than an adverse fortune.

88. VOCABULARY 6.

Pleasant,	jucundus, a, um.
Duty,	officium, i, n.
Against,	contra, (gov. accus.)
Promise,	promissum, i, n.
Disgraceful,	turpis, is, e.
Easy	facilis, is, e.

\* Invert these clauses: that is, put the relative clause first.

\* The use of *id quod* for *quod* only, adds emphasis to the relative clause, which then generally precedes the principal clause, or is inserted in it.

One thing—another,	aliud—aliud.
Man,	homo, hominis; vir, viri.*
To keep,	servare, av, at.
Reville,	maledicere, dix, dict (dat.).
To accuse,	accusare, av, at.
To break one's word,	fidem fallere; fallere, fefelli,† falsum deceive, beguile.
To keep one's word,	fidem præstare; præstare, præstiti,‡ præstitum, et præstatum.
To lie,	mentiri, mentitus.
To utter many falsehoods,	multa mentiri.
It is a breach of duty,	contra officium, (it is against duty.)

[C. VIII.] 'For' before a substantive or pronoun followed by the *infin.*, is not to be translated. The construction is the *acc.* with *infin.*‡

It is a sin { *for* a boy not *to* obey his parents.  
                  { *that* a boy should not obey his parents.

### Exercise 6.

39/ It is pleasant to be praised, 40/ It is a breach of duty not to keep promises. 3/ It is a breach of duty to praise what (*plur.*) is disgraceful. 4/ I hear that you keep your promises, *a thing which* (37, c) all good men do. 5/ I hear that you are going to keep your word. 6/ It is disgraceful to break one's word. 7/ It is one thing to revile, another to accuse. 8/ It is certain that Balbus has deserved well of me. 9/ It is a breach of duty to lie. 10/ Both you and Balbus have uttered many falsehoods. 11/ It is disgraceful to banish the good and wise. 12/ It is easy (for me) to carry all my property with me. 13/ It is a breach of duty for a man to revile men. 14/ I have praised, not blamed you (*note\**, p. 17).

\* *Homo* is the general term for man, i. e. for a human being, distinguished from other living creatures. *Vir* is man as distinguished from woman. *Homo* is often used contemptuously: *vir*, respectfully; a man with a manly character.

† Distinction between *fallo* and *decipio*:

*Nulla fallentis culpa sæpius fallor;*

*At quum decipiar, culpam acceptor habebit.*

‡ Cic. has *præstaturus*.

§ But we shall see below that if 'for' follows immediately after 'it is,' it must be translated by the genitive. 'It is for a rich man to do so and so' *aititis* e-l. &c.

(§ 7.) *Relative continued.* (Fundamental Rule for the employment of subjunctive tenses.)

Wherever *dependent* verbs are used in the subjunctive, the following is the fundamental rule for the use of the *tenses*.

40. The *imperfect* and *pluperfect* of the subjunctive are the regular attendants of the *past tenses* of the indicative.

But—the *perfect definite*<sup>b</sup> (or perfect with ‘have’) is considered a *present* tense.

Hence the present, future, and perfect with ‘have’ are followed by the *present*, or (for a completed action) the *perfect* of the subjunctive.<sup>c</sup>

✎ The future perfect is not a subjunctive tense.

41. The only future subjunctive is the part. in *rus* with *sim, essem, &c.* But where *we* use a *future* in a dependent sentence, the Romans often used the *present of imperfect* subjunctive.

(On some English Relative forms.)

42. ‘*That*’ is often a relative pronoun.

(Especially after *superlatives*; the interrogative *who*; *the same*; and when both *persons* and *things* are meant.)

43. (a) ‘*As*’ is often, in effect, a relative pronoun.

The relative ‘*as*’ must be translated by *qui* after *idem*; by *qualis, quantus, quot*, after *talis, tantus, tot*, respectively.

44. (1) ‘*But*’ is often, in effect, a relative pronoun, when it follows *universal negatives*, as *nemo, nullus, nihil*.

(2) The relative ‘*but*’ is to be translated by *quin* with the *subjunctive*. (c)

(3) When ‘*but*’ might be substituted for a *relative* with *not*, the *relative* and *not* may be translated by *quin*; if the relative is in the *nom.* (or even *acc.*) case.

<sup>b</sup> The *perfect definite* is used of actions done in some *space of time*, a part of which is still *present*.

<sup>c</sup> Thus then the

Present	} are followed by the	{ Present subj Perfect subj. (for a completed action)
Future		
Perfect with ‘have’		
Imperfect	} are followed by the	{ Imperfect subj. Pluperfect subj. (for an action completed before the time spoken of).
Perfect		
Pluperfect		

• With other cases than the *nominative* and *accusative*, the use of the *relative*

[C. ix.] ¶ 'As' and 'but' are often (in effect) *relatives*.

[C. x.] ¶ 'Such' in English is often used where *size* is meant rather than *quality*. 'Such-as' should then be translated into Latin by *tantus*—*quantus*; not *talis*—*qualis*.

15. (a) *Talis est, qualis semper fuit, He is such as he has ever been.*  
 (b) *Idem est qui semper fuit, He is the same that (or as) he has ever been.*  
 (c) *Nemo est, quin te dementem putet, There is no one but thinks you mad (or, who does not think you mad).*

#### 46. VOCABULARY 7.

The same,

Rule,

Expediency,

Expedient,

Honor, the honorable, }  
 honorable conduct, }

Nobody, no one,

To think, deem,

That,

Nearly,

Another,

Never,

Before,

To be able, can,

Wave,

idem, eadem, idem; gen. ejusdem, &c

rēgula, ae, f.

utilitas, ātis, f.

utilla, is, e.

honestas, ātis, f.

nēmo, inis; nemo = ne hōmo.

putāre, āv, āt.

hic, hæc, hoc; g. hujus, &c.

ille, illa, illud; g. illius, &c.

fēre,

alius, a, ud; g. alius, D. alii, &c.

nunquam,

antea,

posse, pōtui, f

fluctus, ūs, m. (See. 33.)

(a) *Sunt qui putent* (Obs. *subj.* after '*sunt qui*') *there are some who think*

#### Exercise 7.

[C. xi.] ¶ 'That', when it stands for a substantive which has been expressed in the preceding clause, is not to be translated.

¶ The *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect* of the *Subjunct.* are the regular attendants of the *past* tenses of the *Indicative*.

with *non* is commonly preferred. Z. When *qui non* must be used will be explained below.

\* *Quin* is *quān* (= *ut non*). The demonstr. pronoun (which is the real nom.) is sometimes expressed: as in 88, (a).

'This verb is compounded of an old adj. *potis*, neut. *pote*, with *sum*. 'Pot' is prefixed to the tenses of *sum*, *is* being changed into *es*, and *pot-esse*, *pot-essem* shortened into *posse*, *possem* (*posses*, &c.). The perfect tenses regular from *potui* (= *potis fui*). No *imperat.*: the part. *potens* is used as an adjective

47. / This is the same as that. 2 The rule of expediency is the same as that<sup>11</sup> of honour. 3 This is nearly the same as another thing. 4 You are such as I have always thought you. 5 There is nobody but knows, that the Gauls were conquered by Cæsar. 6 There is no one who does not (45, c) understand, that you are pretending. 7 There is no one but knows that the past (23, Obs. 1,) cannot be changed. 8 There is no one but knows, that these things are contrary to each other. 9 Both you and I are such as we have ever been. 10 The waves were such<sup>10</sup> as I had never seen before. — 11 There are some who think you mad (46, a). 12 There were some who blamed me.

*Handwritten signature*

### § 8. Relative continued.

48. (a, b) When the relative connects (by means of *to be* or a verb of *naming*, &c.) two substantives of different genders, &c. it *generally* agrees with the *latter*, rather than with its antecedent.

(This is the rule; agreement with the antecedent the exception. Z. K., &c.)

49. But when the second substantive is a *foreign word*, the relative *generally* agrees with its antecedent. (Z.)<sup>s</sup>

(Jovis stella, quæ quædam dicitur.)

50. (a) *Domicilia conjuncta, quas urbes dicimus, Contiguous dwellings, which we call cities.*

(b) *Thebæ, quod Bœotiæ caput est, Thebes, which is the capital of Bœotia.*

### 51. VOCABULARY 8.

Glory,  
Honorable,  
Star

gloria, æ, f.  
honestus, a, um.  
stella, æ; astrum, i, which is properly  
a Greek word; and sidus, æris, n, a

<sup>s</sup> Krüger approves of Zumpt's rule; but thinks that we cannot go beyond *cas* in determining when agreement with the antecedent should be preferred.

Bremi says: "videntur id (pronomen) ad antecedens substantivum referre et ad vocabulum respiciunt; sin vero ad rem, ad consequens." But Krüger shows that even if this should explain Cicero's practice, it is obviously at variance with that of other writers.



Perpetual, lasting,  
Fire,  
Island,  
Sea,  
Ocean,  
As it were.  
The world,  
Head, capital city,  
To reject.  
To admire, wonder at,  
To be washed.

To inhabit,  
To call (in sense of naming),  
*Forough,*

constellation, and also, one of the great  
heavenly luminaries, e. g. the sun,  
the moon, Sirius, &c.

sempiternus, a, um.

ignis, is, m.

insula, ae, f.

mare, is, n.

oceanus, i, m.

quasi.

orbis terræ, or terrarum; orbis, is, m.

caput, itis, n.

repudiare, av, at.

admirari, admiratus.

circumfundī, circumfusus (literally, to  
be poured around; and either the  
*island* or *sea* is said circumfundī).

incolere, incolu, incult.

vocare,<sup>b</sup> appellare, nominare, av, at.

*Exercise 8.*

52/ He rejects glory, which is the most honorable fruit' of true' virtue (*Gen.* before *fructus*).<sup>2</sup> He is admiring those perpetual fires, which we call stars. 3 The island is washed by the sea, which you (*pl.*) call ocean. 4 We inhabit a great island, as it were,<sup>1</sup> which we call the world. 5 There is nobody *but*<sup>3</sup> thinks Rome the capital' of the world. 6 There is no one *but* thinks that Balbus has deserved well of us. 7 There are some who laugh. 8 There are some who laughed (46, a).

§ 9. *Relative continued.*—*Relative with superlative*: "The first *who*—"

53. (a) When the antecedent has a *superlative*\* with it, the adjective is generally put in the relative clause.

<sup>a</sup> *Vocare, appellare, nominare* are all to *call*; but *tocare* has, *beside this*, the meaning of *to call* = *summon*; *appellare*, that of *appealing to*, of *calling to* for aid; *nominare*, that of *naming*, in the sense of *appointing* or *electing*.

<sup>i</sup> *Quasi* should stand between *great* and *island*.

<sup>b</sup> *Orbis terrarum*, rather than *terræ*, when there is a decided reference to *other lands*.

\* The same rule holds good of other adjectives and of *appositions*.

54. (b) To express "the *first* person *who* did a thing" the Romans did not use a relative sentence, but made *primus* agree with the nominative of the principal verb.

55. (a) Volsci civitatem, *quam* habebant *optimam*, perdiderunt,  
*The Volsci lost the best city they had.*

(t) *Primus* mala nostra sensit, *He was the first person who perceived our evils.*

*Eng.* He was the *first* who did this: (or,) He was the *first* to do this.

*Lat.* He *the first* did this.

# 56. VOCABULARY 9.

Faithful,	fidēlis, is, e.
Slave,	servus, i, m.
God,	Deus, <sup>1</sup> i, m, et, f.
Fire (= conflagration),	incendium, i, n.
To help, a person in perplexity, &c.,	subvēnīre, vēn, veni <sup>m</sup> (dat. of person)
To lose,	amittēre, amīs, amiss; perdere, <sup>2</sup> perdid, perdit.
An opportunity,	occasio, ōnis, f.
To lose an opportunity,	occasionem amittēre.
Now = already,	jam.

*Such is your temperance* { *quæ tua est temperantia,*  
*With your usual tem-* { *quæ es temperantiâ,\**  
*perance* { *pro tuâ temperantiâ.*  
*As far as I know, quod sciam.*

## Exercise 9.

57. 1 *He was the first who* promised to help<sup>3</sup> me. 2 *They will lose the best thing* they have. 3 *I will send the most faithful slave* I have. 4 *He was the first who* denied that there are<sup>4</sup> gods. 5 *The fire is such*<sup>10</sup> as I have never seen before. 6 *The constellations are the same,* that they have ever been. 7 *He was the first who* undertook to finish<sup>5</sup> the business. 8 *I hope that you, such is your temperance,* are already well. 9 *No one, as far as I know,* has

<sup>1</sup> Deus, V. *Deus*, Plur. (*Dei*), *Dii*, *Di*. Dat. (*Deis*), *Diiis*, *Dis*.

<sup>2</sup> That is, to come under a thing; i. e. to support it.

<sup>3</sup> *Amittēre* is simply to lose. *Perdere* is to lose actively; i. e. by some exertion of one's own will, &c. Hence *perdere* is often to destroy. *Activè perda passivè amittēre* possum.

<sup>4</sup> Or, *cujus es temperantiæ*.

said this. *¶* Sestius was not come, *¶* as far as I know. *¶* I have lost no opportunity, *as far as I know.*—*¶* There are some who have lost the opportunity (46, a).

## V.

## § 10. Ut, Nē expressing a purpose.

58. (a) 'That' followed by *may* or *might* expresses a *purpose*, and must be translated by *ut* with the subjunctive.  
 (b) 'That' followed by 'not,' or any negative word (the verb having *may* or *might* for its auxiliary), must be translated by *nē* with the subjunctive.

## 59. VOCABULARY 10.

It is all over with,	actum est de (with the <i>ablat.</i> ).
News of the town,	res urbanæ.
To send or write news,	perscribere, scrips, script, = to write fully.
Courtesy,	humanitas, âtis, f.
Courageously,	fortiter.
Virtuously, honorably,	honeste.
To cry out,	clamâre, âv, ât.
To live,	vivere, vix, vict.
To die,	mori, lor, mortuus.
To obey,	pârere, para, parit ( <i>dat.</i> ).
To make the same promise,	idem polliceri.

60. (a) Multi alios laudant, *ut* ab illis laudentur, *Many men praise others, that they may be praised by them.*  
 (b) Gallinæ avesque reliquæ pennis fovēt pullos *nē* frigore lædantur, *Hens and other birds cherish their young with their feathers, that they may not be hurt by the cold.*

[C. XIII.] *¶* 'To' is omitted after many verbs, which thus seem<sup>a</sup> to govern two accusatives.

[C. XII.] *¶* Intransitive verbs of motion often form their perfect active with 'am,' not 'have.' Thus, *am come, was come*, are the perfect and pluperfect active (respectively).

<sup>a</sup> Such verbs are: *give, vouchsafe, assign, grant, send.*

When a verb *seems* to govern two accusatives, try whether you can not put in *te* before one of them.

## Exercise 10.

61. /That you may be able to die courageously, obey' the laws of virtue. 2 He was pretending to be mad,<sup>8</sup> that he might not be banished. 3 He cries out, that it is all over with the army. 4 You promised that you would send me all the news of the town. 5 That you may die courageously', live virtuously [p. 14, 15, (b)]. 6 He praises' Caius, that he may himself be praised by Caius. 7 He will praise' Caius, that he may be praised by Caius. 8 No one, as far as I know,<sup>10</sup> had praised' Balbus, that he might himself be praised by Balbus. 9 You, such is your courtesy,<sup>9</sup> promised to finish<sup>8</sup> the business. 10 You, with your usual courtesy,<sup>9</sup> made me the same promise<sup>12</sup> as before. — There were some who laughed.

## § 10. Ut expressing a consequence. Quo. Nē prohibitive.

62. (a) 'That' after *such*, *so*, &c. must be translated by *quod*, with the *subjunctive*.

After these words, 'that' does not express a purpose, but a consequence; and the English verb will not have 'may' or 'might' with it.

63. (b) 'That,' when the sentence has a comparative in it, is translated by *quo*; which is equivalent to *ut eo* ('that by this').

64. 'Not' in prohibitions is *nē*.

65. (c) 'Not' therefore with the imperative, or subjunctive used imperatively, must be translated by *nē*.

Obs. ~~It~~ The subjunctive present is more commonly used than the imperative.

66. (d) 'As' before the *inf.*, and after *so*, *such*, must be translated by *ut*.

Except in this idiom (where 'as' expresses a consequence conceived as resulting on a particular supposition), *ut*, 'as,' goes with the *indicative*.

\* "He gave him a penny." What did he give? to whom?

\* It will be seen afterwards, that *qui* (= *ut* is) is generally used in sentences of this kind; also that 'as not to . . . &c.' after a negative sentence is *quā*. 85

67. ~~Ut~~ *No ut or nē goes with the infinitive.*
68. (a) *Tanta vis probitatis est, ut eam vel in hoste diligamus,*  
*The power of integrity is so great, that we love it*  
*even in an enemy.*
- (b) *Medico puto aliquid dandum esse, quo sit studiosior, I*  
*think that some thing should be given to the physician,*  
*that he may be the more attentive.*
- (c) *Nē multa discas, sed multum, Do not learn many*  
*things, but much.*
- (d) *Nemo tam potens est, ut omnia quæ velit efficere possit,*  
*Nobody is so powerful as to be able to perform all he*  
*wishes.*

## 69. VOCABULARY 11.

Daily,	quotidie, indies, or in dies. <sup>1</sup>
Even mind, resignation,	æquus animus.
Young,	jūvenis, jūnior = juvenior.
Age, time of life,	ætas, âtis, f.
About,	de (governs ablat.).
Agricultural operations or affairs,	res rusticæ.
Of such a kind,	ejusmodi.
Wind,	ventus, i. m.
Season,	tempestas, âtis, f.
Multitude,	multitudo, inis, f.
To meditate, meditation,	meditari, meditâtus.
To leave,	relinquere, reliqu, relia.
To learn,	discere, didic.
To appear, seem,	videri, visus.
To govern = moderate, limit,	moderari, âtus (accus.).
To number,	numerare, âv, ât.

## Exercise 11.

70.<sup>1</sup> Meditate upon<sup>2</sup> this daily, that you may leave life with an even mind. 2 He told many falsehoods<sup>12</sup> about his age, that he might appear younger (than he is). 3 Do not learn many things,

<sup>1</sup> From *quot dies* (as many days as there are); compare the Greek *homērai*. *In dies* (daily) = day after day, day by day; when, that is, we speak of a thing increasing or diminishing daily. In 'in dies,' therefore, or *in dies singulos*,<sup>1</sup> each day is considered as a term of a progressive series. *Quotidie* is 'every day daily,' in both senses; either, that is, when the simple repetition of an action is to be expressed, or its repetition combined with progressive increase or decrease.

but useful things.<sup>4</sup> He spoke much (23, 1,) that he might be thought wise.<sup>5</sup> Agricultural affairs are of such a kind that the winds and seasons govern them.<sup>6</sup> I know that my father does not learn many things, but much.<sup>7</sup> I will live virtuously, that I may die the more courageously.<sup>8</sup> He lived virtuously, that he might leave life with the greater resignation.<sup>9</sup> The multitude of stars is such<sup>10</sup> that they cannot be numbered.—There are some who promise to help me.

§ 12. *English Infinitive translated by 'ut' with the subjunctive.*

71. ⚡ The Infin. never expresses a *purpose* in prose Latin.

72. (a) The English Infinitive expressing a *purpose* may be translated by *ut* with the subjunctive.

73. Whenever the English infinitive may be turned into *in order that*, or *that*, with *may* or *might*, it is to be translated by *ut* with the *subjunctive*.

74. Thus, "*I am come to see you*" = "*I am come in order that I may see you.*" Here *my seeing you* is obviously the *purpose* of my coming. But in many verbs this relation of the *purpose* is more obscure.

For instance—

<i>I advise</i>	}	you to do it =	{	<i>I advise or exhort you, in order that you may do it.</i>
<i>I exhort</i>				
<i>I ask</i>	}	you to do it =	{	<i>I ask, or beg you, in order that you may do it.</i>
<i>I beg, &amp;c.</i>				
<i>I command you to do it =</i>			{	<i>I command you, in order that you may do it.</i>

*I strive to do it = I strive in order that I may do it.*

75. By '*ut*' translat's infinitive  
With *ask*, *command*, *advise*, and *strive*.  
But never be this rule forgot,  
Put '*ne*' for '*ut*' when there's a '*not*.'

76. But of verbs signifying '*to command*,' *jubeo* takes *acc.* and *infin.*—[See however note<sup>b</sup> 219.]

77. (a) Romulus, *ut* civium numerum *augēret*, asyllum patefecit, *Romulus*, to increase the number of his citizens, opened an *asylum*.

<sup>a</sup> ⚡ '*Is*' is the proper pronoun for the *third person*, when there is no *distinction* to be expressed between a nearer and remoter object, and no reference to be *strongly* marked.

<sup>v</sup> The *neuter* of the *comparative adjective* is used for the *comparative adverb*.

- (b) *Militibus imperavit, ut clypeos hastis percuterent*, He commanded the soldiers to strike their shields with their spears.
- (c) *Enītar, ut vincam*, I will strive to conquer.
- (d) *Magno opere te hortor, ut hos de philosophiā libros studiose legas*, I earnestly advise you to read attentively these books about philosophy.
- (e) *Capram monet, ut in pratum descendat*, He advises the she-goat to come down into the meadow.
- (f) *Hoc te rogo, ne\* demittas animum*, I beg of you not to be disheartened. (Literally, not to depress your mind.)
- [C. xiv.] When 'that' introduces a consequence, 'that not' is *ut non*, not *ne*.

That—not      { for a purpose. . . . .ne.  
                              { ——— consequence. . .ut non.

## 78. VOCABULARY 12. (Verbs followed by *ut*.)

To ask,	rōgāre, āv, āt.
To strive, <i>strivere</i> <i>ut</i> <i>imperare</i>	nīti, more commonly enīti, nīsus, and nīxus.
To advise,	suadēre, suas, suas (dat. of person).
To warn,	monēre, monu, monīt (acc. of person).
To exhort,	hortāri, adhortari, iāsus.
To command,	impērāre, āv, āt (dat.).
To charge or commission,	mandāre, āv, āt (dat.).
To direct, tell, when spoken of an instructor.	præcipere, io, cōp, cept.

\* For *ne*, *ut ne* is found with no perceptible difference of meaning. Z. Grotendorf thinks that Cicero uses *ut ne* in the following cases: (1) when the negative does not so much belong to the whole clause, as to a particular part of it, e. g. the verb, or *quis*, *quid*; (2) when a demonstrative pron. or pronominal adverb is expressed or implied in the preceding clause; (3) when without *ut*, *ne* would stand by a word to which *ne* is often appended, as *non*, *en*. He says that *ut ne* is found, though less commonly than in Cicero, in Plautus, Terence, Ovid, &c.: but four times (and that in doubtful passages) in Livy, and not at all in Caesar and Tacitus.

▼ *Jubere*, to order, bid (with the notion of the thing being right, or of the person having a right to order); *imperare*, to command with power; *præcipere*, to direct, from being qualified to do so by superior knowledge; *mandare*, to give a charge or commission to a person; *edicere*, to declare officially as a magistrate. to publish a proclamation.

To order, by a proclamation, or	} edicere, edix, edict.
edict, to publish an edict,	
To decree,	decernere, crēv, crēt.
Perseverance,	perseverantia, æ, f.
Fury,	fūror, ōris, m.
Senate,	senātus, ūs, m.
Dress,	vestitus, ūs, m.
To return,	redire <sup>2</sup> (re and eo).
To hold a levy of troops, to levy	} delectum habere.
troops,	
Consul,	consul, consilis, m.
To assist,	jūvāre, jūvi, jūtum.
To suffer,	pāti, lor, passus.
To take by storm,	per vim expugnare.
By letter,	per literas.

## Exercise 12.

79. I ask you to do this. I asked you to do this. Strive to assist me. He is striving to govern the winds and seasons. He warned Cæsar not to believe the Gauls. Do not believe the Gauls.

Do not lie. Religion warns men not to lie. It is certain, that the boy is striving to learn. I will exhort the boy to learn. We know that virtue and vice are contrary to each other. He published an edict, that the Senate should return to its (usual) dress.

He had charged Trebonius by letter not to suffer Marseilles to be taken by storm. His perseverance is as great as his fury.

The Senate decrees, that the Consuls should levy troops. There are some who lie.

to h-e-r-e .

## § 13. Ut, &amp;c. continued.

80. (a) In sentences where 'ut' should be used (to express a purpose), if a negative follows, ne takes its place, and the affirmative pronoun or adverb is used. Thus—

<sup>2</sup> eo, tui (is generally in the compounds), itum. Pres., eo, is, it; imus, itis, runt. Imp. ibam. Fut. ibo. Imperat. i. Subj. pres. eam. Imp. irem. Part ions, curtis. Ger cundi, &c.

<sup>3</sup> Massilia.



	not,	out,
<i>that nobody,</i>	ut nemo,	<i>ne quis,</i>
<i>that nothing,</i>	ut nihil.	<i>ne quid,</i>
<i>that no,</i>	ut nullus,	<i>ne ullus,</i>
<i>that never,</i>	ut nunquam,	<i>ne unquam.</i>

81. (b) But if the sentence is a *consequence*, then *ut nemo*, &c. should be *used*

82. (a) Alexander edixit, *ne quis* ipsum alius, quam Apelles, pingeret, *Alexander published an edict*, that no *other person than Apelles should paint him (Purpose)*.

(b) Cimon fuit tantâ liberalitate, *ut nunquam* hortis suis custodem imposuerit,\* *Cimon was* (a person) of such *liberality*, that *he never* appointed a *keeper for his gardens (Consequence)*.

### 93. VOCABULARY 13.

It remains,	reliquum est, restat.
It follows; the next thing is,	sequitur.†
That ( <i>after</i> reliquum est, restat, and sequitur,)	} ut ( <i>with subjunctive</i> ).
To desert,	deserere, serui, sert.
To make this request of you,	illud te rogare.
To leave = go out of,	excedere, cess, cess ( <i>ablat</i> ).
City,	urbs, urbis, <i>f</i> .
Town,	oppidum,* <i>i, n</i> .
First,	primum.
At first,	primo.*
For the sake of,	causâ.
For my sake,	meâ causâ.
Fear,	timor, ôris, <i>m</i> .
Unwilling,	invitus, <i>a, um</i> .
Glad, joyful,	lætus, <i>a, um</i> .

(*Lat.*) He did it *unwilling; glad; joyful*.

(*Eng.*) He did it *unwillingly; gladly; joyfully*.

\* The use of the *perfect subj.* in this example instead of the *imperf.* will be explained in another place [418. (a)]. It is not to be imitated in doing the exercises.

† *Absit ut*, 'be it far from me' (as given in the earlier editions), belongs to the later poets and Appuleius. Instead of it we should use *velim hoc absit*; or *quod procul absit*, inserted parenthetically.

\* "*Oppidum* proprie infra urbem est;" but all cities and towns came to be frequently denominated *oppida* except Rome. (Valla, quoted by Crombie.)

\* *Primo* is sometimes used for 'first' but not *primum* for 'at first.' C.

Exercise 13.

84. Religion warns (us) *never* to break our word. 2 The boy strives to learn nothing. 3 I first make this request of you, to do nothing *against your will* for my sake. 4 The Consuls publish a proclamation, that no one should leave the city. 5 So great was the fear of all men, that<sup>14</sup> no one left the city. 6 The Senate decreed that the Consuls should hold a levy. 7 It remains that I should assist Balbus. 8 There was no one but exclaimed, that it *was all over with* the army. 9 They had joyfully helped Balbus. — 10 There were some who assisted Balbus. 11 There were some who denied that virtue and vice were contrary to each other. 12 It follows that you deny virtue and vice to be contrary to each other.

§ 14. Quin after verbs of doubting, &c.

85. (a) When '*as not*' with the infinitive follows '*so*' or '*such*' in a negative sentence, it is to be translated by '*quin*' with the subjunctive.

13 The sentence before *quin* is always negative. (An interrogative sentence that expects the answer '*no*,' is in effect a negative sentence.)

86. (b) '*But*,' '*but that*,' or '*that*,' after verbs of doubting, denying, restraining, &c., in negative sentences, must be translated by *quin*.

87. (c) After negative sentences the *participial substantive* governed by a preposition (especially after the verbs mentioned in 86) should be translated by *quin*, with *subj*.

88. (a) Cleanthes *negat* ullum esse cibum tam gravem, *quin* is die et nocte concoquatur, *Cleanthes says that* no food is so heavy, as not to be digested in a day and a night.

(b) Negari non potest, *quin* turpius sit fallere quam falli, It cannot be denied, that it is more disgraceful to deceive than to be deceived.

(c) Nunquam adspexit, *quin* fratricidam compellaret, *She never saw him* without calling him *fratricide*.

Vix inhiberi potuit, *quin* saxa jaceret, *He could scarcely* be prevented from throwing stones.

89. VOCABULARY 14. [Of words, &c., followed by *quin*.]

Not to doubt,	non dubitāre.
There is no doubt,	non est dubium (it is not doubtful).
It cannot be but that,	fieri non potest quin.
I cannot refrain from,	temperāre mihi non possum.
It cannot be denied,	negāri non potest.
To leave nothing undone to, &c.	nihil prætermittere quin.
I am not ignorant,	non ignoro.
World,	mundus, <i>i. m.</i>
Design,	consilium, <i>i. n.</i>
Sometimes,	interdum.

## Exercise 14.

90. Who doubts that virtue and vice are contrary to each other ?  
 2 It cannot be denied that it is disgraceful to lie. 3 Who doubts that  
 the world was made by design ? 4 I don't doubt that both you and  
 Balbus lifted up your hands. 5 He never sees Cæsar without crying  
 out that it is all over with the army. 6 I left nothing undone to  
 finish the business. 7 I cannot but help Balbus. 8 It cannot be  
 denied that Caius has had a prosperous voyage. 9 I cannot refrain  
 from leaving the city. 10 No one is so good as not sometimes to sin.  
 11 There were some who left the city. 12 I am not ignorant, that  
 Caius has lost the opportunity.

91. Non possumus, *quin* alii a nobis *dissentiant*, recusare, *We*  
*cannot object to others dissenting from us.*

Minimum abfuit (*impers.*) Octavianus quin periret, *Octavianus*  
*was very near perishing. (Or, But a little*  
*more, and Octavianus would have perished.)*

92. VOCABULARY 15. (Words and phrases followed by *quin*.)

Not to object,	non recusāre. <sup>b</sup>
To be very near, to be within a } very little,	minimum abesse (to be used imper- sonally).
Not to be far from,	haud multum abesse, or haud procul abesse (impersonally).
To kill,	interficere, to, fac, fect.
Of iron, iron-hearted,	ferreus, a, um.
Children,	liberi (plur.).

<sup>b</sup> From *re* and *causa*.

To love,	amāre, āv, āt.
A letter,	literæ (plur.).
Truly,	vere.
The soul,	animus, i, m.
The mind,	mens, mentis, <sup>o</sup> f.
Immortal,	immortalis, is, e.

## Exercise 15.

93. He was *within a little of being killed*. 2 It cannot be denied that it is disgraceful to break one's word. ~~It~~ It cannot be denied that duty commands us to keep (75) our promises. ~~I~~ I am *within a very little of being* most miserable. 5 No one is so iron-hearted as not to love his own children. ~~I cannot but~~<sup>18</sup> send you a letter daily. 7 That you may be able to learn much, do not learn many things. 8 The truly wise man will never doubt that the soul is immortal. 9 I will not object to your banishing me. 10 I will not object to your all leaving the city. 11 It cannot be denied that the rational-faculty should (*debeo*) command the heart. 12 It cannot be that the mind is not immortal.<sup>20</sup>

## § 15. Quominus.

94. Verbs of *hindering* are generally followed by *quominus*.

This *quo minus* (by which the less) = *ut eo minus* (that the less by it).

95. With verbs of fearing, 'that' must be translated by, 'nē'; 'that not' by 'ut.'

a) 'That not' may also be translated by 'ne non,' which is stronger than 'ut.'

96. [C. xv.] After verbs of *fearing*, the Eng. *future* and the *participial substantive* are translated by the *present* or *imperfect* subjunctive with *ut* or *nē*.

97. (a) Quid obstat quominus Caius sit beatus? *What prevents Caius* from being happy?

(Or, quid obstat Caio<sup>d</sup> quominus sit beatus?)

<sup>c</sup> *Anīma*, the breath of life, the vital principle (common to all living things). *animus*, 'the soul,' the mind with its passions, emotions, appetites, &c., 'the heart.' *Mens*, the intellectual faculty; the rational faculty. Hence *animus* should be used for *mind*, when it means *disposition*, *spirit*, &c.

<sup>d</sup> With *quid obstat* (especially when the *person* is represented by a *pron.* of the first or second person), the *dat.* is generally omitted. Unless it be a *pron.*, it

- (b) { Vereor *ne* veniat, *I fear that he will come.*  
 { Vereor *ut* veniat, *I fear that he will not come.*

98. (Eng.) What prevents Caius *from being* happy?

(Lat.) What prevents, *by which* Caius should be *the less* happy?

## 99 VOCABULARY 16.

(Verbs that may be followed by *quominus*.)

To prevent,	obstare, obstrit, obstrit ( <i>dat.</i> ).
To deter,	deterre, deterru, deterrit.
To hinder,	impedire, iui, itum.
It is owing to Caius that,	per Caium stat quominus, &c.
To endure,	sustinere, tinu, tent.
To fear.	vereri, veritus; timere; meture, metui.*
Nothing,	nihil ( <i>indeclinable</i> ).
To obey,	parere, ui itum ( <i>dat.</i> ).
To increase,	augere, aux, auct, <i>trans.</i> ; crescere crev. cret, ( <i>intrans.</i> ).
By sea and land,	terra marique.

## Exercise 16.

[Is *quotidie* or *indies* used of daily increase or decrease?]

100. 1 What prevents us *from doing* this? 2 Nothing prevents you *from doing* this. 3 Nothing deters a wise man *from obeying* the laws of virtue. 4 Nothing deterred Caius *from obeying* the laws. 5 I fear that I *shall not* endure such<sup>10</sup> labours. 6 I fear that he *will not* be able to endure such labours. 7 I fear that I shall increase your labours. 8 What prevents us from waging war by sea and land? 9 What prevents you from carrying all your property with you? 10 Do not pretend to be mad. 11 It cannot be denied *that* vice increases daily. 12 *It was owing to Caius that* we did not wage war by sea and land.

will then stand as *nom.* to the next verb. After *deter*, &c., the *acc.* should be expressed, unless it be a pronoun of the first or second person.

\* Timere, meture, vereri, are all used for *fear*; but (1) if a *reverential* or *humble fear* is to be expressed, *vereor* should be used; (2) if an *anxious fear* of a threatening evil, *meture*. *Metus* is the *fear* of the *mind* arising from a consideration of circumstances and appearances: *timor*, the fear that arises from the *body*; from *timidity*. (See D. vereri.) *Vereor*, which expresses the least degree of actual *fear*, should be used to express *doubt* or *fear* about the happening of such an event, or the truth of such an opinion. *Formidare*, 'to dread,' of *great* and *lasting* fear

## VI.

§ 16. *Interrogative Sentences.*

101. Questions (when *interrogative pronouns* or *adverbs* are not used) are generally asked in Latin by interrogative particles.
102. (a) *Nē* asks simply for information. (b) *Num* expects the answer 'no : ' (c) *nonnē*, the answer 'yes.'
103. *Nē* is *enclitic*; that is, always appended to a word, and written as its last syllable.
104. (a) *Scribitnē Caius?* *Is Caius writing?*  
 (b) *Num putas . . . ?* *Do you think?* (= you don't think, do you?)  
 (c) *Nonnē putas . . . ?* *Don't you think?* (= you do think, don't you?)  
*Quid?* *nonnē canis similis est lupo?* *What? is not a dog like a wolf?*

§ 17. *Interrogative Words.*

105. *Who?* (*quis.*) *How?* (*quā, abl.: with an adjective, quam.*) *How does it happen that?* (*quī fit ut . . . ? with subj.*)

*Why?* { *cur* (= *cui rei*).  
           { *quare*<sup>1</sup> (= *quā re*).

*When?* (*quando?*) (*Quum* is never interrogative.)

<i>Where,</i>	<i>ubi,</i>	} relatives to	{ <i>ibi,</i> <i>inde, hinc,</i> <i>eo (huc, illuc).</i>
<i>Whence,</i>	<i>unde,</i>		
<i>Whither,</i>	<i>quo,</i>		

*Exercise 17. |7*

106. Have not the good and wise been banished? Are not virtue and vice contrary to each other? Do men govern the

<sup>1</sup> *Quare* (wherefore) is only used when the cause is decidedly asked: when, that is, an answer is required. *Cur* is used whether an answer is required or not: hence it is the proper word in *expostulatory* and *objurgatory* sentences.

winds and seasons? [No.] 4 Shall we not all die? 5 Was not the world made by design? 6 Do we not owe very much to our parents? 7 Was it *not owing to you* that we did not leave the city? 8 Was not Caius within a *very little* of being killed? 9 Were not the waves such<sup>10</sup> as you had never seen before? 10 Whence do you come? (or, *Where* do you come from?) 11 Did all promise to help you? [No.] 12 Did he not promise unwillingly to finish the business? 13 Do we not all hope to live<sup>14</sup> a long while? 14 Has he not finished the business satisfactorily? 15 There are some who<sup>16</sup> deny that Caius has finished the business. 16 There were some who reviled me.

### § 18. *Dependent Questions.*

107. A *dependent* question is one that is connected with a preceding word or sentence.
108. Dependent questions *follow* and *depend* on such words as *to ask, doubt, know, or not know, examine, try, &c.*
109. (a) (b) (c) The verb in a dependent question must be in the subjunctive mood.
110. In English, dependent questions are asked by *whether*; or by *interrogative pronouns and adverbs*.
111. Since *what* and *who* are also *relatives*, but the relative is in Latin a different pronoun, care must be taken to use *quis, quid*, (not *qui, quod*) in dependent questions.
112. [C. xvi.] *Who, what, which*, are often *dependent interrogatives*, especially after verbs of *asking, knowing, doubting, &c.*
113. After most of these verbs the dependent sentence stands as the *accusative* to the transitive verb.
114. The verb in an *accusative sentence* must be in the subjunctive mood.
115. (a) Dubito, *num* id tibi suadere debeam, *I doubt whether I ought to give you that advice.*

---

\* Obs. In a dependent sentence, *num* is '*whether*,' and does not necessarily imply that the answer '*no*' is expected. If, however, the answer '*no*' is expected, *num* should be used, not *ne*.

(b) *Quæsieras ex me, nonne putarem, &c., You had inquired of me whether I did not think, &c.*

(c) *Quis es ?—Nescio, quis sis.*

# 116. VOCABULARY 17.

To inquire,	quærere, quæsiv, quæsīt.
Of (after inquire),	ex (with <i>ablat.</i> ).
To say,	dicere, dix, dict.
Well = rightly,	recte.
Dog,	canis, is, <i>com. gen.</i>
Like,	similis, is, e ( <i>dat.</i> ).
Wolf,	lūpus, i, m.
To be better, i. e. a thing to be preferred,	} satius esse.
I don't know whether, I almost think, I am not sure that—not,	} haud scio an, or nescio an ( <i>with sub-junct.</i> ).
Dishonourably.	turpiter.

## Exercise 18.

117. /Where do you come from? 2I will ask him where he comes from. 3Ought I to do this? 4I doubt whether I ought to do this. 5He asked whether a dog was not very like a wolf. 6I don't know whether he has not said well. 7He said that he did not<sup>2</sup> know.<sup>21</sup> 8Balbus has not come, as far as I know.<sup>10</sup> 9Is it not better to die than to live dishonourably? 10I will leave nothing undone to finish<sup>18</sup> the business to your satisfaction.<sup>5</sup> // I will ask (him) how great the waves were. /2Who does not know how delightful it is to be praised by the good? 3I will inquire of Balbus how many there were. // There are some who<sup>109</sup> have inquired of Balbus.

## § 19. Double Questions. Use of 'an' in single questions.

118. (a) (b) In double questions '*whether*' is to be translated by *utrum*, *num*, or the appended *ne*; '*or*' by *an*.

*Num* in *direct* questions is only to be used when the answer '*no*' is expected.

119. (c) (d) (e) But in dependent questions '*whether*' is often untranslated, and '*or*' translated by *an*, *anne*, or the appended *ne*.



How much.

quantum.

Much,

multum.

Nothing,

nihil (indecl. neut. *subst.*).

No time,

nihil temporis.

## Exercise 24.

163/ Is gratitude for a benefit a heavy weight? [No.]<sup>2</sup> Is not death an escape from labours?<sup>3</sup> There is no escape from death.

4 Are there not many remedies against anger?<sup>5</sup> Good men are often overpowered by compassion for the poor. 6 The care of other people's affairs is difficult. 7 We all lose too much time.

8 Is there more silver or gold in nature?<sup>9</sup> It was owing to you<sup>2a</sup> that I did not keep my promises. 10 We are now of such an age, that we ought to bear all things<sup>1</sup> courageously. // It cannot be denied that Pythagoras of Abdera was a very great philosopher.

11/2 Antisthènes was asked what advantage he had received from (*ex*) philosophy.<sup>3</sup> Antisthenes, being asked what advantage he had received from philosophy, 'To be able,'<sup>s</sup> says he, 'to converse with myself.'<sup>6</sup> 14 How much time do we all lose!<sup>5</sup> It cannot be denied that we all lose much time. 16 There were some<sup>100</sup> who lost much time.

§ 25. *The Genitive continued.* (Partitives. Genitivus Qualitatis.)

164. A *partitive* adjective is one that expresses *some* individuals considered as *parts* of a larger number or body.

*Partitive* adjectives are, therefore, such as *which, every, each, both, some, &c.*, with *ordinal* numerals, *comparatives*, and *superlatives*.

165. (a) A partitive adjective governs a noun in the *genitive*.<sup>b</sup>

166. The gender of the partitive adjective is *generally* the gender of the governed genitive, because that expresses the *thing meant*.

167. (b) But sometimes the genitive is *the name of a country* of which the person is *one inhabitant*: of course then the adjective agrees with *man* understood.

168. (c) Also when a *superlative*, or *solus, &c.*, governs a *gen.*,

<sup>s</sup> Ut possim.

<sup>b</sup> Partitives are often followed by the prepositions meaning *from, out of, amongst* (*e, inter, de*), instead of by the genitive.

and is also (with the gen.) spoken of another substantive, the partitive agrees in *gender*, not with the *gen.*, but with the *other substantive*.

169. (d) A substantive *having an adjective agreeing with it*, and *describing* a former substantive, stands in the genitive or ablative.

(It may be used *attributively* or *predicatively*; as an adjective, that is, to the substantive, or *after* the verb *to be*.)

If the description be merely *numerical*, the genitive only can be used.

170. (e) *Opus est*<sup>1</sup> (*there is need*) is followed by an *ablative of what is needed*. The *person who needs* must be put in the *dative*.

171. (f) After *opus est*, an English substantive is often translated by a *passive participle*.

172. (g) But *the thing needed* is often the *nom.* to the verb *sum*; or the *acc.* before *esse*.

✚ In this construction the verb *sum* will agree, of course, with its *nom.*

In the former, it is always in the *third person sing.*; *opus* being its real *nom.*

173. (Eng.) { I have need of food.

(Lat.) { (1) There is a business to me with food (*abl.* without *prep.*)  
or (2) { Food is a business to me.  
          { These things are a business to me.

The *second* construction is preferred with *neuter* pronouns and adjectives. (Z.)

174. *How many are there of you?* = how many are you?

There are very many *of you*, = you are very many.

Few *of whom* there are, = who are few.

When '*of*' with a *demonstrative* or *relative* pronoun follows a *plural numeral* or *superlative*, the numeral often expresses *all* who are meant by the pronoun; and then the pronoun and the numeral must be in the *same case* in spite of '*of*'.<sup>2</sup>

175. [C. XIX.] ✚ '*Of you*,' '*of us*,' are not to be translated after *how many*, or *other numerals*, when the *whole party* are spoken of.

<sup>1</sup> *Opus est* (*it is a task or business*). Grotefend, comparing the Greek *λογος* *τοῦ* *τινος*, thinks that the ablative originally expressed *the means by which* the business is to be accomplished. Probably *opus esse* had, in various constructions, come to have nearly the meaning of *to be necessary or required*: and then other constructions were commonly, or occasionally, used before the *ablative* prevailed. *Plautus* uses even the *accusative*, as if it were the *object required*: the *gen.* is still sometimes found: probably the preference was at last given to the *abl.*, from that being the usual case after verbs of *needing*, or *requiring*.

<sup>2</sup> Consider, therefore, after such words, whether the pronoun *expresses more*, or *no more*, than the numeral.

When *of us, of you*, are omitted, the verb will be of the *first* and *sec*  
ond pers. respectively.

176. (a) *Uter vestrum? Which of you? Alter consulum,*  
*One of the consuls. Græcorum oratorum præstan-*  
*tissimus, The best of the Grecian orators.*
- (b) *Plato totius Græciæ doctissimus, Plato the most learned*  
*man of all Greece.*
- (c) *Hordeum est frugum mollissimum, Barley is the softest*  
*species of corn.*
- (d) { *Vir summo ingenio, A man of the greatest ability.*  
      { *Vir excellentis ingenii, A man of distinguished ability.*  
      *Ingentis magnitudinis serpens, A serpent of immense*  
      *size.*
- Classis septuaginta navium, A fleet of seventy ships.*
- (e) *Acuto homine nobis opus est, We have need of an acute*  
*man. Quid opus est verbis? What need is there*  
*of words?*
- (f) *Properat<sup>m</sup> opus est, It is necessary to make haste.*
- (g) *Quarundam rerum nobis exempla permulta opus sunt,*  
*Of some things we have need of a great many*  
*examples.*

#### 177. VOCABULARY 24.

Which (of two)	uter, utra, utrum; g. utrius.
Each (do.),	uterque; g. utriusque.
Another; one (of two things), a	} alter, altera, alterum; g. alterius.
second; one more,	

<sup>1</sup> According to the German grammarians, the *gen.* denotes a *permanent*, the *abl.* a *temporary* state. *Grotendorf* says, the *gen.* is used of a thoroughly inherent and permanent quality, penetrating the whole being, and making the thing what it is: whereas the *abl.* is used of any part or appendage of the thing spoken of, and only so far as it manifests itself; which part or appendage, moreover, may be *accidental* and *temporary*. To establish this he quotes: "*Murena mediocri ingenio, sed magno studio rerum veterum, multa industria et magni laboris fuit.*" '*Murena showed* but moderate talents, though a great zeal for antiquarian pursuits; industry and laborious perseverance *constituted his character.*' Why not as well or better, '*He showed* great industry and perseverance; but his mind was (*essentially*, and, *permanently*) one of little power, though with a great fondness for antiquity?' Was his *ingenium* (the *in-born* power of his mind) a less *permanent* quality than his *industria*? *Zumpt* says: 'With *esse*, Cicero seems to prefer the *abl.*'

<sup>m</sup> *Properat* is used of a praiseworthy haste for the attainment of a purpose:

Of Miletus,	Milesius (162, e).
Greek,	Græcus, i, m.
Roman,	Romanus, i, m.
To predict, foretell,	prædicere, dix, dict.
Eclipse,	defectio, ðnis, f.
Sun,	sol, sôlis, m.
Body,	corpus, corpôris, n.
Food, meat,	cibus, i, m.
Drinking, drink.	potio, ðnis, f.
Serpent,	serpens, entis, corr. gend.
Immensè,	ingens, ingentis.
Size,	magnitudo, inis, f.
Lemnos,	Lemnos, <sup>a</sup> i, f.
To find, discover,	invenire, vên, vent; reperire, repert. <sup>o</sup>
Custom,	consuetudo, inis, f.
Nature (i. e. a man's nature),	natura, æ, f.
Money,	(often argentum, i, n. silver).
To draw away,	avocare, âv, ât.
Connection,	conjunctio, ðnis, f.
Honour (i.e. probity, trustworthiness),	fides, ei, f.

There is need of { making haste, } properato.  
 { deliberation, } consulto.  
 { prompt execution, } mature facto.

Exercise 25.

178. 'One of them was a Greek, the other a Roman. 2 Thales<sup>s</sup> of Miletus was the first of the Greeks who<sup>s</sup> predicted an eclipse of the sun. 3 I did the same when (139) consul. 4 He says (ait)

*festinare* = to be in a hurry. An adj. *properus* was formed from *pro forth*, forwards), as *inferus*, *exterus*, from *their* prepositions. (D.)

<sup>a</sup> Greek nouns in *oe* of the *second* decl. are declined like Latin nouns of the 2d, but have acc. *on* or *um*.

<sup>o</sup> '*Invenio*, properly to come upon any thing, expresses the general notion of to find: *reperio*, like to find out and to discover, implies that the thing found was before hid, and was sought for with pains.' (D.). *Crombie* observes that *invenire* is the proper word for the faculty itself; when we talk, that is, of the power of discovering generally, without adding *what*; i.e. without an *accusative* after it. He quotes from *Cicero*, '*vigère, sapere, invenire, meminisse*,' a passage which plainly proves that *invenire* does not exclude the notion of searching, though it does not (like *reperire*) necessarily imply it.

<sup>p</sup> Thales, 3tis.

<sup>q</sup> *Fari* is to talk: use articulate speech: *loqui*, to speak or talk (opposed to *tacere*, to be silent); *dicere* is to say, the transitive form of *loqui*. As *distin-*

that there is no occasion for making-haste. The body has need of much food. Are not serpents of immense size found in the island of<sup>27</sup> Lemnos? It cannot be doubted that he is a man of no honour. What need have we of your authority? It cannot be denied that the body has need of meat and drink. (We, have need of deliberation. // It cannot be denied that we have need of deliberation. / Is not custom a second nature? Verres used to say<sup>28</sup> that he had need of many things. / How much money have you need of? / I left nothing undone to<sup>29</sup> draw-away Pompey from his connection with Cæsar (156). / How many are there of you? / I will ask how many there are of them.

179. The top of the mountain.

N. summus mons,

G. summi montis,

&c.

The middle of the way.

media via,

mediæ viæ,

&c.

The rest of the work.

reliquum opus,

reliqui operis,

&c.

So, *ima quercus*, the bottom (or foot) of the oak; *universa Græcia*, the whole of Greece: *sapientia prima*, the beginning of wisdom: *extremus liber*, the end of the book, &c.

Some English substantives relative to *position*, are often translated into Latin, by *adjectives* agreeing with their substantives. Such are, *end*, *middle*, *whole*, *top*, &c.

These adjectives generally stand before their substantives.\*

*guished* from *loqui*, *dicere* expresses a more artificial or studied speech, *loqui* being to speak in the style of ordinary conversation. As distinguished from *ajo*, *dicere* is to speak for the information of the hearers, *ajo* expressing the *assertion* of the speaker, as the opposite of *nego*. Hence *ajo* is *I say* = *I assert*, *affirm*, *maintain* (but somewhat weaker than these words). *Inquit* (which Döderlein derives from *inicit*, throws-in) is used to introduce the words of another, and also the objections which we suppose another to make. (Bentley) It is also used in a vehement *re-assertion* ('one, one I say').

\* The adjective so used does not distinguish its substantive from other things of the same kind, but a part of itself from another part. Thus *summus mons* is the mountain where it is highest: not, the highest of a number of mountains.

• Not however, always, e. g. '*sapientia prima*' (*Hor.*), and, '*In hac insula extremâ est fons aquæ dulcis*,' &c (*Cic. Verr. 4. 118.*)

180. VOCABULARY 25.

The Alps,	Alpes, <i>lum, f.</i>
Cold,	frigus, <i>oris, n.</i>
Snow,	nix, <i>nivis, f.</i>
To melt,	liqueſcere, <i>licu, —</i>
To count, reckon,	numerāre, <i>āv, āt.</i>
Out of,	ex ( <i>ablat.</i> ).
A thousand,	mille ( <i>indecl. in sing. In plur. millia</i> <i>lum, ibus, &amp;c.</i> )
To survive,	superesse, <i>superful (dat.).</i>
Three hundred,	trēcenti, <i>æ, a.</i>
To swear,	jurāre, <i>āv, āt.</i>
Moon,	luna, <i>æ, f.</i>
Lowest,	infimus, <i>a, um.</i>
Planet,	planeta, <i>or es, æ, m.</i>
Master = 'master of a house,' 'owner of any property,' <i>slaves</i> as well as any other.	dominus, <i>i, m.</i> ; <i>herus, i, m.</i> is a <i>master</i> only in relation to his <i>servants or</i> <i>slaves.</i>
Wool,	lana, <i>æ, f.</i>
Black,	niger, <i>gra, grum.</i>
White,	albus, <i>a, um.</i>
Some—others,	alii—alii.
Only,	solus, <i>a, um, G. solūs.</i>
Chameleon,	chameleon, <i>ontis, or ōnis, m.</i>
To nourish, support,	ālĕre, <i>alu, alit or alt.</i>
River,	flūmen, <i>inis, n.</i>
Neither—nor,	nec or neque, followed by <i>nec or</i> <i>neque.</i> <sup>a</sup>

*To -*

Exercise 26.

181.<sup>1</sup> On the top of the Alps the cold is so great, that the snow never melts there. <sup>2</sup> Count how many there are of you. <sup>3</sup> Out of (*ex*) so many thousands of Greeks (but) few of us survive. <sup>4</sup> Three hundred of us have sworn. <sup>5</sup> The top of the mountain was held by T. (*Titus*) Labienus. <sup>6</sup> The moon was considered the lowest of the planets. <sup>7</sup> It cannot be denied that custom is a second nature. <sup>8</sup> Slaves are of the same morals as<sup>9</sup> their master.

<sup>a</sup> *Mille* the *adj.* is indeclinable.

<sup>b</sup> '*Nec* and *neque* stand before either vowels or consonants.' (*Z.*) Mr. Ridale says: 'in good writers *nec* is found usually only before *consonants*; *neque* before vowels.' But merely taking the examples as they are given in Bröder's *Grammar*, we have from *Cicero*, '*nec sibi nec alteri*;' '*neque naufragio neque incendio*;' '*nec hominum*;' '*neque perfringi*.'

9 Who is there but<sup>9</sup> understands that custom is a second nature!  
 10 Caius promises that he will finish the rest of the work. // 11 Three  
 hundred of *us* have finished the rest of the journey. 12 Of wools  
 some are black, others white. 13 The chameleon is the only animal  
 that<sup>9</sup> is nourished neither by meat nor drink. 14 The Indus is the  
 largest of all rivers.

§ 26. *The Genitive continued. (Gen. after adjectives.)*

182. Adjectives which signify *desire, knowledge, recollection, fear, participation*, and their *opposites*; together with *verbals* in *az*, and many of those that express *fulness* or *emptiness*, govern the *genitive*.

(a) These adjectives have an *incomplete meaning*, and may be compared with *transitive verbs*. The governed substantive expresses generally the *object* of some *feeling* of the mind.

183. (b) To this class belong many participles *used adjectively*.

(c) In Poetry<sup>9</sup> the *gen.* may almost always stand after an *adjective*, where its relation to the adjective might be expressed by '*with respect to.*'

184. (a) *Avidus novitatis, Greedy of novelty. Insidiarum plenus, Full of plots. Beneficii immemor, Apt-to-forget a favour. Rei maritimæ peritissimi, Very skilful in naval affairs. Magnæ urbis capax, Able to contain a large city.*

(b) *Veritatis amans, Attached to truth; a lover of truth. Amans patriæ, A lover of his country. Officii negligens, Negligent of duty.*

(c) *Audax ingenii, Bold of temper; of a bold temper. Insolitus servitii, Unaccustomed to slavery. Insuetus laboris (Cæs.). Fidissima tui (Virg.). Serius studiorum (Hor.). Utilis medendi (Ov.).*

<sup>9</sup> Potus, ūs. "Potio is the act of drinking, and that on which this action is performed; a draught; a liquid swallowed: potus is drinking, and drink in itself without reference to the action." (R.)

<sup>9</sup> And in Tacitus, who has: *vetus regnandi, summus æveritatis, &c.*

185. VOCABULARY 26.

To hate,	Odissē (with tenses derived from the perfect).
Courage,	virtūs, ūtis, <i>f.</i>
Contention,	contentio, ōnis, <i>f.</i>
Truth,	veritas, ātis, <i>f.</i>
Philosopher,	philosophus, i, <i>m.</i>
Glorious,	gloriōsus, a, <i>um.</i>
Jest,	jōcus, i, <i>m.</i>
To hesitate,	dubitāre, <i>āv, āt.</i>
To undertake,	suscipere, cēp, cept.
In-such-a-manner,	ita.
Not even,	{ ne—quidem, (with the word the <i>eren</i> belongs to between them; <i>ne jōco quidem</i> , not even in jest.)
Nothing but,	{ nihil aliud nisi, (the following <i>adj.</i> is not to agree with <i>nihil</i> but with the substantive after <i>nisi</i> .)
To take in good part, to receive favourably.	{ boni consilēre,* sulu, sult; in bonam partem accipere.

(Adjectives governing the Genitive.)

Mindful,	mēmor, ōris.
Unmindful, apt-to-forget,	immemor, ōris.
Negligent, careless of, inattentive to,	{ negligens, tis.
Greedy,	avidus, a, <i>um.</i>
Eagerly-desirous,	studiōsus, a, <i>um.</i>
Fond, desirous,	cupidus, a, <i>um.</i>
Skilled in,	peritus, a, <i>um.</i>
Unacquainted with, ignorant of,	rudis, is, <i>e.</i>

\* Of this verb the *perf.*, *pluperf.*, and *fut. perf.* are respectively used *for* (that is where we should use) the *pres.*, *imperf.*, and *simple fut.* This is the case with most verbs that express simple *emotions* and *operations* of the mind, which are *completed* the moment they exist. The moment I *do hate*, I *have hated*; the moment I *do know*, I *have known*.

† Dubitare, *to hesitate*, is generally followed by *inf.*

\* So, *æqui boni* (or *æqui bonique*) *facere*, *to take in good part to be satisfied*. I. ucri *facere*, *to turn to account*; *to get the credit of*. In *boni consilēre*, *boni* is probably a gen. of the *price* or *value*, *consilēre* being used in its first sense 'according to Riddle' of 'to think upon, whether by oneself, or with others.' He derives it from an obsolete *conso*, from which *censeo* is derived. Döderlein thinks *con-sulere* meant originally 'to sit down' (from the same root as *sol-ium*, *cel-la*, and perhaps *sol-um*), and that *boni* is an old adv. (of the same form as *veri*); so that *boni consulas* = *bene considas* or *acquiescas*. It occurs in Quint., Sen., &c. not, I believe, in Cicero.



A partner,	{ consors, <sup>a</sup> tis ( <i>properly</i> adj., one who has the same lot).
A lover of, attached to,	amans, tis; diligens, <sup>a</sup> tis.
Productive of,	efficiens, tis.
Such a lover of,	adeo amans, or diligens.

## Exercise 27.

- 186.<sup>1</sup> All men hate (him who is) apt-to-forget a kindness.  
 2 Courage is greedy of danger. 3 Many are fonder of contention than of truth. 4 Pythagoras calls (those who are) eagerly-desirous of wisdom philosophers. 5 All men ought to be mindful of benefits (received). 6 Cicero has lost Hortensius, the partner<sup>b</sup> of his glorious labour. 7 That (*Iste*) basest of all men is the same *that* he always was. 8 Epaminondas was such a lover<sup>c</sup> of truth that he did not utter-a-falsehood even<sup>d</sup> in jest. 9 We ought all to be such lovers of our country as not to<sup>e</sup> hesitate to shed our blood for it.  
 10 I will warn the boy not to become inattentive to duty. 11 He said that he was not<sup>a</sup> negligent of duty. 12 It cannot be denied, that we ought all to be lovers of our country. 13 He begs me to take these things in good part. 14 They say that virtue is not productive of pleasure. 15 Let war be undertaken in-such-a-manner that nothing but peace may seem (to be) sought for.

<sup>a</sup> *Socius*, 'a companion;' 'associate;' 'member of the same society;' 'sharer of the same fortune;' in which last meaning it is synonymous with *consors*. *Comes*, 'companion,' 'fellow-traveller.' *Sodalis*, 'companion in amusement or pleasure.' (C.)

*Consortes fortuna eadem, socios labor idem;  
 Sed caros faciunt schola, ludus, mensa sodales  
 Vir comis multos comites sibi jungit eundo.*

Com-it-es, *con* and 'it,' as in supine of *eo*.

<sup>a</sup> *Amare* expresses the *affection of love*; *diligere* (properly, *to choose apart*) the *preference* of one object to another. If therefore any thing of *deliberate choice* or *preference* is to be expressed, *diligere* should be used.

<sup>b</sup> *Consors*. *Socius* would imply that they shared the *same* toll, not that Hortensius had a *separate* share of the *same* occupation.

<sup>c</sup> *Diligens* with *gen.*, his attachment to truth being a *principle* with him. In the next sentence, *amans*, because, though patriotism should be a principle, *affection* for one's country is the thing required.

<sup>d</sup> Say: 'that he uttered a falsehood not even in jest.'

<sup>e</sup> A *consequence*; not a *purpose*.

§ 27. *The Genitive continued.*

187. (a) (Eng.) *To prefer a capital charge against a man.*

(Lat.) { To make a man an *accused-person* of a capital matter.  
Aliquem rei capitalis reum facere.

(b) (Eng.) *To bring an action against a man for bribery.*

(Lat.) Aliquem de ambitu reum facere.

(c) (Eng.) *To prefer a charge of immorality against a man.*

(Lat.) Aliquem de moribus reum facere.

(d) (Eng.) *He has informed me of his plan.*

(Lat.) Certiorem me sui consilii fecit.\*

188. VOCABULARY 27.

(Adjectives governing the gen.)

Tenacious,  
Capable of containing,  
Without,  
Accused of,  
In his absence,

tenax, ācis.  
capax, ācis.  
expers, tis (ex, pare).  
reus † (from res).  
absens, tis (adj. agreeing with the subs.).

Bribery

{ ambitus, ūs, m. from ambire, to go round, to canvass. Properly, therefore, to accuse a man *de ambitu* is, 'to bring an accusation about his canvassing;' and then, as 'reum facere de moribus' is 'to accuse of immorality,' so to accuse him *de ambitu* is 'to accuse him of improper, illegal canvassing,' i. e., of bribery.

Extortion,

{ res or pecuniæ repetundæ; or repetundæ alone; properly things or moneys to be claimed back.

Assault,  
Impiety,

vis ‡ (violence).  
impietas, ātis. f.

\* *Certiorem facere* may also be followed by *abl.* with *de*:

'Eum de rebus gestis certiores faciunt.'

† "*Reos* appello non eos modo qui arguuntur, sed omnes quorum de *re* disceptatur; sic enim olim loquebantur." (Cic. *De Orat.* 2. 43.) From the *olim* it is plain that *reus* had come to be used of the *defendant* almost exclusively.

‡ *Vis*, *vis*, —, *vim*, *vi* | *vires*, *virium*, &c. *Gen.* *vis* in *Tac.*, but very rare.

To prefer a charge against,  
To inform,  
To learn,  
Design, plan,  
Full,  
Danger,

reum facere.  
certiorem facere; scire, fact.  
discere, didic.  
consilium, i, n.  
plenus, a, um.  
periculum, i, n.

### Exercise 28.

189/ We are very tenacious of those things which we learned as<sup>22</sup> boys. 2 The island of Pharos is not<sup>a</sup> capable-of-containing a great city. 3 They are going to prefer a charge of immorality against Caius. 4 They have brought an action against Caius for an assault. 5 They have preferred a charge of impiety against Caius in his absence. 6 I left nothing undone to<sup>18</sup> inform Cæsar of my design. 7 I fear that he will not<sup>23</sup> inform me of his design. 8 It is disgraceful to be without any learning. 9 I fear that he will not keep his word. 10 He promised that he would<sup>41</sup> leave nothing undone to draw away Pompey from his connection with<sup>64</sup> Cæsar. There is no one but<sup>91</sup> believes that you will be without any<sup>1</sup> dangers. He warns<sup>t</sup> us that all things are full of danger. 11 There are some who<sup>109</sup> deny that virtue is productive of pleasure.

### § 28. The Genitive continued.

190. (a) Such a substantive as *property, duty, part, mark, &c.*, is often omitted in Latin after 'to be'; so that *to be* is followed by a *genitive* governed by this substantive, or an *adjective* in the *neuter* gender agreeing with it.

(Such a noun as *officium, munus, indicium, &c.*, must be understood.

This genitive is construed in various ways in English: and therefore

<sup>a</sup> Non is 'not;' haud is 'certainly not,' 'surely not,' used especially with *adjectives, adverbs, and impersonal verbs.*

<sup>1</sup> 'Any,' after *expere*, must be translated by *omnis*, 'all.'

<sup>t</sup> When *monere* does not mean to warn or advise us *to do* (or *not to do*) something, it takes *acc.* with *infin.* (not *ut ne*).

there are various English phrases that may be reduced to this construction.

191. (a) Such phrases are; *it is characteristic of*; *it is incumbent on*; *it is for* (the rich, &c.); *it is not every one who*; *any man may*; *it demands or requires*; *it betrays, shows, &c.*, *it belongs to*.

When the adjective is of *one termination* (and therefore would leave it doubtful whether *man* or *thing* is meant), it is better to use this construction.

(‘It is *wise*,’ not ‘*sapiens est*,’ but ‘*sapientis est*.’)

192. So when the predicate is an abstract noun in the nom., it is more commonly in the *gen.* in Lat.—‘It is *madness*,’ ‘*dementiæ est*.’

193. (b) These genitives are used in the same way with *facere, fieri, haberi, duci*.

194. (c) Verbs of *accusing, condemning, acquitting, &c.*, take a *genitive* of the charge.

195. (f) But if the *charge* be expressed by a *neuter pronoun*, it stands in the *accusative*.

196. This construction may be explained by the omission of *crimine*, or *nomine*, which are sometimes expressed.

197. (c) Instead of the *gen.*, the *ablat.* with *de* is very common.

198. (d) The *punishment* to which a person is condemned, stands generally in the *ablat.*; sometimes in the *gen.*, and often in the *acc.* with *ad*.

199. (e) *Satago*,<sup>\*</sup> *misereor*, and *miseresco*, govern the *gen.*. . verbs of *reminding, remembering*,<sup>†</sup> and *forgetting*, the *gen.* or *accusative*.

But verbs of *reminding* rarely take an *accus.* unless it be a *neut. pronoun*. Sallust has the three forms: *admonere aliquem, rei; de re* and *rem*

200. (a) *Imbecilli animi est superstitio*, *Superstition is a mark of (or betrays) a weak mind*. *Judicis est*. *It is the part (or duty) of a judge*. *Est boni oratoris*, *It is the business of a good orator*. *Ingenii magni est*, *It requires great abilities*. *Cujusvis hominis est errare*, *Any man may err*. *Meum est*, *It is my business*. *Extremæ est dementiæ*, *It is the height of madness*. *Suæ ditionis facere*, *To reduce to subjection; to bring under his dominion*.

\* *Satagere* (to be doing enough): ‘to have one’s hands full.’

† When *memini* and *recordor* signify ‘to make mention of,’ *memini* takes the *gen.*, or *ablat.* with *de*; *recordor*, the *acc.*—*Memini* seldom takes the *acc.* of a person, except in the sense of remembering him as a contemporary. (Z.)

- (b) *Tempori cedere semper sapientis est habitum*, It has always been held a wise thing to yield to the times.
- (c) *Proditionis accusare*, To accuse of treachery. *De pecuniis repetundis damnari*, To be condemned for extortion.
- (d) *Capitis* (or *capite*) *damnari*, To be capitally condemned (or, condemned to death). *Ad bestias condemnare*, To condemn to the wild beasts.
- (e) *Misereri omnium*, To pity all. *Meminisse præteritorum*, To remember past events: *meminisse beneficia*, To remember kindnesses. *Officii sui commonere*, To remind a man of his duty. *Dissensionum oblivisci*, To forget disagreements.
- (f) *Si id me accusas*, If you accuse me of that. (So, id me admonuit.)

## 201. VOCABULARY 28.

To accuse,	accusare, = āv, āt.
To charge falsely, to get up a charge against,	insimulāre, = āv, āt.
To prosecute,	postulāre, = āv, āt.
To acquit,	absolvēre, solv, solūt.
To remember,	{ meminisse, <sup>p</sup> recordari, <sup>q</sup> also to make mention of.
To forget,	oblivisci, oblītus.
To remind, put in mind of,	admōnere, commonere, ui, ritum.
To pity,	{ misereri, <sup>r</sup> miseritus, misertus; miseres cēre.
To condemn,	damnāre, = āv, āt.

<sup>m</sup> Incusare is 'to accuse,' but not in a court of justice.

<sup>n</sup> Properly, 'to pretend a thing against a man.'

<sup>o</sup> Literally, 'to demand,' i. e. for punishment.

<sup>p</sup> With tenses derived from the perf. (See *odi*, 185, x.) *Imperat. memento; pl. mementōte*.

<sup>q</sup> *Meminisse* is, 'to retain in my recollection,' 'to remember:' *reminisci* is, 'to recall a thing to mind,' 'to recollect:' *recordari* is, 'to recall a thing to mind, and dwell upon the recollection of it.' (D.)

<sup>r</sup> *Miserari* governs the acc. *Miserari* is 'to show compassion,' *misereri*, 'to feel compassion,' as an act of free will, implying a generous mind, and thereby distinguished from *miseret me tui* (I am miserable on your account), which carries with it the portion of an irresistible feeling. (D.)

<sup>s</sup> *Damnare aliquem voti* (or *votorum*), is, to condemn a man to pay his vow (or voice) by granting his prayers. Also, *damnare votis*.

An Athenian,	Atheniensis (162, e).
Socrates,	Socrātes, is, m.
Barbarian,	barbarus, i, m.
To live for the day, forgetful, that is, of the morrow,	} in diem vivēre
It is agreed upon, It is an allowed fact,	
Superstition,	superstitio, ōnis, f.
Feeble,	imbēcillus, a, um.
To disturb, agitate,	perturbāre, āv, āt.
Constancy, firmness of mind,	constantia, āe, f.
To persist,	perseverāre, āv, āt.
Error,	error, ōris, m.
Treachery,	proditio, ōnis, f.
Sedition,	seditio, ōnis, f.
A Christian,	christianus, i, m.
Injury,	injuria, æ, f.
Adversity,	res adversæ.
To condemn to death,	capitis damnāre.
To acquit of a capital charge,	capitis absolvēre.
Religion,	religio, ōnis, f.

## Exercise 29.

202. 1 The Athenians (falsely) charged Socrates with impiety, and condemned him to death. 2 It is for barbarians to live for the day (only). 3 It is an allowed fact, that superstition is the mark of a feeble mind. 4 It requires great constancy not to be disturbed in adversity. 5 It is characteristic of a fool to persist in error. 6 It is your business to obey the laws of your country. 7 It is not every man who can leave life with an even mind. 8 It was owing to you that he did not accuse Balbus of treachery. 9 He promises<sup>d</sup> to prosecute Dolabella for extortion. 10 He was condemned to death by Augustus. // Caius<sup>3</sup> was acquitted of sedition by Augustus. 11 Do not forget benefits. 12 It is the duty of a Christian to pity the poor. 13 It cannot be denied that (86) it is the duty of a Christian to pity the poor. 14 I fear that he will not<sup>ss</sup> easily forget the injury. 15 I fear that he will remember the injury. 16 Did you not admonish me of that (200, f) ? 17 Adversity puts us in mind of religion. 18 It cannot be denied that he has been acquitted of the capital charge.

\* Literally, it stands together as a consistent truth.

§ 29. *The Genitive continued. (Impersonal verbs.)*

203. (a) With *interest* and *refert* (it concerns or is important)

1) The thing that is of importance may be either (α) an *infinitive* (with or without acc.) or (β) a *neuter pronoun* (*hoc, id, illud, quod* : so that they are not quite impersonal), or a clause introduced either (γ) by an *interrogative*, or (δ) by *ut* or *ne*.

2) The *person to whom it is of importance* is put in the *gen.* with *interest* or *refert* ; but, instead of the *personal pronouns*, a *possessive pronoun* is used in the *ablative feminine* : *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā* : so *cujā* sometimes for *cujus*.\*

3) The *degree of importance* is expressed either by the *gen.* (*magni, parvi, quanti, &c.*) ; or by an *adverb* (*multum, plurimum, magnopere, nihil, &c.*).

4) The thing with *reference* to which it is of importance is governed by *ad* ; as *magni interest ad laudem civitatis*, it is of great importance to the credit of the state.

204. (b) These impersonals, *pudet, piget, pœnitet, tædet, miseret*, take an *accusative* of the *person feeling*, a *genitive* of what *causes* the feeling.

205. *What causes the feeling* may also be a *verb* (in the *infinitive*, or in an *indicative* clause with *quod*, or a *subjunctive* one with an *interrogative* word).

206. (a) *Intelligo quanti reipublicæ intersit omnes copias convenire*, I am aware of what importance it is to the republic, that all our forces should assemble.

*Interest omnium recte facere*, It is the interest of all to do right.

*Quid nostrā refert?* Of what importance is it to us ?  
(or, What does it signify to us ?)

*Magni interest ad laudem civitatis*, It is of great importance to the credit of the state.

*Magni interest, quos quisque audiat quotidie*, It is of great consequence whom a man hears every day.

\* To be explained perhaps by reference to *causā, gratiā*. It seems to be proved that these are (as *Priestian* teaches) *ablatives*, since the *a* is long : e. g. *l'cr. Phorm. iv. 5, 11* :—*Datum esse dotis. De. Quid tuā, malum! id refert?* *Cy. Magni, Démipho. Refert = rei fert*, for '*ad rem fert*' or *confert*.

*Illud meâ magni interest, te ut videam, It is of great consequence to me that I should see you.*

*Vestrâ interest, commilitones, ne imperatorem, pessimis faciant, It is of importance to you, my comrades, that the worst sort should not elect an emperor.*

(b) *Ignavum pœnitebit aliquando ignaviæ, The slothful man will one day repent of his sloth.*

*Me non solum piget stultitiæ meæ, sed etiam pudet. I am not only sorry for my folly, but also ashamed of it. Tædet me vitæ, I am weary of my life. Tædet eadem audire milites, The soldiers are tired of hearing the same thing. Tui me miseret, mei piget, I pity you ; I am vexed at myself.*

207. VOCABULARY 28.\*

It concerns, it is of importance or consequence, it is the interest of,	{ interest, <i>râfert</i> ; the latter very rarely when a <i>person</i> is expressed, unless by a pronoun; principally in <i>quid râfert</i> ? what does it signify? what difference does it make? and <i>nihil râfert</i> , it is of no consequence, or makes no difference.
I am sorry for, vexed at,	piget me.
I repent, am discontented or dissatisfied with,	{ pœnitet me.
I am ashamed of,	pudet me.
I pity,	miseret me (see 201*).
I am disgusted at; am weary or tired of,	{ tædet me; for <i>perf.</i> pertæsum est.
Like; equal to; as good as,	{ instar; an old subst. signifying a <i>model</i> or <i>image</i> : and as such followed by the <i>genitive</i> . It should only be used of <i>equality in magnitude</i> , real or figurative.
On account of,	{ ergo, governing and following the <i>gen.</i> <i>tive</i> . It is the Greek <i>ἐργω</i> .
To present,	donâre, âv, ât.
Crown,	corûna, æ, f.
Golden,	aureus, a, um.

Exercise 30.

[What are the various ways of translating *whether—or* ?]

208. What difference does it make to Caius, whether he



drinks wine or water? <sup>2</sup> It makes a great difference to me why he did this. <sup>3</sup> It makes a great difference to us, whether death is a perpetual sleep or the beginning of another life. <sup>4</sup> I will strive that no one<sup>14</sup> may be dissatisfied with the peace. <sup>5</sup> It is of great importance to me, that Caius should<sup>20</sup> be informed of my design. <sup>6</sup> I will *strive* that it may be your interest to finish the business. <sup>7</sup> It is *your business* to strive that no one may be dissatisfied with the peace. <sup>8</sup> We pity those men who have been accused of treason in *their absence*. <sup>9</sup> I will strive that no one may recollect my error. <sup>10</sup> I am ashamed of, and vexed at my levity' (p. 14. 15, a). <sup>11</sup> I will strive that no one may be ashamed of me. <sup>12</sup> It is your interest that they should *not* condemn me to death.<sup>13</sup> It is the interest of all, that the good and wise should *not* be banished. <sup>14</sup> Plato is to me equal to (*them*) all. <sup>15</sup> That (*ille*) one' day was to Cicero equal to an immortality. <sup>16</sup> He was presented (*perf.*) with a golden crown on account of his virtue'.

(For the Genitive of *price* see under the Ablative.)

## IX.

### § 30. The Dative. (*Dative with Adjectives.*)

209. Adjectives which signify *advantage, likeness, agreeableness, usefulness, fitness, facility, &c.* (with their *opposites*), govern the *dative*.

210. But of such adjectives, several take a genitive without any essential difference of meaning.

211. *Natus, commodus, incommodus, utilis, inutilis, vehemens, aptus, accommodatus, idoneus*, may also be followed by *ad* with the acc. of the *object*, or *purpose, for which*.

*Propior* (nearer), *proximus* (nearest), take *dat.*, but sometimes the *accus*

212. VOCABULARY 29. (*Adjectives governing the dative.*)

Grateful (both actively and pas- }  
sively) acceptable; agreeable, } *gratus, a, um*,

---

' *Suavis* and *dulcis* are 'sweet:' the former especially sweet to the sense of smelling, the latter to that of taste; both being used *generally* and *figuratively*.

Liable, subject, exposed to, obnoxius, a, um.  
Common, communis, is, e.

(Adjectives that take *Gen.* or *Dat.*).

Like,	similis, <sup>w</sup> is, e; <i>superl.</i> simillimus.
Unlike,	dissimilis, is, e.
Equal,	par, <sup>x</sup> p̄aris.
Peculiar to,	proprius, a, um.
Foreign to; averse to; inconsis- tent with,	alienus, <sup>y</sup> a, um,
Friendly, a friend,	amicus, a, um; amicus, i, m.
Unfriendly, an enemy,	inimicus. <sup>z</sup>
Allied to (of a fault), chargeable with,	affinis, <sup>a</sup> is, e.
Surviving,	superstes, <sup>b</sup> itis; used substantively, <i>e</i> survivor.

(The following are often followed by '*ad*' to express a *purpose* or  
*object*, for which, &c.)

Born, natus, *partic.* of nascor.  
Convenient; of character, obliging, commodus,<sup>c</sup> a, um.

like our '*sweet*.' *Jucundus*, that which directly *causes joy and delight*. *Gratus*, that which is *grateful* or *acceptable* from any cause. *Amœnus*, agreeable or delightful to the *sight*, though extended to other things by later writers.

*Dulcia delectant gustantem; suavia odore;*

*Jucunda exhilarant animum, sed grata probantur*

*A gratis: quæ visa placent loca, amœna vocamus.*

*Döderlein* thinks that *amœnum* is not '*quod amorem præstat*,' but is a *syncope* for *animænum*, as *Camœnæ* for *Canimæna*, and is equivalent to '*animo laxando idoneus*.'

<sup>w</sup> *Similis* takes *gen.* of internal, *dat.* of external resemblance. This does not hold without exception; but to express, *like me, him, &c.* (i. e. *equal to*), the *gen.* should be used:

*Ille tui similis, mores qui servat eosdem;*

*Ille tibi similis, faciem qui servat eandem.*

<sup>x</sup> *Similis* expresses mere *resemblance*: *æqualis* denotes mutual and absolute equality; *par*, mutual congruity, proportionate equality. (C.)

<sup>y</sup> *Alienus* also governs the *abl.*, and especially with *ab*. 'In the sense of *disinclined, hostile*, the prep. is rarely wanting.' (Z.)

<sup>z</sup> *Hostis*, properly a *stranger*; hence a *public enemy* (an enemy to my country, not necessarily to me personally). *Inimicus*, one who is an enemy to me personally. *Amicus, inimicus*, as *adjectives*, may be compared; and as such generally take the *dat.*

<sup>a</sup> Also to be implicated or concerned in (a conspiracy, &c.); an *object* (of suspicion).

<sup>b</sup> *Æqualis* and *superstes* have usually a *dat.*; but the former more commonly a *gen.*, when it signifies a '*contemporary*.' (Z.)

<sup>c</sup> *Commodus* (from *con, modus*), *commensurate* with.

Inconvenient, unsuitable,  
Fit,  
Suitable, serviceable,  
Fitted, adapted,  
Useful, expedient, good.  
Useless,  
Prone,  
Innocent,  
Word,  
Fault,  
Lust,  
Age = time of life,

incommodus, a, um.  
aptus, a, um.  
idoneus,\* a, um.  
accommodatus, a, um.  
utilis, is, e.  
inutilis, is, e.  
proclivis, is, e.  
innocens, tis  
verbum, i, n.  
culpa, æ, f.  
libido, inis, f.  
ætas, tātis, f.

(Eng.) Common to kings and peasants (or, to kings with peasants)

(Lat.) Common to kings with peasants

### Exercise 31.

Should *invenire* or *reperire* be used for finding what has been sought? (177, o.)

- 213/ It cannot be doubted *that* (we) men are born for virtue.  
2 It cannot be denied *that* it is very inconsistent' with your character to lie. 3 It is easy to an innocent man to find words. 4 I fear *that* you will *not* find words. 5 It cannot be denied that death is common to every age. 6 His father warned him not to think himself born for glory. 7 I fear that these things are not<sup>88</sup> useful for that purpose (*res*). 8 Don't you understand to how many dangers we are exposed? I *fear* that these things will *not* be agreeable to the rich. 9 We all love (those who are) like ourselves. 10 // Our own dangers are nearer to us (p. 14. 15, a) than those<sup>11</sup> of others. 12 He says that he is not<sup>2</sup> chargeable with this fault. 13 It cannot be denied that he was of a character very averse from

---

\* *Idoneus* expresses a *natural fitness* actually existing, but that requires to be observed, made available, or (if spoken of a *person*) called forth. *Aptus* (= *convenienter junctus*) expresses *actual fitness*, *now existing*. In use, the two words may be thus distinguished:

1) *Idoneus* necessarily requires a *purpose* to be mentioned or implied. *Aptus* does not *necessarily* require the mention of a purpose, but may express what is *fit* generally. (2) *Idoneus* may express a person's fitness *to suffer*, to be *acted upon*. *Aptus* expresses a fitness or readiness *to act*. (3) *Idoneus*, spoken of a *person*, describes a *fitness* that may never be *observed* or *called forth*: *aptus*, a fitness actually existing; that *has been called forth*, and is ready to act. [*Idoneus* from *ideo*, as *ultroneus* from *ultra*. (D.)]

4 *Nostri*, *gen. pl.*

impiety (p. 14. 14).<sup>4</sup> There is no one but<sup>5</sup> thinks it inconsistent with your character to keep your word. / <sup>5</sup>I wished to be like Balbus (149, b). / <sup>6</sup>You, such is your temperance,<sup>6</sup> are the enemy of (all) lusts' (*gen.*).<sup>7</sup> I will strive to discover what is<sup>10</sup> expedient for the whole of Greece. / <sup>8</sup>I fear that these arguments are not fit for the times. / <sup>9</sup>Are you exposed to these or greater dangers?

### Exercise 32.

[What is the Lat. for *delightful* to the eyes.]

214. / Are not your own dangers nearer to you than those of others? / <sup>2</sup>It cannot be denied that he is (a person) of a very obliging character. / <sup>3</sup>Many persons say that their own dangers are nearer to them than those<sup>11</sup> of others. / <sup>4</sup>They say that they are not prone to superstition. / <sup>5</sup>Might he<sup>17</sup> not have spent<sup>18</sup> a more honourable life? / <sup>6</sup>It was owing to you that our life was not taken away. / <sup>7</sup>Is philosophy' the best teacher of morals and discipline? [No.] / <sup>8</sup>He used to say that Athens was the inventor of all branches of learning. / <sup>9</sup>It was owing to you that I did not turn out an orator. / <sup>10</sup>I had rather be like Cato<sup>6</sup> than Pompey. / <sup>11</sup>Even Balbus is not<sup>7</sup> averse to ambition. / <sup>12</sup>It cannot be denied that (we) have need of a mind averse from superstition. / <sup>13</sup>Have we done more good or evil? / <sup>14</sup>This is common to me and you. / <sup>15</sup>There is no one but understands that these things are common to the rich man and the poor man. / <sup>16</sup>I cannot but<sup>18</sup> take these things in good part.<sup>20</sup> / <sup>17</sup>I will strive that nobody<sup>14</sup> may pity me. / <sup>18</sup>Is wisdom peculiar' to you? [No.] / <sup>19</sup>I fear the boy will not be the survivor of his father. / <sup>20</sup>There is no doubt that we are come<sup>19</sup> into a very delightful place.

### § 31. The Dative continued.

215. All verbs may be followed by a *dative* of the thing or person to, for, or against which any thing is done. Hence—

\* Begin with 'Catonis' and go on with 'than Pompey.'

† 'No' even Balbus is.

‡ Misereor, not misereret. See 201, r

216. The dative follows verbs that signify *advantage* or *disadvantage* ; verbs of *comparing* ; of *giving* and *restoring* ; of *promising* and *paying* ; of *commanding* and *telling* ; of *trusting* and *entrusting* ; of *complying with* and *opposing* ; of *threatening* and *being angry*, &c.

217. ☞ Of these verbs many are *transitive*, and govern the *acc.*

(a) With these verbs the *acc.* expresses the *immediate*, the *dat.* the *remoter* object of the verb.

218. (a) Verbs of *comparing* are also followed by the *prepositions*, *cum*, *inter*, and sometimes *ad*.

(b) Of verbs that signify advantage and disadvantage, *juvo*, *lædo*, *delecto*, and *offendo* govern the *acc.*

219. (c) Of verbs that signify *command*,<sup>h</sup> *rego* and *guberno* govern the *acc.*, *tempero* and *moderor* the *acc.* or *dat.*

220. *Tempero* and *moderor* with the *dat.* are 'to moderate,' 'restrain within proper limits:' in the *acc.* 'to direct' or 'govern.' *Temperare ab aliquâ re* = 'to abstain from.'

221. (a) Confer nostram longissimam ætatem cum æternitate,  
*Compare our longest life with eternity.*

Hominem cum homine comparat, *He compares man with man.*

Vitam utriusque inter se conferte, *Compare the lives of both of them together.*

(b) Libris me delecto, *I amuse myself with books.* Offendit neminem, *He offends nobody.* Hæc lædunt oculum, *These things hurt the eye.* Fortuna fortes ad-juvat, *Fortune helps the bold.*

(c) Moderari animo, *To restrain your feeling.* Temperare sibi, *To restrain oneself.* Temperare ab injuriâ, *To abstain from (committing) injury.*

## 222. VOCABULARY 30.

(Verbs governing the *dat.* but followed by no preposition in English.)

Advise,

suadere.<sup>i</sup> suas, suas.

<sup>h</sup> *Jubeo* takes *acc.* with *infin.* It may be followed by *ut* with *subj.* if used absolutely, without the mention of a *person.* (Z.)

<sup>i</sup> *Monere* (properly, *to make a man think of something.* D.) calls his attention

Believe,	{ credere, credid, credit; (also to <i>entrust</i> with <i>accus.</i> of <i>what is entrusted</i> ).
Command,	impērare, āv, āt.
Please,	placere, placu, placit.
Displease,	displicere.
Envy, grudge,	{ invidere, vid, vis (it may also have <i>accus</i> of the <i>thing grudged</i> ).
Help, aid, assist,	{ auxiliari; subvenire, vĕn, vent; succur- rere, curr, curs; opitulari, sublevare and juvare take the <i>accus.</i> <sup>1</sup>
Heal, cure,	mederi. <sup>1</sup>
Hurt,	nocere, nocu, nocit.
Indulge,	indulgere, induls, indult.
Favour,	favere, fav, faut.
Marry (of a female),	nubere, <sup>2</sup> nups, nupt ( <i>properly</i> to vel!).
Obey,	{ parere (of the <i>habiti</i> ) obedire (of <i>particu-</i> lar <i>acts</i> ).
Oppose,	repugnare, āv, āt.
Pardon,	ignoscere, ignov, ignot.
Persuade,	persuadere, suas, suas.
Resist,	resistere, restit, restit.
Spare,	parcere, pĕperc et pars, pars et parcit.
Threaten,	{ minari (with <i>accus.</i> of the <i>thing threat-</i> ened).
To compare,	comparare; conferre, <sup>3</sup> tūl, collāt.

to something from which he is to draw an inference for himself by his own reason and good sense. *Hortari* appeals to his will; *suadere*, to his understanding. *Suadere* is to attempt to persuade; *persuadere* is to advise effectually; to persuade.

<sup>1</sup> *Auxiliari* (to make oneself a man's *auxilium*), to increase a person's strength; to help. *Juvare* (allied to *juvenis*; properly to make youthful, powerful, active; hence) to help (one who is striving. D.); to facilitate the accomplishment of a purpose; support. *Opitulari* (from *opes*), to aid with one's means, credit, resources, a person who is in great need or peril, from which he has no power to deliver himself. *Subvenire* (to come-under, i. e., to support); to come to the assistance of a person in difficulty or danger. *Succurrere*, to run to the assistance of; which implies a more pressing danger; to succour. *Sublevare*, to raise a man up; to hold him up; to support:—figuratively, to alleviate, mitigate, lighten. (R.) *Adjuvo* and *auxilior* do not necessarily imply, that the person assisted needed assistance; the other verbs do. *Adjuvare* (to help forward) often means to increase; enhance. (C.)

<sup>1</sup> *Mederi* (to administer a remedy with good effect) relates rather to the sick person, or to the operation of the physician; *sanare*, to the disease, or to the operation of the medicine. (D.)

<sup>2</sup> To be married is *nuptam esse*, and we find, *nuptam esse cum aliquo*.

<sup>3</sup> *Conferre* (to bring together), *contendere* (to stretch together), *componere* (to

To be angry with,

{ irasci, irātus; succensere (of deep last  
ing resentment), both govern dative.

To injure, hurt,

lædère, læs, læs (accus.).

To delight, amuse,

delectare, æv, æt (accus.).

To offend,

offendere, fend, fens (accus.).

'He threatens me with death' should be

In Latin, 'threatens death to me.'

### Exercise 33.

[Which Interrog. particle is to be used when the answer would be 'no' ?]

223. | Do not hurt another. ~ It is not every man who can<sup>22</sup> command his mind. ~ Is it easy to restrain (one's) mind? ~ It is the duty of a Christian to leave nothing undone, that<sup>18</sup> he may learn to govern his mind'. ~ Ought (you) not to obey the laws? ~ We ought to be angry\* with vices', not with men. ~ He promised to abstain from<sup>8</sup> injury. ~ Venus married Vulcan (*Vulcanus*). It is the duty of a Christian to succour the miserable. ~ They promised to abstain from (committing any) injury. ~ I will ask him whether he can cure my head, ~ I have left nothing undone<sup>14</sup> that I might cure my head. ~ It is strange that you should favour me. ~ Do you envy (pl.) me or Balbus? ~ I almost think<sup>25</sup> that I have opposed nature in vain. ~ It shows<sup>29</sup> a great mind to spare the conquered. ~ I warned my son to envy nobody. ~ Compare this peace with that war. ~ I have unwillingly offended Caius. ~ He threatens me with death every day. ~ Do not grudge me my glory. ~ There are some who<sup>109</sup> grudge me my glory.

### § 32. The Dative continued.

224. *Sum* with its compounds, except *possum*, governs the dative.

place together), all express the bringing of things into *juxtaposition* for the sake of instituting a comparison between them. From their meaning, one should say that *conferre* is to compare things, the difference of which will be obvious, as soon as they are brought together: *contendere*, to institute a close comparison. Ramshorn says, *comparare* is to compare things that are exactly similar, and form, as it were, a pair (par). But Cicero has: 'conferre pugnancia, comparare contraria.'

\* *Succensere*, because the anger is lasting.

225. Verbs compounded with prepositions, or with the adverbs *bene, satis, male*, generally govern the *dative*, but with many exceptions.

(a) *Most* of the verbs compounded with *ad, in, inter, ob, præ, sub, con*, govern the *dat.*

(β) *Many* of those compounded with *ab, ante, de, e, post, pro, re, super*, govern the *dat.*

226. Some are *transitive*, and govern the accusative only; some govern the *dative* or the *accusative* with no difference of meaning; and very many of them may be followed by the *prepositions*<sup>p</sup> they are compounded with.

### 227. VOCABULARY 31.

To be absent,	abesse, abful.
To be present,	adesse, <sup>q</sup> adful (hence, <i>to stand by</i> ).
To be engaged in,	interesse.
To be in the way, to be prejudicial to,	} obesse.
To be wanting, fail,	desse. <sup>r</sup>
To be before, or at the head of, to command,	} præesse.
To profit, to do good to, to be advantageous to,	} prodesse. <sup>s</sup>
To survive,	superesse.
To oppose,	obstāre, stīt, stīt.
To satisfy,	satisfacere, fēc, fact.
To confer benefits on,	benefacere, fēc, fact.
To prefer,	antepōnere, pōsu, pōsīt.
To reckon one thing <i>after</i> , i. e., as inferior to another,	} posthabere, hābu, hābit.

<sup>p</sup> This is especially the case when the object is no personal circumstance, or cannot well be conceived as such, for then the preposition merely expresses a *local* relation. (G.)

<sup>q</sup> *Præsens* is used as the *participle* of *adesse*. *Præsentem esse* expresses an immediate *audible* or *visible* presence; *adesse*, presence *generally*, within some sphere belonging to us. An expected guest *adest*, when he is *within our walls*; but to be *præsens*, he must be in the *same room* with ourselves. *Adesse* relates to a *person* or *thing* to which one is near; *interesse*, to an *action* that one is assisting at. (D.)

<sup>r</sup> *Abesse* is simply *to be absent* or *away*; *not to be there*. *Desse* is spoken of a thing that is *wanting*, the *presence* of it missed, because necessary to the *completeness* of a thing. *Deficere* is the *inchoative* of *desse*, as *proficere* to *prodesse*. (D.)

<sup>s</sup> *Prodesse* drops the *d* before those parts of *sum* that begin with a consonant.



*Eng.* To prefer death to slavery.

*Lat.* { To reckon slavery *after* death (*posthabere servitutem mortis*).  
{ (Or, as the English.)

### Exercise 34.

[Obs. 'Better' when it means 'preferable,' 'more satisfactory,' should be translated by *satius*.]

228/ It is wise<sup>28</sup> to prefer virtue to all things (*transl. both ways*). 2 He says that he has done good to very many'. 3 He says that he was *not* engaged in the battle. 4 't is your business to stand by your friends. 5 *It is not every one who can* satisfy the wise. 6 It is the *duty* of a judge to assist (*subvenio*) an innocent man. 7 He says that he will not<sup>1</sup> be wanting to his friends. 8 Who commands the army? 9 I will ask who commands the army. 10 I warned the boy to prefer nothing<sup>14</sup> to honourable conduct. 11 *How does it happen* that all of you<sup>15</sup> prefer death to slavery? 12 It is *better* to do good even to the bad, than to be wanting to the good. 13 All of us<sup>16</sup> have been engaged in many' battles. 14 To some courage is wanting, to *others* opportunity. 15 He promised that he would not be wanting either<sup>17</sup> to the time or to the opportunity. 16 Sometimes (402) fortune opposes our designs. 17 There were some who<sup>18</sup> preferred death to slavery.

### 229. VOCABULARY 32.

(Verbs that take the *dat.* or *acc.* without difference of meaning.)

To flatter, fawn upon,	adulāri, adulātus.
Lie near, border on,	adjācere, jācu, jācīt.
Attend to, consider,	{ attendere, tend, tent ( <i>acc.</i> in Cicero, or with <i>ad.</i> ).
Excel, surpass, am superior to,	{ antecellere, cellu ( <i>very rare</i> ); praeſtare, <sup>1</sup> praeſtit, praeſtit ( <i>dat. best with antecellere</i> ).
Fall,	{ deficere, <sup>2</sup> ſec, ſect (to revolt from, a, ab; to, <i>ad.</i> Also with <i>accus.</i> to desert).

<sup>1</sup> See note on the second of the Differences of Idiom.

<sup>2</sup> Let the verb be the last word in the sentence.

<sup>3</sup> Translate as if it were, 'would be wanting *neither* to the time *nor*,' &c.

<sup>4</sup> So also the other verbs of *going before*, or *surpassing*: *ante-* or *prae-*cedere currere, -venire, vertere, &c. (*prae-*cedere has only the *acc.* in prose. Z.)

<sup>5</sup> See 227, r.

To despair of,	{ despērāre (also with <i>de</i> which governs the <i>ablat.</i> , hence desperatus, given over).
To make sport of, make merry with, mock,	{ illūdēre, lūs, lūs (also followed by <i>in</i> with <i>accus.</i> or <i>ablat.</i> ).
Fall upon, seize upon (of cares, &c., assailing the mind),	{ incessēre, <sup>7</sup> cessiv, et cess, cessit.
Wait for,	præstōlārī, ātus. <sup>a</sup>
Rival, emulate,	æmulārī, ātus. <sup>a</sup>
Accompany,	comitārī, ātus.
To show oneself brave, &c.	{ præbēre or præstāre <i>se</i> for <i>tem</i> (the latter implying <i>action</i> ; the former not necessarily so; præbēre <i>se</i> , to <i>show</i> one self; præstāre <i>se</i> , to <i>prove</i> oneself).
Grief,	dōlor, ōria, <i>m.</i>
Tuscan,	Tuscus, a, um.
Territory,	āger, agri, <i>m.</i>

## Exercise 35.

230.<sup>1</sup> I will advise the boy to *emulate* the virtues of his father  
 2 Attend to what<sup>b</sup> (pl.) will be said. 3 Let us not flatter the power  
 ful.<sup>4</sup> The Tuscan territory borders on the Roman (territory)  
 5 Did not words fail you? 6 Are the Veientes going to revolt from  
 the Romans? [No.] 7 I almost think that the Lydians (*Lydii*)  
 are going to revolt from king Cyrus. 8 Does it show<sup>9</sup> a brave mind  
 to despair of one's (*suus*) fortunes? 9 Grief seized upon the whole  
 (omnis) army. 10 It was owing to you<sup>11</sup> that the treaty between the  
 cities of Rome and Lavinium was not renewed. 11 I cannot but<sup>12</sup>  
 mock you. 12 She never beheld Caius without<sup>13</sup> making merry  
 with his folly. 13 I will ask Balbus whom he is waiting for. 14 There  
 were some who mocked the boy.

<sup>7</sup> So also *invadere*.

<sup>a</sup> *Expectare* expresses merely a looking for the future in general; *oppertus*, to keep oneself in readiness for an occurrence; *præstolari*, to be in readiness to perform a service. (Rld. after Döderlein.)

<sup>a</sup> *Emulor* is sometimes said to govern the *dat.* in the sense of *to envy*; it does not however express simple *envy*, but the endeavour to equal or surpass a person, which may, or may not, be caused by *envy*.

<sup>b</sup> 'What' is here *rel.* (= those things, which).

§ 33. *The Dative continued. (Verbs with two constructions.)*

231. (a) *Dono*,<sup>a</sup> *circumdo*, and several other verbs, take either a *dative* of the *person* and an *accusative* of the *thing*; or an *accusative* of the *person* and an *ablative* of the *thing*.

Verbs of *fearing* take a *dat.* of the person *for whom* one fears.

232. (a) *Circumdat urbem muro*; or, *circumdat murum urbi*,  
*He surrounds the city with a wall.*

*Cicerōni immortalitatem donavit*; or, *Ciceronem immortalitate donavit*, (The Roman people) *conferred immortality on Cicero.*

## 233. VOCABULARY 33.

(Verbs that take *dat.* of *person* with *acc.* of *thing*; or. *acc.* of *person* with *abl.* of *thing.*)

Besprinkle, bespatter,	adspergĕre, <sup>d</sup> spers, spersa.
Surround,	circumdāre, dēd, dāt.
Clothe oneself with, put on,	induĕre, indu, indūt.
Strip off,	exuĕre, exu, exūt ( <i>accus. of person, abl. of thing.</i> With <i>accus. only</i> 'to throw off,' 'put off,' 'divest oneself of,'
To cut off, prevent, obstruct,	interclūdĕre, interclūs, interclūs.
(Verbs with a different construction in different meanings.)	
To beware,	cāvĕre, cāv, caut ( <i>cavĕre aliquem; * to guard against; be on one's guard against; cavĕre alicui, to guard; watch over; cavĕre or sibi cavĕre, to be on one's guard.</i> )
To consult,	consulĕre, sulu, sult ( <i>consulĕre aliquem, to consult; consulĕre alicui, to consult for a person; to consult his interest; consulĕre in aliquem, to proceed or take measures against a man.</i> )
To wish well to,	cūpĕre <sup>e</sup> alicui; cupĕre, cupīv, cupīt.
To provide for the interests of one's country,	prospicĕre patriæ. { providĕre patriæ.
To lay upon,	impōnĕre (aliquid alicui); with <i>dat.</i> only { 'to impose upon.'
To lean upon,	incumbĕre rei; incumbere in rem, to ap- { ply oneself vigorously; to devote one- self to.

<sup>a</sup> So, *impertire* or *impertiri*.

<sup>b</sup> Also *cavĕre ab aliquo*, or *ab aliquā re*.

<sup>d</sup> So, *inspergĕre*.

<sup>e</sup> So, *bene, male, &c. velle alicui*

Cruelly,	crudeliter.
Almost, nearly,	prope; pêne or pæne.
Altar,	ara, æ, <i>f</i> .
Baggage,	impedimenta ( <i>plur.</i> ) properly <i>hinds uncos</i> .
A camp,	castra ( <i>plur.</i> ).
A mound,	agger, êris, <i>m</i> .
A ditch,	fossa, æ, <i>f</i> .
To prepare,	parâre, âv, ât.
The state,	{ republica, reipublicæ, reipublicæ, rem- publicam, &c.
To take a camp, &c.	{ exuère; i. e. 'to strip the enemy ( <i>acc.</i> ) of their camp' ( <i>ablat.</i> ).
Humanity, human feeling	humanitas, âtis, <i>f</i> .
Flight,	fuga, æ, <i>f</i> .
A wall,	{ murus, i, <i>m</i> . (the general term; mœnia, from munire, is the wall of a city for protection against enemies; paries, êtis, the wall of a building, allied to pars, portio, &c.; maceria, allied to margo, the wall of an enclosure, e. g. of a garden or vineyard. D.)
A stone wall,	murus lapideus.

234. [C. xx.] 三 In English, substantives standing before and spoken of other substantives, are used *adjectively*, and must be translated into Latin by adjectives.

### Exercise 36.

235./I warned Caius whom to guard (*subj.*) against. 2 Tarquinius Priscus was preparing to surround the city with a stone wall. 3 There is no one *who* is *not* aware that Cicero is watching over the state. 4 He *promised* to consult<sup>3</sup> my interests. 5 He imposed on his own (men) that<sup>55</sup> he might the more easily impose on the Gauls. 6 They have proceeded cruelly against Caius. 7 It remains that (*ut*) we should consult our own interests. 8 That basest (person) has bespattered me with his praises. 9 I have persuaded Caius *to devote himself* to the state. 10 The Romans have taken the camp of the Gauls. 11 He *hopes* to take the baggage of the Gauls. 12 Do not divest yourself of your human-feeling'. 13 Caesar surrounded his camp with a mound and ditch. 14 I pity the old man (who is) now almost given-over. 15 I will *warn* Balbus *not* to throw off his human-feeling. 16 Consult for yourselves: provide for the interests of your country.

§ 34. *Verbs that take a second Dative.*

236. *Sum*, with several other verbs, may govern *two* datives.

(a. b.) The second dative expresses *the purpose* or some similar notion. It is the common construction to express the purpose for which a man *comes*, or *sends* another.

237. (c) A second dative often stands after *sum*, where *we* should use the nominative. Such verbs as *proves*, *serves*, &c. may often be translated by *sum* with the *dative*; and an *adjective* after '*to be*' may often be translated into Latin by the *dat.* of substantive.

238. (d) The English verb '*have*' may often be translated by *sum* with a dative.<sup>1</sup>

(Eng.) I *have* a hat.

I *have* two hats.

(Lat) There *is* a hat *to me*.

There *are* two hats *to me*.

It is obvious that the *acc.* after '*have*' will be the *nom.* before '*to be*,' the *nom.* before '*have*,' the *dat.* after '*to be*.'

239. (e) In '*est mihi nomen*,' the name is either in the *nom.*, the *dat.*, or (less commonly) the *gen.*

The construction with the *dat.* is even more common (in the case of *Roman* names) than the regular construction with the *nom.* It is an instance of *attraction*, the name being *attracted* into the case of *mihi*. (K.)

240. (f) The dative of a personal pronoun is often used to point out, in an animated way, the interest of the speaker, or the person addressed, in what is said.

241. (a) Pausānias, rex Lacedæmoniōrum, vēnit Atticis auxilio, *Pausanias, king of the Lacedæmonians, came to the assistance of the Athenians.*

(b) Pericles agros suos dono, reipublicæ dedit, *Pericles gave his estates as a present to the state.*

(c) Magno malo est hominibus avaritia, *Avarice is a great evil (or, very hurtful) to men.*

Ipse sibi odio erit, *He will be odious (or, an object of dislike) to himself.*

(d) Fuere Lydis multi ante Cræsum rēges, *The Lydians had many kings before Cræsus.*

(e) C. Marcius, cui cognomen postea Coriolano fuit, Caius

---

<sup>1</sup> So '*can have*' may be translated by '*potest esse*.'

*Marcius, whose surname was afterwards Coriolanus.—Fonti nomen Arethūsa est, The name of the fountain is Arethusa. (Nomen Mercurii est mihi, My name is Mercury.)*

(f) *At tibi repente paucis post diebus venit ad me Caninius, But, behold, a few days afterwards Caninius comes to me.*

## 242. VOCABULARY 34.

(Verbs that are often followed by two datives.)

(1) With *auxilio* (assistance).

Come,	venīre, vēn, vent.
Send,	mittēre, mīs, miss.
Set out,	proficisci, profectus.

(2) With *culpæ, vitio, crimini*.

To impute as a fault,	culpæ dāre, dēd, dāt (with acc. of thing).
To reckon as a fault, turn into a fault,	vitiō <sup>s</sup> vertēre, vert, vers (with acc. of thing).
(3) To give as a present,	dono or muneri, <sup>h</sup> dāre (with acc. of thing)
To be a hindrance,	impedimento esse.
To be a reproach, to be disgraceful,	opprobrio <sup>i</sup> esse.
To be hateful,	odio esse.
To be detrimental,	detrimento esse.
To be an honour, to be honourable,	honori esse.
To be very advantageous,	magnæ utilitatī esse.
To mean, <sup>k</sup>	{ sibi velle; mihi tibi, &c., to be used according to the person meant.
To throw himself at any body's feet,	{ se <sup>i</sup> ad alicujus pedes, or alicui ad pedes projicere, jēc, ject.

<sup>s</sup> *Vitium* is any *flaw, blemish, or fault*; whatever makes a thing *imperfect*. It may therefore be found in *things* as well as in *actions* and *persons*. *Culpa* is *fault*; whatever is *blamable*; hence *vitium* may be used for *culpa*, but *culpa* not always for *vitium*. *Scelus* always implies a *wicked intention*; *culpa* not always, but often only a want of *prudence, caution, &c.*

<sup>h</sup> A *præmium* is given to *reward*, with reference to the *merit* of the receiver: a *donum*, to produce *joy*, with reference to the *gratuitousness* of the gift: a *munus*, to express *affection* or *favour*, with reference to the *sentiment* of the giver. (D.)

<sup>i</sup> *Præbrum* is 'what a person may be reproached with;' *opprobrium* is 'what he *is* (or *has been*) reproached with;' 'a reproach' actually made. (D.)

<sup>k</sup> That is, not *what one's meaning is*, but *what one means* by such conduct.

<sup>i</sup> *Projicere se alicui ad pedes*, which Krebs formerly objected to, is quite correct: (See Cic. *Sest.* 11; *Cæs. B. G.* 1, 31.)

[C. XXI.] **Q** 'What' is sometimes used for 'how' (quam): sometimes for 'how great' (quantus).

### Exercise 37.

243. / He promises to come<sup>a</sup> to the assistance of the Helvetii.  
 2 Timotheus set out to the assistance of Ariobarzanes.<sup>m</sup> 3 *It was owing to you*, that I did not throw myself at Cæsar's feet. 4 *It is the part of a wise man always to fear for himself.* 5 There is no doubt that (86) he is going to *consult the interests*<sup>a</sup> of Caius. 6 I fear that these things will not<sup>a</sup> *prove* an honour to you. 7 I don't understand what he means (by it). 8 It is very honourable<sup>a</sup> to you, to have been engaged in such<sup>10</sup> a battle. 9 There is no doubt that superstition ought to be a reproach to a man. 10 They turn my greatest (*see Index I.*) praise into a fault. 11 I hope that men will understand how<sup>p</sup> odious cruelty is to all men. 12 I will warn Caius how<sup>p</sup> advantageous it is to keep one's word. 13 He *says* that he has *not* many slaves. 14 I will ask them what they mean. 15 I will not object (87. 91.) to their *imputing this* to me *as a fault*. 16 He promised<sup>a</sup> to give them the *island of Lemnos as a present*. 17 Might you not have brought<sup>10</sup> a *charge of immorality against Caius*?<sup>27</sup>

## X.

### § 35. The Accusative.

244. (a) Many intransitive verbs become transitive when compounded with a preposition<sup>h</sup> that governs the *accusative*; and a few when compounded with a preposition that governs the *ablative*.

Of these, those that are not deponent have generally a *passive voice*.

245. (b) Neuter verbs may take a substantive of kindred meaning or origin in the *accusative*; and verbs of *tasting* or *smelling of* take the thing in the *accusative*.

<sup>m</sup> G. *is*.

<sup>n</sup> Part. in *rus* with the proper tense of *sum*.

<sup>o</sup> Say: 'It is for a great honour.'

<sup>p</sup> 'How' must be translated by *quantus*.

<sup>q</sup> With many of them the preposition *is* often repeated; and with others the

246. (c) Other neuters are used transitively to express a *transitive notion* combined with their own proper notion.

Thus, *sitire* (to thirst) = 'to *desire* as a *thirsty* man desires;' *horrere* = 'to *fear*, and express my fear by *shuddering*;' *properare* mortem, 'to *cause* death, and to cause it in *haste*.'—This figurative use of neuter verbs is common to all languages.

247. It has been already mentioned that the accusative of neuter pronouns is found with verbs, with which the accusative of a substantive would be wholly inadmissible.

248. (a) Pythagōras Persārū Magos adiit, *Pythagoras visited the Persian magi.*

Pythagōras multas regiōnes barbarōrum pēdibus obiit, *Pythagoras travelled over many countries of the barbarians on foot.*

Postumia tua me convēnit, *Your Postumia has been with me.*

(b) Somniāre somnium, *To dream a dream.* Servire servitutem, *To suffer a slavery; to be a slave.* Cēram olēre, *To smell of wax.*

(c) Sitire honōres, *To thirst for honours.*

Idem gloriatur, *He makes the same boast.* Idem peccat, *He commits the same sin.* Multa peccat, *He commits many sins.*

## 249. VOCABULARY 35.

(*Transitive compounds of Intransitive Verbs.*)

Attack,	aggredi, lor, aggressus.
Visit,	adire,* adit, aditum.
To enter into a partnership,	coire societatem; coëo.†
To stir out of the city	{ urbem (but better) urbe excēdere, cess, cess.

*adi* is more common than the *acc.*; *excedere* and *egredi*, in their proper meaning of *going out*, should be followed by *e* or the *abl.* But Livy has *urlem excedere*.

\* *Ob* in *obtero*, &c., seems to be an abbreviation of *amb*, ἀμφι. (D.)

\* *Visitare* is, to pay a visit as a *friend* or *companion*; *adire*, to visit *on business*, or in consequence of some *want*; *convenire*, to visit, *on business* or *not*; *salutare*, to pay a *complimentary* visit. (D.)

† The compounds of *eo* have generally perf. *ii*, not *ivi*.



To exceed the bounds of moderation,	} modum excēdere.
To die,	mortem obire, obiī, obitum, obo.
To call upon; have an interview with; hence, to speak to,	} convēnīre, vēn, vent.
To come to a determination; to adopt a resolution,	} consilium inīre.
To encounter death,	mortem oppētēre, petivī, petiī, petīt.*
To smell of,	olēre, olu et olēv, olit et olēt.
To have a strong smell of; to smack of,	} redolēre.†
To taste of (i. e. have taste or flavor of),	{ sūpēre, lo ( <i>perf. rare, sapiv et sapu sapit</i> ).
To thirst for,	sitire, iv, it.
To boast of,	gloriārī, ātus.
To grieve for,	dolēre, dolu, dolit.
To sail past or along,	prætervēhī, vectus.
Hardly any body,	nemo fēre ('almost nobody').
Const,	ora, æ, f.
Speech,	oratio, ōnis, f.
Antiquity,	antiquitas, ātis, f.
Citizens,	civis, m. et f.
Wonderful,	mirus, a, um.
To dream,	somniāre, āv, āt; somnium, 'dream.
Herb,	herba, æ, f.
Honey,	mel, mellis, n.

## Exercise 38.

[How must the infin. be translated after to persuade?]

250.<sup>1</sup> It cannot be denied that you have dreamt a wonderful dream. <sup>2</sup> He published a proclamation that nobody<sup>14</sup> should stir from the city. <sup>3</sup> I won't object to your entering into a partnership (87. 91) with me.<sup>4</sup> <sup>4</sup> Have you entered into a partnership with Balbus or with Caius? <sup>5</sup> He has commissioned me to have an interview with Cæsar. <sup>6</sup> The honey (pl.) smells of that herb. <sup>7</sup> His whole speech smacks of antiquity. <sup>8</sup> Does not Caius's speech

\* *Obire mortem*, or *diem supremum* (for which *obire* is used with the acc. omitted), is only spoken of a *natural* death, which the *mortem obiens* simply suffers; *oppetere mortem* is, if not to seek it, yet at least to meet it with firmness and a disregard of life. (D.)

† *Re* has in many compounds the meaning of *forth*; thus *redolere* 'to smell forth'; 'to emit a smell.' It thus becomes a strengthening prefix: *Diderlein* thinks that, as such, it is possibly the Greek *ἔπι*.

smack of Athens? 7 It is the *duty* of a good citizen to encounter death itself for the state. 10 Ought he not to have encountered<sup>10</sup> death for the state? 11 Marcellus sailed past the coast of Sicily (*Sicilia*). 14 Three hundred of us<sup>19</sup> have come to this determination. 15 There is hardly any body who has not (44, (3)) come to this determination. 16 I fear he will not<sup>53</sup> choose to enter into a partnership with me'. 15 I fear he *will* enter into a partnership with Caius. 16 May a Christian thirst' for honours? 17 He makes the same boast as<sup>9</sup> Cicero. 18 I cannot but<sup>18</sup> grieve *for* the death of Hortensius. 19 It is a difficult (matter) to put off all (one's) human-feeling. 20 Both you and Balbus have exceeded the bounds of moderation. 21 There are some who exceed the bounds of moderation.

### § 36. *The Accusative continued.*

251. (a) Verbs of *asking, teaching, and concealing*, may have *two accusatives*, one of the *person* and another of the *thing*.

252. But *very frequently* (and with some verbs *always*) either the *person* or the *thing* is governed by a *preposition*.

Oss. Thus *doceo*, to give information, prefers the ablative with *de*. After *peto*, and sometimes after the other verbs of *begging*, the person is put in the *abl.* with *a*: and after *rogo, interrōgo*, &c., the *thing* often stands in the *abl.* with *de*.

253. (c) Transitive verbs that take *two nominatives* in the passive, take *two accusatives* in the active, one being in a sort of apposition to the other.

The *apposition accusative* completes the meaning of the verb, which cannot form a complete predicate by itself.

Such verbs are verbs of *calling, appointing* to an office, *considering*, &c., together with *facio, efficio, reddo*, &c.

The second accusative is often an *adjective*.

254. (d) With *facio* and *efficio* a sentence with *ut* is often found instead of the second accusative; and when *the accusative of the first verb represents the same person or thing as the nom. of the second*, it is generally omitted.

(Eng.) The sun makes *all things* (to) flourish.

(Lat.) The sun makes that *all things* should flourish

(*Eng.*) He had Lysis *for* (or, *as*) his master.

(*Lat.*) He had Lysis his master (= *as* his master).

255. [C. XXII.] 07 'For' and 'as' are to be untranslated, when the noun that follows can be placed *in apposition* to another noun in the sentence.

256. (a) *Racilius me primum sententiam rogāvit, Racilius* asked me my opinion *first*.

(*Verres*) *parentes pretium* pro sepulturā liberūm *poscēbat, Verres* used to demand of parents a payment *for the burial of their children*.

*Quis musicam docuit Epaminondam? Who* taught Epaminondas music?

*Nihil nos cēlat, He* conceals nothing from us.

(b) *Socrātes totius mundi se incōlam et civem arbitrabatur, Socrates* used to consider himself an inhabitant and citizen *of the whole world*.

(c) *Mesopotamiam fertilem efficit Euphrates, The Euphrates* makes Mesopotamia *fertile*.

*Homines cācos reddit cupiditas et avaritia, Desire and avarice* render men *blind*.

(d) *Fac ut sciam, or* (with *ut* omitted) *fac sciam, Let me know*.

*Temperantia sēdat appetitiones, et efficit, ut hæ rectæ ratiōni pāreant, Temperance* quiets the appetites, and causes them to obey *right reason*.

## 257. VOCABULARY 36

Ask,

*rogāre, \*āv, āt.*

Beg,

{ *petēre, petiv, petil, petīt* (*person* to be governed by *ab.*).

\* In comic writers the *acc.* is often expressed: '*Eum ita faciemus, ut quod viderit, non viderit.*' '*Ego te faciam, ut miser sis.*' '*Neque potui Venerem facere, ut propitia esset mihi.*'

\* *Petēre* and *rogāre* are the most general expressions of a *wish to obtain*, whether in the way of a request or a demand; thus standing between *poscēre* and *orare*, but somewhat nearer to *orāre*. Of the two, *rogare* relates immediately to the *person* applied to, *petere* to the *favour* asked. *Postulāre* and *erigere* denote a *simple* demand (without any accessory notion to strengthen it) as a quiet declaration of the *will*: but in *postulare* the stress lies on the *wish* and *will* of the person making the demand; in *erigere* on the *legal obligation* of the per-

Claim, require, demand,	{ postulāre, āv, āt; poscēre, posce, poscit; flagitāre, āv, āt.
Beseech,	obsecrāre, āv, āt.
Pray,	orāre, āv, āt.
Adjure,	obtestāri, tātus.
Teach,	docēre, docu, doct.
Unteach,	deducēre.
Conceal,	cēlāre, āv, āt.
To teach Socrates to play on the lyre,	{ Socratem fidibus docēre (l. a. 'to teach him with the strings').
To think = to imagine,	putāre, āv, āt.
To think, or to be of opinion = to deliver it as my opinion,	{ censēre <sup>x</sup> (the word for <i>delivering an opinion in the senate-house</i> ).
To think = to reckon, judge, consider.	{ existimāre = exæstimāre, 'to pronounce judgment after a valuation;' arbitrari, 'to decide as an arbiter.'
To think, as opposed to <i>know</i> ,	opināri, ātus.
Not only, but also,	{ non solum—sed etiam; or non solum—verum etiam.
To give much information about,	multa docēre de (the <i>person in accus.</i> ).
Again and again = most earnestly,	etiam atque etiam.
Experience,	usus, ūs, m.
Just = fair, right, equitable,	æquus, a, um.
Discourse,	sermo, ōnis, m.

### Exercise 39.

258. 'Experience, the best master, has taught me many' things.  
 2 Who taught you to *play upon the lyre*? 3 I ask you' (thee) again and again *not to desert* me. 4 I will not conceal from you the discourse of Titus Ampius. 5 I fear that he is preparing<sup>s</sup> to conceal those things from his parents. 6 He had warned Caius *not* to conceal *any thing*<sup>14</sup> from his parents'. 7 These things I not only ask of you, but also demand. 8 Who taught you those' (bad) manners (of yours)? 9 I will unteach you those manners (of yours). 10 The Gauls have given me much information about their own affairs.

son against whom it is made. *Poscēre* and *flagitāre* denote an *emphatic demand*: but the *poscens* only demands in a *decided manner*, from a feeling of right or power, the *flagitans* with *passion* and impetuosity under the influence of a vehement desire. (D.) Hence *flagitāre* may be '*to demand importunately*' '*to importune*.'

<sup>x</sup> *Censēre* is followed by the *acc.* with *inf.*; or, if the opinion is given to be followed, by *ut* with the *subj.*; but the *ut* is often omitted.

<sup>1</sup> *Ite* is the demonstrative of the *second person* '*that of yours*.'

"I fear that you will *not* consider yourselves citizens of the whole world.<sup>1</sup> Religion will make us obey the laws of virtue.<sup>2</sup> He thought<sup>3</sup> it just, that citizens (*acc.*) should<sup>3</sup> spare citizens (p. 14, 15, a). <sup>4</sup>There is *hardly any body but* thinks it just that you should spare me.

## 259. VOCABULARY 37.

(Impersonals with *acc.*)

It escapes me,	me fugit, fallit; præterit. <sup>a</sup>
Unless I am mistaken,	nisi me fallit.
It is becoming,	dēcet.
It is unbecoming,	dedēcet.

(Eng.) It is becoming (or unbecoming) to (or in) an orator to be angry.

(Lat.) It becomes (or misbecomes) an orator to be angry.

## Exercise 40.

[Of *sanāre* and *mederi*, which relates principally to the skill of the physician? (222, l.)]

260. Three hundred of us,<sup>1</sup> unless I am mistaken, survive.  
 2 I do not forget (*it does not escape me*) to how many dangers we are exposed.<sup>3</sup> You, *such is your temperance*,<sup>3</sup> have learned to rule your mind. <sup>4</sup>It is not every one who can<sup>3</sup> cure the mind. <sup>5</sup>I will ask Caius, whether he can cure the mind. <sup>6</sup>All of us not only ask you for peace', but even demand it (of you). "It is your duty to succour the citizens now almost despaired of. <sup>7</sup>It becomes a wise man not to be disturbed in *adversity*. <sup>8</sup>It is becoming to a boy to hear *much*, to speak *little*. <sup>9</sup>It is not unbecoming in an orator to pretend' to be angry.<sup>3</sup> <sup>10</sup>It does not escape me, *how odious*<sup>3</sup> impiety is to the good.

## XI.

## § 37. The Ablative.

261. (a) The ablative expresses the *means* or *instrument*, and often the *cause* or *manner*.

<sup>a</sup> Censebat. *Censere* should be used when the opinion is the *expression* of a settled conviction.

<sup>b</sup> *Lālet* me and *lālet* mihi, though they occur in *Justin*, *Pliny*, &c., should be avoided. (C.)

262. (b) The *price* for which a thing is *bought, sold, valued, or done*, is put in the *ablative*.

263. (c) The adjectives *magno, parvo, &c.*, are generally put by themselves, the substantive *pretio* being understood.

264. But some of these adjectives often stand alone in the *genitive*, especially after verbs of *valuing* at such a price, with which this is the *regular* construction.

(d) *Tanti* and *quantum* (with their compounds), *pluris, minoris*, always stand in the *genitive*. With verbs of *valuing*, *magni, parvi, maximus, minimus, plurimi*, also stand in the *gen.*; but *magno, permagno*, and *parvo*, are found in the *abl.* also with *æstimare*. With verbs of *price*, *magno, permagno, parvo, minimo, plurimo, nimio, vili*, stand in the *ablative*.

(e) The substantives, *floci, nauci, nihili, pili, &c.*, also stand in the *gen.* after verbs of *valuing*.

*Multi* } are not used, but { *magni*,  
*Majoris* } { *pluris*.

265. (a) *Terra vestita est floribus, herbis, arboribus, frugibus*,  
*The earth is clothed with flowers, herbs, trees, fruits.*

*Cornibus tauri se tutantur*, *Bulls defend themselves with their horns.*

(b) *Viginti talentis unam orationem Isocrates vendidit*,  
*Isocrates sold one oration for twenty talents.*

(c) *Venditori expedit rem vendere quam plurimo*, *It is for the interest of the seller that the thing should be sold for as high a price as possible.*

(d) *Te quotidie pluris facio*, *I value you more every day.*

(e) *Totam rempublicam floci non facere*, *Not to care a lock of wool (or, as we should say, a straw, or rush) for the whole state.*

## 266. VOCABULARY 38.

To value,

æstimare, æv, æt.

To hold cheap,

parvi pendere; pepend, pens.

To cost,

{ stare, stët; or constare (with dat. of person).

To sell (intrans.); to be sold,

vendere, eo, vëndi, and vënu,


<sup>b</sup> The passage in Phædrus, 'Multo majoris alapæ mecum veneunt,' is perhaps the only instance. (B.)

<sup>c</sup> Vëndire = vënum ire, to go to sale, from an old substantive *vënus*. So, ve-

To sell,	vendēre, vendid, vendit.
To buy,	ēmēre, ēm, empt.
More highly, for more, dearer,	pluris.
For less,	minōris.
For as much—as,	tanti—quantī.
For just as much as ; for no more than,	} tantūdem—quantī
For how much,	quantī ?
Too dear,	nimio.
To reckon or think nothing of,	nihili facēre.
Not to care a straw for,	{ flocci facēre ( <i>literally, to make, i. e. reckon it 'at a lock of wool.'</i> )
Not to care that for it,	non hujus facēre.
Peck,	mōdius, i, m.
Wheat,	tritūcum, i, n.
Sesterce, <sup>a</sup>	sestertius, i, m.
Merchant,	mercātor, ōris, m.

(Eng.) To cost a person much (or dear).

(Lat.) To stand to a person at much.

[C. xxii.]  When *one, two, &c.*, mean *one, two, &c.*, *apiece* or *for each*, they must be translated by the *distributive* numerals, *singuli, bini, &c.*

### Exercise 41.

267. <sup>1</sup>That victory cost the Carthaginians (*Pæni*) much blood. <sup>2</sup> It cannot be denied *that* that victory cost us much blood. <sup>3</sup> Merchants do not sell for no more than they bought (at). <sup>4</sup> He says that he does not care a straw for my glory. <sup>5</sup> I will ask him for how much he bought these things. <sup>6</sup> I sell my (goods) for as much as Caius. <sup>7</sup> The peck of wheat was at *two* sesterces. <sup>8</sup> For how much does wheat sell ? <sup>9</sup> Epicurus thinks nothing of pain. <sup>10</sup> There is hardly any body<sup>8a</sup> who does *not* (44, (3)) hold his own things cheap. <sup>11</sup> I do not care that for you. <sup>12</sup> My life is valued at ten<sup>1</sup> asses a day. <sup>13</sup> It is foolish to hold one's own (blessings) cheap. <sup>14</sup> He says that I have bought these things too dear. <sup>15</sup> Merchants never sell for less than they bought (at). <sup>16</sup> I will ask what<sup>21</sup> corn is selling for.

ven-dēre, ven-dēre = venum dāre. Tacitus has *posita vīno*, exposed for sale. *Vendo* is conjugated like *eo*, having *vēni* rather than *vēni* for *perf.*, and imperf. *veniebam* as well as *venibam*. No imperat.; no supines, gerunds or participles.

<sup>a</sup> A Roman coin, worth about three and a half cents Federal money. A thousand *sestertii* made one *sestertium*, which was a *sum*, not a coin.

<sup>1</sup> Denis in diem assibus.

§ 38. *The Ablative continued.*

268. (a) Verbs of *abounding, filling, loading, &c.*, and their opposites, such as verbs of *wanting, depriving of, emptying of*, govern the *ablative*.

269. (b) But of these *egere* and *indigere* (especially the latter) govern the *genitive* also.

270. (c) Some verbs of *freeing from, removing from, differing from, being at a distance from, &c.*, are sometimes followed by the *ablative*, but generally (in prose) by a *preposition*.†

271. (d) *Fungor, fruor, utor* (with their compounds), *potior, vescor, dignor, glorior*, take the *ablative* : as does also *supersedeo*.

But *potior* takes the *genitive*, when it means 'to obtain sovereign power over.'

272. (a) *Pericles florebat omni genere virtutis, Pericles was eminent in every kind of virtue* (i. e. admirable quality).

(b) *Res maxime necessariæ non tam artis indigent, quam laboris, The most necessary things do not require skill so much as labour.*

(c) *Athenienses bello liberantur, The Athenians were rescued from the* (threatened) *war.*

*Leva me hoc onere, Relieve me from this burden.*

(d) *Divitiis, nobilitate, viribus, multi male utuntur, Many men make a bad use of riches, noble birth, (and) strength.*

*Augustus Alexandriâ brevi potitus est, Augustus soon gained possession of Alexandria.*

273. VOCABULARY 39.

(Verbs governing the ablative.)

To deprive of, privare, av, at.

To bereave of, deprive of, orbare, av, at.

To rob of (by open violence as an enemy), } spoliare, s av, at.

To be without, } carere, h carui et cassus sum, carit et cass.

† With *defendere, exsolvere, exonerare, levare*, the *ablative* alone is to be preferred. (Z.)

s *Esplare, compulare* are 'to plunder,' as robbers.

h *Carere* is simply 'to be without : ' *egere* is 'to need, to want : ' *indigere* is 'to



To stand in need of, need, require,	{ egēre (abl. or gen.) or indigēre (which is stronger) egēre, egui, —.
To free from, set free from, relieve from,	{ liberāre, <sup>1</sup> āv, āt.
To use,	ūti, ūsus.
To discharge, perform,	fungi, functus; perfungi (stronger).
To enjoy,	frui, fructus, and fructus.
To feed on, live on, eat,	vesci (no perf.).
To boast of,	{ gloriāri; also followed by de' and by 'in' when it signifies 'to glory in.'
To make the same boast,	idem gloriāri.
To rest or lean upon,	{ niti, nīsus and nixus; in aliquo nīti, is 'to lean on a person for support, that is, 'to rest with' in the sense of depending upon his exertions, &c.
To rejoice,	gaudēre, gāvīsus.
Medicine,	medicina, <sup>1</sup> æ, f.
Milk,	lac, lactis, n.
Flesh,	cāro, carnis, f.
Cheese,	caseus, i, m.
Fever,	febris, is, f. (abl. i.).
Quite,	plane.
Debt,	{ æs alienum, another man's money; æs æris, n. copper.
A heavy debt,	magnum æs alienum.
Severity (of a disease),	gravitas, ātis, f.
Disease,	morbū, i, m.
Perversely,	perverse.
(Eng.) Make a bad (perverse, &c.) use of it.	
(Lat.) Use ill (perversely, &c.)	

*feel* that I want; the *in* expressing *intra animum*. With reference to an *advantage* desired, *carere* is simply, 'to be without a desirable good,' *egere*, 'to be without an indispensable good.' (D.) This seems to be the proper limitation of Cicero's definition; that *carere* is 'egere eo quod habere velis.'

<sup>1</sup> Also with *a*, *ab*.

\* *Vesci* is the most general expression for *supporting life by food*, including *edere* and *bibere* as the actions of *men*, *pasci* and *potare* as the actions of *beasts*. When *vesci* relates, as it generally does, to *eating*, it denotes *any manner* of eating, *chewing*, *swallowing*, &c.: whereas *edere*, *comedere* supposes the manner in which a *man* eats, by biting and chewing. In *vesci* the principal notion is the *purpose* of eating, *the support of life*; in *edere*, the *means* by which life is supported, the action of *eating*. (D.)

<sup>1</sup> *Medicamentum* or *medicamen* is a medicine with reference to its *material substance*, as it is prepared by an apothecary: *medicina*, with reference to its *healing power*, as it is prescribed by a physician; *remedium* is a preventive, a remedy against an impending evil. (D.)

## Exercise 42.

[Should 'every day' be translated by *indies*, or by *quotidie*, when there is no *progressive increase* from one day to another?]

274. | Do not deprive another of his praise'. 2 I rejoice that you are quite without fever. 3 The body, to be (ut) in good health, requires many things. 4 Nature herself admonishes us every day how few things we require. 5 He *promised* to set me free from my debt. 6 Have I not set you free from a heavy debt? 7 Many men make a perverse use of reason. 8 They live on milk, cheese, flesh. 9 It was owing to you<sup>22</sup> that I was not bereaved of my children. 10 But a little more<sup>24</sup> and Caius would have been bereaved of his children. 11 It is not every man who can think nothing of pain. 12 It is a disgraceful thing (for a man) to boast of his vices. 13 May I not make the same boast as Cyrus? 14 I will exhort Caius to discharge (75) all the duties of life. 15 The safety of the state depends upon you alone (in te uno). 16 Do men alone feed on flesh? [No.]/ 17 The severity of disease makes us require<sup>26</sup> medicine (gen.).

275. The *manner* or *cause*, and any word that restricts the meaning of another to a particular *part* of a thing spoken of, is put in the ablative.

## 276. VOCABULARY 40.

Lame of one foot,	claudus altero pede.
(Adjectives* followed by the <i>abl.</i> )	
Worthy, deserving of,	dignus, a, um.
Unworthy,	indignus, <sup>m</sup> a, um.
Banished,	extorris, is, <i>com. gend.</i> (from <i>ex terrâ</i> ) <sup>n</sup>
Relying on,	frētus, a, um.
Contented,	contentus, a, um.
Endued with,	præditus, a, um.
To deserve,	dignus, um, &c., esse.
Censure,	reprehensio, ōnis, f.

\* Adjectives signifying *want* or *freedom from* (vacuus, liber, &c.), take the *abl.* or the *abl.* with *a, ab*.

<sup>m</sup> *Dignus* and *indignus* are (less commonly) followed by the *genitive*.

<sup>n</sup> *Profugus* is one who has fled from his country; *exsul* and *extorris* imply that the person is under *sentence* of banishment. *Extorris* relates rather to the *misery* of the exile; *exsul*, to his *punishment* and *disgrace*. (D.)

Punishment,	pœna, æ, f.
Severe (of punishment, &c.),	gravis, is, e.
Motion,	mōtus, us, m. (what declens. ? why ?)
Reality,	res, rei, f.
Name,	nōmen, inis, n.

(Eng.) He deserves to be loved.\*

(Lat.) He is a deserving (person) who should be loved (*dignus est qui amātur*).

(Eng.) To inflict punishment on a person.

(Lat.) To affect (= *visit*) a man with punishment (*aliquem pœnā afficere*).

### Exercise 43.

271. Are they deserving of praise, who have done these things ? [No.] I think this man deserving not of censure only, but also of punishment. These things are unworthy of us. *I cannot but think*<sup>18</sup> these things unworthy of us. He *has threatened me with*<sup>14</sup> severe punishment. I have said this (*pl.*), relying on your compassion. *There is no doubt that* he will inflict a severe punishment upon you. Nature is contented with a little. Agamemnon was lame of one foot. Had you rather be blind, or lame of one foot ? The mind is endued with perpetual motion. *It cannot be doubted that* the mind is endued with perpetual motion. *It cannot be denied that* he sold his country for gold. He is an orator not in reality but in name. He is a boy in age. He deserves to be praised by all. *It is not every one who can* heal the diseases of the mind. It cannot be denied that he is banished from his country. There are some who<sup>100</sup> deny that these things are unworthy of us.

## XII.

### § 39. The Vocative. (Attraction of the Vocative.)

278. Sometimes, in poetry, a vocative is used instead of a nominative after the verb.<sup>p</sup>

\* So, *he does not deserve to be*, &c., 'indignus est, qui,' &c.

<sup>p</sup> Examples in poetry are *Matutine pater, seu Jane libentius audis*. (Hor.) *Tunc ille (adryas) Phineus rex inclutus oræ ? Tu Phæbi comes, et nostro dilecte parenti ?* (Val. Flac.) So in Greek *ἄλλης κῶρε γένουτο !* (Theocr.) (K.)

Another vocative has generally preceded, and this second vocative is *attracted* into agreement with it; but sometimes it merely refers to a nominative of the *second* person.

(a) The phrase '*macte virtute esto!*' (a *blessing on your valour!* or, *good luck to your valour!*) is probably an example of this construction, *macte* being the vocative of *mactus* from *mag-ere*<sup>4</sup> (to increase, enrich, &c.). The only objection to this explanation is Livy's *adverbial* use of *macte* with the infinitive. (See example: *juberem macte virtute esse.*) (K.)

279. (b) On the other hand, a nominative sometimes stands in apposition to a vocative, or where a vocative would be the regular construction.

This is especially the case with *solus, unus, primus*.

280. (a) *Macte virtute esto!* A *blessing on your valour!* or, 'Go on in your valour!'

*Macti virtute, milites Romani, este!* Good luck, O Roman soldiers, to your valour!

*Juberem macte virtute esse, &c.* I would say, a blessing on your valour! &c.

(b) *Audi tu, populus Albanus!* Listen, ye people of Alba!

*Salve primus omnium parens patriæ appellate!* Hail thou, the very first who was ever called the father of his country!

## 281. VOCABULARY 41.

Dutiful affection, piety:

Towards,

Hail, farewell!

The toga,<sup>1</sup>

pietas, *ātis, f.*

in (with *accus.*).

{ ave, salve<sup>2</sup> (imperatives of the 2d conjugation—vale, valetō is only farewell!).

{ toga, *æ, f.* (as opposed to the military cloak, it means the civil gown).

<sup>4</sup> The root *mag* (the Greek *μειν*) of this obsolete verb is still found in *magnus* and *mactare* (to present with; to honour). (D.)

<sup>1</sup> *Pietas* is dutiful affection (towards the gods, one's parents, relations, country, and even benefactors), arising from a natural feeling: *caritas* (properly their dear-ness to us) is founded on reason and a just appreciation of their value.

<sup>2</sup> That *ave* was a morning, *salve* an evening salutation, does not appear to be established. Suetonius makes *salve* the morning, and *vale* the evening salutation. (See *Habicht*.)

<sup>1</sup> A woollen upper garment, covering the whole body, and forming the ordinary dress of a Roman citizen. It was a flowing robe, covering the left arm, but leaving the right at liberty.

*the robe of the citizen*

A triumph,	{ triumphus, i, m. (a public procession granted by a decree of the senate to a victorious general).
To gain a triumph for a victory over the Gauls,	
To lead the captives in triumph,	de or ex Gallis triumphāre.
People,*	captivos per triumphum ducere. pūpulus, i, m. (the vocat. not in use).

## Exercise 44.

282. A blessing on thy valour, Titus Manlius, and<sup>v</sup> on thy piety towards thy father and thy country ! Hail thou, the first who has deserved a triumph in a civil gown ! Hear, O people of Rome ! A blessing, O citizens, on your dutiful-affection towards your country ! A blessing, O boy, on your diligence ! You, *such is your diligence*,<sup>9</sup> will soon finish the business. His diligence is as great as<sup>9</sup> his abilities. It cannot be denied that (86) his diligence is as great as his ability. There is no doubt that he *told many falsehoods* about his age, *that* (63) he might appear *younger* (than he is). It cannot be denied that he told many falsehoods, *that* he might *not* be banished. I *ask* you again and again *to succour* (75) me. There were some who<sup>100</sup> denied that I had deserved a triumph.

## XIII.

## § 40. The Passive Voice.

283. (a) The *agent* after a passive verb (which is *regularly* under the government of *a* or *ab*) is sometimes put in the *dative*, especially in poetry, and after the *participle in dus*.

284. The accusative after the active verb (the *object*) becomes the *nominative* before the passive verb.

285. (b) But verbs that govern the *dative* in the active are used *impersonally* in the passive ; so that the *nominative before* the English verb becomes the *dative after* the Latin verb.

286. (c) *Vaptilo, vñneo, fio*, having a *passive* meaning, have also a *passive construction*.

\* Not in the sense of *folk* or *folks*, as in English, but of a *people*.

<sup>v</sup> Ac. (See 4, d.)

287. [C. xxiv.] 07 (d) To express the *future subjunctive passive* we must not use the *participle in dus* with *sim, essem, &c.*, but *futurum sit, esset, &c.*, followed by *ut*.

288. (e) The *future infinitive passive* is made up of the *supine in um* with *iri*; but when verbs have no *supine*, we must use *fore* or *futurum esse, &c.*

This substitute for a future infinitive passive must be used even when the verb has a *supine*, unless the event is to be described as *being about to happen*.

In other words the *supine* with *iri* is a *paulo-post futurum*.

289. (f) So also *fore ut* with the subjunctive should be used for the future infinitive active, when the event is not to be described as *being now about to happen*.

290. (a) *Mihi consilium captum jam diu est, My resolution has long been taken.*

(b) *Gloriæ tuæ invidetur, Your glory is envied.*

*Philosophiæ vituperatoribus satis responsum est, The revilers of philosophy have been sufficiently answered.*

(c) *Rogatus est, an ab reo vapulasset, He was asked whether he had been beaten by the prisoner. Ab hoste venire, To be sold by an enemy. A me fieri, To be doing by me.*

(d) *Nescio, quando futurum sit, ut epistola scribatur, I don't know when the letter will be written.*

(e) *Dixit fore ut oppidum expugnaretur, He said that the town would be taken.*

*Dixit oppidum expugnatum iri, He said that the city was about to be taken. (G.)*

(f) *Nunquam putavi fore ut supplex ad te venirem, I never thought that I should come to you as a suppliant.*

(Eng.) You are envied, favoured, spared, answered, &c.

(Lat.) *It is envied* (favoured, spared, answered, &c.) to you.

(Eng.) I don't know when it will be written.

(Lat.) I don't know when it will be (subj.) that it be written.

\* Of course *esset* and *scriberetur* after a past tense.

† The tense of the subjunctive verb depends not on *fore*, but on the preceding verb. *Spero fore ut convalescat: sperabam fore ut convalesceret.*

## 291. VOCABULARY 42.

To be beaten,	vapulāre, āv, āt.
To recover (from a sickness),	{ convalescere, <sup>7</sup> vālu (see Tables for Reference, II. vii.).
To heal, to be healed of a wound,	consanescere, sanu.
To burst out, or bleed afresh,	{ recrudescere, crudu (properly to grow raw again).
Wound,	vulnūs, ūris, n.
Priest, priestess,	sacerdōs, dōtis, m. et f.
A husband,	vir, viri, m. (a man).
I am persuaded,	{ persuasum est mihi, or persuasum habeo. <sup>a</sup>
A liar,	mendax, ācis (prop. an <i>adject.</i> ).
Faith, fidelity,	fides, ei, f.
Most men,	{ plerique (pleri declined and <i>que</i> appended; but not found in the <i>genit.</i> ).
	facere (with <i>ablat.</i> ; <i>abl.</i> with <i>de</i> ; or with <i>dat.</i> De should be expressed before the <i>personal pronouns</i> , the <i>ablatives</i> of which are of the same form as the <i>accusatives</i> ).
To do any thing with a person,	{

## Exercise 45.

292.) I will ask whether he has been beaten by his slave. 2 What will become of my Tulliola? 3 I hope he will recover. 4 I hoped he would recover. 5 I doubt not but that (86) you will be praised by all. 6 The wounds, which had been healed, bleed afresh. 7 I fear his wounds will<sup>88</sup> bleed afresh. 8 These priestesses of Vesta are not permitted to marry a husband. 9 Your virtue is envied. 10 Liars are not believed. 11 The unwilling are not easily persuaded of any thing. 12 There is no-doubt that your glory will be envied. 13 All my property has been sold by an enemy. 14 I will ask which<sup>b</sup> of them is favoured by Cæsar. That (*ille*) age is not only not envied, but even favoured. 15 I fear that these wounds will not<sup>88</sup> heal. 16 What will become of me? 17 There are some

<sup>7</sup> The disease from which a person recovers, must be governed by *ex* with the *abl.*

<sup>a</sup> *Persuasissimum habeo* should never be used; *persuasissimum est mihi* does not occur in Cicero, but in a letter of Brutus's to Cicero. (Klotz.) *I am persuaded of* (*persuasum est mihi de, &c. with abl.*).

<sup>b</sup> Say: 'to the unwilling nothing is easily persuaded.'

<sup>c</sup> Of two persons.

who<sup>100</sup> believe that he has been beaten by his slave. / 9 There are some who envy your glory.

### § 41. *The Passive continued.*

293. (a) The verbs that govern *two accusatives* in the active, sometimes govern *one accusative* (that of the *object*) in the passive.

Since even in the active it is only *some* verbs of *asking*, &c. that govern the two accusatives, care must be taken not to extend the rule just given beyond the actual practice of good writers.—*Rogāri* may take this *acc.* It is found with *indūtus* and *edoctus*; with *doctus* or *dedoctus* it is not common in prose: with *clārī* and *menārī* very rare, except with the neuter of pronouns, or such adjectives as *multa*, *parva*. (Z.)

294. (b) Passive verbs and participles are sometimes followed by an accusative of the *part particularly referred to* (accusativus partis affectæ).

Thus we may say, not only *caput feritur alicui*, or *caput alicujus feritur*, but also *alicuius feritur caput*.

(c) In some particular constructions the *part referred to* is put in the *gen.* or *ablative*.

295. An accusative also follows many other passive participles, especially in the poets.

The peculiarity is this: the *dative* of the act. is allowed to stand as the *nominative* (*subject*) before the passive, or, which comes to the same thing, with a passive participle in agreement with it; and then the *accusative* of the object is allowed to remain. This construction (which is called the *Greek accusative*), and that in 294, must not be imitated by those who wish to write in Cicero's style. (G.)

296. In many general expressions the *passive voice* is used *impersonally* where the active might be used in Latin, and is used in English.

(Thus *ambulatum est*, It has been walked (by us) = *we have walked*).

297. (d) With verbs of *seeming*, and passive verbs of *declaring*, *thinking*, &c., the *personal* construction is far more common than the *impersonal*.\*

---

\* In the past tenses, *traditum est*, *proditum est* are very commonly used. The passives of *audire* and *nuntiāre* are frequently, though not so exclusively, used personally. (Z.)



(Eng.) *It seems, is said, &c.,* that Calus has retired (or, as *Lat.*).

(*Lat.*) Calus *seems, is said, &c.,* to have retired.

298. (a) Rogatus sententiam, *Being asked his opinion. Longam indutus vestem, Clothed in a long garment.*

(b) Oblitus<sup>d</sup> faciem (smeared as to his face ==), *having his face smeared or covered. Incensus animum* (kindled as to his mind ==), *Having his mind agitated. Adversum fémur ictus* (struck as to his opposite thigh ==), *Wounded in the front part of his thigh.*

(c) Pendere animi or animo,<sup>e</sup> *To be in anxious suspense. Discrucior animi, My mind is on the rack ; I am tortured in mind.*

(d) Lycurgi temporibus Homérus fuisse dicitur, *Homer is said to have lived (or, it is said that Homer lived) in the time of Lycurgus.*

*Miltiades videbatur non posse esse privatus, It seemed that Miltiades could not be a private man.*

## 299. VOCABULARY 43.

Blood <sup>f</sup> (when shed),	cruor, ōris, m.
Silent,	{ tacitus, a, um (if actual, taciturnus, a, um if habitual silence is meant.)
To be silent, hold one's tongue,	silēre, silu, —
To be silent, hold one's tongue, cease speaking,	{ tacēre, <sup>g</sup> tacu, tacit.
Silence,	silentium, i, n.
Habit of silence,	taciturnitas, ātis, f.
About (qñr to be silent),	{ de (with ablat. But neuter pronoun may stand in accus. without prepos.)
To set on fire,	incendēre, cend, cens.
To light, kindle,	accendēre, succendēre, cend, cens. <sup>h</sup>

<sup>d</sup> From *oblīnere*.

<sup>e</sup> Often *animis*, if more than one person is spoken of. Cicero uses *pendere animi* and *pendere animis*: not, I believe, *pendere animo*.

<sup>f</sup> *Sanguis* inest venis, *cruor* est de corpore fusus. At the moment of shedding sanguis should be used.

<sup>g</sup> *Silēre* is, to emit no sound, to make no noise, to be still;—*tacēre* is, to utter no word, to be silent; especially, to pass over in silence. The opposites of *silēre* are *strepēre*, *fremēre*; of *tacēre*, *dicere* and *loqui*. (D.)

<sup>h</sup> *Incendēre* is to set the whole of a thing on fire; *accendēre* and *succendēre*, to set a part of it on fire, that it may be consumed gradually. *Accendere* is to

Torch,	tæda, æ, <i>f.</i>
Lamp,	lucerna, æ, <i>f.</i>
Funeral pile, pyre,	rûgus, i, <i>m.</i>
To strike, hit, wound,	ferire; icære, <sup>1</sup> ic, ict; cædere, cæcid, <del>cæci</del>
Rod,	virga, æ, <i>f.</i>
Spear,	hasta, æ, <i>f.</i>
Arrow,	sagitta, æ, <i>f.</i>
Lightning,	fulmen, inis, <i>n.</i>
To be flogged, whipped with rods,	virgis cædi.
Thigh,	femur, ōris, <i>n.</i>
To walk,	ambulāre, āv, āt.
Right (opposite of <i>left</i> ),	dexter, tra, trum.

## Exercise 46.

300. Cato was first asked his opinion. You with your usual habit of silence<sup>9</sup> said nothing. Marcus, having his face covered with his own blood, left the city. The laws ought not to be silent. I am afraid that<sup>53</sup> the laws are silent about these matters. Hannibal, having his mind agitated by silent care, was silent. I warned the boy *not to light* the torch. By whom has the funeral pile been lighted? I will inquire by whom the funeral pile was lighted. Caius, being struck by lightning, died.<sup>\*</sup> I foretell that you *will be flogged* (288). Caius was wounded by an arrow<sup>7</sup> on his right thigh. A league was made between the cities of<sup>27</sup> Rome and Lavinium. It cannot be denied *that* the lamp was lighted by the boy. We have walked (*pass.*) enough. We have come (*pass.*) to (*ad*) the town. *It cannot be that*<sup>20</sup> he is not tortured in mind. *It is said* that Caius has been struck by a stone. Was the funeral pile lighted by you or by Balbus?

light it from *above*, *succendere* from *below*. Hence a torch, lamp, &c., *accenditur*. a funeral pile *succenditur*. (D.) *Animus accensus* is merely an *excited* mind, *animus incensus* an *agitated* mind. (D.)

<sup>1</sup> *Ferire*, to strike generally; *cædere* is to strike with what *cuts* (including rods, &c.): *icære*, to strike with what *pierces* (including lightning, stones, &c.). *Feriri* and *icære* supply each other's deficiencies: thus *ferire* is used for *pres.*, *imperf.*, *fut.*, which *icære* wants; and *icære* supplies *ferire* with a *perf.* and *past* participle for *ferri*, *feritus*, which are not in use. (D.) *icære fœdus* is to *ratify* or *make* a treaty, league, &c.

<sup>\*</sup> *Decessit*.



## XIV.

§ 42. *Expressions of Time.*

301. (a) In answer to the question *when?* the noun which expresses time is put in the *ablative*: in answer to the question *how long?* in the *accusative*.

302. (b) In answer to the question *in what time?* *within what time?* either a preposition (*inter*,<sup>1</sup> *intra*) is used: or the noun is put in the *ablative* with a *cardinal* or *ordinal* numeral.

If a *cardinal* number is used, the noun will be in the plural; if an *ordinal*, in the *singular*.

(In ten years: in the tenth year.)

303. (c) In answer to the questions *how long before?* *how long after?* the noun that expresses time is put in the *ablative*.—*Ante* and *post* are here used as *adverbs*, unless there be *another noun* or *pronoun* to be governed by them.

304. (d) A *point* or *space* of *future* time for which any arrangement or provision is *now made*, is put in the *accusative* with *in*: the exact time *at which* a thing is to be done, in the *acc.* with *ad*.

a-go

305. (e) *Abhinc* (ago) of *past* time is joined to the *accusative* or the *ablative*:<sup>m</sup> it must *precede* the numeral and its substantive, one of which must be the next word to it.

306. (f) *Natus* (born) with the *accusative* of time = *at such an age*; so many years *old*. *Major* and *minor* with the *genitive* or *ablative* of time = (respectively) *above* or *under* such an age.

*At such an age* may also be expressed by the *genitive* only (without *natus*).

307. (a) *Vere*, *In the spring*. *Auctumno*, *In the autumn*. *Hibernis mensibus*, *In the winter months*. *Solis occasu* (at the setting of the sun =), *At sunset*.

<sup>1</sup> *Inter*, if the *whole duration* is spoken of; *intra*, if *some point* within that space.

<sup>m</sup> *Zumpt* says the *accusative* for *duration*, the *ablative* for a *point* of time. This seems to be incorrect; thus in '*litem decedit abhinc annos quatuor*' duration is not meant. The *ablative* is more *definite* than the *accusative*, and should (I think) be used when a *definite point of past time* is to be expressed; the *accusative* when *exact accuracy* is not intended. Hence the *accusative* is the more common.

Inediam *biduum* aut *triduum* ferre (to endure abstinence from food =), *To go without food* for two, or even three days.

*Ager multos annos quievit*, *The field has lain fallow* for many years.

- (b) *Germani inter annos quatuordēcim tectum non subierant*, *The Germans had not entered a house* for fourteen years together.

*Multi intra vicesimum diem dictaturā se abdicaverunt*, *Many persons have laid down their dictatorship within twenty days*.

*Agamemnon cum universā Græciā vix decem annis unam cepit urbem*, *Agamemnon with the whole of Greece had great difficulty in taking a single city* in ten years.

*Pompejus undequingagesimo die ad imperium populi Romani Ciliciam adjunxit*, *Pompeius in forty-nine days added Cilicia to the empire of the Roman people*.

- (c) *Paucis post mensibus*, *A few months afterwards*.  
*Paucis ante diebus*, *A few days before*.

*Homērus annis multis fuit ante Romulum*, *Homer lived many years before Romulus*.

- (d) *Ad cœnam Canium invitavit in posterum diem*, *He invited Cælius to supper* for the next day.

*Solvere ad Græcas Kalendas*,<sup>m</sup> *To pay on the Greek Kalends*.

- (e) *Abhinc annos (or annis) quatuor*, *Four years ago*.

- (f) *Cato annos quinque et octoginta natus excessit e vitā*,  
*Cato departed this life when he was eighty-five years old (or, at the age of eighty-five)*.

{ *Minores annis triginta (Persons) under thirty years old (or, of age)*.  
    *Minores duorum et viginti annorum*, *Under the age of two-and-twenty*.

---

<sup>m</sup> That is, *never*; there being no *Kalends* in the Greek Calendar.

Civis major annis viginti, *A citizen above twenty years old.*

Cato primum stipendium meruit annorum decem septemque, *Cato served his first campaign at the age of seventeen (or, when he was seventeen years old)*

### 308. VOCABULARY 44.

To receive,	accipere, recipere, excipere, <sup>a</sup> cēp, cept.
To succeed to = follow,	excipere, cēp, cept ( <i>accus.</i> ).
Swallow,	hirundo, inis, <i>f.</i>
Winter (as <i>adj.</i> ),	hibernus, a, um.
Month,	mensis, is, <i>m.</i>
Go away,	abire, abeo, iv, it (78, x.).
To kill,	{ interficere, fēc, sect (the most general term for killing, whether by <i>starvation</i> , <i>poison</i> , <i>hanging</i> , or the <i>sword</i> ).
To kill (as a <i>violent, unjust, cruel act</i> ; by <i>poison, starvation, strangling</i> , &c.),	{ necare; or enēcare (if by a process that takes up some time).
To kill, slay (especially in honourable, open fight),	{ occidere, cīd, cīs (it is used however of all kinds of killing).
To slaughter, butcher,	{ trucidare (according to Döderlein = <i>tauricīdo</i> , I cut down an ox).
To reign (neut.),	regnare, āv, āt.
To lay down a magistracy,	{ abdicare magistrātum, or abdicare se magistratu.
Exactly (of a number),	ipse (in agreement with the noun).
Ephesian,	Ephesius, i, <i>m.</i>
Temple,	templum, i, <i>n.</i>
To be burnt,	deflagrare, āv, āt ( <i>intrans.</i> ).
To serve a campaign,	{ stipendium merere or mereri (i. e. to earn pay).
To hold a magistracy,	magistratum gerere, gess, gest.

<sup>a</sup> *Accipimus oblata; excipimus vagantia; recipimus fugientia.* (D.) *To receive* is *accipere*, when the thing is *offered* or *given*: to *receive* a person flying or wandering is *excipere* or *recipere*; *excipere* being the act of a *servicable friend, an equal*; *recipere* that of a *benefactor, a superior*. *Excipere* is to *stop a living being in motion*, and either *receive* him in a friendly, or *intercept* him in a hostile manner. (D.) *Accipere vulnera* is to receive wounds *intended for me*; *excipere vulnera* is to expose myself to wounds 'that may every moment come in my way.' (Hill.) *Recipere* is also distinguished from *accipere* by denoting to receive not merely for *detention*, but for actual *possession*. *Accepta pecunia* may be a *mere deposit*: *recepta pecunia* is a formal *taking into possession*. (D.)

- [C. xxv.] **¶** After an expression of time, '*that*' is often used for *on which* (*Eng.*) To have reigned *more than* (or *above*) *two years*.  
 (*Lat.*) To be reigning *his third year*.  
 (*Eng.*) Before *the consulship, censorship, &c.*, of Caius.  
 (*Lat.*) Before *Caius* (being *consul, censor, &c.* (ante Caium consulem),

*Exercise 47.*

309./I come to your epistles, six hundred of which<sup>31</sup> I received at one time. 2 The swallows go away in the winter months. 3 Do not the swallows go away in the winter months? 4 Mithridates slaughtered many Roman' citizens in one' day. 5 Mithridates, who in one day butchered so many Roman citizens, has already reigned above two-and-twenty years from that (*ab illo*) time. 6 We dream whole nights. 7 Caius laid down his dictatorship within ten days. 8 Scipio\* died a year' before my consulship. 9 Cato died *exactly* eighty<sup>2</sup>-three years before the consulship of Cicero. 10 The eclipses of the sun are foretold for many years. // He published an edict, that no one<sup>14</sup> under (306, *f*) nine-and-twenty years old should command an army. / 2 On the same night *that*<sup>1</sup> Alexander was born, the temple of the Ephesian Diana was burnt-down. 3 It is certain that Caius served his first campaign at the age of eighteen. 4 He died at the age of thirty-three. 5 King Archelaus had been in possession of Cappadocia for about forty-nine years. 6 At the age of thirty he had already waged many wars. 7 May (then) a man under twenty-two years old hold a magistracy? 8 He died three years ago. 9 It is the part of a good citizen to receive wounds for his country.

310. (a) (He did it) *three years after he (had) returned.*

- |   |                         |
|---|-------------------------|
| (1) <i>post tres annos (or tertium annum)</i> | } <i>quam redierat.</i> |
| (2) <i>tertio anno</i> . . . . .              |                         |

\* *Scipio* the last word.

<sup>2</sup> *Annis octoginta et tribus ipsis.*

<sup>1</sup> Begin with the relative clause. 30 (c). 32 (d).

<sup>1</sup> I; might be supposed that '*tertio anno quam (or quo) redierat,*' would mean

(3) *tribus annis (or tertio anno) postquam redierat.*

(4) *tertio anno quo redierat.\**

(b) *Pridie quam excessit e vitâ, The day before he died.*  
*Postridie quam a vobis discessi, The day after I left you.*

*Postero anno quam, &c., The year after, &c.*

*Priore anno quam, &c., The year before, &c. (Z.)*

### 311. VOCABULARY 45.

By day,	interdiu, or die.
By night,	noctu, or nocte.
By day and by night,	{ die ac nocte; die noctuque; nocte et interdiu.
In the evening,	vesp̄ri, or vesp̄re.†
In good time,	in temp̄re, or temp̄re only.
At the time of the Latin games,	ludis Latinis.
In war,	{ bello, as well as in bello (especially if joined with an adj. or genit.).
In the battle of Cannæ,	pugnâ Cannensi (or with in).
A few days ago,	paucis his diebus.
A few days before (a past time spoken of),	{ paucis illis diebus.
To found,	condere, dīd, dīt.
To invest, blockade,	obsidere, eēd, sess.
To assault, storm,	oppugnare, āv, āt.
Spain,	Hispania, æ, f.
Supper (or rather, dinner),	cœna,* æ, f.
Poison,	venenum, i, n.
Starvation,	fames, is, f.
Hanging ('the rope'),	suspensum, i, n.

'after two completed years from his return, and before the completion of the third:' this however does not appear to be so. '*Octavo menses, quam captum oppugnari, captum Saguntum, &c. (Liv.) ἐν ὀκτῶ μηνί (Polyb.)*;' '*Tyrus septimo mense capta est (Curt.): πολιορκῶν ἐπὶ τὰ μῆνας (Plut.)*' 'after a siege of seven months' (*Clinton*).

\* Nearly so with *ante*: *Ante triennium quam Carthago deleteretur, M. Cato mortem obiit.* The use of the *subjunctive* here will be spoken of below. Obs. In this construction *postquam* is oftener followed by the *pluperfect* than by the perfect. (See 514.) The following is an example of the perfect: '*Nero natus est post novem menses quam Tiberius excessit.*' (*Suet.*)

† From *vesper, vesp̄eris*.

\* From *κοιμός*, *common*: the principal meal of the day.

## Exercise 48.

312. The city was *taken by storm* three years after the siege began.<sup>¶</sup> Hamilcar was slain nine years after he came (*had come*) into Spain. Carthage was destroyed seven hundred years after it was founded. He died the year after he was banished. Why did he go out in the evening? I will ask why he set out in the evening. Canius came to supper in good time. Is this said to have been done by night, or by day? He died a few years ago. He died the day after he had called upon me. He was killed the year after Saguntum was taken. Was not he killed in the battle of Cannæ? He set out at the time of the Latin Games. The town was taken five months after it began to be blockaded. *It is said*<sup>¶</sup> that Caius killed his slave by poison. Did he kill his slave by poison or by starvation? Has he not killed his enemy by the rope? I am afraid that Balbus has killed his slave by poison.

## XV.

## § 43. Place. Space.

313. (a) If the town *at which* a thing is done, is a *singular* noun of the *first* or *second* declension, it is put in the *genitive*: if not, in the *ablative*.<sup>¶</sup>

314. (b) In answer to *whither?* the place is put in the *accusative*: in answer to *whence?* in the *ablative*.

These rules apply only to the names of *towns* and *small islands*. Before other words *prepositions* must be used; and before *these*, when the name has an *adjective*.<sup>¶</sup>

315. *Urbs, oppidum, locus*, in apposition to the name of a town in the *genitive*, stand in the *ablative*.

316. Such combinations as '*school at Capua*,' '*Carthage in Africa*,' &c., are not admissible in Latin. But the name of the town must be gov-

¶ Say: 'after it began to be assaulted.'

¶ If *oppidum* or *urbs* come before the proper name, it must take a *preposition*. (Z.)

¶ In almost all the constructions of *time* and *space* the prepositions are occasionally expressed. Thus '*ab Epidauro*:' '*per totam noctem*:' &c.



erned by the preceding rules, and the other nouns governed by a *preposition*. (C.)

(Eng.) Running to his mother at Naples.

(Lat.) { Running to Naples *to* (prep.) his mother.  
Currens ad matrem Neapolim. (C.)

317. (c) *Local space* is expressed by the *accusative* : sometimes by the *ablative*.

With *distāre, exstāre, eminzre*, acc. or abl. is used (but not quite indifferently) : with *abesse, ex-dis-cēdere*, acc. should be used ; with *considere, castra facere*, the acc. or abl. ;<sup>a</sup> sometimes with prep. *a, ab*.

318. (a) *Vixi Romæ, Tarenti, Athenis, Gabiis, Tibure*, I have lived at Rome, Tarentum, Athens, Gabii, Tibur.

(b) *Legati Athenas missi sunt* : Ambassadors were sent to Athens.

*Fugit Tarquinius Corintho*, He fled to Tarquinii from Corinth.

(c) *Tridui viam processit*, He advanced a three days' march.

*Campus Marathon abest ab oppido Atheniensium circiter millia passuum decem*, The field of Marathon is about ten thousand paces from the city of Athens.  
*Bidui abest*, It is a two days' journey from us (iter understood).

*Milites aggerem latum pedes trecentos extruxerunt*, The soldiers threw up a mound three hundred feet broad (or, in breadth).

### 319. VOCABULARY 46.

A pace,	passus, ūs = 4 Eng. feet, 10.02 inches
A Roman mile of a thousand paces,	mille passus.
Miles,	millia passuum. (thousands of paces).
Two days,	biduum, i, n.
Three days,	triduum, i, n.
To be distant from ; to be at a distance of,	{ abesse, distāre, distit,
To be nearer ; not so far off,	propius abesse.
To post himself ; encamp,	considerē, sēd, sess.

<sup>a</sup> Zumpt says, 'If not the distance is to be expressed, but only a place to be designated by the circumstance of its distance, the *abl.* is used : ' in the eighth edit. of the original, he says, 'in the *acc.*, but the *abl.* is also correct.' (Cæs l. 48.)

<sup>v</sup> Distāre generally takes *a*.

To depart a finger's breadth,	transversum digitum discēdere.
As they say, as the saying is,	ut aiunt.
Carthage,	Carthāgo, inia, f.
Thebes,	Thebæ, ārum.

## Exercise 49.

(How must '*I am answered*' be translated? 235.)

320. He lived many years at Veii. The boy died at Carthage. My father and mother died at Thebes. Why did he set out for Rome in the evening? I have lived several years at Carthage. Might he not *have* lived at Rome? *I almost think* it would have been *better* for (*dat.*) the Roman people to have been contented with Sicily and Africa. They are building a wall two hundred feet high. The town is five (Roman) miles from Carthage. He has posted himself (at a distance of) four miles from Cæsar. Caius is nearer to Cæsar than Labienus. Are (then) you nearer to me than Labienus (*is*)? *I have been informed* that Cæsar is at a distance of two days' march from us. There is no doubt that the revilers of philosophy have been sufficiently answered. Does *he not deserve*<sup>1</sup> to be relieved from his debt? From this rule I may not depart a finger's breadth, as the saying is.\*

## XVI.

## § 44 On the Gerunds and the Participle in dus (Gerundive).

321. The *Gerund* is a *verbal substantive*, but with the *power of governing* what belongs to the other parts of the verb. Another peculiarity is, that it cannot take an adjective in agreement with it.

The Gerund corresponds, as far as it goes, with the English '*verbal substantive*,' or '*participial substantive in ing*,' but its use is far less extensive.\*

322. The *Gerundive* or *participle in dus* is nearly allied to the Gerund:

\* Transversum, ut ajunt, digitum.

\* The pupil cannot be taught too early or too carefully to distinguish the '*participial substantive*' from a participle. It may be *compound* as well as *simple*: every participle, except the *simple* past participle, having a substantive use. 'An affectation of *being distinguished*?' 'the pretext of their *having seized* some traders?' 'after his *having been tumbling* about in his mind one poor sentence?' 'an atonement for his *having been betrayed* into,' &c.

its meaning is *passive* denoting *necessity, fitness, or something intended*; what *must, should, or is to be done*.

323. (a) When the participle in *dus* is in the neuter gender with the third person sing. of *esse*, a whole conjugation may be formed to express what one *must, or should do*. The *person* is put in the dative.

324. ☞ In the *oblique* cases the part. in *dus* in agreement with a substantive, is nearly equivalent to a gerund *governing* that substantive in the case of its verb.

Of writing a letter, { scribendi epistolam.  
scribendæ epistolæ.

325. A whole conjugation may be formed with the *part. in dus* and *sum*.

Present { Amandus sum, *I am to be loved*.  
          { Amandus es, *thou art to be loved, &c.*  
Imperf. { Amandus eram, *I was to be loved*.  
          { Amandus eras, *thou wast to be loved, &c.*

Obs. *Amandus eram or fui* is generally to be rendered *should (or, ought to) have been loved*. The reason is this: a thing which *was* (then) a thing *to be loved*, is (now) a thing which *ought to have been loved*.

326. (a) Pres. Scribendum est, { *one must write*.  
  { *I, you, we, &c., must write*.

Sing. mihi scribendum est,<sup>a</sup> *I must write*.  
      tibi scribendum est, *thou must write*  
      illi scribendum est, *he must write*.

Plur. nobis scribendum est, *we must write*.  
      vobis scribendum est, *you must write*.  
      illis scribendum est, *they must write*.

Imperf. Scribendum erat { *one should have written*.  
                                  { *I, thou, we should have written*.  
      mihi scribendum erat, *I ought to have written*.  
      tibi scribendum erat, *thou oughtest to have written, &c.*

And so on for the other tenses.

327. (*Part. in dus* in agreement with a substantive.)

N. Epistola scribenda, *a letter to be written*.

G. epistolæ scribendæ, *of writing a letter*.

D. epistolæ scribendæ, *to or for writing a letter*.

Acc. (ad) epistolam scribendam, *to write a letter (or, to or for writing a letter)*.

Abl. epistolâ scribendâ,<sup>b</sup> *by writing a letter*.

<sup>a</sup> That is, '*it is to be written by me*,' according to the idiom by which the passive used *impersonally* is equivalent to the corresponding tenses of the active.

<sup>b</sup> It is not always that the *gerund* governing a case can be turned into the *gerundive* (partic. in *dus*); but only when the substantive in the case corresponding to the gerund would itself give a correct though imperfect meaning.

N. Auctores legendi, *authors to be read.*

G. auctorum legendorum, *of reading authors.*

D. auctoribus legendis, *to or for reading authors.*

Acc. (ad) auctores legendos, *to read authors (or, to or for reading authors).*

Abl. auctoribus legendis, *by reading authors.*

328. The *part. in dus* often appears to change its meaning, but it only appears to do so.

Scribendum est mihi (*it is to-be-written by me =*) *I must write.*

Consilium scribendæ epistolæ (*an intention with respect to a letter to-be-written =*) *an intention of writing a letter.*

329. (Eng.) We should all *praise* virtue.

(Lat.) Virtue is *to-be-praised* by all (*dat.*).

(Eng.) A time *to play.* Fit *to carry* burdens.

(Lat.) A time of playing. Fit for (*dat.*) burdens *to-be-carried.*

(Eng.) He is born *or inclined to act.*

(Lat.) He is born *or inclined for (ad) acting.*

330. [C. XXVI.] ¶ What is *in form* the *present participle active* is often 'the *participial substantive*' or gerund. It is always so, when it *governs* or is *governed*, instead of merely *agreeing*.

¶ What is *in form* the *infin. pass.* is often used as the *partic.* of the *ful. pass.* implying *possibility, duty, or necessity.*

### Exercise 50.

331. Man is born to understand and act. Caius is skilled in waging war. We learn by teaching. We should praise virtue even in an enemy. He has snatched away from me the hope of finishing the business. We are all *of us* desirous of seeing and hearing many things. Water is good<sup>e</sup> for drinking. Demosthenes was eagerly-desirous of hearing Plato. Pericles was admirably-skilled (*peritissimus*) in ruling the state. They adopt the resolution of setting the town on fire. Ought not glory to be

Thus in, 'I bring the dead to my recollection by reading the tombstones,' here I may use '*sepulcris legendis*,' because I bring them to my recollection *by means of the tombstones*, though *reading* is the particular way by which I effect this. But in, 'Themistocles rendered the sea safe *by chasing the pirates*,' I must say, '*prædones consecando*,' not '*prædonibus consecandis*,' because he did not make it safe *by means of the pirates*, but *only* by chasing them away. (G.) In the construction with the gerund, the *gerund* is *more emphatic* than the *gerundive* in the other construction. Whenever therefore the *participial substantive in ing* is *emphatic*, the gerund should be used.

\* *Utilis. Utilis, inutilis*, are followed by the *dative* of the gerund, or by the *acc.* with *ad*. Cicero generally uses *ad*.

preferred to riches? We must do this. Those persons are not to be heard, who teach (*præcipiunt*) that we should be angry with our enemies. We must all die. An orator must see *what* is becoming. We must take care to hurt (*subj.*) *nobody*.<sup>4</sup> We must not take cruel measures even against Caius.<sup>4</sup>

332. If a verb does not govern the *acc.*, the *part. in dus* cannot be used in agreement with its substantive.

In other words, such verbs have only an *impersonal* construction in the passive: as we must say, '*mendaci non creditur*,' so we must say, '*mendaci non credendum est*.'

(a) Hence to express 'we must' do, &c., with a verb that governs the *dat.* we must use the *part. in dus* in the neuter gender, retaining the object in the *dative*.

333. (b) But *fruendus*, *fungendus*, *potiendus*, *utendus*<sup>5</sup> are sometimes found in agreement with their substantives, because these words formerly governed the *acc.* When so used, they are generally in immediate agreement with their substantives.

As, *res fruenda*; *ad officium fungendum*, &c., but also '*fruenda etiam sapientia est*.'

334. The *gen. sing. masculine* of the *partic. in dus* is used with *sui*,<sup>6</sup> even when it is *plural* or *feminine singular*:

{ *purgandi sui causâ*, for the sake of clearing themselves. }  
{ *placandi tui*, of appeasing you (of a woman). }

335. (a) *Parcendum est inimicis*, *We must spare our enemies* (*our enemies are to be spared*).

(b) *Ea quæ utenda accepisti*, *Those things which you received to be used*.

*Utendum est cuique suo judicio (abl.)*, *Every man must use his own judgment*.

(c) (Peculiar constructions.)

*Inter bibendum*, *Whilst they are drinking*. *Solven-*  
*do esse (par, equal to, understood)*, *To be able to*


<sup>4</sup> Ne in Caium quidem, &c.

<sup>5</sup> So also *vescendus*, *gloriandus*, *medendus*, *pœnitendus*, *prudendus*.

<sup>6</sup> Other genitives plur. are found in the same way, '*diripiendi pomorum*,' &c. In some other instances the *gerund in di* appears to have a passive meaning; '*spes restituendi*,' the hope of being restored. (Z.)


<sup>7</sup> In a few passages the *acc.* of the *object* stands after this impersonal construction: '*Canes potius paucos et acres habendum, quam multos*.' (Varr.)

*pay.* Oneri ferendo<sup>b</sup> esse, *To be equal to bearing the burden.* Conservandæ libertatis esse, *To tend to the preservation of liberty.*

336. [C. XXVII.]  'I have to do it' must be translated by the part. in *dus*.

(*Eng.*) With whom *we have* to live.

(*Lat.*) With whom *it is to-be-lived* (quibuscum vivendum est).

[C. XXVIII.]  'It is,' followed by the *infin. pass.*, generally expresses *necessity, fitness*, or something *intended*; but sometimes mere *possibility*, to be translated by *possum*.

['The passage *is to be found* in the fifth book' = the passage *may or can be found* in the fifth book.]

### 337. VOCABULARY 47.

To overthrow,	evertĕre, vert, vers.
To occupy myself in; to be engaged in,	operam dāre. <sup>1</sup>
To preserve,	conservāre, āv, āt.
To study, devote oneself to,	studĕre, studu, ——— ( <i>dat.</i> ).
Literature,	literæ ( <i>pl.</i> ; also, a letter = an epistle).
To spend his time in,	tempus impendĕre, pend, pens ( <i>dat.</i> ).
To make it my first object or business,	id agĕre ('to be doing that' and nothing else; <sup>k</sup> agĕre, ĕg, act).
To plead a cause,	agĕre causam.
To feel thankful; to retain a grateful sense,	gratiam or gratias hābere.
To thank, return thanks,	gratias agĕrĕ.
To repay a kindness, to prove one's gratitude,	gratiam referre: fĕro, tūl, lāt (the person <i>to whom</i> must be in the <i>dat.</i> ).
To clear = excuse,	purgāre, āv, āt.

Oss. 'Should,' which the pupil has been taught to translate by *debeo* or *oportet*, must now be translated by the part. in *dus*, whenever it is not *emphatic*; whenever it might be turned into '*it is to be*,' &c.

### Exercise 51.

338. He is of opinion that these things tend (c) to the over-

<sup>b</sup> The *dat.* of the *purpose* is sometimes found instead of the acc. with *ad*: *distrahendo hosti*, or *ad distrahendum hostem*. When the verb governs an *object* in the *dat.*, the agent is sometimes expressed with *ab*, to avoid ambiguity:—Gives '*quibus a vobis consulendum est*.'—

Obs. Caius consulendus est (*must be consulted*): Cajo consulendum est (*the interests of Caius must be consulted*).

<sup>i</sup> Vacare (*to have leisure for*) is never used in this sense by the best writers (Hotting. Clc. Div. i. 6.)

<sup>k</sup> Followed by *ut* with subj.

throw of the state. Do these things tend to the preservation or the overthrow of the state? There is no doubt that (86) the state is not able to pay (c). It is the part of a Christian to spend his time in assisting<sup>1</sup> the wretched. Let us *consult the interests* of those with whom we *have to live*. I will inquire of Caius whether Balbus should be consulted. We must consult the interests of Balbus. It was owing to you<sup>22</sup> that the interests of Caius were not consulted. *I made it my first object* to (ut) preserve the Roman territory. I cannot repay your kindness. There is no doubt that he is going to thank you. I will inquire of Caius whose cause he is going to plead. Every animal *makes it its first object* to preserve itself. We must strive to conquer. Must we not repay the kindness of those from (prep. a) whom we have received benefits? I persuaded Caius to devote himself to literature. They had come into the camp for the purpose of clearing themselves (334). They had called upon Caius for the purpose of clearing themselves. There were some who *consulted the interests* of Caius.

## 339. VOCABULARY 48.

(Words following the construction of proper names of places.)

At home,	dōmi. <sup>m</sup>
From home,	dōmo.
Home,	dōmum. <sup>n</sup>
At my, your, another man's &c. house,	{ domi meæ, tuæ, alienæ, &c.
On the ground,	{ humi (which may follow a verb of either rest or motion).
In the field,	{ militiæ. <sup>o</sup>
Out of doors; out,	{ foras (after a verb of motion) foris (after other verbs).
To dine out,	foris cœnare.

<sup>1</sup> *Sublevandis*: as *subvenire*, *succurrere* govern a *dat.*, they cannot be put in agreement with their object.

<sup>m</sup> *Domus* is partly of the second, partly of the fourth, and has both forms in some cases. The following line gives the forms not in use:

Tolle *me*, *mu*, *mi*, *mis*, si declinare domus vis:

but it has *domi* for *at home*, &c.; though not for 'of the house.'

<sup>n</sup> Also 'to Pomponius's house,' Pomponii domum, without a preposition: 'to my house,' domum meam.

<sup>o</sup> *Bellī* and *militiæ* are used only in connection with *dōmi*: *bulō* however is used for *in war*. (Z.)

Into the country,	rus.
From the country,	rure.
In the country,	ruri ( <i>less commonly</i> , rure).
To return,	redire, eo, iv, it.
To return, turn back,	revertere, vert, vers; or reverti. <sup>p</sup>
To be reconciled to,	in gratiam redire cum aliquo.
To confer an obligation on (i. e. on a superior),	gratiam inire ab aliquo (Cic.), apud aliquem (Liv.) in eo.
Youth,	juventūs ūtis, f.; juventa, æ, f. Juventus, also 'the youth.' <sup>q</sup>
To cast forth,	projicere, jec, ject.
To resolve,	constituere, stitu, stitūt.
Approved (of valor), tried,	spectatus (lit. seen).

## Exercise 52.

340. Titus Manlius spent his youth in the country. When Tullius returns (*shall have returned*) from the country, I will send him to you. Quintus resolved to spend his life in the country. *On the day after he returned* from the country, he was accused of treason. He is the same in the field that (45 (b)) he has always been at home. He answered that Pomponia *was* supping out. Might he not have spent his life in the country? They (*illi*) kept their word both at home and in the field. He set out into the country. There is no doubt that he set out for the country in the evening. There is no doubt that he will cast these things out of doors. Diodorus lived many' years at my house. Balbus came to my house. Had you not rather be in your own house without' danger', than in another-man's with' danger'? There is no doubt that he was a person of most-approved' merit (*virtus*) both at home and in the field (p. 14, 14). It cannot be denied that he has resolved to turn back home. There is no doubt that you will confer an obligation upon Cæsar. Bal-

<sup>p</sup> Redire properly expresses the *continued action* which intervenes between the momentaneous actions of the *turning back* (reverti), and the *return* or *arrival home* (revenire). (D.) Redire is said of one who returns after having arrived at his journey's end and finished his business; reverti of one who turns back before he has completed his journey or business. (Ernesti.)

<sup>q</sup> Juventa, youth = the time of youth; juvenus (utis), youth = the time of youth; or, 'the youth' = the young men: Juventas, the goddess of youth. Cicero does not use juventa; but Livy and later writers use juventa for the *time of youth*, juvenus for the *youth*. (D.)



bus is already reconciled to Caius (*perf.*). We must succour the miserable. There is no doubt that a Christian should succour the miserable.\* There is no doubt that he threw these things (forth) on the ground *against his will*. The Roman youth were of approved valour in war

## XVII.

§ 45. *On the construction of Participles. (Ablative absolute.)*341. Every *attributive* word involves an assertion.

Thus 'a *fine* house' = a house *which is a fine* one. 'Charles's hat' = the hat *which belongs to Charles*, &c.

342. Thus then every participle makes an assertion in an *indirect* manner; it *assumes* it *attributively*, instead of *stating* it *predicatively*; that is, as a *formal proposition*.343. Whenever therefore it is convenient to express by a complete sentence the assertion *assumed* by a participle, we may do so, connecting it with the principal sentence by a *relative* pronoun, or a *conjunction* (or *conjunctive* adverb) of *time*, *cause*, *limitation*, &c.344. On the other hand, subordinate sentences connected with a principal one by *relative pronouns* or *conjunctions* (such as *when*, *after*, *if*, *since*, *because*, *although*, &c.), may often be expressed by *participles*.345. Since the use of the participle is far more extensive in Latin than in English, such sentences must very frequently be translated into Latin by *participles*. By this construction the Latin gains more compactness and power of compression than the English possesses, but with an occasional *vagueness* from which our language is free.<sup>r</sup>

\* See page 121, note b.

<sup>r</sup> Since in the *attributive* combination no particle of connection is expressed, its relation to the principal parts of the sentence must be gathered from the general meaning of the author. An instructive example of the possibility of *misconnecting* occurs in a late review of *Tate's Horace* (Quart. Rev. No. cxxiv.) Speaking of the passage,

Causa fuit pater his, qui *macro pauper agello*

Noluit in Flavi ludum me mittere, &c. (Sat. I. 6, 71.)

the reviewer, understanding the meaning to be, *BECAUSE the father's means were slender, he would not send his son to a provincial school, but carried him to Rome*—proceeds to consider, *how* education could be cheaper in the capital than in the country. If the critic had but construed the passage correctly, he would have found no grounds in it for speculating about *foundation schools*, &c. at Rome, but have remained satisfied with the obvious meaning, that, 'THOUGH the father'

346. When a participle does not refer to a *noun* or *pronoun* already governed or governing in the sentence, it is *put in the ablative* in agreement with its own *noun*.

(a) An ablative thus unconnected with the general structure of the clause in which it stands, is called an *ablative absolute*.

(β) In turning a subordinate sentence into the participial construction, if the *nominative* of the subordinate sentence be not a *noun occurring in the principal sentence*, or a *pronoun representing such a noun*, the construction must be the *ablative absolute*.

347. EXAMPLES.

- |             |  |   |      |
|-------------|--|---|------|
| (1)         | { Nobody <i>who considers</i> this, will hesitate.                     | } | I.   |
|             | { Nobody <i>considering</i> this, will hesitate.                       |   |      |
| (2)         | { Nobody, <i>if Caius considers</i> this, will escape.                 | } |      |
| (abl. abs.) | { Nobody, <i>Caius considering</i> this, will escape.                  |   |      |
| (1)         | { Alexander, <i>after he had taken</i> Tyre, marched on, &c.           | } | II.  |
|             | { Alexander, <i>having taken</i> Tyre, marched on, &c.                 |   |      |
| (2)         | { The King, when <i>Alexander had taken</i> Tyre, retired, &c.         | } |      |
| (abl. abs.) | { The King, <i>Tyre being taken</i> by Alexander, retired, &c.         |   |      |
| (1)         | { I desire joys <i>which will last</i> for ever.                       | } | III. |
|             | { I desire joys <i>about-to-last</i> for ever.                         |   |      |
| (2)         | { I desire heaven, because <i>its joys will last</i> for ever.         | } |      |
| (abl. abs.) | { I desire heaven, <i>its joys being about-to-last</i> for ever.       |   |      |
| (1)         | { We miss many things, though <i>they stare</i> us in the face.        | } | IV.  |
|             | { We miss many things <i>staring</i> us in the face.                   |   |      |
| (2)         | { We miss many things, though <i>some truths stare</i> us in the face. | } |      |
| (abl. abs.) | { We miss many things, <i>some truths staring</i> us in the face.      |   |      |

348. VOCABULARY 49. (Preposition *a*, *ab*, *abs.*)

A before consonants: *ab* before vowels and sometimes before the consonants in *hilaris* and *j*; *abs* is much less commonly used, except before *te*,\* and never except before *t* and *qu*.

The meanings of *a* are (1) *from*; (2) *by*, governing the *agent* after pass. verbs; (3) *after*; (4) *on* or *at*, of relative position; (5) *on the side* or *part of*; (6) *in point of*; (7) the *office* held.

From a boy,	a puero.
Immediately <i>after</i> the battle,	confestim a prœlio. <sup>†</sup>
In front,	a fronte (frons, tis, f. et m. 'forehead').

*means were slender,* he nevertheless would not send his son to a school that was thought good enough for the children of great centurions, &c., but resolved to give him the best education the capital could afford.

\* *Butler* says that it is found before all the consonants except *b*.

† *Pugna* is any battle, from a single combat to the general engagement of large armies: *prælium* is an engagement of troops. *Döderlein* seems to confine the meaning of *prælium* too much, when he makes it only the 'occasional engagement of particular divisions of an army:' for *Nepos* says, 'illustrissimum est prælium apud Platæas.' *Acies* when used of a battle is a general engagement.

In flank,	a latere <sup>u</sup> (latus, eris, n. 'side').
In the rear,	a tergo.
At two miles distance; two miles off,	a millibus passuum duobus.
So near home,	tam prope a dñmo.
To make for us,	a nobis facere.
To be on our side; to stand on our side,	a nobis stare.
To be of a man's party,	ab aliquo sentire; sens, sens.
An amanuensis,	a manu servus. <sup>v</sup>
Again from the beginning; all over again,	ab integro (integer, gra, grum, whole).

## Exercise 53.

[Oss. A (p) prefixed to a clause, indicates that it is to be translated participially.]

349. Let us oppose the evils <sup>p</sup> that are coming'. Must we spare even <sup>p</sup> those who resist (us)? [No.] We must spare them even <sup>p</sup> though they should resist (us). I must not despair <sup>p</sup> if (but a) few stand on my side. Timotheus increased by (his) many virtues the glory <sup>p</sup> which he had received from his father'. Caius, <sup>p</sup> after he was banished, lived many years at Athens. The father, <sup>p</sup> after his son was banished, lived many years at Carthage. We do not believe<sup>w</sup> a liar, even <sup>p</sup> when he speaks the truth. The father turned back, <sup>p</sup> because he feared *for* his son (231). Caius, <sup>p</sup> who was accused of treason, has been acquitted of the capital charge.<sup>41</sup> Why did you turn back so near home? The Gauls attack the Romans in the rear. Ariovistus posted himself at about two miles off. He took Massilia <sup>p</sup> after it had been blockaded two years. A treaty was ratified <sup>p</sup> after the city had been besieged for two years. Do not these (arguments) make for us? Scipio immediately after the battle returned to the sea. Almost from a boy he has devoted himself to literature.

## § 46. The Participle continued.

350. (a) The participle of the *future in rus* often expresses the purpose with which a person acts.

<sup>u</sup> On the flanks (a lateribus).

<sup>v</sup> So, *ab epistolis*, a secretary: *a rationibus*, a steward or accountant.

<sup>w</sup> We believe a liar, *not even*, &c. (ne — quidem).

351. (b) The *participle in dus* often expresses the *end* or *purpose for which a thing is done*.

(a) This is especially the case after *causare* (to *cause* a thing to be done) and verbs of *giving, receiving, sending, undertaking*. In English the *infin. active* is often used where the *infin. passive* would be allowable, but less common.

(β) He gave them the country to dwell in.

(Or) He gave them the country to be dwelt in (by them).

352. Of two connected sentences, one may often be got rid of by turning its verb into a participle.

Of course the *more emphatic* should be retained: for instance that which is the *effect* rather than that which is the *cause*; that which is the *consequence* rather than that which is the *condition*; that which is *posterior in point of time* rather than that which *precedes it*.

353. It is a peculiarity of the English language, that we use a *present participle* when, though two events are *closely connected*, yet that represented by the participle must be *over* before the other begins.

[C. xxx.] A *present participle* must be translated by a *perfect participle* (or its substitute, *quum* with *perf.* or *pluperf. subj.*) when the action expressed by it must be *over*, before that expressed by the verb *begins*.

#### EXAMPLES.

354. (a) I write to aid the student.

(part.) I write *going-to-aid* the student (*adjuturus*). } I.

(b) He gave them the country to dwell in.

(part.) He gave them the country *to-be-dwelt-in* (*habitandum*). } II.

355. He apprehended them and took them to Rome. } III.

(part.) He took them *apprehended* to Rome.

He took up the bundle and ran off.

(abl. abs.) The bundle being taken up, he ran off. } IV.

(Eng.) Leaping from his horse, he embraced him.

(Lat.) Having leapt from his horse, he embraced him.

#### 356. VOCABULARY 50.

To cause to be done; to have a thing done, } aliquid faciendum curāre.

To contract to build, } aliquid faciendum construere

To let a thing out to be built by contract, } aliquid faciendum locāre.

A sentence, } sententia, æ, f.

To corrupt, } corrumpere, rūp, rupt.

To learn by heart, } ediscere, edidici (no sup.)

To repair, } reficere, io, fēc, fect.

To pull down, } diruere, ru, rūt.

Bridge, } pons, pontis, m.

*Exercise 54.*

357. Conon causes the walls \* which had been pulled down by Lysander,\* \* to be repaired. He undertook \* to corrupt Epaminondas with money. For how much will you undertake \* to corrupt Balbus? He had contracted \* to build a bridge. He gave Cyrus to Harpagus \* to be killed. Carvilius, when<sup>27</sup> consul, had let out the temple (*ædes*\*) of Fortune (*Fortuna*) \* to be built by contract. We give boys sentences \* to learn by heart (354, b). He has set out for Rome \* to free his son from debt. I cannot but think<sup>18</sup> you corrupted by gold. Forgetting<sup>11</sup> the benefits which he received from Caius, he took cruel measures against him. (Begin with *relat. clause* ; 30, 31.) He says that it is not<sup>2</sup> necessary to make haste. There are some who<sup>109</sup> have turned-back home.

§ 47. *The Participle continued. The Supines.*

358. (a) No Latin verb (except the *deponents* and *neuter-passives*) has a participle of the *perfect active*. Hence this participle must be translated by the (passive) *past participle* put absolutely, or by *quum* with the perfect or pluperfect *subjunctive*.

359. (b) An English substantive may often be translated by a participle.

It is very frequently necessary to translate *abstract nouns* expressing a mode of action in this way ; as such nouns are comparatively seldom used in Latin.

360. (c) So also the '*participial substantive*' may often be translated not only

\* G. *Lysandri*.

† *Ædes* and *templum* are both a *temple* : but in the former it is considered as the *one principal building* which is the dwelling-place of the God ; in the latter as the *whole temple*, with all its buildings, courts, &c. *Ædes* in the *sing.* has generally the adj. *sacra* with it, or the name of the Deity : *Jovis, Minerva, &c.* *Fanum* is a spot *consecrated* for the erection of a temple by the augurs ; and hence the temple itself, considered as a consecrated place, '*a sanctuary*.' *Delubrum* was either the temple itself, as a place of expiation and purification ; or, according to others, the part of the temple where the image of the Deity stood ; the *shrine*. *Templum* is from *τέμνω, τέμνω (cut)*, a portion '*cut off*' by the augurs ; *delubrum* probably from *de-luo, to wash away* : Döderlein thinks that *fanum* is the German *Bann*, Engl. *ban*.

by the *participle in dus*, but by other participles. This is a common way of translating it when it is under the government of '*without*.'

361. After '*to hear*' and '*to see*' the *present infin. active* must be translated into Latin by the *present participle active*.

362. When the participle of an *abl. absol.* is '*being*,' it is omitted in Latin, and *two substantives*, or a *substantive and adjective*, are put together in the *ablative*.

362.\* The supine in *um* (*act.*) follows verbs of *motion*: the supine in *u* (*virtually*, though not really *pass.*) follows a few adjectives (such as *best*, *difficult*, &c.), and the substantives *fas*, *nefas*, &c.

a) The supine in *um* with *ire* means '*to go about to*,' &c., implying *effort* and *exertion*.

363. (a) (*Eng.*) Cæsar, *having crossed the Rubicon*, marched to Rome.

(*Lat.*) { Cæsar, *the Rubicon being crossed*, marched to Rome.

or, Cæsar, *when he had crossed the Rubicon*, marched to Rome

(b) 1. Tarquinius, *after his banishment from Rome*, &c.

Tarquinius, *being banished from Rome*.

2. *After the banishment of Tarquinius*, consuls were elected.

(*abl. abs.*) *Tarquinius being banished*, } consuls were elected.

(or) *After Tarquinius banished*, } consuls were elected.

(*Tarquiniū expulso; or, post Tarquiniū expulsum.*)

(*Eng.*) From the foundation of Rome, } a Romā conditā.

(*Lat.*) *From Rome founded*,

(*So, ante Romam conditam, &c.*)

(*Eng.*) By the practice of virtue, } virtute cultā.

(*Lat.*) By virtue practised,

(*Virtute colendā, by practising virtue.*)

(*Eng.*) A reward for *having despised* the deity; or, *for contempt of* the deity

(*Lat.* A reward of (= for) *the deity despised* (*spreti numinis merces*).

(c) (*Eng.*) He assists others *without robbing* himself.

(*Lat.*) He assists others, *not robbing* himself (*se ipsum non spolians*).

(*Eng.*) He goes away *without your perceiving* it.

(*Lat.*) He goes away, *you not perceiving* it (*te non sentiente*).

(*Eng.*) He goes away *without scolding* any body.

(*Lat.*) He goes away, *nobody being saluted* (*nemine salutato*).

(*Eng.*) He condemns him *without hearing* him.

(*Lat.*) He condemns him *unheard* (*inauditum*).

### 364. VOCABULARY 51.

At the suggestion of the Magi,

Magis auctoribus (*auctor*, an adviser)

Under your guidance,

{ te duce (you being our leader: *dux*, *du-*  
*cis*, *m. et f.*)

In the reign of Herod,

Herōde rege.\*

\* On *nemini*, *nemine*, see the index under '*Nobody*.'

\* Or, *Herode regnante*. If the *reign* were that of a Roman Emperor, *imperante* must be used.

Against the will of Caius,	Caio invito.
In the life-time of Augustus,	Augusto vivo.
I have completed the work,	opus absolutum habeo.*
I plainly see through his design,	consilium ejus perspectum habeo.
It cannot be said without implety,	nēfas est dictu.
It may be said without implety,	fas est dictu.
Hard to find,	difficilis inventu.

365. [C. xxxi.] ⚔ The English *present part. act.* is generally translated by the Latin *past partic.* when the verb is *deponent*.

This arises from the principle given in 353, and from this: that the Romans spoke of a *feeling as over*, the moment it *had been felt*; and of a *mental operation as over*, the moment it *was performed*; whereas *we* should describe both as *present*; as *now going on*.

### Exercise 55.

[Which word for *to light* should be used of a funeral pile? 299, h.]

366. ♀ If nature opposes, you will strive to no purpose. Pythagoras came into Italy ♀ in the reign of Tarquinius Superbus. ♀ After Dion (G. *Dionis*) was killed at Syracuse, Dionysius gained possession of the city. Æneas, ♀ after the taking of Troy by the Greeks, came into Italy. The slave, having lighted the funeral pile, cast himself at his master's feet.<sup>51</sup> They returned to Veii ♀ without waiting for the army of the Romans. They could scarcely be restrained from<sup>17</sup> condemning you to death *without hearing you*. At the suggestion of Caius, Balbus pretended to be mad.<sup>5</sup> I am afraid that I do not<sup>52</sup> see through Balbus's design. The son died ♀ after the banishment of his father. He pretends that he has finished the work. I have now finished the work which I promised to perform<sup>5</sup> (*Invert*). ♀ After the taking of Massilia by storm, a league was made (*Express post*). Was (then) man born ♀ to drink wine? You have recovered from a severe disease ♀ by drinking water. I heard Caius cry out, that it *was all over with* the army. Is virtue hard to *find*? [No.] You will do what shall seem best to be done. Why do you go about to destroy yourself? They sent to Delphi, to consult (*sup.*) what should be done.

---

\* From this idiom, which dwells more on the *possession* of the completed action than on its *mere completion*, arose the perfect with *have* in our own and other modern languages.

## XVIII.

§ 48. *Pronouns.*

367. (a) 'Own,' when it is to be more strongly expressed than by *meus, tuus, suus, &c.*, must be translated by *ipsius* or *ipsorum* ('as one or more are meant) after those pronouns.

368. (b) *Self, —selves, &c.*, in an oblique case are often translated by *ipse* and a personal pronoun together; the *ipse* being in the *nom.* if the meaning is that *that* agent did it; in the case of the personal pronoun, if his doing it to *himself* is the stronger notion.

369. Properly *sui* relates to the nominative case of its own verb; but it may be used, in a dependent clause, for the nominative of the principal verb, when either the grammar or the sense would prevent its being referred to the verb of its own clause.

370. (c) Hence in a *dependent* sentence, that expresses some *thought* or *purpose* of the subject of the principal sentence—

*His, him, her, their*, denoting the nominative of the principal sentence, should be translated by *sui* or *suus*, whenever (from the *grammar* or the *obvious sense*) there would be no danger of understanding it to mean the *nominative of its own verb*.

*His, him, her, their*, denoting the nominative of the principal sentence, must be translated by *ipse*, when there *would be danger* of understanding *sui* or *suus* to mean the nominative of its own verb.

371. (d) *Suus* often refers to an oblique case, especially when *quisque* or *unusquisque* is used.

372. **Obs.** *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are to be used (not *nostri, vestri*) when 'of us,' 'of you' = 'out of us,' 'out of you;' that is to say, after *partitives* (including *numerals, comparatives, and superlatives*).<sup>b</sup>

373. (a) *Mea ipsius culpa, My own fault.*

*Nostra ipsorum culpa, Our own fault.*

(b) *Me ipse consolor, I console myself.*

*Se ipsos omnes naturâ diligunt, All men naturally love themselves.*

<sup>b</sup> *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are also used when they have *omnium* in agreement, *omnium nostrum, &c.*

\* The cases of the personal pronouns (except *tu* and the *genitives plural*) are



- (c) Cicero effecerat, ut Q. Curius consilia Catilinæ sibi proderet, *Cicero had induced Q. Curius to betray to him (Cicero) the designs of Catiline.*

(It being obviously absurd to suppose that Curius was to betray them to Curius.)

Persæ, mortuo Alexandro, non alium, qui imperaret ipsis, digniorem fuisse confitebantur, *The Persians, after the death of Alexander, confessed that nobody had ever better deserved to rule over them.*

(Qui imperaret sibi, might have meant 'a fitter person to govern himself.')

- (d) Hannibalem sui cives e civitate ejecerunt, *Hannibal was banished by his fellow-citizens.*

### §74. VOCABULARY 52.

To befall, happen,	accidēre, <sup>d</sup> cīd, (dat).
To happen, turn out,	evēnīre, vēm, vent.
To happen (of <i>fortunate</i> events),	contingēre, tīg, tact, (dat.).
It was this man's good fortune,	huic contigit ut, &c.
To restore liberty to his country,	patriam in libertatem vindicāre.
To defend (a <i>thing</i> or <i>person</i> if actually attacked),	} defendēre, fend, fens.
To defend (a <i>thing</i> or <i>person</i> , if and whenever it is attacked; )	
to take under one's protection,	} tuērī, <sup>e</sup> tuītus et tutus.
His own friends, or adherents,	sui (plur.).
For its own sake,	propter sese.

sometimes strengthened by 'met' to signify *self*, with or without *ipse*: *mihi met ipsi, sibi met ipsis, nobismet ipsis, de memet ipso*, &c. *Se* is also doubled into *sese*: for *tumet*, *tute* is said. Matthiæ says, that Cic. never puts *ipse* in the nom. after this appended *met*.

<sup>a</sup> *Accidēre* and *evēnīre* are said of any occurrences whatever; *contingēre*, *obvenīre*, and *obtingere*, only of *fortunate* ones. But *accidentia* are occurrences that take us by surprise; *evenientia* those that are expected. *Accidentia* are represented as the effects of chance; *evenientia* as the results of preceding actions or events; *contingentia* as favours conferred upon us by good fortune; *obtingentia* and *obvenientia* as advantages falling to our lot. (D.) From the use of *contingere* to describe the happening of fortunate occurrences, *accidere* would come to be generally used of unfortunate ones.

\* Neither is in itself stronger than the other; for as the *defendens* shows more spirit and strength in resisting an actual danger, so the *tuens* shows more care and affection in endeavouring to prevent an anticipated one. (D.)

*Exercise 56.*

[How is *through* to be translated, when it expresses the *cause*? (261)]

375. The mind is a part of me. The better part of you is immortal. Let none of us doubt that it is expedient to obey the laws of virtue. Which of you is believed? Many evils have befallen me through (*abl.*) my own fault. Do not many evils happen to us by our own fault? All men favour themselves. These evils may have happened to us (129 (*a*)) through our own fault. It cannot be denied that the mind is a part of ourselves (*of us*). I will pray Caius to *take* my cause *under his protection*. Ought he not to have commanded himself? *It is not every man who can* command himself. He is an enemy to himself. We should practise justice for its own sake. They prayed Artabazus to take their cause under his protection. He was called king by his own adherents. *It was this man's good fortune* to restore liberty to his country. I *fear* that he will *not* be able to restore liberty to his country. They ask to be allowed to take all their property with them. There are some<sup>109</sup> who favour themselves.

§ 49. *Pronouns continued.* (Is, hic, iste, ille.)

376. (*a*) *He, she, it; they*, are translated by *is, ea, id*, when they merely stand for a person or thing either *before mentioned* or *about to be described* by a *relative clause*.

'*Is*,' is wholly without emphasis, or the power of *distinguishing* one object from another. One of its main duties is to act as a mere antecedent to the relative.<sup>5</sup>

377. When used to distinguish objects, *hic* denotes the nearest, *ille* the most remote, *iste* that which is the nearest to the party addressed.

c) *Iste* may be considered as the demonstrative of the second person = 'that of yours,' 'that which is *known* to (or *concerns*) you.'

<sup>1</sup> *Ipsorum*: for *suam* might mean, they prayed him to support *his own* cause.

<sup>5</sup> '*Is qui pugnāt*' means '*the combatant*' or '*a combatant*' (accordingly as he has been mentioned, or not mentioned before): while '*hic qui pugnāt*, '*ille qui pugnāt*,' signify respectively '*this combatant*,' '*yonder combatant*.'

373. From this power of denoting comparative *nearness* and *remoteness* (whether in *space* or *time*), *hic* and *ille* are used to discriminate between the different words that form the subject of discourse. Thus then,

Of two things already mentioned, *hic* relates to the *nearer*, the *latter*; *ille* to the *more remote*, the *former*.<sup>a</sup>

*Hic*, referring to what *immediately precedes*, must occupy a very early, if not the first place in its sentence.

379. While *hic* refers to what has just come from the *pen* (or *mouth*), *ille* may be opposed to it in another direction, and introduce some new matter.

380. So also *hic* may refer to *what follows*, but it must then descend from its prominent place at the beginning of the sentence, to occupy one equally emphatic either at, or very near, the end.

381. '*Ille*,' from relating to the *past*, may denote that *which has long been known, whether favourably or unfavourably*.

(b) Here *ille* = *the well known; the famous*.

382. In *letters*, *iste* relates to the place where *the person addressed* is residing, and to the things that concern him: in *trials*, *iste* denotes the *opposite party*, as long as he is directly addressed; but when the speaker turns to the judges, he may use *hic* to denote the opposite party. (G.)

As *ille* may mean '*whom all know*,' so *iste* may mean '*whom you know*,' whether for good or not.<sup>b</sup> So also *hic* may mean '*whom you or I see before us*.'

383. (d) '*Ille*' is used before '*quidem*,' where *we* use '*it is true*,' '*indeed*,' to make some *partial concession*, to be followed by a '*but*.'

384. (a) *Dionysius servus meus aufugit: is est in provinciâ tuâ, Dionysius, a slave of mine, has run away: he is in your province.*

- (b) *Medea illa, The famous Medea. Magnus ille Alexander, The celebrated Alexander the Great.*

<sup>a</sup> Of the passages where *hic* relates to the more remote word of a sentence, all probably may be explained by one or other of these considerations:—(1) The well-known order of the *actual occurrence* or *existence* of the things may be reversed in the sentence. (G.) (2) *Hic* may denote *what is before our eyes*. (3) Or *hic* may denote '*id de quo potissimum agimus*.' (*Raschig ad Liv. xxiv. 29.*)

<sup>b</sup> *Ille* can never perform the part of a mere antecedent to the relative (= *is*); and the employment of *hic* for this purpose must be confined to those cases where the relative clause precedes (see 30, (c)), so that here too it supports its ordinary character of referring to what has just been mentioned.

<sup>c</sup> In this way *iste* is often used to express contempt, but by no means always

(c) *Ista*, civitas, That *state* of yours.

(d) Non sine ratione *ille quidem*, sed tamen, &c., *Non* without reason it is true, but yet, &c.

385. VOCABULARY 53.

And that too,	et is; <sup>1</sup> isque; et idem, idemque.
Nor that; and that too not,	nec is.
That only,	{ is <sup>m</sup> demum ( <i>that at length</i> , as if the others had been travelled through before this was arrived at).
To know,	scire, <sup>a</sup> sciv, scit.
To know = to be acquainted with,	{ nōvisse, nosse ( <i>perf. of noscēre</i> , to learn to know, to make acquaintance with).
To know thoroughly by experience; to be conversant with,	{ callēre, ui ( <i>properly, to be hard</i> , as a hand becomes by much manual labour; <i>acc.</i> ).
To take away,	{ adimēre <sup>c</sup> ( <i>of good things</i> ) eximēre ( <i>of bad things</i> ) ēm, empt. They govern the <i>dat.</i> of that <i>from</i> which.
To make a beginning with,	facere initium a.
Of a common kind,	vulgaris, is, e.

Exercise 57.

386. He has killed both his father and his mother; the former by poison, the latter by starvation. What prevents him from making a beginning *with* himself? This<sup>m</sup> only is true wisdom, to command oneself. What<sup>m</sup> true wisdom is, the wise only know. Do you know Caius? I will ask what true wisdom is. At how much is *that state of yours* to be valued, from which the good and wise have been banished? I doubt whether *this* is true happiness or not. I have had an interview with Caius: he *says* that he has

<sup>1</sup> Some scholars doubt the existence of the forms *ii* and *iis*. *Grotendorf* gives *dat. eis* (also *iis*): Zumpt (in his eighth edit.) *ii* (*ei*), *iis* (*eis*); adding that the former are the more common, and generally written in MSS. with a single *i*.

<sup>a</sup> When *is*, *hic*, or *qui*, &c. stands as the *subject* of an *apposition-verb* (150), it generally agrees with the following noun, where we might suppose it to agree with '*thing*.' ["*Ea demum est vera felicitas.*"]

<sup>b</sup> *Scire* relates to a *proposition*; if followed by an accusative only, it is a *neut. pronoun*, or *nihil*. It expresses actually acquired *knowledge*. *Nosse* is to have become acquainted with the signs and marks by which a thing may be known: it 'describes therefore knowledge as the result of external or internal *perception*.'

R.) Hence *nosse* is often followed by the accusative of a noun.

<sup>c</sup> *Demitur* quidlibet; *ddimuntur* bona; *eximuntur* mala. (D.)

**not** seen the man. Do not take away from me my liberty. That (*famous*) Plato has taken away from me all fear of death. Apollo admonishes us to become acquainted with ourselves. It is not every one who can<sup>2</sup> know himself. Those good things which can be taken away, are not really good things.<sup>3</sup> Having set my son<sup>4</sup> at liberty, he has taken away all my<sup>5</sup> care. I have been praised by a good man it is true (*d*), but (one who is) unskilled in these matters. Christians after death will enjoy a happy life, and *that too* an eternal one. He has always devoted himself to literature, and that too of no<sup>6</sup> common kind.

## 387. VOCABULARY 54.

Also,	(may often be translated by) <i>idem</i> . <sup>7</sup>
This <i>or</i> that, as well as some other,	<i>et ipse</i> .
Where you are ; in your neigh- bourhood,	} <i>istic</i> .
Even <i>or</i> very ( <i>with</i> that),	<i>ipse</i> ; <i>illud ipsum</i> <sup>8</sup> ('even that').
To join battle with, to give bat- tle to,	} <i>proelium committere cum</i> .
To your neighbourhood ; to where you are,	} <i>isto, or istuc</i> . <sup>9</sup>
From your neighbourhood ; from where you are,	} <i>istinc</i> .
Proud,	<i>superbus, a, um</i> .

## Exercise 58.

[How must '*I am believed*' be translated ? 285.]

388. Those whom we love, we also wish to be happy. Let him who commands others, learn also to command himself. Are (then) liars believed in your neighbourhood ? Those who come from your neighbourhood, say that you are proud. It is not becoming for<sup>10</sup> a Christian to be proud. I had already set out to

<sup>7</sup> Say : 'are not true good (things).'

<sup>8</sup> Say : 'all care *from me*.'

<sup>9</sup> *Nihil est liberale, quod non idem justum* (which is not *also* just).

<sup>10</sup> To justify the use of *ille* (to denote *any* thing, provided it did not *immediately* precede) there must always be an *intermediate* object to which *hic* is applicable : yet, not if the remote event be one of *general notoriety*. "Quid T. Albutius ? uonne æquissimo animo Athenis exsul philosophabatur ? cui tamen *illud ipsum* numquam accidisset si, &c." (*De Fin.* v. 108.)

<sup>11</sup> Adverbs of motion *to* a place end in *o* or *uc* ; of motion *from*, in *inc*, *nde*.

your neighbourhood. Even that would never have befallen me in your lifetime. A Christian may not be proud. Do not join battle. I fear the Romans will *not* be willing to join battle with the Gauls. It cannot be denied *that* justice should be practised for its own sake. It remains, that I should give battle to the Gauls. It follows, that it is a difficult thing to know oneself. I know that in your neighbourhood you both are wise and seem (so.) Such<sup>10</sup> a war was undertaken, as Rome had never before seen.

§ 50. *Pronouns continued. (On the translation of 'any.')*

389. 'Any' when all are *excluded* is *quisquam* or *ullus*.

390. 'Any' when all are *included* is *quisvis*<sup>u</sup> or *quilibet*.

(a) All are *excluded* in sentences that are *really* or *virtually*<sup>v</sup> *negative*; and after *vix* (*scarcely*), *sine* (*without*).

(β) All are *included* when 'any' means 'any you please,' 'every.'

(γ) 'Quisquam' is used *without*, 'ullus' generally *with* a substantive.

*Quisquam* may however be used with designations of men (*homo, civis*), &c.

391. (b) 'Any' after *si, nisi, num, ne, quo, quanto*, is the indefinite *quis*; <sup>u</sup> of which the feminine singular and neut. plur. are *quæ* or *qua*, after *si, num, ne* (and *ec*).<sup>\*</sup>

<sup>u</sup> In *quisvis* (and *utervis*) a *deliberate* and *thoughtful* choice is supposed, in *quibet* (and *uterlibet*) a *blind* and *inconsiderate* one.—*Quilibet* generally carries with it some expression of contempt. (D. after *Lachmann*.)

<sup>v</sup> Sentences that are *virtually* negative (that is, *as good as* negative) are (1) such *questions* as expect the answer 'no,' and are asked not for *information* but *assent*; thus, 'can any man believe this?' = 'no man surely can believe this;' (2) *comparative sentences*; 'he was taller than any of his friends' = 'none of his friends was so tall as he.'—With respect to *sine*, *aliquis* should follow it in a *negative* sentence (in which it is to be considered *positive*), and *ullus* in a *positive* sentence (in which it is to be considered *negative*). (G.)

<sup>u</sup> *Quisquam* sometimes follows *si*, but it then generally implies that the *existence* of the exception is very doubtful. And even without *si* it is used to express *any single* person or thing. "Quamdiu quisquam erit, qui te audeat defendere, vives." Such expressions as 'sine omni curâ' for 'sine ulla curâ' are only found in *Plautus* and *Terence*. In *Cicero* 'sine omni curâ' would mean 'without *all* (imaginable) care.'

<sup>\*</sup> Whether *quæ* or *qua* should be preferred, is a disputed point. The poets use *qua* with *few exceptions*. (Z.) The form *qui* is also used in the sing. *nom. masc.*: *si qui, equi*. Even *aliqui* (= *aliquis*) is found in a few passages of *Cicero*.

{But *aliquis* follows these particles when the *any* or *some* is *emphatic*.}

392. 'Any' is translated by *aliquis*\* or *quispiam*, when it means 'some one or other,' 'some.'

393. (d) The indefinite article 'a' may sometimes be translated by *quidam*, *aliquis*, or *quispiam*,<sup>†</sup> when 'a certain' or 'some' might be substituted for 'a.'

394. (e) *Nescio quis* (the *quis* agreeing with the subst.) is sometimes used for *quidam*, but it generally carries with it some notion of *contempt* or of *indifference* at least.

(Eng.) Henry, Charles and John.

(Lat.) Henry, Charles, John. Or, Henry and Charles and John.

395. (a) *Solis candor illustrior est quam ullius ignis*, *The brightness of the sun is more intense than that of any fire*.

*An quisquam potest sine perturbatione mentis irasci?*  
*Can (then) any man be angry without some mental agitation?*

(b) *Num quis irascitur infantibus?* *Is any body angry with infants?*

(c) *Quodlibet pro patriâ, parentibus, amicis, adire periculum . . . oportet*, *We ought to encounter any danger for our country, our parents, and our friends*.

*Mihi quidvis sat est*, *Any thing is enough for me*.

(d) *Agricola quispiam*, *Some husbandman (any, or a, husbandman)*. *Pictor aliquis*, *Any, or a, painter*.

(e) *Prope me hic nescio quis loquitur*, *Some body or other is talking here near me*.

### 396. VOCABULARY 55.

Every body,

} *quisque*,<sup>\*</sup> *quæque*, *quodque*; G. *cuiusque*.

\* If 'some' is emphatic = *some at least*, though but *little*, or of a bad *quality*, *aliquis* should be used.

† When *quidam* expresses 'a' it implies 'a certain' one, though it is unnecessary, perhaps impossible, to name it: *quispiam* and *aliquis* do not imply an allusion to a *particular* individual.

\* *Quisque* is a sort of enclitic, and therefore never stands at the beginning of a sentence in prose, and seldom even in poetry. The corresponding *emphatic* form is '*unusquisque*,' 'each particular one.'

Every body who ; whoever,	{ quisquis, ——— quidquid (quidquid, every thing that ; whatever).
Whatever ; every—that,	{ quicumque, <sup>a</sup> quæcunque, quodcunque G. cujuscunque, &c
Why ?	quid ?
How ?	quid ?
Somebody = a person of consequence,	{ aliquis, aliqua, aliquod ; G. alicujus.
At once—and,	idem—idem. <sup>b</sup>
Any one man,	quisvis unus.
Take care ; see that,	vide ne.
Rashly ; Inconsiderate'y ; without sufficient reason,	{ temere.
What ?	quid ?
Some how or other,	nescio quomodo.

## Exercise 59.

397. Can (then)<sup>c</sup> any man govern the seasons ? Take care not to be angry with any body without sufficient reason. Take care to do nothing inconsiderately. Can (then) any of you govern the seasons ? Hardly any one can govern himself ! Every man ought to defend his own' friends.<sup>d</sup> Will any man hesitate to shed his blood for his country ? This might *have* happened to any body. Shall (then) any thing deter me from encountering<sup>e</sup> any danger (whatever) for my country' and my parents' ? Is not any thing enough for Balbus ? He is braver than any (390, v) of the Gauls. If any one breaks his word for the sake of his friend, he sins'. Do you (then) believe that any Roman (you please) is braver than any Greek ? You may say any thing (you please) here. Whatever things are in the whole (*omnis*) world, *belong* to men. Some are the slaves of glory, others of money. How does it happen that you (*pl.*) do not know this ? What ! do not all understand this ? There are some who believe any body.

<sup>a</sup> *Quicumque* is the adjective form of *quisquis*.

<sup>b</sup> *Fuere quidam qui iidem* ornate, *iidem* versute dicerent. (Z.)

<sup>c</sup> Though *num* expects the answer *no*, it does not imply that the answer 'yes' cannot possibly be given, as 'an' does. 'An *quisquam*' is therefore more common than 'num *quisquam*,' and stronger than 'num *quis*.'

<sup>d</sup> *Quisque* should immediately follow cases of *sui* or *suis*, and *numerals* (*decimus quisque*, every tenth man).



§ 51. *Pronouns continued.* (On the prefixes and affixes of the interrogatives.)

398. (a) The syllable *ec* often appears as a *prefix*, and the syllable *nam* as an *affix*, to interrogative pronouns and adverbs.

The '*ec*' is from *en! em! hem!* a particle calling for attention to what is going to be said. '*Nam*' is properly *namely, by name*; so that *quisnam* is, *who by name*; *name* or tell me, *who*. (*Hartung*.)

The *en* stands alone in, '*En unquam cuiquam contumeliosius audistis factam injuriam, &c.?*' (*Ter. Phorm.* ii. 3.) *Nam* is appended to *quis, quid, ubi, num, &c.*

399. (b) '*Always*' after one superlative and before another, may be translated by *quisque*, agreeing with the same substantive that the superlatives agree with.

The *singular* is generally to be used, when a substantive is not to be expressed in Latin.

400. (a) *Ecquid*\* sentitis in quanto contemptu vivatis? *Do you perceive at all (or, perchance) in what contempt you are living?*

*Num quidnam* novi accidit? *Has any thing fresh occurred?*

(b) *Optimum quidque* rarissimum est, *The best things are always the rarest.*

*Altissima quæque* flumina minimo sono labuntur, *The deepest rivers always flow with the least sound.*

(c) *Doctissimus quisque*, *All the most learned men.*

(d) *Aliud alii* natura iter ostendit, *Nature points out one path to one man, another to another.*

*Aliud alio* fertur, *One thing is borne in one direction. another in another.*

401. (*Eng.*) *One* Balbus. (*Lat.*) A certain Balbus. (*Quidam.*)

(*Eng.*) *One* does one thing, *another another.*†

(*Lat.*) *Another* does another thing.

402. VOCABULARY 56.

Little = but or too little,

parum (with *genit.*).

\* *Ec* (= *en*) prefixed to *quis, quid, quando, &c.*, puts a question *doubtingly*, but intimates that the answer '*no*' is rather expected. It often gives a tone of *impatience* to the inquiry.

† In a sentence of this kind, *one—one* must be translated by *alius—alius* and *another—another* be untranslated.

A little = some, but not much,	paulum, or paululum.
A considerable quantity; some considerable.	aliquantum (with <i>genit.</i> ).
In the mean time,	interim.
Meanwhile; all that time,	interea. <sup>‡</sup>
Sometimes = now and then ( <i>approaching</i> , as compared with <i>nonnunquam</i> , to the notion of <i>but seldom</i> ).	interdum.
Sometimes (approaching to the notion of <i>pretty often</i> ).	nonnunquam; aliquando <sup>b</sup> (the last being properly <i>some time or other</i> , and often therefore equivalent to <i>at last</i> ). <sup>1</sup>
Ever,	unquam (with <i>negatives</i> ); aliquando (when it means, <i>at some one time</i> , be it when it may); quando (after <i>si, nisi, ne</i> , &c., when the <i>ever</i> is not emphatic). <sup>1</sup>
In a different direction; to some other place,	alio (387, t).
From a different direction,	aliunde.
Any where = any whither,	usquam, <sup>1</sup> aliquo, quo (to be used according to the Rules for ' <i>any</i> .' See <i>Any</i> , Index I).
No where or whither,	nusquam.
Strength,	vires, virium, &c. (in <i>sing.</i> ' <i>force</i> ', ' <i>violence</i> '; vis, vim, vi).

‡ Rarius interdum quam nonnunquam esse memento.

<sup>‡</sup> *Interea* refers to an event continuing during the *whole* interval: *interim* to one that occurs at *some time or times* within that interval. Hence, as Döderlein observes, in *negative* sentences *interea* is the regular word, as the *possibility* and *expectation* of a thing's happening is always of some duration.

<sup>1</sup> The syllable *ali*, whether as prefix or termination, always denotes *quality*. Thus '*si aliquis adest*,' is, '*if there be any one present, be he who or what he may*;' whereas '*si quisquam adest*' would mean '*if there be but one present, no matter whether more or not*.' (G.) *Aliquando* is properly '*at one time*, whether near or far off,' but as a thing's *once* happening may prove the *possibility* of its *often* happening, *aliquando* is often equivalent to *aliquoties*. But in the golden age it is used by preference of things that *had better happen never*. (D)

<sup>1</sup> It gets this meaning from its being implied by the nature of the sentence that *no early time* remains. In this meaning it is often joined with *tandem* (= tam demum. D.).

<sup>1</sup> Hence '*ever*' = at *any* time, is translated by *unquam*, *aliquando*, or *quando*, according as '*any*' would be translated under the same circumstances, by *ullus*, *aliquis*, or *quis*. *Si quis, si quando* are nearly equivalent to *whoever, whenever*.

<sup>1</sup> *Usquam* is more regularly the '*any where*' of rest; but is used after verbs of motion, as we use *where*.

*Exercise 60.*

['*Ever*' after *whether*, when marked as emphatic, is to be translated by *ecquando*.

'*Perchance*,' after *whether*, is to be translated by the addition of *quid* to *en* or *num*: *ecquid, numquid*.

When '*ever*' and '*any*' are marked as emphatic (in other cases) they are *not* to be translated by *quando, quis*.

'*A*' emphatic is to be translated by a *pronoun*.]

403. What prevents us from banishing every tenth man? We have lost some considerable time by playing. They *say* that they shall *never*<sup>2</sup> die. We shall all die some time or other. The best men always (*b*) die with the most resignation. In the mean time one Octavius called upon me at my own house. None of you called upon me all that time'. There is no one but (44, (2)) is sometimes mistaken. Most' of *us* are pretty often, all of *us* are sometimes deceived (p. 14, 15, *b*). Which is the wiser, Caius or Balbus? Does any man believe liars? In the mean time a' (393) greater fear seized upon the soldiers. I hear that there is a' greater fear in the city. If you ever return (*shall have returned*) home, you will understand these things. Have you ever' heard this from any body? [No.] If you are setting out any where, return in the evening. Are you going to set out to some other place? Nowhere. Some considerable time has been lost (in) asking my friends. Some persons devote themselves to one thing, others to another. Virtue is not of such<sup>10</sup> strength as to defend herself.<sup>16</sup> Have you perchance two countries? *Let me know* whether I shall ever' see you. There were some who had two countries.

## XIX

§ 52. *Comparison.*

404. (a) The regular particle of comparison is *quam* (*than*). The things compared will of course be in the *same case*.

(a) When the same noun belongs to each member of the comparison, it is omitted in one. In English we express it in the *first* clause, and use the pronoun '*that*' for it in the second. This '*that*' is not to be translated into Latin.

405. (b) Sometimes *quam* is omitted, and the following noun put in the *ablative*.<sup>m</sup>

- (a) As a rule, the *ablative* should not be used in this way, except where the same noun would follow *quam* in the *nominative*. Sometimes however the *ablative*, especially of *pronouns*, is used for the *accusative* after *quam*. In the construction of the *acc.* with *infin.* this would be regular.  
 (β) Moreover, the construction with the *ablative* should not be used, unless the object with which another is compared, actually *possesses the property*<sup>m</sup> in question.

406. (c) Comparatives and superlatives are often accompanied by *ablatives*, expressing *by how much* one thing exceeds or falls short of another.

407. (d) The English *the—the* (= *by how much—by so much*) are expressed in Latin by *quanto—tanto*; *quo—co* or *hoc*.

A sentence of this kind may also be expressed by *ut quisque* with a superlative, followed by *ita* with another.

408. 'Somewhat' and 'too' with the *positive* are expressed by the *comparative*, when those adverbs are not emphatic. And sometimes an *emphatic positive* is expressed by the *comparative*.

409. (a) *Europa minor est, quam Asia, Europe is less than Asia.*

(b) *Non ego hac nocte longiorem vidi, I have not seen a longer night than this.*

(c) *Multo difficilior, Much more difficult.*

(d) *Eo minor est arcus, quo altior est sol, The higher the sun is, the less is the arc.*

*Tanto brevius omne tempus, quanto felicius est, The happier any time is, the shorter it is (i. e. appears)*  
*Ut quisque est vir optimus, ita difficillime esse alios imprōbos suspicatur, The better a man is, the more difficulty he has in suspecting that others are wicked.*

(e) *Romani bella quædam fortius quam felicius gesserunt, The Romans carried on some wars with more courage than success.*

*Pestilentia minacior quam perniciosior, A pestilence*

---

<sup>m</sup> If I say a person is '*sapientior Caio*,' I ascribe wisdom to *Caius*, though less of it than to any other person. If I say he is '*sapientior quam Caius*,' I do not necessarily ascribe to *Caius* any wisdom at all.

*more alarming* than (really) *fatal* (or, *alarming rather than destructive*).

(f) *Prælium majus quam pro numero hostium editur*, *A severer battle is fought* than could have been expected from the (small) *number of the enemy*. (Or, *a battle unusually severe for the number of the enemy*.)

*Alexander consedit regiâ sellâ multo excelsiore quam pro habitu corporis*, *Alexander sat down on the royal chair, which was* far too high for his stature.

(g) *Res gravior*es (important). *Morbi graviore*s (severe).

#### 410. VOCABULARY 57.

Passionate,	iracundus, a, um.
Angry,	iratus, a, um.
Considerably more,	aliquanto plus (see 402).
Many times as great,	multis partibus major.
Are hard to be avoided, or difficult to avoid,	} difficile vitantur.
Hidden,	occultus, a, um ( <i>partic. of occultare</i> ),
Snares,	insidiæ, ærum, f.
Frequent,	creber, bra, brum; frequens, = tis.
Loquacious,	loquax, æcis.
Old age,	senectûs, ūtis, f.
Difference,	distantia, æ, f.
Worse,	pejor, or, us ( <i>less good than. deterior</i> ).

(Words by which superlatives are strengthened).

As shortly as possible,	quam brevissime.
Extremely flourishing (in resources),	} longe opulentissimus.
Far; by far,	multo.
The very least,	vel minimus.
The most unjust possible, or in the world,	} vel iniquissimus.

(Eng.) He is too proud to be a slave.

(Lat.) He is *prouder than that he should be* a slave.

\* *Creber* denotes *close* and *crowded succession*, and often implies *censure*: *frequens* denotes a *plentiful supply*, and rather as an epithet of *praise*. *Frequens* is also used of a place '*much resorted to*,' and a '*full*' senate-house: in which sense *creber* is not used, but *celeber*, which is related to it as *καλέπτω* to *κρέπτω*. (D.)

\* *Potest, possunt*, &c., may be inserted after *quam*. '*Aves nidos quam possunt mollissime subternunt* = *tam molliter, quam possant mollissime*. (G.)

(Quam ut mancipium sit, or possit esse.)

(Eng.) I took the *greatest* pains I *could*.

(Lat.) I took pains (as great) as <sup>P</sup> the *greatest* I could (*quam*).

(Eng.) As great a difference as there can possibly be.

(Lat.) A difference *as great-as the greatest* can be.

(*Quanta maxima potest esse distantia.*)

### Exercise 61.

411. That report was frequent rather than certain (c). The better a man is, with the more resignation will he die. The most hidden dangers are *always* the most difficult to avoid. The more hidden a danger is, the more difficulty is there in avoiding it.<sup>55</sup> The more passionate a man is, the more difficulty has he<sup>56</sup> in commanding himself. He is too angry to be able to command himself. I prefer the most unjust peace *in the world* to the justest war. Saguntum was an extremely flourishing state. I will say as shortly as possible, what it seems to me should be done.<sup>57</sup> They perceive the very least things. They worship Libera, whom they also<sup>58</sup> call Proserpina. I have accomplished the longest journey I possibly could. I have finished the business with the greatest care I possibly could. In important matters, there is need of deliberation.<sup>59</sup> Old age is by nature somewhat (408) loquacious. We have lost considerably more gold than you. *It is an allowed fact*, that the sun is *many times as great* as the earth. There is the greatest possible difference of character between them.

## XX.

### § 53. Remarks on some of the Tenses.

412. The *perfect definite* (perf. with *have*) is virtually a *present* tense, being used of an action *begun* at some past time, and carried on *up to*, or *nearly up to* the present moment. Hence, as we have seen (40, d), it may be followed by the *present* or *perfect* subjunctive.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>P</sup> *Quam maximas potui copias = tantas, quam maximas.* (G.)

<sup>9</sup> Nevertheless the Roman ear was so accustomed to the *imperf. subj.* after the *perf.*, that they used it (even where the *perf.* is plainly equivalent to our perfect with '*have*'), provided 'the action could be conceived as one advancing gradually to its completion.' (Z.) '*Diu dubitavi (have long doubted) num melius sit,*' &c., would sound strange to Roman ears: they preferred '*num melius esset,*' even when they did not *narrate*, but were on'y stating the *result*. (K.)

413. (a) To express, '*I have been doing a thing for a long time,*' the Romans said '*I am doing it for a long time already.*'

(Jam pridem cupio, *I have long been desiring.*)

414. In animated narrative, the *past* is often described by the *present*.

(b) The present when thus used (*præsens historicum*) may be followed either by the *present subj.* (according to the general rule for the sequence of tenses), or by the *imperfect subj.* (as being itself *virtually* a past tense). The *imperfect* is, on the whole, the more common. (Z.)

415. (c) A *present* tense after *relatives*, or, '*when,*' '*if,*' '*as long as,*' '*before,*' &c., is generally to be translated by a *future*, when the action expressed by it is *still future*.

The action *is* generally still future, when the verb in the principal clause is in a *future* tense or the *imperative* mood.\*

If one action must be *completed* before the other begins, the *future perfect* should be used. In this case the *perfect definite* is sometimes (by no means *always*) used in English.\*

416. (1) (*Eng.*) Whensoever I *take* my journey into Spain I *will come* to you.  
(*Lat.*) Whensoever I *shall take* my journey, &c.

(2) (*Eng.*) When I *have performed* this, I *will come*, &c. (Rom. xv. 28.)

(*Lat.*) When I *shall have performed* this, I *will come*, &c.

(3) (*Eng.*) When he *is come* (perf. def.), he *will tell* us, &c. (John iv. 5.)

(*Lat.*) When he *shall have come*, he *will tell* us, &c.

(4) (*Eng.*) (Saying) they *would* neither *eat* nor *drink*, till they *had killed* Paul (Acts xxiii. 12).

(*Lat.*) (Saying) they *would* neither *eat* nor *drink*, till they *should have killed* Paul.

\* The subjunctive present *used imperatively*, is virtually an *imperative*.

\* The Roman, viewing the future action or event from his *present*, marked its *futurity*, and, if necessary, its *completion*: the Englishman removes himself to the '*when*' spoken of, and contemplates it as a state *then existing*. The Roman considered it *relatively*: the Englishman considers it *absolutely*. There are some constructions, in which the *completion* of the action is not marked, even in Latin; for instance, in the use of the *imperfect subjunctive* in marking the relative time of a *wish*, *request*, or *question*: e. g. 'He answered *when he was asked*;' '*quum interrogaretur*,' not *interrogatus esset*, though the question must be completed before the answer is given.

\* Even in Latin, the *present* (after *si*) is sometimes used, as in English, in connection with a *future*; but only when it is to intimate that the *future event* depends upon some *present circumstance* or *resolution*. Examples are: '*Perficietur bellum, si non urgemus obsessos*,' &c. Liv. v. 4. '*Si vincimus, omnia nobis tuta*, &c. . . . *patebunt*.' Sall. 58, 9. (G.) (On the *subj. pres.* after *si* see 435 (b).)

(5) (*Eng.*) As soon as they *hear* of me, they *shall obey* me (2 Sam. xxii. 45).

(*Lat.*) As soon as they *shall hear* of me, they *shall obey* me :  
(or) As soon as they *shall have heard*, &c.

417. (d) 'Should,' 'would,' 'could,' &c., when used to soften an assertion by throwing into it an expression of *doubtfulness*, are generally to be translated by putting the verb in the *present* or *perf.* of the *subjunctive*.

a. In this idiom the *perfect* does not appear to bear any reference to the *completion* of the action. (See 428, note \*.)

b. (*e*) *Velim, nolim, malim*, are often used in this manner, and often in connection with the verb in the *subjunctive* governed by 'ut' omitted.

418. (f) After *ut* a *consequence* (but not a *purpose*) is often put in the *perf. subj.*, instead of the *imperf.*, after a past tense.

a. This occurs very frequently in Cornelius Nepos. The use of the *perf.* gives more *prominence* and independence to the *consequence*. (K.)

b. The *IMP.* subj. marks (1) something past, (2) something *contemporary* with another in past time, (3) something contemporary and *continuing*.

c. The *PERF.* subj. is either the subj. of the *aorist* ('wrote') or of the *præteritum in præsentii* (or *perf. definite*, 'have written'). (K.)

419. (a) Jam pridem cupio, I have *long desired*.

Vocat me alio jam dudum tacita vestra exspectatio,  
Your *silent expectation* has for some time been  
calling me to another point.

Copiæ, quas diu comparabant, Forces which they had  
long been collecting.

(b) Subito edicunt Consules, ut ad suum vestitum Senatores redirent, The *Consuls suddenly* published an edict, that the *Senators* should return to their usual dress.

(c) Quum Tullius rure redierit, mittam eum ad te, When *Tullius* returns from the country, I will send him to you. Facito hoc ubi voles, Do this when you please.

Si te rogavero aliquid, nonne respondebis? If I put any question to you, will you not answer?

(d) Hoc sine ulla dubitatione, confirmaverim,\* I would assert this without any hesitation.

---

\* The *perf. subjunctive* used in this manner to withhold a positive assertion, occurs in *negative* sentences oftener than in positive ones. (G.)



(e) *De me sic velim judices*, I would wish you to judge *thus of me*.

*Nolim factum*, I could wish it not to be done. (*Nollem factum*, I could wish it had not been done.)

(f) *Quo factum est, ut plus, quam collégæ, Miltiades valuerit*, The consequence of which was, that *Miltiades had more influence than his colleagues*.

#### 420. VOCABULARY 58.

For some time,	{ dūdum, or jamdūdum (applied to short preceding periods; an hour or few hours; less, generally, than a day).
Long; for a long time,	{ diu, or jamdiu* (of an action continued suspended, or not occurring, through the whole period).
Long ago	{ pridem or jampridem (referring to a past point of time; not, like diu, to a past period of time).
To desire,	{ cupēre,* to (150), iv, it (this is of the inward feeling: optāre is to desire = to express a wish for).
To long,	{ avēre (defect. verb) this denotes a restless impatient longing; gestīre, a delighted, joyous longing.
Not above two or three times,	bis terve.
Two or three times; several times,	bis terque.

(The Preposition *Ad*.)

(1) *To*, (2) *at*; (3) *up to, until; to the amount of*; (4) *for*, &c.

To a man, ad unum.

\* When a *conceived case* is to be expressed with the intimation that the *fact corresponds* to it, or *may* so correspond, the *pres.* and *perf.* of the *subj.* are used: but when it is to be intimated that the *fact does not*, or *cannot* correspond to it, the *imperf.* or *pluperf. subj.* must be used. (Z.)

\* But *pridem* and *diu* are often interchanged, though only in constructions where the notions of *duration* or of a distant *point of beginning* (respectively) may easily be implied, though the exact word would require *duration* rather than a *point*, or a *point* rather than *duration*. In '*jampridem cupio*,' &c., the notion of *continuance* is plainly implied: in the corresponding English construction we have it *expressed*. *Dudum* = *diu-dum* (where *dum* restricts the meaning as in *vixdum*, *nondum*): *pridem* = πρὶν ὅ (Hartung) or πρὶν ὅν. (D.)

\* *Velle*, *cupēre*, denote the *inward feeling*; *optāre*, *expetere*, *expression* of that feeling. *Velle* and *optare* denote, respectively, the *calm* feeling and its expression, *cupere* and *expetere* the *eager, excited* feeling and its expression. *Arere* expresses a *restless, impatient longing*; *gestire* a *delighted anticipation*. (D.)

To extreme old age,	ad summam senectutem.
He is nothing to, = compared to, } him, .	ad eum nihil est.
For a time,	ad tempus (also, 'at the proper time').
As many as two hundred,	ad ducentos.
Word for word,	ad verbum.
At most,	ad summum, <i>or</i> summum <i>only</i> .
At least,	ad minimum; minimum.
At last,	ad extremum.

(a) (*Eng.*) They *do* nothing *but* laugh.

(*Lat.*) They nothing else than laugh (*nihil aliud quam ridere*; *faciunt* omitted).

### Exercise 62.

[By what verb should *to take away a bad* thing be translated ?]

421. I have for some time been desiring to take away from you *that* care of *yours*. I have long desired to call upon Caius. After his soldiers had been slain to a man, he himself returned to Rome. Having taken Marseilles by storm,<sup>77</sup> he returned home. I am longing to take Marseilles, and *obtain a triumph for a victory over the Gauls*. He was whipped with rods several times. He was whipped with rods two' or three' times' at most. There is no doubt *that* Caius is nothing (compared) to Balbus. Time is wanting for finishing that business (of yours). I would wish you to pardon me. Caius to extreme old age *learned something additional* every day. At last all held their tongues. I am longing to return thanks to Caius. It cannot be denied that death is a rest from labours.<sup>84</sup> Do we not give boys sentences to *learn by heart*?<sup>76</sup> He gives boys the longest sentences he can<sup>88</sup> to be learned by heart, word for word. They *do* nothing but cry out, that it is all over with Cæsar's army. His industry was *such*,<sup>10</sup> *that* (418) he *learned* something additional every day.

### § 54. Remarks on some of the Tenses continued.

422. (a) The *perfect subjunctive* (as well as the *present*) is used as an imperative.

423. (b) The future is sometimes used, as in *English*, for the *imperative*; in other words, we sometimes express a wish that a person *should act* in a particular way, in the form of an assertion that he *will* so act.

424. (c) *Questions* that do not ask for information, but for *assent*, are to be translated into Latin by the *present* or *imperfect* of the *subjunctive*, according as a present or past time is referred to.

The object of such questions is, to excite the *same emotion* or produce the *same conviction* in the minds of the persons addressed, that the speaker himself feels or pretends to feel. If they are *negative* in form the answer or expression of assent will be *affirmative*; and conversely if not.

425. These '*questions of appeal*' (which usually express *perplexity* or some *emotion*) may be asked by auxiliary verbs in English in various ways: the thing to be considered is, 'does the question require an answer for information, or mere assent (or sympathy) ?'

a [Forms of '*questions of appeal*' in English.] (1) With PRES. SUBJ. *What shall I do?* (when asked in perplexity, implying that *nothing satisfactory* can well be done.) *What am I to do?* *What can I do?* *Why should I relate this?* (Ans. *You need not.*) (2) With IMPERF. SUBJ. *What was I to do?* *What should I have done?* *What ought I to have done?*

426. (1) (Eng.) He taught the children of the principal men.

(Lat.) *Principum liberos erudiebat.* (Imperf. expresses a state continued or an action often repeated in a past space of time.)

(2) (Eng.) You would have thought. You would have believed.

(Lat.) *Putares.*

*Crederes.*

(3) (Eng.) I remember reading that (or, to have read that).

(Lat.) I remember to read that (*legere memini*).

(4) (Eng.) It would be tedious, endless, &c.

(Lat.) It is tedious, endless, &c. (*longum, infinitum est*).

(5) (Eng.) It would have been better.

(Lat.) It was better (*utilius fuit*<sup>a</sup>). *So satius, par, idoneum, &c. fuit.*

427. (a) *Quod dubitas, ne feceris, What you have doubts about, don't do.*

(b) *Si quid acciderit novi, facies ut sciam, If any thing new happens, you will let me know (= let me know).*

<sup>a</sup> But the inf. perf. follows *memini*, &c., when the speaker does not carry himself back, as it were, having himself seen, heard, &c. what he describes.

<sup>a</sup> *Erat* or *fuera*t must be used, if the time requires those tenses: and the *infl. pres.* follows these expressions. (See 130.)

(c) Quid faciam? *What am I to do? What can I (or shall I) do?*

Quis neget, &c.? *Who can deny . . . ?*

Quid facerem? *What was I to do? What ought I to have done? What should I have done?*

#### 428. VOCABULARY 59.

A banquet; an entertainment,	convivium, <sup>b</sup> i, n.
If I may say so without offence,	pāce tuā dixerim.
Under favour,	bonā tāā veniā.
A favour; pardon,	venia, æ, f.
To pardon (spoken of a superior),	{ veniam dāre <sup>c</sup> (also 'to grant a permission').
To ask pardon for a fault,	delictū veniam pētere; petiv, petīt.
Look to that yourself,	id ipse vidēris; or tu videris.
Let Fortune look to, or see to, it,	fortuna viderit.
I can scarcely believe,	vix crediderim.*

(The Preposition ADVERSUS or ADVERSUS.)

Adversus, or adversum, corresponds almost exactly with our AGAINST in all its uses; but has besides the meanings *over-against* (= opposite) and *towards*.

#### Exercise 63.

[Translate, 'I am pardoned.']

429. Who *can* deny that a banquet is preparing? There is no one but wishes that a banquet should<sup>b</sup> be prepared. You *would have thought* that a banquet was prepared. What was I

<sup>b</sup> *Epulae, ūrum* is the most general notion, a *meal*, whether frugal or sumptuous, with only the members of the family or with guests, public or private: *convivium* is a meal with *guests*, a dinner-party: *dāpes* a *religious* banquet, a banquet after a *sacrifice*; *epulūm* a banquet in honour of some person, or on some festive occasion; *comissatio* a *riotous* party, a *drinking bout*. (D.)

• The *ignoscens* pardons from his heart, forgives and forgets; the *veniam dāns* passes over as a *favour* what he might justly resent or punish. The friend or equal *ignoscit*; the superior or more powerful person *veniam dat*. (D.)

<sup>a</sup> Döderlein thinks that *delictum* is not a *sin of omission* as is generally thought, but that it has the same extent of meaning as *peccatum*: both expressing sins against *prudence* as well as those against *morality*; *errors* as well as *sins*.

• *Vix crediderim* = *vix credam* = *vix credo*. But this *perf. subj.* does not always stand for the *present indic.* but sometimes for the *perf.* 'Tum vero ego nequidquam Capitolium servaverim' = *servavi*. (K.)

• In English we have no *present* or *imperf. passive*, except in a few verbs that form these tenses with what is *in form* the *present participle* of the *active* voice, but is probably the *participial substantive*, which used to be governed by the

to do?—the banquet had been long preparing. The latter says that a banquet is preparing: the former denies (it). He *taught* the boys *to play on the lyre*. Do not prepare a banquet. It *would be* tedious (426) to relate all the evils that have happened to us by our *own* fault. Under favour I would say, my brother, *that* opinion *of yours* is 'very often' (p. 13, 6.) prejudicial. Are they too to be pardoned? It cannot be denied that they have *several times* asked pardon for their fault. Let fortune see to this, since we may not use reason and counsel. I remember their *charging* Caius *with immorality*. They published an edict that *no one*<sup>14</sup> should be *capitally* condemned *without being heard*. Justice is piety towards the gods. Would it not have been better, not to *have* concealed those things from your father? They *do* nothing but mock the poor (420, a). There are some who perceive the *very* least things.

---

## XXI.

### § 55. On the principal kinds of Conditional Propositions.

430. In *conditional* (or *hypothetical*) propositions, the clause with 'if' is the *condition* or *conditional clause*: the other, the *consequence* or *consequent clause*.

431. Sometimes the consequence is expressed in the indicative mood, no *doubt* being intimated as to the *existence* or *non-existence* of the condition.

(If this is A, that is B.)

Here we have '*possibility*, or *simple supposition*, without any expression of *uncertainty*.'

---

preposition 'on' or 'an' shortened into 'a.' Thus 'the ark was *a* preparing' (1 Pet. iii. 20). 'Forty and six years was this temple *in building*' (John ii. 20).

There is no trusting the *mere* look of a form, as the following table will show:—

- |                 |                             |   |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|---|
| (1) He . . .    | <i>is coming</i> . . .      | (pres. act.)                              |
| (2) The house . | <i>is building</i> . . .    | (pres. pass.)                             |
| (3) This . . .  | <i>is asking</i> (too much) | ('is,' with the participial substantive.) |
| (1) He . . .    | <i>is come</i> . . .        | perf. act.)                               |
| (2) The house . | <i>is built</i> . . .       | (perf. pass.)                             |
| (3) He . . .    | <i>is loved</i> (by all)    | (pres. pass.)                             |

<sup>14</sup> Indic.: pace tuâ dixerim, &c., being only parenthetical insertions.

432. Sometimes, however, though the consequence is expressed in the indicative, uncertainty is expressed as to the existence or not of the condition: it being implied however that this uncertainty will probably be removed.

(*'If I have any thing, I will give it you;'* and I will see whether I have or not.)

Here we have *uncertainty* with the prospect of *decision*.

433. Sometimes the consequence is itself expressed in a *conditional* form: and then the condition is merely contemplated as a *conceivable case*, but no hint is given as to its being likely *actually* to occur or not.

(If you *were* to do this, you would greatly *oblige* me.)

Here we have (according to *Hermann* and *Bullman*) '*uncertainty* without any such accessory notion as the prospect of *decision*.'

434. Lastly, the consequence may express *what would be doing*, or *would have been done*, if a condition that is *actually unrealized*, had been realized *just now*, or at some *past* time.

If I had it, I would now give it to you (but I *have not*).

If I had had it, I would have given it you.

### (Forms of Conditional Propositions.)

435. (a) Si quid habet, dat,<sup>ε</sup> If he has any thing, he gives it.  
 (b) Si quid habeam, dabo, If I have any thing, I will give it.  
 (c) Si quid haberet, daret,<sup>η</sup> If he should have any thing, he would give it.

- (d)  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} (1) \text{ Si quid haberet, daret,} \\ (2) \text{ Si quid habuisset, dedisset,} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{If he had any thing,} \\ \text{he would give it.} \\ \text{If he had had any} \\ \text{thing, he would} \\ \text{have given it.} \end{array} \right.$

<sup>ε</sup> The consequence may also be in the *imperative* or in the *future*. (See 437, l.)

<sup>η</sup> On this, see 445. It is, to say the least, very uncommon to find a proposition of this form, from which the notion of the *possible realization* of the condition is not excluded. (See *Zumpt's* opinion, 419, v.) *Kühner* says, '*si hoc dicas*' = *ὅτι τοῦτο λέγεις* and *εἰ τοῦτο λέγοις*: sometimes, however, the last relation is expressed as in Greek, '*si hoc diceretur, vere diceretur*.' (Vol. ii. p. 546.) The same form of proposition is used in a different way, when the *imp. subj.* (= the Greek *optat.*) is used to express something *frequently occurring in past time*.

<sup>ε</sup> Caesar—*Si peteret per amicitiam patris atque suam, non Quidquam proficeret.*—Hor. Sat. i. 3. 4. (See *Heindorf ad loc.*)

436. Here we see that the forms (c) and (d) (1) coincide. The form (c) means, 'if at any time he *were to have* any thing, he would give it:' but such a sentence, though not *necessarily* intimating the impossibility of this case occurring, of course, *does imply* that it *has not* occurred. It thus runs very near to the meaning of (d) (1), which, besides implying that it *has not*, implies that it *will not* occur.

These two cases are not distinguished in Latin: the *context*, or our *previous knowledge*, must determine whether the case is contemplated as *possible*, or *not*.

437. (a) *Possibility*, or *simple supposition*, without any expression of *uncertainty*: the *indicative* in both clauses.  
 (b) *Uncertainty* with the prospect of *decision*: '*si*' with the *subjunctive present* (or perfect); the *indicative*, commonly the future,<sup>1</sup> in the consequence.  
 (c) *Uncertainty* without any such *accessary notion* as the prospect of *decision*: the *imperfect subjunctive* clauses.  
 (d) *Impossibility*, or belief that the thing is *not so*: the *subjunctive* in both clauses, the *imperfect* for *present* time, and a *continuing consequence*; the *pluperfect* for *past* time.

438. But the *consequence* may refer to *present*, the *condition* to *past* time; or *vice versa*.

'If I *had received* a letter (*accepissem*), I *would now read* it (*recitarem*).

'If I at this time *wanted* any thing (*opus esset*), I *would have come* (*venissem*) myself.'

439. Since, '*I would give it you* (now), if I had it (now)' comes to the same thing as '*I would have given it to you*, if I *had had* any,' the *imperfect subjunctive* in Latin may often be translated by the forms '*would have*' (*could* or *should have*), when it is implied that the condition will not be realized.

440. (d) When the form '*would have*' is in the consequence, the *pluperfect* in the condition must be in the *subjunctive* in Latin.

441. With the *imperfect and pluperfect*, '*si*' always governs the *subjunctive*.

<sup>1</sup> The imperative may stand in the consequence. Of course the perf. or future, both the *simple* and the *periphrastic future*, may stand in either clause, or both: *si illud mihi beneficium tribuetur* (or *tributum erit* or *fuerit*), *magnopere gaudebo*. In the second class, *tributum sit*, or *fuerit*, from *fuerin*.

442. ~~§~~ Since we use the indicative *conditionally*, care must be taken to translate this by the subjunctive (435, b.) when 'should' might be used; when, that is, there is 'uncertainty with the prospect of decision.'

## 443. VOCABULARY 60.

Happy,	beatus, a, um.*
Much less,	{ nēdum <sup>1</sup> (generally after a <i>negative</i> ; if a verb follows it must be in the <i>subjunc</i> ).
Not to say,	{ ne dicam (of what <i>might</i> probably be said with truth).
I do not say,	non dico.
I will not say,	non dicam.
All,	omnes ( <i>all together</i> , cuncti, universi). <sup>m</sup>
Cautious,	cautus, a, um.
All taken one by one; each of them singly,	{ singuli, æ, a.
For instance,	verbi causā.
To rise,	orior, oriri, ortus.
The Dog-star,	Cānicūla, æ, f.

(Eng.) No painter.

(Lat.) Nemo pictor.

(Eng.) This does *not* at all terrify me. (Lat.) This terrifies me *nothing*.

## Exercise 64.

[Obs. 'If he *were* to' &c. = 'if he *should*' &c.]

444. If a happy life can be lost', it cannot be happy'. He who does not defend a friend, if he can, sins'. If all things are brought about<sup>n</sup> by fate, nothing can admonish us *to be* more cautious. Peleus, if he were to hear it, would lift up his hands. Pe-

\* *Faustus* and *prosper* are said of *things* only, not of *persons*. 'That which is *prosperum* merely satisfies the hopes and wishes of men, like '*wished for*,' '*desired*;' the *faustum* refers more to the *graciousness* of the gods: the *fortunatus* is a *lucky* person: the *beatus* feels himself happy (as he *is*) and is contented.' (D.) *Felix* expresses both that which *is*, and that which *makes* happy (*beatus*, only what *is* '*happy*'): and relates principally 'to the obtaining, possessing, or enjoying *external* goods, and supposes a man's *own co-operation*.' This latter circumstance distinguishes it from *fortunatus*, which also relates more to *particular events*.

<sup>1</sup> *Nedum* is sometimes followed by *ut*: '*nedum ut ulla vis fieret*.' (Liv. iii. 14.)

<sup>m</sup> *Cuncti* (opposed to *dispersi*) '*all actually united*;' *universi* (opposed to *singuli* or *unusquisque*) '*all taken together*.' As meaning '*all*,' '*the whole*,' in the sing., *totus* represents the thing as *originally* '*a whole*:' *omnis*, *cunctus*, *universus*, all represent it as *originally* made up of *certain parts*, of which the aggregate is taken. (D.)

<sup>n</sup> *Fiunt*.



leus, if he heard it (*but he has not*), would lift up his hands. If any one were to do this he would *lay the king under a great obligation*. Even Cæsar could not have done this; much less can you (443, note 1). The boy should be admonished, *that* he may show himself *the* more cautious (63, b). All the wisest men<sup>re</sup> are aware that the interest of each and of all is the same'. I can scarcely think him equal to *all of them taken one by one*, much less to *all of them together*. If you are equal to them all together, you will easily conquer them all-taken-one-by-one. If Fabius, for instance, was born<sup>o</sup> at the rising of the dog-star, he will not die in the sea. He is not equal<sup>o</sup> to them all taken one by one, not to say to them all together. He is equal to them all taken one by one, I do not say to them all together. No painter would say this (*perf. subj.*). Know that I do *not* fear these things *at all*. There were some<sup>100</sup> who did not fear these things at all.

### § 56. Conditional Propositions continued.

445. (a) Such conditional sentences as would in English have *were to—, should, or would*, in both clauses, often take the verbs of *both clauses* in the *subjunctive present*.

a. The conditional clause is here *c contemplated possibility* (resembling, in this, the third class; *si haberet, daret*); but the thing contemplated is contemplated as occurring *now*, and therefore often agrees with the second class (*si habeam dabo*), in implying a prospect of decision.

Hence if a contemplated case is contemplated as *occurring now*, the *present subjunctive* should be preferred to the *imperfect*: and when the possibility of its occurring now is to be *strongly intimated*, the *present* is the only proper form.

(1) Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias.

*If you were here, you would think differently.*

(2) Tu si hic esses, aliter sentireas.

*If you were here (which you neither are nor will be), you would think differently:*

(or) If you *had been* here, you *would have thought* differently.

β. From the ambiguity of the form '*si quid haberet, daret*,' the *subj. pres.* should probably be preferred, when it is not intended to intimate that the condition is *improbable or impossible*. The *pres. subj.* may be

used of suppositions *really* impossible, if it is not the speaker's object to intimate this: 'Si *existat* hodie ab inferis Lyncurgus *gaudeat*,' &c. (*Liv.* 39, 37.)

446. The three conditional tenses of the *subjunctive*, are *scriberem*, *scripsissem*, and *scripturus essem*.

447. 'Scripsissem' and 'scripturus essem' are both used to express our 'would have written.' But '*scripsissem*' intimates that the thing *would certainly have happened*: *scripturus essem*, that it *would probably have happened*, because it was so *intended* or *arranged*

(b) Thus, 'he *would have slept* (= he *intended so have slept*, and therefore we may suppose *would have slept*) there, if he had gone on,' should be translated by the *part. in rus* with *esset*.<sup>†</sup>

But the *indicative* (*erat*, *fuit*) is more common, when the intention is to be *positively expressed*.

448. (c) The *imperfect* and *pluperfect* of the *indicative* are often used instead of the same tenses of the *subjunctive*, in the consequent clause. (It is then better to let the *consequent* precede the *conditional* clause.)

449. (d) The particle *si* is occasionally omitted; the verb of the conditional clause should then begin the sentence.

450 (a) In quo si tantum eum prudentem dicam, minus quam debeam *prædicem*, In which if I were only to call him prudent, I should commend him less highly than I ought.

(v) Conclave, ubi erat mansurus, si ire perrexisset, The chamber in which he would have lodged, if he had continued his journey.

(c) Perieram, nisi tu accurrisses,<sup>‡</sup> I had perished (= should have perished) if you had not run to my assistance.

(d) Dedisses huic animo par corpus, fecisset quod opta-

<sup>†</sup> So also in the third class 'si quid haberet daturus esset' is correct, where daturus esset = 'he would be prepared to give.' (Krüger: who quotes Tac. H. n. 77, 'cujus filium adoptaturus essem, si ipse imperarem.')  
<sup>‡</sup> A conditional clause often refers to a consequence implied: 'Pons Sublicius itor pæne hostibus dedit, ni unus vir fuisset' = (et dedisset) ni unus vir fuisset.

bat, Had you given *this mind a body like itself*, he  
would have done what he desired.

## 451. VOCABULARY 61.

But if; if however,

sin, sin autem.

But if not,

sin minus.<sup>r</sup>

Unless; if not,

nisi.<sup>a</sup>

Although; though,

etsi: etiamsi—followed by tamen, yet,  
(sometimes tamen precedes etsi, when  
the unexpected nature of the event to  
be described is to be made more prom-  
inent; for tamen etsi, tametsi is found,  
and the tamen is sometimes repeated  
in the principal clause.—Although  
may also be translated by quamquam,<sup>a</sup>  
quavis and licet.)

Although indeed,

quamquam (suggested by a former  
statement: it has no influence on the  
mood).

Unless indeed,

nisi forte; nisi vero.

Power,

potestas, atis, f. (of might with right,  
and therefore the proper word for  
conceded power); potentia, æ, f. (of  
actual inherent power).

The thing is so,

res ita se habet.

To put himself in their power,

potestatem sui facere.

To be in our own power,

in nostrâ esse potestate.

<sup>r</sup> Or, *sin secus, sin aliter*.

<sup>a</sup> 'Your memory will be weakened nisi eam exerceas' implies that if you exercise it, it will not be lessened. But from *si non* you might not infer this, but only draw the strict conclusion that if you do not exercise it, it will be lessened. The *si*, in *si non*, is the conjunction, the *non* belongs to the verb or other word in the proposition.

The compounds of '*si*' follow the same rule as *si*: With the *pres.*, *perf.*, and *fut.* they take the *indicative* unless the thing is to be asserted *contingently* and *doubtfully*; with the *imperf.* and *pluperf.* they generally take the *subj.*, though here too the *indicative* comes in, when they introduce, not a *supposition*, but a *fact*. '*Tametsi a duce deserebantur*,' (Cæs.) '*Si*,' like our '*if*,' is sometimes used for '*whether*;' '*Tentata res est, si primo impetu capi Ardea posset*.'

<sup>a</sup> *Quamquam* (quam '*how*' strengthened by doubling) is '*however much*,' but expresses '*however much a thing really exists*,' or *can*, or *must* exist. It therefore takes the *indic.* when the thing is not to be represented as doubtful. *Quamvis* (or *quantumvis*) is '*however much a thing may be conceived possible*,' and therefore takes the *subj.* *Licet* is no particle, but an impersonal verb, and may occur in any tense. '*Licet recte agas, tamen, &c.*' '*Act as right as you please, yet, &c.*' '*Detrahat . . . fortuna licebit*.'—*Quamvis* = '*although*' (as in *Nep. quamvis crebat nomine*; with *indic.*) belongs, generally speaking, to a later age.

(Eng.) Even this *is not* just *unless* it is voluntary.

(Lat.) Even this is so (*only*) just, if it is voluntary.

(*Ita justum est . . . si est voluntarium*:<sup>v</sup> *ita here* = on that condition *or* supposition.)

[C. xxxiii.] 'But' (= *except, unless*) after a negative is *nisi*, or (if it stands before a substantive) the prepos. *præter*.

### Exercise 65.

[How is 'that' translated after 'it follows'? (83)]

452. If you *were to ask* me what is the nature of the gods, I should perhaps answer nothing (445). If the thing were so, I should rejoice (445). If there be nothing in our own power, let us go away. If they had remained, he would have put himself in their power. We must cultivate eloquence, though some *make a perverse use of it*. Nothing would be in our own power, if the thing were so. The Stoics *say* that *no* man is divine, *but* the wise man. Who can deny (424) that the most hidden snares are *always* the *most difficult to avoid*? I love my enemy, more than you envy your friend. Caius is more brave than prudent.<sup>w</sup> I don't know whether<sup>z</sup> any thing better than friendship' has been given to man by the immortal gods. Though these things are contrary to each other, we must nevertheless use them. Who will deny (424) that these things are of importance to us? Though the thing were so, yet this *could not be said without impiety*. I *almost think* that these things are not in our own power. If this be true, I shall rejoice: but if not, I must bear it with *resignation*. This itself is *not* just *unless* it is voluntary.

<sup>v</sup> So, 'Patres decreverunt ut, quum populus regem jussisset, id *sic* ratum esset si Patres auctores fierent. (Liv. l. 17.)

<sup>w</sup> Grotefend distinguishes between three forms of comparison, thus:—

Caius fortior est, quam prudentior = *Caius is, indeed, both brave and prudent; but yet more brave than prudent.*

Caius magis fortis est, quam prudens = *Caius is just as brave, as he is not prudent.*

Caius fortis est, quam prudens = *Caius is brave, but not at all prudent*. (where *potius* may be supplied). The last two forms belong to late writers especially Tacitus.

§ 57. *Conditional Propositions in dependent sentences.*

453. (a) *Possibility* without any expression of *uncertainty*.

(*Calus, si quid habet, dat.*)

Dicebant Caium, si quid *haberet* (or, si quid *habeat*) dare.

(b) *Uncertainty* with the prospect of *decision*.

(*Si quid habeam, dabo.*)

Dicebat, si quid *habeat* (or *habēret*), se daturum.\*

(c) *Uncertainty* without any such accessory notion.

(*Si quid haberet, daret.*)

Dicebat, si quid *habēret*, se daturum esse.

(Or *daturum fore*, if the independent proposition would be *daturus* *esse*em. See 447.)

(d) *Impossibility*, or belief that the thing is *not so*

(1) (*Si quid haberet, daret.*)

This form in a dependent sentence coincides with form (c).

(2) (*Si quid habuisset, dedisset.*)

Dicebat, si quid *habuisset*, se daturum fuisse.

(3) When the verb of the conditional clause is in the *pluperf.*, that of the consequent clause is in the *imperfect*.

(*Si quid accepisset, daret.*)

Dicebat, si quid *accepisset*, se daturum esse.†

(4) The verb of the conditional clause in the *imperf.*, that of the consequent clause in the *pluperfect*.

(*Si quid opus esset, venisset.*)

Dicebat se, si quid *haberet*, daturum fuisse.

Dicebat se, si quid *haberet*, daturum.

(or) Dicebat se, si quid *habeat*, daturum.

\* **Oss.** The *conditional* forms of the infinitive are *scripturum esse* (*pres.*), *scripturum fuisse* (*perf.*); *scripturum fore* (*ful.*). Of these *scripturum esse* is also a mere *future infinitive*; the two others are *only conditional forms*.

† **Oss.** The form *daturum esse* cannot be used to express '*impossibility* or belief that the thing is *not so*,' unless the verb of the conditional clause is of the *pluperf. subj.* 'Dicebat si patris literas *accepisset*, se eas cum fratre communicaturum esse.' The form '*si literas acciperet se communicaturum esse*,' would not imply *this*, but only express the receiving of a letter as a contemplated case belonging to class (c).

454. Hence, when we have to make these sentences dependent, we must put

for dat, dabit, daret, dedisset:

dare, daturum esse, daturum esse, daturum fuisse:

for daturus esset,

daturum fore.

455. We also see that the first two classes (when the verb is in the future) are no longer distinguished.

Si quid habet, dabit. }

Si quid habeat, dabit. }

‘Dicebat se, si quid haberet, daturum;’ or, ‘si quid habeat:’ for where the *perfect subjunctive* would regularly be expected after a *past tense* like *dicebat*, the *present* is often found with apparently no difference of meaning; but not the *imperfect* for the *present* (Krüger.)

#### 456. VOCABULARY 62.

To remain,

remanere, mans, mans.

To confer benefits upon,

conferre, contul, collat (in, with acc.)

To be intimate with,

familiariter uti; usus.

To draw up an army,

instruere aciem; instrux, instruct.

To draw up his army in three lines,

triplicem aciem instruere.

To engage,


configere, flix, flict.

Either—or,

aut—aut; vel—vel; sive—sive.

Or,

aut; vel; or the enclitic ve.

457.  ‘At,’ when the thing was done not in but near, should be translated by *apud*, or *ad* with acc.

(The battle *apud* Salamina. ‘*Apud*’ is found in later writers even for ‘in.’)

\* Grotefend observes, that *Cæsar* generally retains the *subj. pres.* or *perf.* (after a *past tense*) when those tenses would stand in direct narration: but that *Cic.* and *Liv.* generally turn them into the *imperf.* or *pluperf.* (See 418.)

\* ‘*Aut*’ expresses a difference in the things; ‘*vel*’ a difference in the expression. (Z.) *Vel* is the imperative from *velle*, as *fer* from *ferre*: its proper meaning therefore is, ‘if you please:’ so that ‘*A vel B*’ was originally ‘*A* or, if you like, *B*,’ that is, ‘*A* or *B*: one or the other, no matter which.’ Hence, its meaning ‘*even*:’ *vel maximus*, ‘the very greatest, if you please.’ ‘*Aut*’ is used in the case of opposite notions when if one is, the other is not. ‘*Vel*’ should be used when the notions are not opposite in themselves; especially when only some of the possible suppositions are mentioned. It very often evidently retains its original meaning, of expressing indifference as to which notion is taken; and should always be used when such indifference is to be expressed. Thus ‘The nobles can either corrupt or correct the morals of a state,’ *vel* cor-

*Exercise 66.*

[How is *can deny* to be translated in a question of *appeal*? (425.) ]

458. He *said*, that if a happy life could be lost, it could *not* be happy. He has long appeared to me somewhat disturbed.<sup>87</sup> Who can deny, that some are borne one way, *some another*? He answered that Peleus, if he had heard it, would have lifted up his hands. He answered that he could have<sup>87</sup> no friendship with these, if they remained in Gaul. It is certain, that if any one had done this, he would have *laid the king under a great obligation*. It is certain that, if any one does this, he will lay the king under a great obligation. If any one does this,<sup>88</sup> he will have deserved well of the state. I fear *that nobody* will be permitted to be neutral. I *fear* that he has *not* concealed from you the discourse of T. Ampius. (As to) what is best to be done (*sup.*) do you' see to that (428). I will strive to prove myself grateful (*memor*) for the benefits, *of which* you have conferred *very many*<sup>31</sup> upon me. They *say*, that the rule of expediency is *not* the same *as* that of honour.<sup>111</sup> Having drawn up his army in three lines, he engaged with Mardonius. <sup>8</sup> He drew up his army, and engaged with the Gauls at Geneva. There were some<sup>100</sup> who lifted up their hands.

## XXII.

§ 58. *On oblique narration.*

459. When one person has to report the speech of another, he may do this in two ways. He may either introduce *him* as speaking, and put in his mouth the exact words used; or he may only state the *substance* of what he said under a change of form.

(a) In the first way of narrating, the speaker uses the *first person*. "Cæsar said: '*I* am of opinion' "—and so on.

rumpore, *vel* corrigere, for they can do *which they please*. It sometimes = *both—and*. 'He was his equal, *vel* moribus *vel* fortunâ.' *Ve* (abridged from *vel*) commonly unites single words, not propositions: it is often appended to *si*, *ne* (*sive* = *seu*: *neve* = *neu*). *Sive—sive*; *seu—seu* = '*either—or*,' '*whether—or*,' when it is to be left doubtful which of two statements is correct, or which of two terms is applicable (the second being an *alias* of the first). Crombie observes that *sive—sive* should generally be used when '*either (or whether)—or*' may be turned into '*be it—or be it*.'

(b) In the second way, the substance of what he said is given in the *third person*. "Cæsar said, that *he* was of opinion,"—and so on. This second way, in which the *speech of another is reported in the third person*, is called *oblique* or *indirect* narration.

460. (a) In *oblique narration*, the principal verb or verbs will be of the *infinitive* mood.

(b) All the subordinate clauses that express the *original speaker's words* or *opinions* will have their verbs in the *subjunctive* mood.

✚ Hence conjunctions and adverbs that go with the indicative in *direct* narration, go with the subjunctive in indirect or *oblique* narration.\*

(Thus in the example (453, a), 'Si quid *habet dat*,' becomes, when reported, 'Dicebant Caium, si quid *haberet, dare*.')

(c) When a speech is reported in *oblique narration*, (1) the verb or participle on which the infinitive depends is often omitted : (2) questions for an *answer* are asked in the *subjunctive* : questions of *appeal* generally\* in the *infinitive* (with *interrogative pronouns* and *adverbs*) : (3) the *imperative* in *direct* becomes the *subjunctive* in *indirect* narration.

461. (d) The subjunctive being thus employed to express the *speech* or *sensiment*, not of the speaker or writer, but of the person *about whom* he is speaking or writing, naturally came to be used in constructions where the sentiments of another were *less formally* reported. Thus in the fable: 'The vulture invited the little birds to a party,' '*quod illis daturus erat*' would mean that he really *was* going to give them the party; but '*quod illis daturus esset*' would only mean that *he said* he was going to give them a party. So with the verbs of *accusing*, the charge stands with *quod* in the *subjunctive*, because, the *accusers asserted* that the crime had been committed: the *indicative* would make the *historian* or *speaker assert* the truth of the charge.

462. [*Direct.*]

(a) (b) Quantum possum, te ac tua vestigia sequar, *As far as I can, I will follow you and your footsteps.*

\* Oss. ✚ As the subjunctive has no future, the *future* and *future perfect* become the *pres.* and *perfect* of the *subjunct.* respectively. Senties—quum *ages*: sensurum esse, quum *agas*.—Faciemus, quum *imperaveris*: facturos esse, quum *imperaverit* (from *imperavērim*). If the speech is narrated in *past* time (is introduced, that is, by a *past* tense) the *fut.* and *fut. perf.* will become the *imperf.* and *pluperf.* in the oblique narration.

\* Not quite always: thus Cæs. B. G. 5 29. *postremo quis hoc sibi persuaderet?* &c.



[*Oblique.*]

Clamavit se, quantum posset, eum atque ejus vestigia  
*secuturum, He cried out that he, as far as he could,*  
*would follow him and his footsteps.*

(c) (1) Legatos ad Cæsarem mittunt : "*sese paratos esse*  
*portas aperire, &c.*" *They send ambassadors*  
*to Cæsar : (saying) that they are ready to open*  
*the gates, &c.*

(2), Interrogabat : '*cur paucis centurionibus pau-*  
*cioribus tribunis . . . obedirent ?*' *Quandæ*  
*ausuros (esse) exposcere remedia, nisi, &c. ?*  
*He asked, 'why they obeyed a few centurions*  
*and still fewer tribunes ? When (said he)*  
*will you dare to demand redress, if, &c. ?*

(3) (Hirri necessarii fidem Pompeii implorarunt :)  
*præstaret quod proficiscenti recepisset, Make*  
*good (said they) what you promised him when*  
*he was setting out.*

(d) Socrates accusatus est, *quod corrumperet juventutem,*  
*Socrates was accused of corrupting the young men.*

## 463. VOCABULARY 63.

(The Preposition *APUD* governing *acc.*)

(1) *WITH* = in the house of, in the mind or estimation of; amongst :

(2) In the presence of : (3) *IN* = in an author's writings : (4) *AT*, of place (see 457).

He was <i>with</i> me,	apud me.
To have great influence with,	multum valere apud.
Cyrus <i>in</i> Xenophon,	apud Xenophontem.
To speak in the presence of the people,	} loqui apud populum.
Yesterday,	
To-morrow,	hæri.
	cras.

*Exercise 67*

464. Must we not all die? He cried out, 'that he was ready  
 to shed his blood for his country; must we\* not all die (he

\* As 'questions for answer' may be of a very *objurgatory* character, it is often indifferent whether the question be put in the *infin.* or the *subjunct.* Thus in *Liv.* vii. 15 '*Ubi illi clamores sint arma poscentium ? &c.*' '*ubi illos clamores esse . . .*' might have stood equally well.

\* '*Wc,*' 'you,' must be turned into '*they.*'

asked)? should not an honourable death be preferred to a disgraceful life?'—Almost all (of them) visited Balbus; 'Keep (said they) your word:<sup>d</sup> finish the business which you undertook to finish.'—'What is this,'<sup>e</sup> said he, 'O Tribunes? are you going to overthrow the state under the guidance of Appius' Herdonius?'—P. Valerius came to the Tribunes, crying out, 'What is this? Are you going to overthrow the state under the guidance of App. Herdonius?'—He cried out, 'that he called the Quirites to arms: that he would dare against the tribunes what the founder of his family had dared against the kings.'—What was I to do? all were crying out, that it was all over with the army. The Roman people had not<sup>f</sup> the same fortune at home *that* (they had) in the field. My (friend) Balbus has more influence with me than *any* other person. Socrates in Plato *says* that the soul is *not* mortal.

---

§ 59. *Oblique narration continued.* (Mood in subordinate clauses. Dependence on an infinitive.)

465. (a, In the *oratio obliqua*, even when dependent on a *past* tense, the *present* (and *perfect*) *subj.* are used when the clause expresses a *general truth*, independent of the judgment of the speaker, and when *the reporter of the speech* wishes to make the sentiment *his own*.<sup>f</sup>

466. (b) Remarks that are really the *reporter's* (i. e. were *not* made by the speaker) are, of course, in the *indicative*. The Indicative is also used by the *Historians*, when the writer wishes to intimate that what *is said* is *really so*, and not merely *so stated* by the speaker.

467. (c) The subordinate clauses inserted in propositions whose verbs are in the *inf.* or *subjunctive*, must have their verbs in the

---

<sup>d</sup> Compare [462, c, (3)]

<sup>e</sup> Quid hoc rei est?—This sentence is to be in *direct* narration.

<sup>f</sup> "Potest quis aliorum sententiam vel ita referre, ut tota ex eorum etiamnum pendeat mente, vel etiam tanquam *tritam* proponere atque *usu confirmatum*, quamque ipse jam fecerit suam. Prior si locum habet ratio, *imperfectum* conjunctivi poni solet: si posterior, *præsens*." (Wagner, ap. Krüger.)

subjunctive, *when they form a part of the whole meaning of the proposition.*<sup>ε</sup>

If such a clause only limits or describes a *particular term* of the proposition, without fairly *making a part of it*, the verb will be in the indicative.

468. (d) In sentences dependent on an *infinitive*, the *pres.* or *perf. subj.* are found, where the general rule requires the *imperf.* or *pluperf.*; but *not vice versâ*.

In other words, the *pres.* and *perf. subj.* may stand (instead of the *imperf.* or *pluperf.*) after the *perf. infinitive*; and also after the *pres.* or *fut. infinitive* when they depend on a *past tense*.

469. (a) Cicero dicebat : tria esse omnino genera quæ in disceptionem cadere possint : quid fiat, factum, futurumve sit, Cicero used to say that there were only three kinds of questions that could fall into controversy : what was doing, what had been done, and what would happen.

(b) Themistocles certiozem eum fecit, id agi ut pons, quem ille in Hellesponto fecerat, dissolveretur, Themistocles sent him word, that it was intended to break down the bridge which he had made over the Hellespont.

(c) Indignum videbatur populum Romanum ab iisdem Etruscis obsideri, quorum sæpe exercitus fuderit, It seemed an indignity that the Roman people should be besieged by those very Etruscans, whose armies they had often routed.

Certum est hominum causâ factum esse mundum quæque in eo sint <sup>h</sup> omnia, It is certain, that the world and every thing in it was made for man.

(d) With *inf. pres.* or *fut.*

(1) Dixit (he said); dicebat; dixerat; dicturus erat,

<sup>ε</sup> If, that is, they form an essential part of the leading proposition, being included in the *object*, the *purpose*, or the *circumstance supposed*. (Z.)

<sup>h</sup> 'Tantum rerum ubertatem natura largita est, ut ea, quæ gignuntur, donata consulto nobis videantur.' Here *ea quæ gignuntur* are the *actual productions* of nature. (Z.)

se { intelligere { quid *ageret* (or *agat*) hostis.<sup>1</sup>  
 intellecturum esse { quid *egisset* (or *egerit*) hostis.  
 quid *acturus esset* (or *acturus sit*) hostis.

(2) And (after any tense of *dico*, &c.)

se *intellexisse* { quid *ageret* (or *agat*) hostis.  
 quid *egisset* (or *egerit*) hostis.  
 quid *acturus esset* (or *acturus sit*) hostis.

#### 470. VOCABULARY 64.

(Prepositions ERGA, INTER, OB, PER.)

ERGA, acc. : TOWARDS (of favorable dispositions).<sup>2</sup>

INTER, acc. : BETWEEN ; AMONG ; in the midst of, during.

On the journey, inter viam.

They love me and each other, et nos et inter se amant.

OB, accus. ; on account of.

Before my eyes, ob oculos.

PER, acc. THROUGH (of place, time, and means). By (of the secondary agent<sup>m</sup> by whom we do any thing ; and in adjurations, in which it is separated from its noun by pronouns—'per ego te,' &c.). *By the leave of* (digladiantur per me licet : for any thing I care).

Per se = by him, &c., alone (ipse per se), for its own sake ; naturally ; of itself, &c.

Per in permagnus, pergratus, &c., is often separated from the adjective ; 'per mihi . . . gratum feceris.'

471. (a) (Eng.) To make a bridge over a river (See Ex. 469 (b)).

(Lat.) To make a bridge in a river.

(b) (Eng.) The town in question.

(Lat.) The town de quo agitur.

#### Exercise 68.

[Translate the clauses marked thus (†) both as the speaker's, and as the narrator's.]

472. Catilina informs (them) that he had sent forward Manlius to the great body of men<sup>n</sup> † whom he had prepared to take arms.<sup>72</sup> They warn them to depart from all the islands† which

<sup>1</sup> Krüger : who observes, that the use of the *present*, &c. may often be explained by the purpose of the writer, to intimate that what is said, *still* and *generally* holds good : and that sometimes there may be what Hermann calls a '*mutatio incertarum sententiarum in certas* ;' but that in many other passages no reason can be discovered for the employment of the *pres.* and *perf.* rather than the *imperf.* and *pluperf.*

<sup>2</sup> Rarely of hostile dispositions. (Z.)

<sup>1</sup> *Inter* sometimes stands between two substantives : 'Fœsusulas inter Arretumque.'

<sup>m</sup> For instance, to send a letter 'by a slave' (per servum).

<sup>n</sup> Ad eam multitudinem.

are between Italy (*Italia*) and Africa. He had contracted to build<sup>76</sup> a bridge over the river<sup>77</sup> Danube (*Ister, tri*, p. 14, 9, *a*). He answered, that custom, † which is a second nature, *was on our side*. Let them go away for any thing I care. He answered that he feared the waves, † which were *such as* he had never seen before. He answered that you, † such is your temperance,<sup>78</sup> were already well. He said that he was the first who<sup>79</sup> accomplished that journey. They cry out, 'Why are these (questions) asked? (460, *c*.) who is so powerful as to be able to perform all he wishes?' (68, *d*.)

473. (*a*) The *acc.* and *infin.* with *nē* in the oblique narration resembles, but must be distinguished from, its use to express emotion in direct narration.<sup>80</sup>

(*a*) *Adeone hominem infelicem esse quemquam, ut ego sum! That any man living should be so unfortunate as I am!*

### Exercise 69.

[In what mood are *questions of appeal* asked in oblique narration? 460, *c*.]

474. That you should be able (*inf. pres.*) to bear this! That you should say this! He said that we ought not to learn many things, but much. They cried out, 'Could any man bear this? Would she never see them without calling them betrayers of their country (88, *c*)? Let her learn (they said) to govern her tongue.'—*I fear that nobody will prefer a capital charge against him.* They say that Caius has been accused of bribery; which (36, *b*) I shall not easily be induced to believe.<sup>81</sup> He *says* that

\* 'Rivus' *brook*; 'fluvius' *river*; 'amnis' a *broad, deep river*. 'Fluinen' (properly the '*stream*,' flu-imen) is also used as a general term for '*river*' (being used here of the *Danube*); especially when there is reference to its *stream*.

<sup>76</sup> In a sentence of this kind, consider whether the *reporter* of the answer should be represented as *making it his own*; if so, the *subj. present* should be used by 465 (*a*).

<sup>77</sup> For which *ut* with the *subj.* is also found: *Tene ut ulla res frangat?—Tibi ego ut adverser?*

<sup>78</sup> *Obs. Credo*, which takes a *dat.* of the *person* believed, takes an *acc.* of the

he has *not* received the letters which I sent him (32, c). Who will deny that it is the duty of a Christian to keep his word? Who will deny that it is wise<sup>22</sup> to have death always before one's eyes? They replied, that they sent the letter *by* a slave. They answer, that the town in question is two hundred (Roman) miles from Rome. I had perished, *if* you had *not* succoured me.

### XXIII.

#### § 60. 'Qui' with Subjunctive.

475. 'Qui' takes the indicative, only when it refers to a *particular object* in the *most clear* and *direct* way; when there is no vagueness or indefiniteness whatever in the reference.

But when its reference is at all *vague* or indefinite, it governs the subjunctive.

476. *Qui* therefore governs the *subjunctive* whenever the object described by the relative could not, as it were, be *seen* and *touched*. Whenever it does not describe an *individual object*, but only refers it (or *them*) to a *particular class* by a mark *common to all the class*, it governs the subjunctive. When therefore for '*who*,' '*which*,' we might substitute '*of such a kind as to*,' '*such that*,' &c., *qui* governs the subjunctive.

(a) *Qui* with the *indicative* may refer an object to a class, but it then describes it (or *them*) in the *most definite* way. '*Qui non defendit amicum, quum potest.*' 'A man who *actually does not* defend his friend when he can.'

#### 477. VOCABULARY 65.

(Phrases after which *qui* is generally *indefinite*, and therefore takes the subjunctive.)

Some men; or there are some who, sunt qui.

There are not wanting men who, non desunt qui.

(NEGATIVES and VIRTUALLY NEGATIVES.)

Who is there?

quis est?

How few there are?

quotusquisque est?

Quotusquisque est is used interrogatively *and in the singular*; i. e., how many does each man who belongs to the class make? Quotus est? being 'how many does he make?' So, too, *nemo*; *nihil est*; *an ullus*, &c.

*thing believed*: and though '*I am believed*' is '*mihi creditur*,' it must be '*ego credor*' (tu *crederis*, &c.) when an *infin.* immediately follows (*I am believed to have done this*).

(REPERIO, INVENIO, HABEO.)

There are found persons who, reperiantur, inveniantur, qui.  
 You may find, reperias, invenias qui, &c.

(NIHIL EST QUOD, &amp;c. NIHIL HABEO QUOD, &amp;c.)

We have reason to rejoice, { est quod gaudeamus = 'there is something of such a kind that we should rejoice on account of it.' 'Quod' as an acc. neut. pron. (195, f.) going with gaudeo.

What is there that you can complain of? { quid est quod quæri possis?

We have no reason to desire, non est quod desideremus.

You have no reason to hurry, nihil est quod festines.

478. (a) (Eng.) I have nothing to accuse old age of.

(Lat.) I have nothing which I may accuse old age (quod incusam senectutem).

(b) (Eng.) A pen to write with.

(Lat.) A pen with which one may write.

(c) (Eng.) Men who abound in silver, in gold (and), in estates.

(Lat.) Men who abound in silver, who in gold, who in estates.

(d) (Eng.) Men who abound neither in silver, nor gold, nor estates.

(Lat.) Men who do not abound in silver, not in gold, not in estates.

## 479. VOCABULARY 66.

To drive away,	abigere, eg, act.
Stick,	bacillum, <sup>†</sup> i, n.
Bird,	avis, <sup>u</sup> is, f.
Put; lay down, or aside,	pōnere, <sup>v</sup> pōsu, pōsit.
To cross over,	trajicere, jēc, ject.
To allow it to happen,	committere (ut, with subj.).

\* Obs. With *sum*, *reperio*, *habeo*, &c., *qui* with the indicative is found, when it expresses particular objects in the most definite way. This is naturally oftener the case when *qui* relates to the *subject*, which is mostly a particular object (or objects), than when it relates to the *predicate*, which is generally some class in which the subject is contained. Tum primum reperta sunt, quæ per tot annos rempublicam exedere: not 'there were found evils which preyed on, &c.' but 'the evils which have actually preyed on the state for so many years, were then found for the first time.'

<sup>†</sup> A diminutive of *baculum*.

<sup>u</sup> *Votucres* are all 'winged creatures,' insects included. *Avis* is the general name for 'bird.' '*ales*' is the word in poetry and the language of the augurs for the larger birds, especially the eagle. In augury, *alites* were the birds whose flight, *oscines* the birds whose song or cry, was prophetic. (D.)

<sup>v</sup> *Ponere* aliquid, 'to lay down' a thing; 'to get it out of our hands'; 'to get rid of it.' *Locare* and *collocare* are 'to put a thing in its right place'; 'to place' advisedly for some purpose.

To be on the point of,  
Jewel,  
Unburied,

ineo esse (ut, with *subj.*).  
gemma, æ, f.  
inhumātus, a, um.

*Exercise 70.*

480. Diogenes ordered himself to be cast forth unburied. Then<sup>\*</sup> his friend said. 'To the birds and beasts?' 'By no means,' said he, 'but put a stick by me, to drive them away with (478).'<sup>†</sup>—*There are some who think* that Caius is pretending. *There were some who thought* that Caius was pretending. There are not wanting persons, who deny that the rule of expediency is the same *as that* of honour. There are found some, who *say* that we should *not* cultivate virtue. It is incredible how weary I am of life. We must cross over that sea which (48) you call ocean. There are some who think, that the best thing we have (53) will be lost. They cry out, that we shall lose the best thing we have. *We have no reason* to hurry. I have nothing to accuse you of (478). You have reason to rejoice, that you have *concealed* these things *from* your father. You will scarcely find any one to believe this. He was on the point of being killed. Had you rather be like one<sup>‡</sup> (212, x) of these persons who abound in gold, in silver, in jewels, or (like) C. Fabricius, who had none (*nihil*) of those things? How few there are, who have death always before their eyes!

---

§ 61. 'Qui' with the subjunctive continued.


481. *Qui* takes the subjunctive, when it introduces the *ground* of the assertion in the antecedent clause.

(a) Here there is some difficulty in determining whether *qui* is used

---

Then { = at that time, tum.  
          = after that, inde, deinde.  
          = therefore, igitur, itaque.

\* *Ponitote*. The forms of the imperative in *to*, *tote*, *nto*, are used in solemn commands and prohibitions, such as *laws*, *wills*, &c.

† [C. xxxiv.]  'One' often means 'some one' (aliquis), or 'a certain one' (quidam).



*definitely* or not. 'He was laughed at by all the rest, who did not acknowledge these faults to belong to Socrates;' this seems definite enough, but it is in the Latin, '*qui non agnoscerent.*'

(*§*) When therefore for '*who*' may be substituted '*for he (she, it, &c.)*' the verb should be the subjunctive.

482. For *qui* alone, *utpote qui*, *quippe qui*,<sup>a</sup> *ut qui* are also used generally with the subjunctive.

483. *Qui* takes the *subjunctive*, when it has the force of *ut* with a *personal* or *possessive* pronoun.<sup>b</sup>

It has this force after (1) *dignus*, *indignus*, *idoneus*, &c.

(2) *tam*, *talis*, *ejusmodi*, *is* (*such*), &c.

(3) comparatives with *quam*.

(4) *is sum*<sup>c</sup> (= *talis sum*), *I am a man too.*'

(5) *quis sum?*

(6) when it expresses a *purpose*.

(a) When *qui* = *ut is*, and introduces a *consequence*, the *perf.* subj. may be used for the *imperfect* by 418. 'Zeno nullo modo *is erat*, qui, ut Theophrastus, nervos virtutis *inciderit*. Cic. Acad. i. 10, 35. [*al. incideret.*]

484. *Qui* governs the subjunctive, when we may substitute for it, '*although*,' '*since*,' '*because*,' '*seeing that*,' &c. with a *personal* pronoun.

(a) *Qui* takes the subjunctive after *unus* and *solus*, signifying '*alone*,' '*only*.'

485. *Qui*, in narrative, is followed by the *subj.* of the *imperfect* and *pluperfect*, to express a *repeated action* taking place in *past time*.<sup>d</sup>

The relative adverbs (*ubi*, *qua*, &c.) govern the subjunctive of these tenses in the same way; and as far as they can be substituted for the relative, they follow the rules above given.

<sup>a</sup> This of course will not apply to the use of *qui* to introduce a new sentence where we use '*for he*,' &c.

<sup>b</sup> *Utpote qui*, *quippe qui* = '*inasmuch as they*,' '*for they*.' Grotefend remarks that *utpote*, *quippe* may generally be translated by '*namely*,' '*that is*.' Our '*as being*' will often give the force of them still better: they often stand before *attributives* only. '(Democrito) *quippe homini erudito*, &c.'

<sup>b</sup> Thus *qui* = *ut ego*, *ut tu*, *ut ille*; *ut nos*, *ut vos*, *ut illi*; through all their cases. So, *cujus* = *ut meus*, *tuus*, &c.: *quorum* = *ut noster*, *vester*, &c.

<sup>c</sup> But '*ut*' is sometimes used after '*is es*,' &c. 'Neque enim *is es*, Catilina *ut te* . . . ratio a furore revocarit.' (Cic. Cat. i. 9. 22.) *Te* is here emphatic.

<sup>d</sup> Examples of *qui* and relative adverbs used of repeated actions are: 'Nec quiaquam Pyrrhum, *qua tulisset* impetum, sustinere valuit.' 'Semper habet auri fortissimi, *qui summam imperii potirentur.*' (Z.)

486. The kind of sentences in which the relative may be thus introduced in Latin, will be best learned by examples.

- (a) (Eng.) He was despised by them, *for they* saw through him.  
 (Lat.) { He was despised by them, *who* saw through him (*subj.*).  
 { He was despised by them, *as-being who* saw through him (*subj.*).
- (b) (Eng.) He deserves (*or*, does not deserve) to be loved.  
 (Lat.) He is worthy, (*or*, unworthy) { *who should be loved.*  
 { *whom you should love.*
- (c) (Eng.) He is not a proper person *to be received*.  
 (Lat.) He is not a proper person { *who should be received.*  
 { *whom you should receive.*
- (d) (Eng.) None are so good *as never* to sin.  
 (Lat.) None are so good, *who* never sin (*subj.*).
- (e) (Eng.) None are so great, *as to be* independent.  
 (Lat.) None are so great, *who are* independent (*subj.*).
- (f) (Eng.) Of such a kind (*or*, such) *that* we can neglect duties *for their* sake.  
 (Lat.) Of such a kind, for the sake of *which* we can neglect duties.
- (g) (Eng.) *Too short to be* the whole life of man.  
 (Lat.) Shorter than *which can be* the whole life of man.
- (h) (Eng.) { Benefits greater than I can requite.  
 { Benefits *too great to be* requited.  
 (Lat.) Benefits greater than *which* I can requite.
- (i) (Eng.) { I am not a man *to believe* this.  
 { I am not so foolish, simple, &c., as *to believe* this.  
 { I am not *one who* believe this.  
 (Lat.) I am not he (*is*) who would believe (*qui putem*).
- (j) (Eng.) Who am I, *that my* writings should be honoured thus?  
 (Lat.) Who am I, *whose* writings should be honoured thus?
- (k) (Eng.) They sent ambassadors, *to sue* for peace.  
 (Lat.) They sent ambassadors, *who should sue* for peace.
- (l) (Eng.) He deserves praise (*or* blame) *for having done* this.  
 (Lat.) He deserves praise (*or* blame) *who did* this (*subj.*).
- (m) (Eng.) Wretched man that I *am*, who thought, &c.  
 (Lat.) O me miserable, who thought, &c. (*qui* with *subj.*).

\* Dignus (*or* indignus) qui ametur.

† Quam quæ sit, *or possit esse*. (See Difference of Idiom 94.)

‡ Quam quibus gratiam referre possim.

§ Oms. The verb after *qui* takes the *person of ego, tu, &c.*, not of '*is*' or *man*.

PERSON.

'I am not *one* who much or oft *delight*

To season my fireside with personal talk,' &c.

(Wordsworth.)

‘O me miserum!’ or ‘me miserum!’ The interjections *O, heu, prohi.* take the acc.; *hæi* and *væ* the dative; *en* and *ecce* the nom. or the acc. (the latter

*Exercise 71.*

[Translate '*I am not one who think.*' 486. i.]

487. We must take care to use such (*is*) a liberality as (*qui*) may be of service to our friends, (and) hurt nobody. There is no doubt, that the Gauls are too brave to be conquered (486, *g*) in one battle. Those eternal fires, which (48) we call stars, are too many to be numbered. He is a proper person to be received (486, *c*) into your friendship. Nothing is so valuable,\* *that* we should barter *for it* our faith and our liberty. No one can be so great, *as* (483, (2)) never to require the services of his friends. The benefits, *of which*<sup>1</sup> you have conferred upon me very many are greater than I can repay (486, *h*). I am not one who think that this world and every thing that is in it, was made by chance. There are some who believe, that this most beautiful world and all that is in it, was made by *some chance or other*. Who am I, that all men should *consult my interest*. (486, *j*)? Who will deny, that this life is *too short to be* the whole life of man? You are the only person (484, *a*) on whom the safety of the state depends. If Cato had died, Cicero would have been the only person on whom the safety of the state depended. I am not *so simple* (486, *i*) as to deny this.

## XXIV.

## § 62. Quum with the Indicative.

488. Since *quum* with the *indicative*<sup>1</sup> is far less common than with the subjunctive, it is important to get a clear notion when it should take the indicative.

---

chiefly in Comedy. Z.) The acc. of *personal* pronouns may stand in the acc. without the *interjection*, and even other words are so used.

\* Tanti, . . . quo vendamus = ut eo vendamus.

<sup>1</sup> When *quum*, *antequam*, *priusquam*, &c., take the *indicative*, either (1) the occurrence is connected with a *state that presents itself vividly to the speaker's recollection*, or with a fixed and definitely marked *point of time*: or (2) it falls without preparation or notice into the middle of another action (which is suspended or broken off by it), and thus is naturally described in an *unconnected* and abrupt manner. (*Hartung Partikellehre*, II. 335.)

(a) *Quum* takes the *indicative* when it simply marks the *time*, without carrying with it any notion of a *cause* or *occasion*.

'*When*' marks the time in this definite way, and is to be translated by *quum* with the *indicative*, when '*then*' might be substituted for it.

'It was night *when* he left the room,' = 'it was night: *then* he left the room.'

(b) *Quum* takes the *indicative* when, though it *does* introduce a *cause* or *occasion* of what is stated in the principal sentence, it nevertheless describes *the time* in a very marked manner, referring to *tum*, *nunc*, &c., or some *noun* of *time* expressed or understood in the principal clause.

(c) *Quum* takes the *indicative*, when what is said in the principal clause is not only *contemporaneous* with the action expressed in the *quum* clause, but is actually *included* in it.

When a '*when*' clause stands in this kind of close relation to its principal clause, the *participial substantive* under the government of '*in*' may generally be substituted for it.

'*When* you *censure* them, you *censure* me.'

'In *censuring* them, you *censure* me.'

(d) There are two less common meanings in which *quum* goes with the *indicative*:

(1) When it means '*since*' of time.<sup>m</sup>

(2) When it is equivalent to *quod*, after *gaudeo*, *gratulo*, &c.

489. The meanings in which '*quum*' always takes the subjunctive, are *since*, *inasmuch*, *as*, *although*, *whereas*. In the sense of '*when*' it takes the subjunctive, when the statement introduced by '*when*' is *also* the *cause* or *occasion* of what is asserted in the principal clause.

With the *imperf.* and *pluperf.* *quum* generally takes the subjunctive, though the notion of a *cause*, or even of an *occasion*, is hardly, if at all, perceptible. '*Quum* Agesillaus *reverteretur* ... *decessit*.'\* (*Corn. Nep.* I. 8, 6.)

490. (a) Jam ver appetebat, *quum* Hannibal ex hibernis movit,  
*The spring was already drawing on when Hannibal moved from his winter quarters.*

(b) Ager *quum* multos annos *quievit*, uberiores efferre fructus solet, *A field, when it has lain fallow many years, generally produces more abundant crops.*

<sup>m</sup> Ex ec tempore quo. Obs. That the *pres.* is used. (See 490, d.)

\* Or *quum* with the *indic.* of *imperf.* and *pluperf.*

(c) *Quum* in portum dico, in urbem dico, When I say into the port, I say into the city. (In saying into the port, I say, &c.)

(d) *Nondum* centum et decem anni sunt, *quum* de pecuniis repetundis a L. Pisone lata lex est, It is not yet a hundred and ten years since the law about extortion was carried by L. Piso.

Gratulor, *quum* tantum vales apud Dolabellum, I congratulate you on your influence with Dolabella.

191. (a) (Eng.) In attacking one, you attack all.

(Lat.) When you attack one, you attack all (*quum* with indic.).

(b) (Eng.) It is many years since he was first in my debt.<sup>a</sup>

(Lat.) There are many years, when he is in my debt.

(c) (Eng.) I congratulate you on your influence with Caius.

(Lat.) I congratulate you, when you avail so much with (apud) Caius

(d) (Eng.) I do not like to be abused.

(Lat.) I am not abused willingly (*libenter*).

#### 492. VOCABULARY 67.

This being so; this being the case, *quæ quum* ita sint.

Since,	{ <i>quum</i> (to denote the ground on which a judgment is formed); <i>quoniam</i> = <i>quum</i> , <i>jam</i> (used when the ground is an acknowledged fact <sup>a</sup> ).
Not that—but,	{ Non quod—sed: non quod <sup>b</sup> (with subjunct.).
To be spoken ill of,	male audire ('to hear ill').
Because,	{ <i>quia</i> ; <i>quod</i> (with indic., except where the subjunct. is required for some other reason.— <i>Quia</i> introduces a strict cause of the effect: <i>quod</i> the conceived cause or ground of an action).
I don't at all doubt,	nullus dubito. <sup>c</sup>
How insignificant,	quam nullus.
To congratulate,	gratulārī, gratulātus.

<sup>a</sup> Multi sunt anni *quum* ille in ære meo est.

<sup>b</sup> *Quando* is sometimes used in this sense; and also *quum*. 'Itaque, *quando* vestræ cautiones infirmæ sunt Græculam tibi nisi cautionem.' (C. Fam. vii. 13.) 'Tu *quum* instituiti, . . . scribe ad me.' (C. Fam. vii. 32.)—*Ut* has sometimes the meaning of *though*: 'ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas.'

<sup>c</sup> For non quod, we often find non eo or ideo quod: but also non quo: all with subj. 'Not as if not' is 'non quin.'

<sup>d</sup> This expression belongs to the language of common conversation, not to books.

To take,	{ sūmere, sumps, sumpt.; cāpere, lo, cēp
	{ capt.
To take hold of,	prehendere,prehend,prehens.
To do well,	præclare facere.

✚ The *subject of congratulation* stands in the *acc.* or in the *abl.* with *de* or *in*; or in the *indic.* with *quod*, for which *quum* is sometimes used (See 491, c.)

### Exercise 72.

[With what mood may *interrogatives* be used in *oblique* appeals? (460, c)]

493. This being the case, I am unwilling to leave the city. Cæsar, when he had conquered the Gauls (= *having conquered* the Gauls), returned to Rome. We know how insignificant the strength of men is. Who, when he sees this (= *seeing*, or *on seeing this*), would not make merry (*perf. subj.*) with you? Phocion was constantly poor, though he might have been very rich. Is it not several years since Caius was (first) in your debt? Is there any man who can be compared with Balbus? You do well in loving the boy (491, a). When I assert the one, I deny the other. He says that, if I had conquered the Gauls, he should have congratulated me on my victory. I congratulate you on your having recovered (*that you have recovered*). Does any man *like* to be ill spoken of? I will hold my tongue, not that I believe the mar., but because it *makes no difference* to me. They cried out, 'Why did he advise this? might they depart a *finger's* breadth from the rule of honour?' They asked, 'Was not Caius nearer Rome than Labienus?' (question for *information*). They answer that we ought to *consult the interests* of those with whom we *have to live*.<sup>27)</sup>

### 494. VOCABULARY 68.

(Conjunctions that go with *subjunct.* only.)

As if,	{ quasi = quam si (relating to <i>manner</i> );
	{ tanquam = tam quam (relating to <i>de gree</i> ; 'just as if').

Sumimus quo utamur: capimus quod habeamus;prehendimus quod teneamus. (D.) Sumere (*to take of my own free will and choice*) is generally spoken of something that we *may* appropriate: capere (*seize upon*) often denotes the taking what does not belong to us. (H.)

\* Also velut si, velut, ac si (*and sometimes sicut; poetically seu*). After *tanquam*, *si* is often expressed, and may always be understood.

Would that,  
O that!

utinam.  
O si!

Provided only,

} dummōdo (for which dum, modo are  
used separately—'not,' after these  
words is 'nē').

It is nearly the same thing as if,  
As if forsooth,  
Perhaps,

perinde sēre est ac si.  
quasi vero.  
forsitan (often with *perf. subj.*).

495. ☞ With these words the general rule for the sequence of tenses (40) is to be observed. The English would mislead us.

Pugnat, quasi *contendat*, He *fight*s as if he contended,  
or were contending, &c.

Pugnavit, quasi *contenderet*, He *fought* as if he had  
been contending, &c.

496. With *utinam* the *pres.* and *perf.* are used, if the thing wished is not to be *represented* (whatever it may be) as *impossible to be realized*. The *imperf.* and *pluperf.* express wishes that *are* (in the speaker's opinion) *impossible*, or *unlikely*, to be realized. 'Not' after *utinam* is *regularly nē*, but very often *non*.

### Exercise 73.

(Obs. In the principal clause the *ita* or *sic*,<sup>1</sup> to which *quasi* or *tanquam* refers, is often expressed.)

497. They saluted Caius' (just) as if he had been consul'. Many, *not to say* all, saluted Caius, as if he had been consul. Would that you were consul! Would that I had been engaged in that battle! Would that I had been able to avoid suspicion! Provided your word be kept, *I don't care a straw* for all the rest. Provided you do not break your word, *I don't care this* for all the rest. Would that the letter had not been written! Live with men as if the immortal gods saw you. (Insert '*sic*' in the princ. clause.) Speak with your friends, as if all men heard you. All men are calling upon me, as if forsooth it were my *business* to assist all men. Would that Varro himself would apply vigorously to my cause! Perhaps some one may say, that these things are too small *to be seen* with the naked eye (pl.). How few are there, who apply vigorously to another man's cause!

<sup>1</sup> *Sic* relates more to something *preceding* and actually *given*: *ita* to something *following* and *supposed*. (R. and H.)

## XXV.

## § 63. Antequam and Priusquam.

498. (a) When the principal verb is in the *present* tense, the verb in the clause with *antequam* or *priusquam* may be in the *pres. indicative* or *subjunctive*.

499. (b) When the principal verb is in the *future*, the dependent verb may be in the *future perfect*, or the *present subjunctive*; sometimes also it is found in the *present indicative*.

500. (c) When the principal verb is in a *past tense*, the dependent verb is either in the *perfect indicative* or in the *imperfect subjunctive*:—in the *perfect indicative*, if there is *no closer connection* between the two occurrences than *precedence in point of time*, what is stated in the subordinate clause being stated as an *actual occurrence*:—in the *imperfect* (or, if necessary, the *pluperfect*) *subjunctive*, when there is a closer connection between the two occurrences than that of *mere precedence in point of time*.

501. And, generally, *whenever* there is a *closer connection* between the two clauses than that of *mere priority* (whenever, for instance, it is stated or implied to be *necessary, proper, or designed* with a view to some *purpose*,<sup>1</sup> that the one action or event should precede the other); and whenever the two are contemplated as forming a *connected sequence*, the subjunctive should be used.

502. *Oss.* When the stress is on the *before, ante* or *prius* stands in the principal clause; either *early* in it (which is their most *emphatic* position), or just before the *quam*, but not forming one word with it. When they are thus *emphatic*, the verb being in past time, the *perf. indicative* is commonly used (rather than the *imp. subj.*): especially when a *negative* accompanies them: *non ante, nec ante, non prius*.

503. (a) Ante rorat quam pluit, *It drops before it rains.*

In the following passage Livy uses the *pres.* where we should rather have expected the *subj.* 'Sed ante quam opprimūt lux majoraque hostium agmina obsepiunt iter . . . erumpamus' (xxii. 50). So too in Virgil: 'Sed mihi vel tellus, optem, prius ima dehiscat, | Ante, pudor, quam te violē,' &c. (Æn. iv. 25.) In *Nep.* iii. 2, the *imp. subj.* is used where there seems to be only the simple relation of *precedence in point of time*. 'Aristides interfuit pugne navali apud Salamina, quæ facta est prius quam ille pœnâ (exsili) liberaretur.'



Tempestas minatur antequam surgat, *A tempest threatens before it gets up.*

- (b) *Antequam* aliquo loco *consedero*, longas a me literas non expectabis, *Till I settle somewhere, you will not expect long letters from me.*

{ Antequam de republicâ dicam, exponam vobis breviter, &c.  
 Priusquam respondeo . . . dicam, &c., (Phil. ii. 3.)  
 Priusquam conor . . . proponam, &c., (iii. de Orat. 25.)

- (c) Hæc omnia ante facta sunt, quam Verres Italiam attigit, *All these things were done before Verres reached Italy.*

Ducentis annis ante quam Romam caperent, in Italiam Galli transcenderunt, *The Gauls crossed over into Italy two hundred years before they took Rome.*

501. (1) (Eng.) A mortal body must necessarily die.

(Lat.) *It is necessary*, that a mortal body should die (Corpus mortale interire necesse est; or intereat necesse est; the subj being governed by ut omitted).

- (2) (Eng.) There is no living pleasantly.

(Lat.) *It cannot be lived pleasantly* (jucunde vivi non potest).

## 505. VOCABULARY 69.

(The Prepositions PRÆTER, SECUNDUM)

PRÆTER, *beside; beyond, above* (of degree); *contrary to; besides; to say nothing of, except, but.*

Contrary to expectation,

præter expectationem.

Contrary to your custom,

præter consuetudinem tuam.

SECUNDUM (*from sequi*), 'following.' *Along; after* (of time); *after, next to; according to; in favour of* (with verbs of judging, &c.).

He made a decree in your favour, secundum te decrevit.

## Exercise 74.

[How are questions of appeal to be translated in oblique narration?]

506. I will not leave the city before I have had an interview with Caius (b). Before I set out, I had an interview with Balbus (c). He answered that, before he set out, he had an interview with Cæsar. There is no living pleasantly, unless you live (*impers. pass.*) according to nature. Under the guidance of nature there is no going wrong. Contrary to expectation, the

Prætor *has made a decret in favour of Caius*. They exclaim, Are not hidden dangers always the most difficult to avoid? Who *can deny*, that the Prætor has made a decree in your favour? *This being the case*, I have no doubt that the Prætor will make a decree in your favour. This being the case, the world *must necessarily* be governed by some wise mind. Virtue must necessarily hate vice. *I am not so foolish as to deny* (486, i) that virtue and vice are contrary to each other. If I had not believed Caius, I should never *have put myself in their power*. Who is there who denies this?

## XXVI.

§ 64. *Dum, Donec, Quoad, &c.*

507. (a) *Dum, donec, quoad* (= *until, till*) take the *indicative*, when they merely *mark the time* up to which the action or state is to be continued.

508. (b) *Dum, donec, quoad* (= *until, till*) take the *subjunctive*, when that up to which the action or state is to be continued, is to be represented, not as a *fact*, but only as what *may possibly* occur; especially when it is itself *the object pursued*.

509. (c) *Dum, whilst*, takes a *present indicative* even when the principal verb is in a *past tense*.

This arose from an endeavour to represent duration in a vivid manner. A past tense is occasionally found, e. g. 'qui *dum* veritus est, non vidit.' (Cic. *ad. Att.* i. 16.) 'Quæ divina res *dum* conficiebatur, quæsit,' &c. (Nep. *Hann.* ii.)

510. *Dum, donec, quamdiu, quoad* (= *as long as*) take the *indicative*.

511. (a) Epaminondas ferrum in corpore retinuit, *quoad* renuntiatum est vicisse Boetios, *Epaminondas* retained

\* In the sense of '*whilst*,' '*as long as*,' *donec* always denotes a space of time carried on to such a *termination*: *dum* denotes this, but more with reference to the *space itself*, than to its *termination*. *Quoad* marks the continuance of the time quite up to the point mentioned: it relates to a *demonstrative* expressed or understood in the principal clause. When the statement introduced by *whilst* is the *cause or occasion* of what follows, *dum* should be used.

*the spear in his body, till it was reported to him that the Bœotians had conquered.*

(b) *Differant, donec defervescat ira, Let them put off (the purpose of taking revenge) till their anger cools.*

(c) *Dum Romani ea parant . . . jam Saguntum oppugnabatur, Whilst the Romans were making these preparations, Saguntum was already besieged.*

# 512. VOCABULARY 70.

After,	postquam; sometimes posteaquam.
Before,	antequam
As soon as,	{ ut primum; quum primum; simul ac or atque: (with <i>indic.</i> )
When = as soon as,	ubi; ut; (with <i>indic.</i> )
(Adverbs of <i>place</i> with <i>genit.</i> )	
Where in the world are you?	ubi terrarum es?
Where in the world are we?	ubi gentium sumus?
To such a height of insolence,	eo insolentiae.
To what a degree of madness,	quo amentiae.
As far as I can,	{ quoad ejus facere possum (where the genit. 'ejus' relates to the preceding proposition).
As far as can be done; as far as possible.	{ quoad ejus fieri potest.
To meet,	{ obviam (with the <i>dat.</i> : obviam, from ob, via).
To march against the enemy,	obviam ire hostibus.
Nearer,	{ propius (with <i>dat.</i> or <i>acc.</i> (see 211) Su proxime).
(Adverbs of <i>quantity</i> with <i>genit.</i> )	
Enough,	{ sat, or satis,* of what is really enough; affatim of what a given person thinks or feels enough. Affatim = ad fatim, 'to satiety;' fatis an old substantive from the same root as fatisco, fatigo, and fastidium. (D.)
Abundantly,	abunde.
Abundance of timber,	abunde materiae.

513. (Eng.) *In addition to this, he was blind.*

(Lat.) *There was added to this, that he was blind* (Huc accedebat, u. cæcus cesset. With a *pres. tense*, accedit).

514. With the adverbs meaning 'as soon as,' the English *pluperfect* should be translated by the *perfect*. In this sense, postquam 'after' is usually

\* *Sat* before polysyllables, *satis* before disyllables. (*Baumgarten Crusius ad Sueton.*)

followed by the *perfect* indicative. (See note\*, page 114.) When the *pluperf.* is used, the succeeding action is generally not represented as following the other immediately: e. g. *P. Africanus, postquam bis consul et censor fuerat, L. Cottam in iudicium vocavit* (Cic. Div. in Cæc. 21): this however is not always the case: e. g. *Nep. Lysand. 4 (end): postquam de suis rebus—dixerat,—librum—tradidit*. When continued states or repeated actions are described, the principal verb being in the *imperfect*, the *imp.* or *pluperf.* is used. ‘*Simulac se remiserat . . . reperiebatur.*’ (*Nep. Alcib. 1.*) (Z.)

### Exercise 75.

[How are questions of *appeal* to be translated in direct narration? 427, c.]

515. As long as he was in the city, I opposed his designs. Men, whilst they teach, learn. Who can deny that men learn whilst they teach? As soon as the business is finished,<sup>90</sup> I shall wait upon Caius. As soon as the business was finished *satisfactorily*, he waited upon Caius. Wait till Caius returns.<sup>98</sup> Let me know where in the world you are. Men have now arrived (*impers. pass.*) at such a height of madness, that whilst all men consult their own interests, no man provides for the interests of his country. It is the part of a wise man, as long as he lives, to prefer virtue to all things. In addition to this, he was lame of one leg. How few are there who provide-for-the-interests of their country! He persuaded the Athenians to march against the enemy. Wait at Rome till you recover. The business is too difficult to be finished by any body. It is not every body who can finish such<sup>10)</sup> a business in a few days. We learn many things whilst we are playing. Have we (then) need of some Greek master to teach us<sup>108</sup> to play upon the lyre? Let us neither ask what is disgraceful nor do it when we are asked.

## XXVII.

### § 65. Quod.

516. ‘*That*’ is expressed by ‘*quod*,’ when it introduces the ground of a former statement, or the explanation of a term in a former proposition; especially when it refers to a demonstrative pronoun or adverb expressed or implied.

\* Show the ambiguity of this sentence by translating it in two ways.

Such pronouns and adverbs are *id, hoc, illud: eo, ideo, idcirco, propterea, interea, ita, tam, sic, &c.*

517. Verbs of the affections (*rejoice, grieve, wonder, &c.*) are followed by *quod*, or by the *accusative* with the infinitive.\*

518. *Quod* takes the *indicative*, except when it introduces the *ground of another person's judgment or conduct*; when it takes the *subjunctive* (by 461).

Of course it must be followed by the subjunctive in *oblique narration*. and it must be remembered that when an *acc.* with *inf.* follows a *verb of saying, &c.*, the narration is oblique.

519. The *ground* of an accusation is, of course, in the subjunctive (by 461); so also the reason for which *another person praises or blames* any body.

520. '*Quod*' with a verb is often the proper way of translating the *participial substantive* under the government of a preposition.

(1) (*Eng.*) He accused him *of having betrayed* the king.

(*Lat.*) He accused him, *that he had betrayed* the king (*quod* with *subj.*).

(2) (*Eng.*) *His having spared* the conquered, is a great thing.

(*Lat.*) *That he spared* the conquered, is a great thing.

(or) *That (or, this) that he spared* the conquered, is a great thing.†

(3) (*Eng.*) He *praised* (or *blamed*) him, *for having done* this.

(*Lat.*) He *praised* (or *blamed*) him, *that he had done* this.

(*Quod* with *subj.*: the *indicative* would intimate that the *narrator* believed him to *have actually done* it.)

(4) (*Eng.*) Many persons admire poems *without* understanding them.

(*Lat.*) Many persons admire poems, *nor* understand them.

(*neque intelligunt.*)

(5) (*Eng.*) You cannot be ruined *without* ruining others.

(*Lat.*) You cannot be ruined *so as not* to ruin others.

(*ut non* \* with *subj.*)

## 521. VOCABULARY 71.

To be praised; grieve for,

{ *dolēre*<sup>a</sup> *dolu, dolit*, (with *acc.* or *abl.*  
{ with *de*).

\* *Quod*, introducing the statement as a *fact*, is naturally better suited to the *past* than to the *present*. '*Gaudeo quod scripsisti*' is better than '*te scripsisse.*'

(Z.) With verbs that express an *emotion or feeling* (*gaudeo, doleo, miror*), the *acc.* with *inf.* is the more common: with those that express the *manifestation* of an emotion or feeling (*laudo, reprehendo, accuso, misereor, gratias ago, gratulor, consolor*), *quod* is preferred. (Z., 8th ed.)

† *Magnum est hoc, quod victor victis pepercit.*

\* Or '*quin*' if the sentence is of a negative character.

<sup>a</sup> *Dolere* is to *feel pain or sorrow*; *moerere* is to *show* it by outward signs that

Grieve; grieve for,  
To mourn; bewail,  
To be glad,  
To rejoice,  
Exceedingly,  
To recruit oneself,

mœrere, mœstus (with acc. or abl.),  
lūgere, lux, luct.  
lætari, lætatus.  
gaudere,<sup>b</sup> gāvīsus sum.  
vehementer.  
se reficere.

(The Preposition DE.)

DE, concerning, about; down from; from (Cicero has, audire de ali quo: so emere, conducere de aliquo): of, with partitives: by or according to, of advice (de consilio meo); with words of time; &c.

In the middle of the night, mediâ de nocte.  
By night, de nocte.  
Late at night, multâ de nocte.  
On purpose, de industriâ.  
To know a man by face, de facie nosse.  
Unexpectedly, de improvīso.

Exercise 76.

[In sentences dependent on an *infm.*, what tenses are sometimes found instead of the *imperf.* and *pluperf.* subj.? 469, d.]

522. Know that I do not know the man even by face. I am exceedingly glad that you have finished the business to your satisfaction. I rejoice that you have *obtained a triumph for a victory over the Gauls*. I shall wait at Rome till I recruit myself. He answered that he was going to remain at Rome till he had recruited himself. I will not leave Rome before I have recruited myself. Caius praises the greatest poets *without understanding* them. I had rather be a good man *without seeming* (one), than seem one *without being* (so) [Translate with *ut*]. Would you prefer being wise *without seeming* (so), or seeming wise *without being so*? I did not fear that any one would grieve for the death of abandoned citizens. No one ever grieved more for the death

are *involuntary*, arising from an *irresistible feeling* (and thus *mœrere* and *mœror* rise above *dolere* and *dolor*); *lugere* is to *show* it by *conventional signs*; to *mourn*. (D.)

<sup>b</sup> *Gaudere* is to *feel joy*; *lætari* is to *show it by joyful looks*, &c. (D.) Döderlein thinks Cicero mistaken when he makes *lætari* express an *exulting, triumphant joy*, *gaudere* a more temperate delight. But *could* Cicero be mistaken on such a point, involving no principle of etymology, but only a correct perception of the relative force of two words in common use? At all events, according to Döderlein's own explanation, *lætari*, expressing the *manifestation* of joy in consequence of an *irresistible feeling*, might be expected to rise above *gaudere*, just as *mœrere* above *dolere*.

of his only son, than he grieved for that of his father. Why should I now bewail the life of men? This being the case, *what reason have we*<sup>109</sup> for bewailing the death of abandoned citizens? *How few are there*, who would bewail the death of Caius? They were set upon the enemy unexpectedly, and put them to flight. He did it in such a manner (*ita*) that it seemed to be done on purpose.

## XXVIII.

§ 66. *The Roman Calendar.*

523. The Roman months were of the same number of days as the English months, but were differently divided.

524. The first day of the month was called the *Kalends* (*Kalendæ*): the *Nones* (*Nonæ*) fell on the *fifth* or *seventh*: the *Ides* (*Idus uum, f.*) were always eight days after the *Nones*, that is, on the *thirteenth* or *fifteenth*.

525. In *March, July, October, May,*

The *Nones* were on the *seventh* day.

(And therefore the *Ides* on the *fifteenth*.)

526. Days between the *Kalends* and the *Nones* were reckoned by their distance from the *Nones*: those between the *Nones* and the *Ides* by their distance from the *Ides*: those after the *Ides* by their distance from the *Kalends* of the following month.

Hence a day after the fifteenth of *May*, would be such a day before the *Kalends* of *June*.

527. Suppose we take the *third of March*; this is a day before the *Nones* of *March*, which happens on the *seventh*. Now  $7-3=4$ : but the Romans reckoned *both days in*, so that they would call the *third* of *March* *not the fourth*, but the *fifth* day before the *Nones*.

528. To suit this Roman way of reckoning, we must subtract the given day from the *number of the day* on which the *Nones* or *Ides* fall *increased by one*. If the day be one before the *Kalends*, we must subtract from *the last day* of the month *increased by two*. If the remainder be *two*, the day will be *pridie*; because the day the Romans would call the *second day before*, was '*the day before*,' as we speak.

529. Thus take the 3rd, 9th, 23rd of June :

(1) In June the Nones are on the *fifth*: therefore three must be subtracted from ( $5 + 1 =$ ) *six*; and the remainder being 3, the day is 'the third day before the Nones of June.'

(2) In June the Nones being on the fifth, the Ides are on the *thirteenth*, and the subtraction must be from *fourteen*. Hence subtract 9 from 14: the remainder being 5, the day is the *fifth* day before the Ides of June.

(3) Since June has *thirty* days, we must subtract from thirty-two.

Hence subtract 23 from 32; the remainder being 9, the day is the *ninth day before the Kalends of July*.

☞ (The adjective forms are used with the months,<sup>c</sup> and *Idus* is *fem.*)

530. To express *when* ?

'On the third before the Kalends of March' is by rule '*die tertio ante Kalendas Martias*,' which was shortened by the omission of *die* and *ante* into '*tertio Kalendas Martias*' or '*iii. Kal. Mart.*'

But another form is used (almost exclusively) by *Cicero* and *Livy*; this form is '*ante-diem tertium Kalendas Martias*' shortened into '*a. d. iii. Kal. Mart.*,' a form which cannot be explained *grammatically*.

This *ante-diem* came to be treated as an indeclinable substantive, and the prepositions *ad*, *in*, *ex*, were prefixed to it, as to other substantives of time.

531. [*When ? on what day ?*]

Natus est Augustus *ix. Kalendas Octobres*, Augustus was born on the twenty-third of September ( $32 - 9 = 23$ .)

Claudius natus est *Kalendis Augustis*, Claudius was born on the first of August.

Claudius obiit (or excessit) *iii. Idus Octobres*, Claudius died on the thirteenth of October ( $16 - 3 = 13$ .)

Meministine me *ante diem* (a. d.) *xii. Kalendas Novembres* dicere in Senatu ? Do you remember that I spoke in the Senate on the 21st of October ? ( $33 - 12 = 21$ .)

[Against or by such a day : for such a day.]

Consul comitia *in ante diem tertium Nonas Sextiles*

<sup>c</sup> These forms are, Januarius, Februarius, Martius, Aprilis, Maius, Junius, Quintilis (or Julius), Sextilis (or Augustus), Septem-, Octo-, Novem-, Decembris.



(= Augustus<sup>d</sup>) edixit, *The Consul fixed the elections by an edict for the third of August (6—3=3.)*

In *ante dies octavum et septimum Kalendas Octobres* comitiis acta dies, *The time of the elections is fixed for the twenty-fourth and twenty-fifth of September (32—8=24).*

Capuam venire jussi sumus ad *Nonas Februarias*,  
*We are ordered to come to Capua by the fifth of February.*

### 532. VOCABULARY 72.

Elections,

To my election,

To suffer,

To lose flesh,

To stay (in a place),

To compel,

The day before the Ides,

To fix by edict,

It is worth while,

{ comitia, ōrum (properly, 'the assembling of the people' for the purpose of electing the consuls, &c. &c.).

{ ad mea comitia (i. e. to the meeting at which I am to be elected or rejected).

sinere,\* siv, sit; pati, tor, passus.

corpus amittere.

commorari.

cōgēre, cōēg, coact.

pridie Idus: or pridie Iduum.

edicere (with acc.).

operæ pretium est.

533. (a) (Eng.) *Instead of reading, he is at play.*

(Lat.) He is at play, *whereas he ought to read* (quum debeat).

(b) (Eng.) *Instead of growing rich, he is growing poor.*

(Lat.) He is growing poor, *whereas he might grow rich* (quum posset).

534. (c) (Eng.) *Far from thinking this, I hold, &c.*

(Lat.) *It is so far off that I should think this, that I hold, &c.* (tantum abest ut—ut,\* &c.)

### Exercise 77.

535. Tiberius died on the sixteenth of March. Nero was born

<sup>d</sup> The months of July and August were called *Quintilis*, *Sextilis* respectively, (= the *fifth* and *sixth* month, reckoning from *March*, the old beginning of the year,) till those names were exchanged for *Julius* and *Augustus* in honour of the first two Cæsars.

\* *Sinere* is properly 'to let go,' 'not to stop,' *pati* is, 'not to prohibit:' *sinere* has for its immediate object the person acting, *pati* the action itself: *sinere* is commonly, though not exclusively, followed by *ut* with the subj.: *pati* by the acc. with *inf.* (D.)

\* *Tantum abest ut nostra miremur, ut . . . nobis ipse non satisfaciat Demosthenes.* Sometimes the second *ut* is omitted, the clause having *vix* or *etiam*: '*tantum abest ut inflammare nostros animos: somnum vix tenebamur.*' (Cic. Brut. 80.)

on the fifteenth of December. Caius was born on the fifteenth of October. Balbus died on the twelfth of August. Vitellius was born on the 24th of September; or, as some (say), on the seventh of September. The Consul has fixed (by edict) the elections for the 21st of July. I believe that the elections will be fixed for the ninth of April. *Say* that I shall *not* be angry with him, if he does not come<sup>99</sup> to my election. I am compelled to stay here till I recruit myself: for I have lost both flesh and strength. There are some who think that the elections will be fixed for the ninth and tenth of July. Instead of being with me, he is at his own house. Instead of being very rich (as he might have been), he is very poor. Instead of applying vigorously to the affair, he is gone into the country. I am so far from praising, that I can scarcely restrain myself from calling you a betrayer of your country. I am so far from believing *any* body (*no matter who he may be*), that I scarcely believe you. I was so far from being ill spoken of, that all men praised me. There were some who laughed.

---

## XXIX.

### § 67. *Connection of Propositions by the Relative.* *Imperative forms.*

536. Any *relative* pronoun or adverb may be used for the corresponding *demonstrative* with the conjunction *and* (and sometimes, *but, for, therefore, &c.*)

537. When in English such a clause as '*they say,*' '*as—says,*' &c., is inserted parenthetically in a relative sentence, the verb of this clause should generally be made the principal verb of the relative clause in Latin, the other verb being put in the infinitive.

538. When in English the relative pronoun is separated from its verb by another clause, which contains a demonstrative pronoun, the relative should be expressed in *that clause* in Latin, and the demonstrative be expressed or understood in the other.

539. The imperative may be expressed by several circumlocutions:

- (1) The imperat. of *command* by *cura ut* (take care to), *fac ut* (or *fac* only) with *subj.*  
 (2) The imperat. of *prohibition* by *cave* with *subj* (governed by *ut* omitted), or *noli* with *infin.*<sup>1</sup>

540. (a) (Eng.) Two and two make four : *and* if *this* is granted, &c.

(Lat.) Two and two make four : if *which* is granted, &c.

(b) (Eng.) Calus, *who, they say*, was killed at Lugdunum.

(Lat.) Calus, *whom* they report to have been killed, &c.

(c) (Eng.) Crassus, *who, as* Lucilius tells us, never laughed but once.

(Lat.) Crassus, *whom* Lucilius reports to have never laughed but once.

(d) (Eng.) Narratives, by *which*, when we read *them*, we are affected.

(Lat.) Narratives, *which* when we read, we are affected.

(e) (Eng.) Success with *which*, if *it* should fall to our lot, we should be dissatisfied.

(Lat.) Success, if *which* should fall to our lot, we should be dissatisfied.

(f) (Eng.) I did this; *and* if you had not thwarted me, &c.

(Lat.) I did this; *whom* if you had not thwarted, &c.

541. [C. xxxv.] § 3 'Will' and 'would,' 'will not' and 'would not' are often principal verbs, to be translated by *velle* and *nolle* respectively.

They are to be translated when for

*will*, *would*, we may substitute  
*is* (are, &c.) *willing*, *was* (were, &c.) *willing*.

## 542. VOCABULARY 73.

(Phrases with *E, EX; PRÆ, PRO, IN.*)

To have a pain in my feet,	ex pedibus laborāre, or dolēre.
To cook with water,	ex aquā cōquēre; cox, coct.
From a wall,	ex muro.
Opposite, over-against,	e, not ex, regiōne.*
To be tired with a journey,	e viā languēre.
To live according to nature,	e naturā vivēre.
From the heart,	ex animo (in sincerity).
It is for my interest,	e re meā est. <sup>a</sup>
(To place) on a table,	in mensā.
For = owing to, especially of obstacles,	} præ (with <i>abl.</i> )
In comparison with him,	præ illo.
Safe,	salvus, a, um; incolumis, is, e. <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Cura ut* quam primum *venias*. *Fac* animo forti, magnoque *sis*. *Cave* putes, or noll putare.—Such forms in English are, 'take care to,' 'be sure you,' 'mind you,' &c.

<sup>a</sup> In Latin, the relative must stand before *si*.

\* Another noun will, of course, follow *regiōne* in the *gen.*

<sup>a</sup> So, e republicā est.

<sup>1</sup> A person is *tutus* when he is in safety; *securus* when he believes himself to

Pro virili parte, according to one's duty or power as an individual (*not* 'with all one's might') as far as an individual can.

Pro re natâ (according to the thing that has arisen) = according to *circumstances*.

Pro eo ac mereor, according to my deserts.

### Exercise 78.

543. *I for my part* wished this: *and* if Pompejus had not envied me, the republic would now be safe. Philosophy teaches that the world moves; *and* if *this* be true, we also must necessarily move. Who can deny that this is for my interest? The gods will requite me according to my deserts. Is it not certain, that the gods will requite you according to your deserts? I am sorry that you have a pain in your head. If you had done this, I should have praised you from my heart. You will not be able to see the sun for the multitude of our javelins. Caius, being tired of his journey, was killed by his slave. They answered that they *would* receive us. Did he not answer that he would not receive us? *Do not think* that the soul is mortal. Take care to finish the business to my satisfaction. Do not think that every man can command himself. Be sure to come to my assistance as soon as possible. Who will deny that these things are for the interests of the republic? I cannot speak for sorrow. Be sure not to impute this to me as a fault. Be sure not to hurry. Be sure not to believe that it is necessary to make haste; *for*, if you believe *this*, it is all over with us. The moon is eclipsed, when it is opposite to the sun. May I not determine what should be done according to circumstances? It is the part of a good citizen to defend the republic as far as an individual can. Benefits, *for which*, if you confer *them* upon me, I will prove myself grateful (*memor*). You may eat the food <sup>p</sup> which is placed on the table. He says that he will not eat the cheese <sup>p</sup> which is placed on the

---

de eo, and is *without care* (se-curus) or *anxiety* on the subject. Hence 'Ne si securus, qui non est tutus ab hoste.' Of *salvus, sospes, incolumis*,—*salvus* says the least (as it properly relates only to (*existence*)); *sospes* more, as it points to the protection of a higher power; *incolumis* the most of all, as it excludes not only *annihilation*, but even the supposition of any *injury* or *attack*.

table. I shall do what appears<sup>22</sup> best to be done according to circumstances. There were some who could not speak for sorrow.

## XXX.

§ 68. *On the Roman way of reckoning money.*

544. The Romans reckoned their money by *sesterces* : and by *nummus*, when it means a *coin*, *sestertius* is always meant.

d. q.

545. A *sestertius* (= 1 3/4 or 3 1/2 cents) was not quite equal to *twopences* English money.

A *sestertium* = a *thousand sestertii* : it was the name of a *sum*, not of a *coin*.

546. *Sestertii* and *sestertia* are used quite regularly with numeral adjectives : but *sestertium* in the singular is used in a very peculiar way with numeral adverbs.

547. ☞ With numeral adverbs *sestertium* means so many '*hundred thousand sesterces*.'

Hence *Sestertium semel* \* = 'a hundred thousand sesterces.'

*Sestertium decies* = *ten* 'hundred thousand sesterces' = a million sesterces.

*Sestertium vicies* = 20 'hundred thousand sesterces' = two million sesterces. &c. &c.

Oss. With numeral adverbs *below* '*ten times*,' so many *hundred thousand sesterces* are meant.

With numeral adverbs *above* and *multiples* of '*ten times*,' throw away the cipher from the *units*' place, and you have the number of '*millions of sesterces*.'

Thus, if '*sestertium sexcenties*' were the sum; throwing away 0 from the *units*' place of 600, we have '*60 millions of sesterces*' for the sum.

	£.	s.	d.	
* A sestertium	=	8	1	5 1/4 = \$38 68.

Sestertium semel	=	807	5	10 = \$3873 60.
------------------	---	-----	---	-----------------

*Sestertium decies, centies, millies*, &c. (that is, the multiples of *semel* by 10) are got approximately by this rule :—For every cipher in the proposed multiple add to the *right hand* of 807 one figure taken (successively) from the *left hand* of the series 291666 continued *ad infinitum*. Thus to get *sestertium millies*, since 1000 has 3 ciphers, I must add 3 figures (291) taken from the left hand of the given series to the right hand of 807. Hence *millies sestertium* = 807291 = nearly \$4,000,000 in *whole numbers*.

With intermediate numerals, the sum is easily obtained by these rules: Sestertium *ter vicies* = '2 million, 3 hundred thousand sesterces.'

548. In this construction *sestertium* is declined :

Sestertium *vicies*, two million sesterces.

Sestertii *vicies*, of two million sesterces, &c.

549. In turning the number of sesterces into Latin, remember that to the numeral before '*millions*' I must add a cipher in the *units*' place (in other words, multiply it by 10) to get the *numeral adverb*, that is to go with *sestertium*. Thus in '2 million sesterces,' by adding a cipher in the *units*' place to 2, I get 20, and *vicies* is the adverb required.

550. (a) *Sex millibus ædes conduxit*, He hired a house for six thousand (sesterces).

(b) *Sex sestertia persolvit*, He paid six thousand sesterces.

(c) In *sestertio vicies* (*splendide se gerens*), On a fortune of two million sesterces.

#### 551. VOCABULARY 74.

Inheritance,

To keep up a certain state,

A freedman,

Descended from,

Meanly

hereditas, *âtis*, *f.*

splendide se gerere; gess, gest.

libertinus, *l. m.* (but if spoken in reference to his master, *libertus*. Thus Brutus's *libertus* is one of the class *libertini*).

oriundus:—'*nati* Carthagine, sed *oriundi* ab Syracusis; 'born at Carthage, but of Syracusan extraction;' or 'descended from a family that had formerly lived at Syracuse.'

sordide.

#### Exercise 79.

552. He kept up a certain state with a fortune of three million sesterces. With a fortune of two millions of sesterces he kept up more state than Caius, who had received 10 millions from his father. Caius, the freedman of Brutus, left more than 15 thousand sesterces. That you, with a fortune of 10 millions, should live so meanly! Caius, who was of Syracusan extraction, sent Brutus two hundred thousand sesterces as a present. On the

\* With *amplius plus, minus*, &c. *quam* is often omitted; the noun standing in the case it would have stood in, if *quam* had been expressed. Sometimes however the *ablat.* follows these adverbs.

23rd of November, Balbus sent me as a present twenty thousand sesterces. He gave them three thousand sesterces a-piece. From this inheritance Atticus received about ten million sesterces.

§ 69. *On the division of the As: the method of reckoning fractions, interest, &c.*

553.	As		
	Deunx	$\frac{1}{12}$	} of an As.
	Dextans	$(\frac{1}{12} =) \frac{5}{6}$	
	Dodrans <sup>1</sup>	$(\frac{3}{12} =) \frac{3}{4}$	
	Bes (bessis)	$(\frac{4}{12} =) \frac{2}{3}$	
	Septunx	$\frac{7}{12}$	
	Semis (semissis)	$(\frac{6}{12} =) \frac{1}{2}$	
	Quincunx	$\frac{5}{12}$	
	Triens	$(\frac{4}{12} =) \frac{1}{3}$	
	Quadrans	$(\frac{3}{12} =) \frac{1}{4}$	
	Sextans	$(\frac{2}{12} =) \frac{1}{6}$	
	Uncia	$\frac{1}{12}$	

554. These words were used to express the *fractions* set down opposite to their names.

555. The same division was used in reckoning the interest of money, which was due *monthly*. *Asses usuræ* = one As per month for the use of a *hundred*. This was also called *centesima usuræ*, because in 100 months a sum equal to the whole principal would have been paid.

*Asses or centesimæ usuræ* = 12 per cent.

Deunces	} usuræ	11
Dextantes		10
Dodrantes		9
Besses		8
Septunces		7
Semisses		6
Quincunces		5
Trientes		4
Quadrantes		3
Sextantes		2
Unciæ		1

*Bini centesimæ* = 24 per cent. and so on.

<sup>1</sup> Dodrans = de-quadrans.

556. (a) *Statura ejus quinque pedum et dodrantis fuit, His height was five feet and three-fourths (five feet nine).*

(Eum) *hæredem fecit ex dodrante, He left him heir to three-fourths of his estate.*

(b) *Assibus usuris grandem pecuniam collocavit, He invested a large sum of money at 12 per cent.*

*Exercise 80.*

557. Caius, the freedman of Balbus, has been made heir to one half of his estate. He has left one Caius, of Carthaginian extraction, the heir to seven-twelfths of his estate; from which inheritance he will receive, I think, about six hundred thousand sesterces. The freedman of Brutus, who died at Rome on the third of August, has left nearly fifteen million sesterces; and it is thought that Caius has been left heir to half *his* estate. He is said to have lodged a large sum of money in the hands of<sup>1</sup> Balbus at 9 per cent.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Apud aliquem collocare.*



# TABLES FOR REFERENCE.

TABLE I.—GENDERS.

OBS.—*Mas.* exceptions are in *capitals*; *fem.* in the common type; *neut.* in *italic*  
(THIRD DECLENSION.)

<i>Mas. terminations.</i>	<i>Fem. terminations.</i>	<i>Neut. terminations.</i>
EE, OE, OS, ES <i>increasing</i> , O, <i>when not do, go, io.</i>	do, go, io,* as, is, aus, X, es <i>not increasing</i> s <i>impure</i> us <i>in hypermon.</i>	c, a, i, e, l, n, ar, ur, us. us <i>monosyll.</i>
Principal Exceptions.	Principal Exceptions.	Principal Exceptions
cr) <i>cadūver</i> <i>uber</i> <i>iter</i> <i>ver</i> <i>papūver</i> <i>verber</i> <i>tuber</i> or) <i>arbor</i> <i>aquor</i> <i>marmor</i> <i>cor</i> as) <i>compes</i> <i>requies</i> <i>merces</i> <i>seges</i> <i>merges</i> <i>teges</i> <i>quies</i> <i>as</i> os) <i>cos</i> <i>dos</i> os ( <i>ossis</i> ) os ( <i>oris</i> ) <i>†chaos</i> <i>†epos</i> <i>†melos</i> o) <i>caro</i> <i>techo</i>	do { ORDO CARDO go { LIGO io { MARGO (f) † is) AMNIS      LAPIS ANGUIS(f) MENSIS AXIS        ORBIS CASSIS(is) PANIS COLLIS      PISCIS CINIS        POSTIS CRINIS      PULVIS ENSIS        SANGUIS FASCIS      TORRIS FINIS (f)    UNGUIS FOLLIS      VECTIS FUNIS        VERMIS IGNIS x) CALIX CODEX CORTEX GREX POLLEX SILEX (f) †THORAX VERTEX es, parl- } ACINĀCES. syll.    } BIDENS ( <i>hoc</i> ). s im- { MONS pure { FONS FONS DENS      RUDENS †HYDROPS as) AS      ELEPHAS vas ( <i>vasis</i> ) fas nefas	l) SAL SOL n) LIEN REN SPLEN PECTEN ur) FUR FURFUR TURTUR VULTUR us) pecus ( <i>ūdla</i> ) LEPUS us mono- } grus (m) syllable } sus (m) } mus.  FOURTH DECL. (us) <i>Mas.</i> except acus idus (pl.) manus porticus tribus  FIFTH DECL. <i>Fem.</i> except DIES (also <i>Fem.</i> <i>in sing.</i> ) MERIDIES.
First Decl. <i>Fem.</i> except names of <i>men.</i>		
SEC. DECL. (us, er) § <i>Mas.</i> —except alvus domus humus vannus <i>pelagus</i> <i>virus</i> <i>vulgus</i> (also m.)		

\* Words in *io* that are not *abstract* nouns are *mas.* e. g. PAPILIO, PUGIO, SCIPIO, SEPTENTRIO, STELLIO, UNIO (pearl), with the numeral nouns TERNIO, QUATERNIO, &c.  
† Properly Greek words.

‡ Those with (f), (m), are sometimes *fem.* and *mas.* respectively.

§ *Greek nouns* in *ōdus* (*exōdus*, *methōdus*, &c.) with *dialectus*, *diphthongus*, &c. are *fem.*

These rules depend on the terminations; but some words have a particular gender from their *meaning*.

A. The names of *male persons* and *winds*, are masculine.

B. The names of *female persons*, *countries*, *islands*, *towns*, *plants*, and *trees*, are fem.

(a) But of *towns*, these are *mas*.

(1) Some in *o* (CROTO, HIPPO, NARBO, SULMO, PRUSINO): and

(2) All plurals in *i*; VEII, DELPHI.

These are neuter:

(1) All in *um*, or plur. *a*; (2) Those in *e* or *ur* of the third; *Præneste*, *Tibur*.

(b) Of *trees* and *plants*;

(1) Those in *er* (and many in *us*) of the second are *mas*.:

(2) Those in *er*, *ur* of the third are *neut*.: *acer*, *siler*, *robur*, &c.

C. Several are common: *comes*, *conjug*, *custos*, *dux*, *hospes*, *juvenis*, *parens*, *princeps*, *sacerdos*, &c.

TABLE II.—Formation of the Perfect and Supine.

I. **1.** The first syllable of *dissyllable* perfects and supines is *long*, if the next syllable begins with a consonant.

(a) But *seven* perfects have *short* penult: *bibi*, *dēdi*, *fidi*, *scīdi*, *stēti*, *stīti*, *tūti*.

(b) *Nine* dissyllable supines have *short* penult: *dātum*, *citum*,\* *itum*, *litum*, *gūtum*, *rātum*, *rūtum*, *sātum*, *situm*.

(c) *Statum* from *sto* is long, but from *sisto* short; and the compounds of *sto* that make *stitum* have *i*: as *præstitum*, from *præstare*. Though *nosco* has *nōtum*, its compounds that have *itum* have *i* (*cognosco*, *cognitum*).

N. B. Verbs in *italics* have no supine.

II. **FIRST CONJUGATION** [properly a *contracted* conjugation; *ama-o*, *amo*].

(1) Most verbs of this conjugation form roots of *perfect* and *supine*, by adding *v*, *t*, respectively to the proper root.

[*amo* (*ama-o*); *amāv-i*; *amāt-um*.]

(2) Others change *a* into *u*; and form the sup. in *itum*, after rejecting *a*. *Crēpo*, *crēpui*, *crēpitum*. So *cūbo*, *dōmo*, *frico* (*also* *fricātum*), *mīco*, *sūno*, *tūno*, *vēto*, *sēco* (*sectum*)—*jūvo*, *jūvi*, *jūtum*? *jūvātum*?

(3) Others form *perf.* in both of these ways.

*Discrepo*, *discrepāvi* and *discrepui*, *discrepatum* (?). So *incrēpo* (*ui*, *itum* *preferred*); the compounds of *neco*, and the obsolete *plico* (*fold*).

(*But* *supplico*, *duplico*, *multiplico*, *only* *āvi*, *ātum*: *explico*, *explāvi*, *reg.*; *unfold*, *ui*, *itum*.)

(4) Irregular (with *reduplication*).

*Do*, *dēdi*, *dātum* (*with* *ā* in *dāre*, *dābo*, *dābam*, &c.); *sto*, *stēti*, *stātum*: *but* *stāre*, &c.

\* From *cico*, to excite. Of the compounds several have *cīre*, *cītum*, from the absol. *cio*.

## III. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Properly a *contracted* conjugation, but with the vowels open in the first pers. singular of the present tense. (Mone-o; mone-is = monēs, &c.\*)

- (1) Most reject *e*, and form perfect and supine in *ui*, *itum*.

(Mon-eo, mon-ui, mon-itum.)

- (2) But some retain *e*, and add *v*, in the perf.—eo, ēvi, ētum.

Deleo, delēvi, delētum. Fleo, neo, and verbs formed from oleo<sup>a</sup> (*make to grow*), pleo (*fill*), and sueo (*am accustomed*).

- (3) Others form *perf.* from root of *present*, lengthening the vowel (if short), when *pres.* ends in a single consonant.

Cāveo, cāvi, cautum : fāveo.

Fōveo, fōvi, fōtum : mōveo, voveo : pāveo, ferreo (and *sext.*); Con-  
niveo, nivi and nixi.

Prandeo (pransum), vīdeo (vīsum), sēdeo (sessum), strīdeo.<sup>b</sup>

- (4) Others form *perf.* in *si*.

(*α*) *p* sounds. (Any *p<sup>c</sup>* sound with *s* = *ps*; but *bs* sometimes = *ss*.)

Jubeo, jussi, jussum; sorbeo, sorpsi, sorptum.

(*β*) *k* sounds. (The *k* sound, if *impure*, is thrown away before *s*. Any *k* sound with *s* = *x*: *qu* is to be treated as a *k* sound.)

Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum. Algeo, indulgeo (indultum), fulgeo, mulgeo, tergeo, turgeo, urgeo, torqueo (tortum).

Augeo, auxi, auctum : luceo, frigeo, lugeo.

(*γ*) *t* sounds. (*t* sound thrown away before *s*.)

Ardeo, arsi, arsum; rideo, suadeo.

(*δ*) Liquid verbs. (*r* thrown away before *s*.)

Maneo, mansi, mansum : hæreo.

(*ε*) With *reduplication*. (*t* sound thrown away before *s*.)

Mordeo, mōmordi, morsum : pendeo, spondeo, tondeo.

(*ζ*) Neuter passives: audeo, ausus sum; gaudeo, gavisus sum; soleo, solitus sum.

(*η*) The following have *perf.* in *ui*, but do not form their supines in *itum*.

Doceo, doctum; teneo, tentum; misceo, mixtum and mistum; torreo, tostum; censeo, censum; recenseo, recensum and recensitum.

## IV. THIRD CONJUGATION.

(1) Perfect in *i*, added to root of present.

(*α*) Acuo, acui, acūtum : arguo, congruo, imbuo, induo, luo (lulturus), metuo, minuo, pluo, ruo (rūtum, rultum), spuo, statuo, sternuo, suo, tribuo. Volvo, volvi, volūtum. So solvo.

(*β*) *t* sound thrown away before *s* in *sup.*

Mando, mandi, mansum; pando (passum, pansum rare), prehendo

\* Some of which have *oleo* in *pres.* Aboleo, *sup. abolitum*: *adolescens* *adultum*.

<sup>b</sup> *languet, languui; liqueo, liqui* and *licui*

	smooth.	mid.	asp.
• Mutes with a <i>p</i> sound,	p	b	(ph).
_____ <i>k</i> _____	c	g	(ch).
_____ <i>t</i> _____	t	d	(th).

scando; and compounds of cando (*kindle*), fando (*thrust*), in cendo, fendo.

- (γ) Bībo (bībī, bibītum); cūdo (cūsum), *dāgo, lambo, psallo, scābo* (scabi), *sīdo, vello* (vulsum: also vulsi), verro (versum<sup>4</sup>), verito (versum), vīso (vīsum).

- (δ) (Short vowel of root *lengthened*—ū changed into ē in *perf.*)

Cāp-io, cēpi, captum: faciō, jācio, āgo, ēdo (ēsum), ēmo (emptum), lēgo (lectum), fōdio (fossum), fūgio (fugitum).

- (ε) (π or m, by which the present has been lengthened from a *simpler* root, rejected.)

(retaining *short* vowel) findo (fid), fidi, fissum: scindo (scid).

(lengthening the vowel: a changed into ɛ.)

Frango, frag, frēgi (fractum); fundo, fud (fūsum); linquo, liqu, llo (liqui, lictum); rumpo, rup (ruptum); vinco, vic (victum).

Percello, percūli, perculsum; sisto, stiti, stritum.

- (ζ) With reduplication.

Cādo, cēcidi, cāsum; cædo, cēcidi, cæsum; cāno, cēcini, cantum; crēdo, crēdidi, crēditum; pango (pag), pēpigi, pactum: parco, pēperci, parci-tum or parsum; pario, pēpēri, partum; pello, pēpūli, pulsum; pendo pēpendi, pensum; pungo, pūpūgi, punctum; *posco, pūposci; tango* (tag), tētrigi, tactum; tendo, tētendi, tensum and tentum; tundo tūtūdi, tūsum. So the compounds of *do; conda, abdo, reddo, &c. condidi, conditum, &c.*

(2) Perfect in *ei*.

- (α) *p* sounds. (If Any *p* sound with *s* is *ps*; with *t*, *pt*.)

Glūbo, glupsi, gluptum: nābo, scribo, carpo, rēpo, scalpo, sculpo.

- (β) *k* sounds, including those in *h, qu, and æ*. (Any *k* sound with *s* is *x*; with *t*, *ct*.)

Cingo, cinxi, cinctum; sūgo, tēgo, fingo (fictum), tingo, ungo: *ango* figo (fixum), jungo, lingo, mingo, mungo, *ningo*, pingo (pictum), plango, stringo (strictum), rēgo, dīco, dūco, cōquo, trāho,<sup>5</sup> vēho. Add compounds of *stinguo; exstinguo, restinguo.*

Flecto, flexi, flexum, nexō (also nexui), pecto.

- (γ) Liquid Verbs (assuming a *p* before *s*)

Cōmo, compsi, comptum; dēmo, prōmo, sūmo, contemno.

- (δ) *t* sounds. (*t* sound thrown away before *s*: vowel, if *short*, lengthened.)

Claudo, clausi, clausum; divīdo, divīsi, divīsum: lādo, lūdo, plaudo, rādo, rōdo, trūdo: mitto (mīsi, missum).—Compounds of *vādo*

- (λ) *k* sounds. (the *k* sound thrown away.)

Spargo, sparsi, sparsum; mergo, tergo.

- (μ) *t* sounds. (*ds* changed into *ss*;) cēdo, cessi, cessum.

- (ν) Liquid verbs. (*r, m* changed into *s* before *s*.)

Gēro, gessi, gestum: ūro, prēmō (pressum)

- (ξ) Compounds of *specio* (*behold*) ending in *spicio* make *spexi, spectrum*.

<sup>4</sup> *verri, versum* poetical. Z.

<sup>5</sup> *h* sounds have had originally a hard sound. Thus *hieme* for *χειμῶν*, and *hs* = *x* (*veh-si* = *vari*).

*Those in licio from lació (entice) except elicio, make lexi, lectum.*  
 Dilligo, dilexi, dilectum : intelligo, negligo.

Col-, e-, di-, se-, ligo, with perlego, prælego, have perf. lægi.

(3) Verbs with perf. in *ui*.

(o) Without change of root.

ālo, ālui, ālitum (and altum) : cōlo (cultum), consūlo (consultum), mōlo; occūlo (occultum), vōlo, nōlo, mālo; compounds of cello (rush; shoot forth); frēmo, gēmo, trēmo, vōmo, gigno, (gen, gēnui, gēnī-tum); rāpio, rāpui, raptum; sēpio, elicio, compesco, diapesco, depso (also depstum), pinso (also pinsi, pistum); sterio (also steri).—Compounds of sero (to connect), serui, sertum.

(\*) With change of root.

Mēto, messui, messum; pōno, pōsui, pōsitum; cerno, crēvi, crētum; lino, lēvi (livi rare), litum; sino, sivi, situm; sperno, sprēvi, sprētum; sterno, strāvi, strātum; sēro, sēvi, sētum; tēro, trīvi, trītum.

Cresco (cre), crēvi, crētum; nosco.

Pasco (pastum); quiesco, suesco.

(p) Verbs forming perf. in *xi*, as if they had roots ending in *k* sound or *k*.  
 Fluo, fluxi, fluxum; struo, structum; vīvo (victum).

(4) Perfect in *ivi*.

(o) Pēto, pētīvi, pētītum : cūpio, arcesso, capesso, lacesso, incesso

(5) Neuter Verb.

(7) Fido, fīsus sum (confido, diffido).

Fero, fāli, fātum.

Tollo, sustūli, sublātum.

## V. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

(1) Perfect in *i*.

(a) Venio, vēni, ventum; compērio, compēri, compertum. So reperio

(2) Perfect in *ui*.

(s) Sālio, salui, saltum; āpērio, ōpērio, amicio (amicui?).

(3) Perfect in *si*.

Farcio, farsī, fartum; fulcio, haurio (hausi, haustum), raucio (rausum); sarcio, sepio; sancio, sanxi, sanctum; vincio; sentio, sensi, sensum.

## VI. DEONENTS.

SECOND CONJUGATION. Fāteor, fassus; liceor, licitus; mēreor, mēritus; misēreor, miseritus, misertus; reor, rātus; tueor, tuitus; vēreor, veritus.

THIRD CONJUGATION. Adīpiscor, ādeptus; amplector, amplexus; complector, complexus; divortor, diversus; (so prævortor, rēvertor); expergiscor, expectus; fruor, fruitus and fructus; fungor, functus; grādior, gressus; invēhor, invectus; iraseor, irātus; lābor, lapsus; lōquor, lōcūtus; mōrīor, mortuus; nanciscor, nactus; nascor, nātus;

<sup>1</sup> Properly, *to separate*. In the sense of *to see*, it has neither perf. nor sup.

nitor, nīsus, nixus; obliviscor, oblītus; paciscor, pactus; pascor, pastus; pātor, passus; prōficiātor, profectus; quēror, questus  
sequor, sēcūtus: ulciscor, ultus; ūtor, ūsus.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. Adsentior, adsensus: expērior, expertus, mētor, mensus; oppērior, oppertus; ordior, orsus; orior, ortus.\*

VII (If *sc* in verbs denotes the *beginning* of an action or state.)

*Inchoatives* in *sc* have no *perfect*, but that (in *ui*) of the *root*. This would hardly be considered *their* perfect, did not some of those formed from nouns take a perfect in *ui*, though no verb in *sc* occurs.

VIII. In compound verbs (1) *a*, *æ*, of the root often become *i*, sometimes *e*: (2) *e* of the root often becomes *i*: (3) the *reduplication* of the root is dropt, except in *præcurro* and the compounds of *posco* and *disco*.

\* The *present* follows the *third*; but 2 sing. *crīris* or *orēris*.

# TABLE

OF

## DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM.

&c.

---

ENGLISH.	LATIN.
1. You and I,        }	{ I and you,
Balbus and I,   }	{ I and Balbus.
2. <i>Says</i> that he has <i>not</i> <sup>a</sup> sinned.	<i>Denies</i> ( <i>negat</i> ) that he has sinned.
<i>Says</i> that he has <i>never</i> , &c.	<i>Denies</i> that he has <i>ever</i> , &c.
3. He promises <i>to come</i> .	He promises <i>that he will come</i> (acc. with inf.)
He hopes <i>to live</i> .	He hopes <i>that he shall live</i> (acc. with inf.)
He undertakes <i>to do it</i> .	He undertakes <i>that he will do it</i> (acc. with inf.)
He pretends <i>to be mad</i> (16).	He pretends <i>that he is mad</i> (acc. with inf.: <i>prom.</i> expressed).
4. To have a prosperous voyage.	To sail from ( = <i>according to</i> ) one's thought or intention ( <i>ex sententiâ navigare</i> .)
5. To my, his, &c. satisfaction: satisfactorily; successfully.	<i>Ex sententiâ</i> .
6. To fight <i>on horseback</i> .	To fight from ( <i>ex</i> ) a horse. <sup>b</sup>
6*. It is <i>a breach</i> of duty.	It is <i>against</i> ( <i>contra</i> ) duty.
7. He sends the most faithful slave he has.	He sends the slave, <i>whom</i> he has the most faithful.
8. He was <i>the first to do this</i> ,        }	He the first (person) did this (55).
( <i>Or</i> ) He was <i>the first who did this</i> . }	He alone did it ( <i>solus fecit</i> ).
So, He was the only one <i>who</i> did it.	{ <i>Which</i> is your temperance.
9. <i>Such</i> is your temperance,	{ <i>Of which</i> temperance you are.
Or, <i>With your usual</i> temperance.	{ <i>For</i> ( = in proportion to) your temperance (56).

---

<sup>a</sup> *Obs.* *Says not* should not be translated by *nego* unless it is in answer to an *actual* or *virtual question*. When the *not* is closely connected with the following verb, it should be translated by *non*.

<sup>b</sup> *Ex equis*, if more persons than one are spoken of.

ENGLISH.	LATIN.
10. <i>As far as</i> I know.	<i>Which</i> I may know ( <i>quod secum</i> ).
11. It's all over with . . .	It is done concerning ( <i>actum est de</i> ). .
12. { To <i>make</i> the same boast.	To boast the same thing (59).
{ To <i>make</i> the same promise.	To promise the same thing (59).
{ To <i>make</i> many promises.	To promise } many things.
{ To <i>utter</i> many falsehoods.	To lie }
13. To take by storm.	To <i>fight</i> a place out by force ( <i>per vim expugnare</i> ).
14. That nothing . . .	Lest any thing ( <i>ne quid</i> ).
That nobody . . .	Lest any body ( <i>ne quis</i> ).
That never . . .	Lest ever ( <i>ne unquam</i> ).
[This is only when 'that' introduces a purpose.]	
15. No food is so heavy <i>as not to be</i> digested, &c.	No food is so heavy <i>but</i> ( <i>quin</i> ) it may be digested, &c.
He is so foolish <i>as to</i> think, &c.	So foolish <i>that</i> he thinks ( <i>ut</i> ), 66, d.
16. She <i>never</i> saw him <i>without</i> calling him, &c.	She never saw him, <i>but</i> ( <i>quin</i> ) she called him, &c.
17. He could scarcely be restrained <i>from</i> throwing, &c.	He could scarcely be restrained <i>but that</i> ( <i>quin</i> ) he should throw (88).
18. I left nothing undone to appease him.	I left undone ( <i>prætermisi</i> ) nothing <i>that</i> I should not ( <i>quin</i> ) appease him.
I cannot but, &c.	I cannot do (any thing) <i>but that</i> ( <i>facere non possum quin</i> ), &c.
19. I will not object <i>to your doing it</i> .	I will not object <i>but that</i> ( <i>recusabo quin</i> ) you should do it.
20. It cannot be that the soul is not immortal (89).	It cannot be ( <i>fieri</i> ) <i>but that</i> ( <i>quin</i> ) the soul is immortal.
21. { Nothing prevents him from doing it.	Nothing prevents ( <i>obstat</i> ) by which he should the less do it ( <i>quominus faciat</i> ).
{ So, nothing deters him from doing it.	Nothing deters him by which he should the less do it (99).
22. It was <i>owing to you that</i> I did not succeed.	It stood through you by which I should the less succeed ( <i>per te stetit quominus</i> , &c., 99).
23. By sea and land.	By land and sea.
24. { To be within a very little of . . .	To be a very little distant <i>but that</i> . .
{ Or, But a little more and . . .	[minimum abesse ( <i>impers.</i> ) <i>quin</i> .]
Not to be far from.	Haud multum } abesse.
25. I almost think, <sup>e</sup>	Haud procul }
I don't know whether, } &c.	Haud scio an; nescio an, &c.
26. To take away any one's life.	To snatch away life to (= <i>from</i> ) any one ( <i>vitam alicui eripere</i> . 132).
27. The city of Rome, the island of Cyprus.	The city Rome; the island Cyprus.
He did this <i>as</i> (or <i>when</i> ) Consul.	He Consul (= being Consul) did this.
28. { I may go.	{ To me it-is-permitted ( <i>licet</i> ) to go
{ I am permitted to go.	(124).
I ought to do it.	It behoveth me ( <i>oportet</i> me) to do it.
I ought to have done it.	It behoveth me ( <i>oportuit</i> ) to do it (126).

<sup>e</sup> *Haud scio an, nescio an, dubito an* may be followed by the negatives, *nemo, nihil, nullus, nunquam*, or by the for as that follow negatives, *quisquam, quicquam, ullus, unquam*. *Haud scio an* approaches nearer to a denial than *haud scio an quisquam*. (G.)—But Cicero and his contemporaries never omit the negative. (*Matthiä, Hand, &c.*)



## ENGLISH.

## LATIN.

29. I am at leisure to read.

There is leisure (*vacat*) to me to read (154).

30. I have need of food.

{ (1) There is to me a business with food (*prep.* omitted).  
(2) Food is a business to me.There is need of { making-haste.  
deliberation.  
prompt execution.There is need of (Opus est) { (the matter) *being hastened*.  
(the matter) *being consulted*.  
(the matter) *promptly done* (177).31. How many are there of you?  
How many are there of us?  
Three hundred of us are come.How many are ye? (*quot estis?*)  
How many are we? (*quot sumus?*)  
We (being) three hundred are come.  
(*Trecenti venimus.*)Of whom there are { few.  
very many.Who are { few.  
very many.  
Which very many (*quæ plurima*) . . .  
*Others* mock; *others* approve (*alii-*  
*alii*).

32. Some mock, others approve.

33. One was a Greek; the other a Roman.

The other was a Greek; the other a Roman (*alter-alter*).

34. Such a lover of truth.

So (*adeo*) loving of, &c.

35. To take in good part.

Boni consulerē.† (See 185.\*)

36. He was condemned in his absence.

He being absent was condemned.

37. To prefer a capital charge against Caius.

To make Caius an accused-person (*reus*) of a capital matter (187).

To bring an action against a man for bribery.

To make a man an accused-person of bribery (*gen.*); or, about bribery (*de*).

To prefer a charge of immorality against Caius.

To make Caius an accused-person (*reus*) about morals (*de moribus*. 187).

To inform a man of a plan.

To make a man sure of a plan (*certiorē facere*).

38. Without any danger . . .

Without (*expers*, adj.) all danger.

39. It is characteristic of . . .

It is (a mark) of . . .

It is incumbent on . . .

It is (the duty) of . . .

It is for . . .

It is (the character, privilege, &amp;c.) of . . .

It demands, or requires, firmness.

It is (a thing) of (= for) firmness.

It shows, or betrays, weakness.

It is (a mark) of weakness.

Any man may do it.

It is any man's (task) to do it.

It is not every man who can &amp;c.

It is not every man's (task) to do it (*non cujusvis est*), &c.

It is wise.

It is (the conduct) of a wise man.

40. To reduce to subjection.  
To bring under his dominion.Words in brackets to be omitted  
To make of his own dominion (*sua ditionis facere*).41. To be capitally condemned.  
To be acquitted of a capital charge.To be condemned of the head.  
To be acquitted of the head.

42. Common to me and you.

Common to me with you.

43. To compare things together.

To compare things amongst (or between) themselves (*inter se*) 221 (c.).

44. To threaten a man with death.

To threaten death to a man (222).

45. To prefer death to slavery.

To reckon slavery after death (*servitūtem mortis posthabere*, 227).  
(or, as in *Eng.*, with *antepone*).† *Equi boni facere*: in bonam partem accipere.

## ENGLISH.

46. To surround the city with a wall.  
 To besprinkle a man with praises.  
 To put on a garment.  
 To take the enemy's camp, baggage, &c.  
 To obstruct (or cut off) the enemy's flight.  
 To cut off the supplies of the Gauls.
47. I have a book.  
 I have two books.
48. To come } to the assistance of  
 To send } Cæsar.  
 To set out }
49. To give as a present.  
 To impute as a fault.
50. To be a reproach, or disgraceful.  
 To be very advantageous.  
 To be odious; hateful.
- OBS. 'How' before the adj. must be 'quantus' in agreement with subst.
- [51. To throw himself at Cæsar's feet.]
52. Caius would say . . .  
 Caius used to say . . .
53. I fear that he *will* come.  
 I fear that he *will not* come.
54. The war *against* Pyrrhus.  
 Connection *with* Pompey.  
 Rest *from* labours.  
 Wrongs *done to* Caius.
55. He did it *that* he might the more easily escape.
56. To make Cæsar retire.
57. It *is becoming to* (or *in*) an orator to be angry, &c.  
 So, it *is unbecoming to* (or *in*) an orator . . .
58. This victory *cost* them many wounds.
59. Hardly any body.

## LATIN.

- To give-round (*circumdare*) a wall to the city [or as in Eng.].  
 To besprinkle (*aspergere*) praises to man [or as in Eng.].  
 To clothe (*induerere*) myself with a garment; or to put-on (*induerere*) a garment to myself.  
 To strip (*exuere*) the enemy of their camp, baggage, &c. (abl.) 233.  
 To shut-up (*intercludere*) flight to the enemy (233).  
 To shut-up (*intercludere*) the Gauls from their supplies (abl. *commeatu*). 233.  
 There *is* a book to me.  
 There are two books to me (236).  
 To come } to Cæsar for an assist-  
 To send } ance (dat.).  
 To set out }
- (Auxilio venire, mittere, proficisci.)  
 To give *for* a present (dono dare).  
 To give it } *for* a fault (dat.).  
 To turn it }
- (Culpæ, or vitio dare, or vertere.)  
 To be *for* a reproach (opprobrio esse)  
 To be *for* a great advantage (magna utilitati esse).  
 To be *for* a hatred (*odio esse*).  
 (So *impedimento, honori, &c., esse*.)  
 Quanto odio est! (*how* odious it is!)
- [Se Cæsari *ad pedes proficere*; or literally.] See p. 89, note l.  
*Dicebat.*
- I fear *lest* he come (*ne veniat*).  
 I fear *that* he come (*ut veniat*\*).  
 The war *of* Pyrrhus  
 Connection *of* Pompey } *Genitive*.  
 Rest *of* labours  
 Wrongs *of* Caius
- He did this, *by which* (*quo*) he might more easily escape.
- To make that Cæsar should retire (*facere, or efficere ut, &c.*).  
 It *becomes an orator* to be angry, &c. (*oratorem decet*).  
 (*Oratorem dedecet . . .*) 259.
- This victory *stood* to them at many wounds (abl.). 266.  
 [Compare the Eng. 'this *stood me in* a large sum.']  
 Almost nobody (*nemo fere*) 249.\*

\* Or, *ne non veniat*.

† This notion is probably that of a debt *standing against* a man in his creditor's books.

ENGLISH.	LATIN
60. Make a bad, &c. use of, &c.	<i>Use badly</i> (273).
61. He deserves to be loved.	He is a deserving person, who should be loved ( <i>dignus est qui ametur</i> ). 276.
62. To inflict punishment on a man.	To affect a man with punishment (276) ( <i>aliquem poenâ afficere</i> ).
63. To gain a triumph for a victory over the Gauls.	To triumph concerning ( <i>de</i> ) the Gauls.
64. A blessing on } your Good luck, or success to } valour. Go on in your valour!	Be thou increased in valour ( <i>macte virtute esto: voc. for nom. 280</i> ). ( <i>Plur. macti este!</i> )
65. You are envied, spared, favoured, answered, &c.	<i>It is envied</i> (spared, favoured, answered, &c.) to you (290).
66. I don't know when the letter will be written.	I don't know when it will be ( <i>quando futurum sit</i> ) that ( <i>ut</i> ) the letter be written (290).
67. <i>It seems, is said</i> , &c. that Caius has retired.	<i>Caius seems, is said</i> , &c. to have retired (nearly always).
68. We have walked, come, &c.	<i>It has been walked, come, &amp;c.</i> (that is, by us: <i>ambulatum, ventum est</i> ). [This is only an occasional and possible construction.]
69. To have reigned above six years.	To be reigning his seventh year.
70. Before the Consulship of Caius.	<i>Before Caius Consul</i> ( <i>ante Caium consulem</i> ).
71. He went to a school at Naples.	He went to Naples to ( <i>prep.</i> ) a school.
72. We should all praise virtue.	Virtue is to-be-praised by all ( <i>laudanda</i> ).
A time to play.	A time of playing.
Fit to carry burdens.	Fit for burdens to be carried ( <i>oneribus gestandis idoneus</i> ).
He is born (or inclined) to act.	He is born (or inclined) for acting ( <i>ad agendum</i> ).
Prepared to take up arms.	Prepared for ( <i>ad</i> ) arms-to-be-taken-up.
73. Whilst they are drinking, playing, &c.	During drinking, playing, &c. ( <i>inter bibendum, ludendum, &amp;c.</i> )
To be able to pay.	To be for paying ( <i>solvendo esse</i> ).
To be equal to bearing the burden.	To be for bearing the burden ( <i>oneri ferendo esse</i> ).
To tend to the preservation of liberty.	To be of liberty to-be-preserved ( <i>conservandæ libertatis esse</i> ).
74. I have to do another page.	Another page is to-be-done.
I will have it done.	I will cause it-to-be-done ( <i>curabo faciendum</i> ).
75. He gave them the country to dwell in.	He gave them the country to be dwell in ( <i>habitandam</i> ). 354.
76. I go to consult Apollo.	I go intending-to-consult ( <i>consulturus</i> ) Apollo (354).
77. Balbus having left Lavinium, &c.	{ Balbus, Lavinium being left, &c. { Balbus, when he had left Lavinium, &c. ( <i>Relicto Lavinio; or quum reliquisset Lavinium: 363, a.</i> )
78. From the foundation of Rome.	From Rome founded ( <i>a Româ conditâ</i> ).
From the destruction of Jerusalem.	From Jerusalem destroyed (363).
The honour of having saved the king (of the king's preservation).	The honour of the saved king ( <i>servanti regis decus</i> ).
79. He does it without robbing others.	He does it, not robbing others.
He goes away without your perceiving it.	He goes away, you not perceiving it ( <i>tu non ser:ientis</i> ).

## ENGLISH.

They condemn him *without hearing* him.

90. I have completed the work.

I see plainly through his design.

91. I heard him *sing*.

I saw him *walk*.

92. *That only*.

And that too.

By a good man *it is true*, but an unlearned one.

Literature, *and that too* of no common kind.

93. A slave of mine.

94. He took away all *my* care.

95. That famous Medea.

96. Those whom we love *we also* wish happy.

97. Something or other obscure.

Some chance or other.

Somewhat disturbed.

98. Henry, Charles, *and* John.

99. *Every* opinion *that*, &c.  
*Every* man who.

90. *One* Balbus.

91. *One* runs *one* way, *another* another.  
Different men run different ways.  
Some run *one* way, others *another*.

92. The *best* men *always*, &c.

*Hidden* snares are *always*, &c.

All the wisest men.

93. These are *hard to avoid*.

There *is* *difficulty* in avoiding these.  
He *has* the greatest *difficulty* in *suspecting*.

94. He *is* too proud to steal.

95. I armed the *greatest* forces I could.

## LATIN.

They condemn him *unheard* (*inauditus*).

I have the work completed (*opus absolutum habeo*). 364.

I have his design *seen through* (*perspectum habeo*). 364.

I heard him *singing*.

I saw him *walking* (361).

That *at length* (*is demum*).

*Et is, loque, idemque*.

By a good man *that indeed*, but an unlearned one (*a bono illo quidem viro, sed—, or sed tamen, 383*).

Literature, *nor that* of-a-common-kind (*nec eæ vulgares*).

'My slave:' or 'a *certain* one out of (*quidam ex*) my slaves.'

He took away *from me* (*mihi*) all care.

That Medea (*Medea illa*).

Those whom we love, *the same* (*eodem*) we wish happy.

I know not what of obscure (*nescis quid obscuri*).

*I know not what* chance (*nescio quis casus*).

Disturbed *I know not what* (*nescio quid conturbatus*).

{ Henry, Charles, John.

{ Henry, *and* Charles, *and* John.

*Whatever* opinion (*quæcunque opinio*).

*Whoever* (*quisquis*).

(More commonly than in English, as *we* seldom use *whoever*, when the notion of *every* is *emphatic*).

A *certain* (*quidam*) Balbus.

*Another* man runs *another* way.

*Other* men run *another* way (or other ways).

[*alius—alius* (or some *adv.* derived from *alius*).]

*Each best* man, &c. (*optimus quisque*).

*Each hidden* snare, &c. (but *quisque* may be used in the *plur.* when a *subs.* is expressed in this construction: *occultissimæ quæque insidiæ*).

*Each wisest* man (*doctissimus quisque*).

These are *avoided with difficulty* (*difficile*).

(*Difficilius, difficillime*, when required.)

He *suspects with the greatest difficulty* (*difficillime*).

He *is* prouder than *that he* (*quam ut* or *quam qui* with *subj.*) should steal.

I armed forces (as great) *as the greatest* I could (*quam maximas potui copias*).

ENGLISH.	LATIN.
96. <i>As great a difference as there can possibly be.</i> The greatest possible difference.	A difference <i>as-great-as the greatest</i> can be ( <i>quanta maxima potest esse</i> ).
97. I have been long desiring. They had long been preparing.	I am a long time already <i>desiring</i> ( <i>jam pridem cupio</i> ). They were a long time already preparing (413).
98. When I take my journey, I will come. When I have performed this, I will come. When he <i>is come</i> , he will tell us. When you <i>wish</i> to play, remember to play fair. As you <i>sow</i> , so will you reap. I will do it, if I can.	When I <i>shall take</i> my journey, I will come. When I <i>shall have</i> performed this, I will come. When he <i>shall have come</i> , he will tell us When you <i>shall wish</i> to play, remember to play fair. As you <i>shall sow</i> , so will you reap. I will do it, if I <i>shall be able</i> .
99. They do nothing but laugh.	They nothing else than laugh ( <i>nihil aliud quam ridet</i> ).
100. What <i>shall</i> I do ? } What <i>am</i> I to do ? } What <i>can</i> I do ? } Why <i>should</i> I relate ? } What <i>was</i> I to do ? } What <i>should</i> I have done ? } What <i>ought</i> I to have done ? }	Quid faciam ? Cur hæc narrem ? Quid facerem ? (425.)
101. You would have thought. You would have believed. You would have said.	Putares. Crederes. Diceres.
102. I remember to have read.	Memini me legere.
103. It would have been better.	It <i>was</i> better ( <i>utilius</i> or <i>sati</i> us <i>fuit</i> *).
104. No painter. This does <i>not at all</i> terrify me.	(Often) <i>nemo</i> pictor. This terrifies me nothing ( <i>nihil me terret</i> ).
105. Even this is <i>not</i> just, <i>unless</i> it be voluntary.	Even this is <i>so</i> just, if it is voluntary ( <i>ita justum . . . si est</i> , &c.).
106. He was more prudent than brave.	He was more prudent than <i>braver</i> ( <i>prudenter</i> quam <i>fortior</i> ). 452, w.
107. To make a bridge <i>over</i> a river. The thing <i>in question</i> .	To make a bridge <i>in</i> a river. The thing <i>de quo agitur</i> .
108. I have nothing to accuse old age of.	I have nothing <i>which</i> I may accuse old age ( <i>nihil habeo quod incusem senectutem</i> ). 478.
I have found <i>scarcely any thing</i> to censure. Men who abound in silver, in gold, in estates. Men who abound neither in silver, nor in gold, nor in estates. A pen to write <i>with</i> .	I have found <i>scarcely any thing, which</i> I may censure. Men who abound in silver, <i>who</i> in gold, <i>who</i> in estates. Men who do <i>not</i> abound in silver, <i>not</i> in gold, <i>not</i> in estates (478). A pen, <i>with which</i> one may write (473).
109. [Constructions with the relative.] (1) Some persons think: <i>or</i> there are some who think, &c. (2) You have no reason ( <i>cause, occasion, need</i> , &c.) to hurry.	There are some who think ( <i>subj. Sunt qui putent</i> , &c.). There is nothing (on account of) which you should hurry ( <i>nihil est quod festines</i> ). (or) There is not (any thing, for) which you should hurry ( <i>non est quod</i> , &c.).

\* *Sq, satis, par, rectum, justum, idoneum, optimum, consentaneum, melius equius, rectius, satius erat—fuit—fuerat.*

## ENGLISH.

## LATIN.

- (3) He was despised by them, *for they saw through him.* He was despised by them, *who saw through him (qui with subj.).*
- (4) He deserves to be loved. He is a worthy person who should be loved. (Dignus est, qui ametur; or quem ames. So, indignus est, qui ametur: or, quem ames.)
- (5) He is not a proper person to be received. He is not a proper person *who should be received (or, whom you should receive).*
- (6) None are *so good as* never to sin. No one is *so good who never sins (subj.).*
- (7) Of *such a kind that* we can neglect duties for their sake. Of *such a kind for the sake of which* we can neglect duties.
- (8) *Too short to be* the whole life of man. Shorter than *which can be (quam quæ sit or possit esse)* the whole life of man.
- (9) I am not *a man* (or, am not so foolish, simple, credulous, &c.) as to believe this. I am not *that (person) who* can believe (*is qui credam*).
- (10) Who am I *that my writings* should be honoured thus? Who am I *whose writings* should be honoured thus?
- (11) They sent ambassadors *to sue* for peace. They sent ambassadors *who should sue* for peace (*qui pacem peterent*).
- (12) He deserves praise (blame, &c.) *for having* done this. He deserves praise, &c. *who did this (subj.).*
- (13) Wretched man that I am, who thought, &c. O me miserable, *who thought, &c. (qui with subj.).*
- (14) How few there are who, &c. Quotusquisque est qui . . ? (with subj.)
110. In censuring them you censure me. *When you censure them, you censure me (quum with indic.).*
111. It is many years since he was first in my debt. There *are* many years *when he is* in my debt (*quum in meo ære est*).
- I congratulate you on your influence with Caius. I congratulate you, *when you avail so much with Caius (quum, generally quod, tantum valet apud Caium).*
- I don't like to be abused. I am not abused *willingly (libenter, 491).*
112. A mortal body must necessarily perish. It is necessary that a mortal body should perish.  
[Mortale corpus interire (or intereat) necesse est.]
- There is no living* pleasantly. It *cannot be lived* pleasantly (504).
113. In addition to *this*, he is blind. *Hither is added*, that he is blind (huc acced-it, ebat, &c. ut §). 513.
114. He accused him *of having betrayed* the king. He accused him *that (quod) he had betrayed* the king (*subj.*).
- His *having spared* the conquered, is a great thing. It (or '*this*,' '*that*') is a great thing, *that (quod) he spared* the conquered (*indic.*).
- He praised (or blamed him) *for having* done this. He praised (or blamed) him *that (quod) he had done this (subj.).* 520.
115. Many persons admire poems *without understanding* them. Many persons admire poems, *nor understand* them (520).
- You cannot be ruined *without* ruining others. You cannot be ruined *so as* not to ruin others (*ut non with subj.*). 521.
116. *Instead of reading*, he is at play. He is at play, *whereas he ought to be reading (quum debeat).*

† This *necesse* is an old adj. used in the neut. gender only.

‡ More commonly *quod*.

ENGLISH.	LATIN.
<i>Instead of growing rich</i> (as he might) he is growing poor.	He is growing poor, whereas <i>he might</i> grow rich ( <i>quum posset</i> ).
<i>Far from thinking this</i> , I hold, &c.	It is so far off, that I should think this that, &c. ( <i>Tantum abest ut</i> — <i>ut</i> ). 533.
117. <i>And</i> (but, &c.) <i>if this</i> is granted.	<i>If which</i> is granted.
<i>Who, they say, was killed.</i>	<i>Whom</i> they report to have been killed
Who, as B. says, was killed.	<i>Whom</i> B. reports to have been killed.
<i>By which</i> , when we read <i>them</i> , we are affected.	<i>Which</i> when we read, we are affected.
Do not think.	{ <i>Beware of thinking, cave putes.</i> { <i>Be unwilling to think, noti putare.</i>
Take care to do it.	<i>Cura ut facias.</i>
<i>Be sure to be</i> ; or <i>mind</i> you are.	<i>Fac ut sis</i> ; or, <i>fac sis</i>

## QUESTIONS ON THE CAUTIONS.

1. WHEN must *him, her, them (he, she, they)*, be translated by *eui*? and *his, her, its, theirs*, by *eius*? (When the pronoun and the nom. of the verb stand for the same person. C. i. 12.)
2. When is the *perf.* in a sentence with '*that*' to be translated by the *present infinitive*? (When the action or state expressed by the *perf.* is not to be described as *over* before the time referred to by the principal verb. C. ii. 13.)
3. When must '*should*' be translated by the *present infinitive*? (When it does not express duty or a future event.\* C. iii. 13.)
4. When are *would, should*, signs of the *future*? (After past tenses. C. iv. 16.)
5. When should '*thing*' be expressed? (When the *mas.* and the *neut.* of the *adjec.* are of the same form. C. v. 21.)
6. Where is *cum* placed with the *ablatives* of the *personal pronouns*? (After, and as one word with, them. C. vi. 25.)
7. When a preposition follows a verb, how may you help your judgment in determining whether the *preposition* gives a *transitive sense to the verb*, and is *probably* to be translated by the *inseparable preposition* of a *compound verb*? (By trying whether the preposition clings to the verb in the *passive voice*. C. vii. 32.)
8. Is '*for*' before a noun and the *infin.* to be translated? (No.) What is the construction? (*Accus.* with *infin.* C. viii. 38.)
9. What are '*as*' and '*but*' often equivalent to? (*Relatives*. C. ix. 45, and 43 (a).)
10. How is '*such*' often used in English? (To express *size*.) How is it then to be translated? (By *tantus*. C. x. 45.)
11. When '*that*' stands for a substantive that has been expressed in a former clause, is it to be translated into Latin? (No. C. xi. 47, note.)
12. What tense is '*I am come*'? (*Perf. definite* of the *active voice*.)—what, '*I was come*'? (*Pluperf.* of *act.*) What verb forms the *perf. active* with *am*? (*Intrans. verbs* of *motion*. C. xii. 57, note.)
13. When a verb *seems* to govern two accusatives, by what *preposition* is one of them often governed? (By '*to*.' C. xiii. 60.)
14. When must '*that—not*' be translated by *ut non* instead of *ne*? and *that nobody, that nothing, &c.*, by *ut nemo, ut nihil*, respectively? (When *that* introduces a consequence, not a purpose: whenever, therefore, a '*so*' or '*such*' goes before it. C. xiv. 77.)
15. How must the *Eng. fut.* be translated after verbs of *fearing*? (By the *pres. subj.* C. xv. 96.)

---

\* To judge of this, try whether you can turn the verb with *should* into the participial substantive. "It is strange that you *should* say so." What is strange? Your *saying* so.



16. When are '*who*' and '*which*' dependent Interrogatives? (After words of *asking, knowing, doubting, telling, &c.* C. xvi. 112.)
17. Does '*may*' ever stand for *can*? '*might*' for *could*? (Yes. C. xvii. 131.)
18. When is the *perf. infin.* to be translated by the *pres. infin.*? (After *might, could, ought, &c.*, when the action is not to be described as *over* before the time referred to. C. xviii. 131.)
19. When are '*of you*,' '*of us*,' &c., not to be translated after numerals, superlatives, &c.? (When *all* are spoken of. C. xix. 175.)
20. Is an English *substantive* ever used *adjectively*? (Yes.) Where does it then stand? (Before a *substantive*.) How must it be translated? (Generally by an *adj.*: sometimes by *ex, de* with a *subst.* C. xx. 234.)
21. For what does '*what*' sometimes stand? (For *how*, or *how-great*.) When must '*what*' be translated by '*quam*'? (When it stands for '*how*')—when by '*quantus*'? (When it stands for *how-great*. C. xxi. 242.)
22. When are '*for*' and '*as*' to be untranslated? (When the noun that follows can be placed in *apposition* to another noun in the sentence. C. xxii. 255.)
23. When must '*one*,' '*two*,' &c., be translated by *distributive* numerals? (When they stand for '*one a-piece*,' &c. C. xxiii. 267.)
24. What is the substitute for a *future subjunctive* in the passive verb? (*futurum sit, esset, &c.*, ut . . . with the proper tense of the verb.) What must we take care *not* to use for it? (The part. in *dus*, with *sim, essem, &c.* C. xxiv. 287.)
25. What is '*that*' often used for after an expression of *time*? (For *on which*; the *abl.* of relat. C. xxv. 308.)
26. Is that which is *in form* the *present participle act.* in *ing*, always a *participle*? (No.) What else may it be? (The *participial substantive*.) When is it always the *participial substantive*? (When it *governs*, or *is governed*, instead of merely agreeing.) To what parts of the Latin verb does the *participial substantive* correspond? (The *Infin.* and *Gerund.*) Can the *participial substantive* ever be translated into Latin by a *participle*? and if so, by what *participle*?—(Yes, by the *participle in dus*: but the part. *in dus* must not *govern* the substantive, but *agree* with it, both being put into the case that corresponds to the *preposition governing the participial substantive*. C. xxvi. 330.)
27. Into what construction must '*have*' before an *infinitive* be turned for translation into Latin? (Into the form '*is, or are, to be*—.')  
(*I have to do* three more pages = Three more pages *are to be done* by me C. xxvii. 336.)
28. What does '*is to be done*' generally mean? (Necessity, fitness, or intention Does '*is to be done*' always mean *necessity, fitness, or intention*? (No C. xxviii. 336.)
29. What does '*is to be*,' &c., mean, when it does *not* signify *necessity, fitness, or intention*? (Ans. Possibility.)

---

\* This *is* what *is to be done* by all who wish to please the king. (*Necessity*.)  
 This *is to be done* to-morrow. (*Intention*.)  
 'This *is to be done*, if you set about it in the right way. (*Possibility*.)

30. When must a *present partic.* active be translated by a *perfect participle*, or its substitute *quum* with the *perf.* or *pluperf. subjunctive*? (When the action expressed by it must be over, before that expressed by the verb begins. C. xxx. 353.)
31. By what participle of a *deponent* verb is the *pres. participle* often translated? (By the *perf. partic.* C. xxxi. 365.)
32. How is '*but*' (= *except, unless*) to be translated after a negative? (By *nin* or *præter.* C. xxxi. 451.)
33. When is '*at* a town' not to be translated by the *gen.* or *ablat.*? (When the action was not done *in* but *near* the town or place: e. g. 'a battle *at* Mantinea.) How is '*at*' to be then translated? (By *apud* or *ad.*)
34. What does *one* often stand for? (*Some one*, *aliquis*; or a *certain one*, *quidam.*)
35. When an English word is followed by a preposition, what should you always remember? (To consider whether the Latin word to be used is followed by a preposition or by a case; and then by what preposition, or what case.)

## QUESTIONS ON THE SYNTAX.

---

1. What respect does a verb agree with its nominative case? an adjective with its substantive? What verbs take a substantive or adjective after them in the nominative?

[Verbs of *becoming, being, seeming,*

With passive verbs of *making, calling, deeming.*]

In what case does the thing by which stand? In what case does the agent, or person by whom, stand? When should the pronoun that is the nom. to the verb be expressed?

2. When two or more nom. cases sing. come together, in which number should the verb be put? in what person?

With *et—et, quum—tum*, in which number is the verb generally put? (a).

Which of the Latin words for *and* is confined to the office of connecting similar notions? (d).

3. What case does the infin. take before it? What Eng. *conjunct.* is sometimes to be untranslated? When '*that*' is to be untranslated, in what case do you put the *nom.* and in what mood the verb?

Mention some verbs, &c. that are followed by *acc.* with *infin.*

(1) Verbs *sentendi et declarandi*:

Of feeling, wishing, knowing, } with which *acc.* with *infin.* stands as  
Believing, saying, trowing, } the *object*.

(2) Nearly all *impersonal* forms<sup>a</sup> (with which *acc.* with *infin.* stands as the *subject*), except

Contingit, evenit, *and* accidit, }  
With *restat, reliquum est and fit*,<sup>b</sup> } which are followed by *ut*.

Do any verbs of the class *sentendi* admit of any other construction?

[Yes, those that express *emotion* are often followed by *quod*: those that express *wishing*, especially *opto*, by *ut*.]

4. When an adjective belongs to more than one substantive or pronoun, with which should it agree in *gender*? and in which number should it stand, even when the substantives, &c. are all *sing.*? When the substantives are things that *have not life*, in what *gender* is the *adj.* generally put? What substantives are seldom to be translated?

5. What are respectively the *demonstratives* or *antecedent pronouns* to *qui, qualis, quantus, quot*?

<sup>a</sup> That is, where in English we use '*it*' as the representative of the true nominative.

<sup>b</sup> And sometimes *sequitur*.

<sup>c</sup> But when '*man*' is coupled with an epithet of *praise*, it should generally be translated (by *vir*); especially if it is an *apposition*.

Is the relative ever governed in *case* by a word that is not in its own clause?

In what respects does the relative agree with its antecedent? [In *gender, number, and person.*] When the antecedent is expressed in the *relative*, and omitted in the *principal* clause, where is the relative clause often placed? what *pronoun* often represents it in the principal clause?

What is the relative '*what*' equivalent to? ['*That which.*']

When the *relat.* agrees with some case of a *subst.* expressed in its own, but not in the principal clause, what must be done? [Some *case* of that *subst.* must be supplied in the principal clause.]

§ 6. For what does an *infin.* sometimes stand? When an *adj.* or *rel.* is to agree with an *infin.* mood or *sentence*, in what gender must it be put? When the *rel.* has a sentence for its antecedent, what do we often find instead of the *rel.* only? [*Id quod*, or *quæ res* : *id* or *res* being in apposition to the sentence.]

§ 7. What is the great rule for the sequence of tenses? (40.) Is the *perf.* with *have* considered a *past* tense? [No.] Is the *fut. perf.* a *subj.* tense? [No.] How should '*but*,' or a *relative* with '*not*,' generally be translated after *nobody*, *nothing*, &c.? <sup>1d</sup>

§ 8. In such a sentence as '*Thebes*, which is a *town*,' &c., should *which* agree with *Thebes* or with *town*? When does *which*, in such a sentence, agree with its proper antecedent?

§ 9. When the antecedent has a *superlative* with it, in which clause does the superlative generally stand? HE WAS THE FIRST PERSON WHO DID IT.

§ 10. How is '*that*' to be translated when it is followed by *may* or *might*? what does it then express? [A *purpose.*] How is '*that*,' expressing a *purpose*, to be translated, when it is followed by *not* or any *negative* word?

§ 11. How is '*that*' to be translated after *so*, *such*? what does it then express? [A *consequence.*] How is '*that*' to be translated when the sentence has a comparative in it? What is *quo* equivalent to, and what is its force with the comparative? [*Quo* is equivalent to *ut eo*; with the comparative '*that by this*?' '*that the.*'] Does *quo* ever stand for '*that*' when there is no comparative in the sentence? [Yes;\* it is then equivalent to '*that by this means.*'] How is '*not*' to be translated before the *imperative* or *subj.* used imperatively? How is '*as*' before the *infin.* and after *so*, *such*,<sup>t</sup> to be translated.

\* *Quin* cannot stand for *cujus non*, *cui non*; but either these forms must be used or the demonstrative expressed (*cujus ille vitia non videat*; or, *quin ille jus vitia videat*). In the *nom.* or *acc.* *qui non may* be used, and should be when the *non* belongs especially to the verb. It is compounded of the old *abl* *quæ*, and *ne, not*. It does not therefore itself contain the pronoun; but the *nom.* or *acc.* of the demonstrative is understood.

• "In funeribus Atheniensium sublata erat celebritas virorum ac mullerum *jus* lamentatio minueretur." (Cic.)

• *Quin* must be used, if it is, '*as not* to . . . &c.,' after a *negative* sentence.

- § 12. What does the Latin *inf.* never express? When the English *inf.* expresses a *purpose*; how must it be translated? After what verbs is the *inf.* to be translated by *ut* with the subjunctive?
- § 13. Give the forms for *that nobody*; *that nothing*, *that no*; *that never*. When must *that nobody*; *that nothing*, &c., be translated by *ut nemo*; *ut nihil*, &c.?
- § 14. How must 'as not to . . . &c.' after a negative be translated? After what verbs when used *negatively*, must *quin* be used? Is *non dubito* ever followed by *acc.* with *inf.*? [Nearly always, when *dubitare* means to *hesitate*; when it means to *doubt*, the *acc.* with *inf.* never follows it in Cicero, but does in Corn. Nepos.]
- § 15. By what conjunction are verbs of *hindering* followed? [By *quominus*, which is equivalent to *ut eo minus*.] Are verbs of *hindering* followed by any other conjunctions? [Yes; they may be followed by *nē*, when the thing is so entirely prevented as not to have been *begun*; by *quin* after a negative sentence: and sometimes by *acc.* with *inf.*.] How must *that not* be translated after verbs of *fearing*? how must *that* be translated after verbs of *fearing*?
- § 16. Which interrogative particle asks simply for information? [Nē.] Which expects the answer 'yes'? [Nonne.] Which the answer 'no'? [Num.]
- § 17. When are questions *dependent*? [When they follow and *depend* on such verbs as *ask*, *doubt*, *know*, *examine*, *try*: *it is doubtful*, *uncertain*,<sup>m</sup> &c.] In what mood does the verb stand in a dependent question? In what

<sup>c</sup> Except in poetry.

<sup>b</sup> The various ways of expressing a *purpose* are given in the following table

Eo ut ludos spectem,	} <i>I am going to see the games.</i>
Eo { ludorum spectandorum } causā,	
ludos spectandi	
Eo ludos spectaturus,	
Eo ad ludos spectandos,	
Eo ludos spectatum ( <i>sup.</i> )	

<sup>i</sup> The general rule for the use of *ut*, is that it may be used:

- (1) To express every *request*; *command* (except after *jubeo*); *advice*; *effect*; *decree*.
- (2) To introduce the conditions of an *agreement* or *treaty*.
- (3) It is used after all *intensive* words, such as *such*, *so* (*tantis*, *talibus*, *tot*, *ita*, *adeo*, *sic*).
- (4) All *purposes* may be expressed by *ut*. (Crombie.)

Oss. *Moneo* and *persuadeo* will not be followed by *ut* (but by *acc.* and *inf.*), when the person is not warned or persuaded *to do* something, but merely *that something is so*.

<sup>i</sup> Thus his preface begins with "non dubito fore plerosque," &c.

<sup>k</sup> "Nostros navibus egredi prohibebant." (Cæs.)

<sup>l</sup> But *nē* appears sometimes to be used as equivalent to *nonne*. 'Estne hoc illi dicto atque facto Fimbriano simillimum?' (Cic. pro Sext. Rosc. Am. 33.)

<sup>m</sup> Oss. If you have any doubt whether *who*, *which*, *what*, is a *rel.* or an *interrog.*, ask a question with the clause, and see whether the sentence before you

mood must the verb be put in sentences that stand as the *acc.* to a preceding verb?

- § 19. How must '*whether*' be translated in double questions? how '*or*'? If '*whether*' is untranslated, how may '*or*' be translated? Does an ever stand before a single question? [Yes: it then implies, with something of impatience, that the answer must be '*no.*'] By what must '*or*' not be translated in double questions?
- § 20. Go through *I may go, &c. I might have gone, &c. I can do it; I could have done it; I ought to do it; I ought to have done it.* Translate, *I ought to do it, omitting ut.* I MAY BE DECEIVED. How is the *perf. infin.* generally to be translated after *might, could, ought*?
- § 21. How is the case of a substantive in *apposition* determined? When *urbs* or *oppidum* stands in apposition to the *name of a town*, does the verb agree with *urbs, oppidum*, or with the name of the town?
- § 22. HE WISHES TO BE THE FIRST. HE SAYS THAT HE IS READY.
- § 23. THEY MAY BE HAPPY. WE MAY BE NEUTRAL.
- § 24. When may a *substantive* and *preposition* generally be translated by the *gen.*? [Ans. When the prepos. joins it to another substantive.] How MUCH PLEASURE; MUCH GOOD; SOME TIME.
- § 25. What do you mean by a *partitive adj.*? What case follows *partitive* adjectives? With what does the *partitive adj.* generally agree in gender? In what *gender* does a *superlative* (or *solus*) stand when it governs a *genit.* and also refers to another subst.? In what case does a substantive of *description* stand when it has an *adjective* agreeing with it? By what case is *opus est* followed? What other construction is there with *opus est*? THERE IS NO NEED. WHAT NEED IS THERE? THE TOP OF THE MOUNTAIN. THE MIDDLE OF THE WAY. THE REST OF THE WORK. THE WHOLE OF GREECE.
- § 26. What case do adjectives that signify *desire, &c.*, govern? What case do participles *used adjectively* and verbals in *ar* govern?
- § 28. What substantives are omitted after *to be*? IT IS CICERO'S PART. IT IS YOUR PART. What case do verbs of *accusing, &c.*, take of the *charge*? What case do *salago, &c.*, govern? What case do verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* govern? In what case may a *neut. pron.* stand with *accusare, admonere, &c.*?
- § 29. With *interest* and *refert* in what case is the person *to whom* it is of importance put? [In the genitive when the person is expressed by a *swonantive*: in the *abl. fem.* when a *possessive pronoun* is used.] How is the *degree of importance* expressed? how is the *thing that is of importance* expressed? what case of the *person feeling* do *pudet, &c.*, take? what case of what *causes* the feeling?
- § 30. What adjectives govern the *dat.*? Mention some adjectives that are followed by *ad.* What cases may follow *propior, proximus*? When should *similis* take the *gen.*? (w.)
- § 31. In what case do you put the person *to, for, or against whom* the action is

readily and obviously *answers* it. 'I don't know *who* did it. 'Who did it? 'I don't know *who* did it.' Therefore *who* is here an interrogative

*donâ*, or the feeling entertained? Mention the classes of verbs that take the *dat.* [*Verba comparandi; dandi et reddendi; promittendi ac solvendi; imperandi et nuntiandi; fidendi; minandi et irascendi; obsequendi et repugnandi, regunt dativum: quibus addas,*

*Invideo, nubo, faveoque, indulgeo, parco,*

*Gratulor, auxilior, studeo, medeorque, vacoque.]*

Do any of these take the *acc.* also? By what prepositions may verbs of *comparing* be followed? [By *cum* or *ad.*] How is *together* to be translated after *compare*?

['*Together*' may translated be,

After *compare*, by '*inter se.*']

What verbs of *advantage* and *disadvantage* govern the *acc.*? *HE THREATENS ME WITH DEATH.*

[*He threatens me with death* should be,

In Latin, *threatens death to me.*]

Of verbs of *commanding*, which govern the *acc.* only? which the *dat.* or *acc.*?

- § 32. What case do *sum* and its compounds govern? What exception is there? Mention the compound verbs that generally govern the *dat.*

[*Most* of these compounded with

*Præ*, *con*, *sub*,

*Ad*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*:

*Many* of those compounded with

*Ab*, *post*, *ante*, *de*,

*Re*, *pro*, *super*, *e.*]

- § 33. *HE SURROUNDS THE CITY WITH A WALL. HE PRESENTS ME WITH A GARLAND.*<sup>a</sup>

- § 34. What verbs govern two datives? What case often follows *sum* where we should put the *nom.*? How is *have* often translated? *MY NAME IS CAIUS* (239). *I HAVE A COW. I HAVE SIX COWS.*

- § 35. Do neuter verbs ever take the *acc.*? Explain, *sitire* honores.

- § 36. What verbs take two accusatives? Do *all* the verbs that have any of these meanings take two accusatives? What transitive verbs take *two* accusatives, one in a sort of *apposition* to the other?

- § 37. What does the *abl.* express? In what case is the *price* put? What adjectives stand in the *abl.* to express the price, *pretio* being understood? What adjectives *always* express price in the *gen.*? What substantives stand in the *gen.* after verbs of *valuing*? What should be used instead of *multi* and *majoris*?

- § 38. What case do verbs of *abounding*, &c. govern? What case may *egeo* and *indigeo* govern? What case do verbs of *freeing from*, &c., take? What is their more general construction in prose? What case do *fungor*, &c. govern?<sup>o</sup> In what case is the *manner*, *cause*, &c., put?

- § 39. How is a *voc.* sometimes used in poetry? What case sometimes stands in *apposition* to the *voc.*?

<sup>a</sup> *Mihi coronam, or me coronâ donat.*

<sup>o</sup> In the phrase '*potiri rerum*' (to become a ruling power) the *gen.* only is found.

- § 40. In what case is the *agent* expressed after the pass. verb, when *a*, *ad*, is not used? After what part of the verb is this the regular construction? What verbs cannot be used *personally* in the pass. voice? Go through *I am believed*.<sup>p</sup> Mention some verbs that have a *pass. construction* (286). What is the substitute for a *fut. inf. pass.*, when the verb has no supine to form it with *iri*? I HOPE HE WILL RECOVER (use *fore ut*).
- § 41. What verbs can govern an *acc.* in the *pass.*? Can a *pass. verb* or participle take an *acc.* of the *part affected*? WE HAVE WALKED ENOUGH (trans. by the *pass.*). Which is the more common in Lat. '*Caius videtur, dicitur, &c., esse*,' or '*videtur, dicitur, &c. Caius, esse*?'
- § 42. How is a noun of *time* put in answer to *when*? in answer to *for how long*? How do you express the time *in* or *within which*? How do you express time in answer to *how long before* or *after*? How are *ante, post*, used in this construction? How do you express a point or space of *future time* for which any arrangement is now made? How do you express the *exact time* *by* or *against* which a thing is to be done? THREE YEARS AGO. THREE YEARS OLD. ABOVE TWENTY YEARS OLD\* (307, f) THREE YEARS AFTER HE HAD RETURNED (310 (a)).
- § 43. In what case is the town *at which* a thing is done, to be put? In what case is the name of a town to be put in answer to *whither*? in answer to *whence*? To what proper names do these rules apply? In what case do *urbs* and *oppidum* stand in apposition to the name of a town in the *gen.* (315)? How is *local space* expressed?
- § 44. Decline '*grieving*'<sup>q</sup> throughout. OF WRITING A LETTER. I AM TO BE LOVED. Go through, I MUST WRITE. Go through *epistola scribenda*. When must the *part. in dus* not be used in agreement with its substantive (332)? WE MUST SPARE OUR ENEMIES. AT HOME. FROM HOME.

<sup>p</sup> Mihi creditur,	<i>I am believed.</i>
Tibi creditur,	<i>thou art believed.</i>
Illi creditur,	<i>he is believed.</i>
Nobis creditur,	<i>we are believed.</i>
Vobis creditur,	<i>you are believed.</i>
Illis creditur,	<i>they are believed.</i>

\* These constructions admit of many variations by the introduction of *natus* and *quam*—"Above thirty-three years old."

major annos tres et triginta natus;  
 major quam annos tres et triginta natus;  
 major quam annorum trium et triginta;  
 major quam tribus et triginta annis. (Z.)

<sup>q</sup> N.	Dolere,	<i>grieving.</i>
G.	dolendi,	<i>of grieving.</i>
D.	dolendo,	<i>to grieving.</i>
Acc.	dolere,	<i>grieving.</i>
Abl.	dolendo,	<i>by grieving.</i>

The *acc.* is *dolendum* only when governed by a preposition. 'Se peccati insimulant quod dolere intermiserint' (have intermitted *grieving*).



HOME (after a verb of motion). INTO THE COUNTRY. FROM THE COUNTRY. IN THE COUNTRY. ON THE GROUND.

- § 45. What kind of sentences may be translated by participles (344)? In what case do a noun (or pronoun) and participle stand when the *noun* or *pronoun* is not governed by any other word? What is this called?
- § 46. HE GAVE THEM THE COUNTRY TO DWELL IN. What does the part. in *rus* often express? What does the part. in *dus* often express? Express 'to have a thing made,' in the sense of *causing* it to be made. [Faciendum curare.]
- § 47. What participle is wanting in all but deponents and neuter-passives? HAVING LEFT HIS BROTHER. [Relicto fratre, & quum reliquisset fratrem.]
- § 48. MY OWN FAULT. THEIR OWN FAULT (373, a). When—*self*,—*selves* are to be translated by *ipse* and a personal pronoun, in what case may *ipse* stand? [In the nom. or in the case of *sui*, according to the meaning.\*] When may *him*, *his*, *her*, *its*, *theirs* in a dependent sentence, be translated by *sui* or *suius*, even when they denote the nom. not of their *own*, but of the principal sentence? By what pronoun must *him*, *her*, &c., be translated, when *sui* or *suius* would be understood to mean the nom. of its own verb? Does *suius* ever relate to the *accusative*? With what pron. is this very common? Which gen. pl. (*ām* or *ī*) is used after partitives (372)?
- § 49. What is the difference between '*is qui pugnāt*,' and '*hic or ille qui pugnāt*' (376, g)? Which of these three pronouns is to be used when *he*, *him*, &c., is without emphasis, simply describing a person or thing *before mentioned* or *about to be described* by a rel. clause? By what case only of '*is*' can *his*, *her*, *their*, be translated? [Ans. By the gen.] Of two things already mentioned, what pron. means *the latter*? what *the former*? Which pron. means *that of yours*? MEDEA ILLA. Distinguish between *hic*, *iste*, *ille*, referring to different objects.
- § 50. When is '*any*' to be translated by *quisquam* or *ullus*? when by *quis*? when by *quivis*, *quilibet*? when by *aliquis* *quispiam*? Does *quisquam* ever follow *si* (note w)? By what pronoun may '*a*' sometimes be translated?
- § 51. What *prefix* do interrogatives often take? what *affix*? How should '*always*' with two superlatives be translated?
- § 52. When are the pronouns *that*, *those*, not to be translated? When they stand in the *second* member of a comparative sentence for a substantive expressed in the first.] When *quam* is omitted, in what case is the following *subst.* put? What case goes with comparatives and superlatives to express the measure of *excess* or *defect*? How are the Eng. *this*—*the* (= *by how much*—*by so much*) to be translated?
- § 53. Is the present ever followed by the *imperf. subj.*? When? When is the

---

\* 'He wounded himself,' *se ipse vulneravit* (= *ipse, non alius, se vulneravit*); *se ipsum vulneravit* (= *se, non alium, vulneravit*). Hence *ipse* is to be in the nom. or in the oblique case, according as the notion to which it is opposed, or with which it is contrasted, is in the nom. or in an oblique case.

Eng. *pres.* generally translated by the Lat. *future*? By what tense is the *perf. definite* often translated? [*Ans.* by the *future perfect*.] How are assertions *softened* in Latin? What subjunctives are very frequently used in this way? What conjunction is often omitted after *velim*, &c. I HAVE LONG DESIRED (410, a).

- § 54. Is the *perf. subj.* ever used as an *imperat.*? What other tense is sometimes used as an *imperat.*? By what tense are questions of *appeal*, or questions for *assent*, to be translated? IF HE HAS ANY THING, HE GIVES IT. [Si quid habet, dat.] IF I HAVE ANY THING, I WILL GIVE IT. [Si quid habeam, dabo.] IF HE SHOULD HAVE ANY THING HE WOULD GIVE IT. [Si quid haberet, daret: *but much more commonly*, si quid habeat, det.] IF HE HAD ANY THING HE WOULD GIVE IT. [Si quid haberet, daret.] IF HE HAD HAD ANY THING, HE WOULD HAVE GIVEN IT. [Si quid habuisset, dedisset.] How is '*possibility* without any expression of *uncertainty*' translated? How is '*uncertainty* with the prospect of *decision*' translated? How is '*uncertainty* without any such *accessory* notion' translated? How is '*impossibility* or *belief* that the thing is *not so*,' translated? May the consequence and the condition refer, the one to *past*, the other to *present* time? When the consequence has '*would have*,' how must you translate the *pluperf. indic.* in the conditional clause? With what tenses may *si* take the *indic.*? With what tenses does *si* always govern the subjunctive?
- § 56. In conditional sentences are the verbs of both clauses ever in the *subj. pres.*? [Yes; 'Si quid habeat, det,' should be always preferred to 'Si quid haberet daret,' unless it is to be intimated that the supposition *will not be realized*.] What are the conditional forms of the *subj.*? When should *scripturus essem* be used for '*should have written*'? What tenses of the *indic.* are used for the *subj.* in conditional sentences? Is *si* ever omitted? where should the verb of the sentence then stand? What are the conjunctions for *although*? [Etsi, tametsi, quamquam \* with *indic.*; licet with *subj.* What is *quamvis*, and what mood does it govern in Cicero? [However much, however; with *subj.*] What is *etiamsi*, and what mood does it govern? [Even if; even though; with *indic.* or *subj.*] Do any other conjunct. express *though*? [Yes; sometimes, *quum*, *ut*, with *subj.*]
- § 57. In a dependent conditional sentence, the verb of the consequent clause will be in the *infin.*: what infinitives will take the place (respectively of *dat.*? of *dabit*? *daret*? *dedisset*? *daturus esset*?
- § 58. Explain the meaning of *oblique narration*? In oblique narration, in what mood will the principal verbs stand? [In the *infin.*] In what mood will the verbs of the *subordinate clauses* stand, provided they express the words and opinions, not of the *narrator*, but of the *speaker*? [In the

---

\* Either the *condition* or the *consequence*, or *both*, may refer to a *past*, or *future* time.

\* When these conjunctions take the *subj.* the sentence is generally in the *obliqua oratio*, taken in its widest sense. (See § 58.) This, however, does not hold good of the later writers. (Billroth.)

subj.] In oblique narration what is often omitted? [The verb or participle on which the infinitives depend.] In what mood are *questions for answers* asked? [The subj.] In what mood are *questions of appeal* asked? [In the infin.] When questions are thus asked in the *infin.*, may *interrogatives* be used with the *infin.*? [Yes.] In what mood is the *charge* expressed with *quod*?

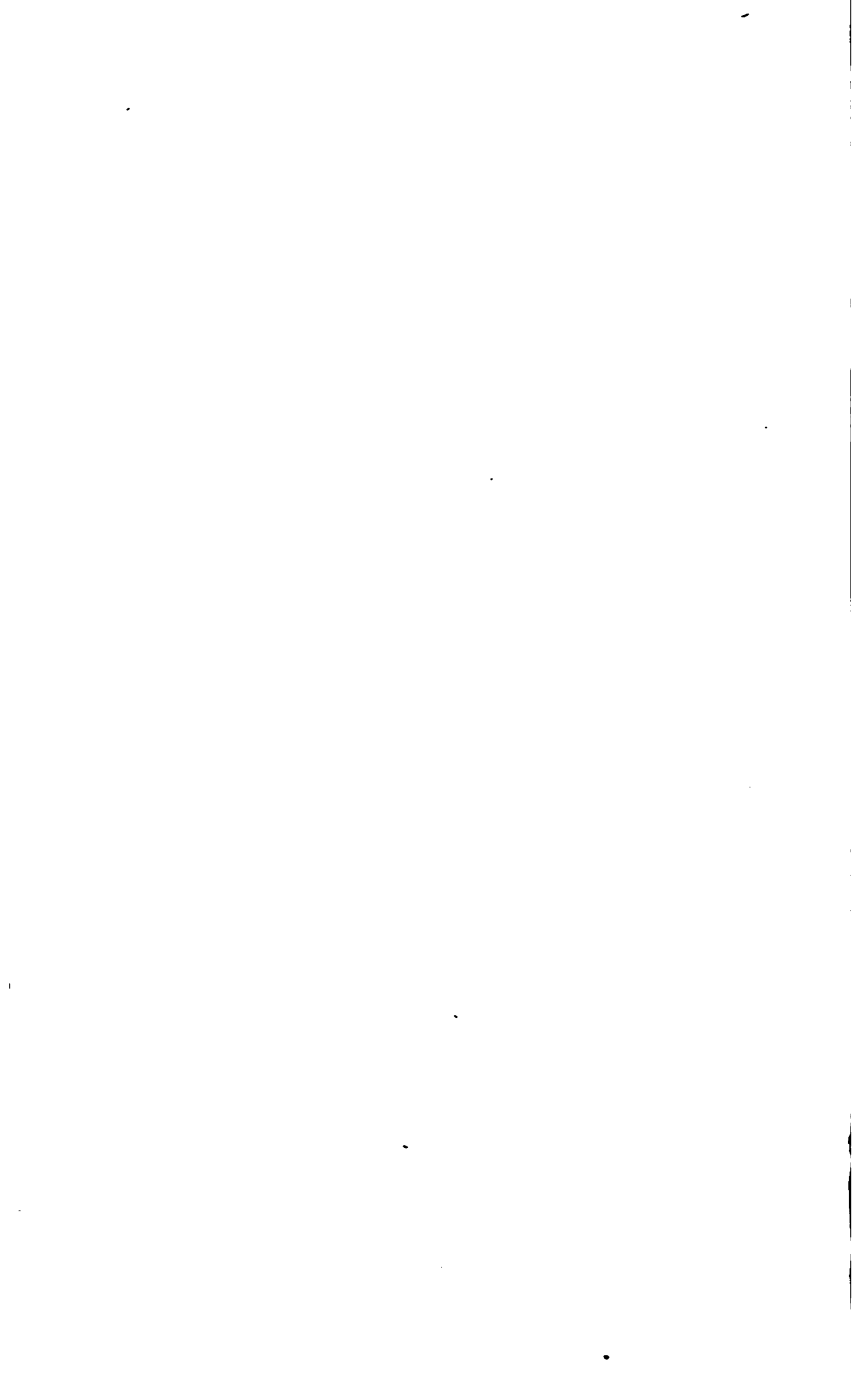
- § 59. When may the *pres.* and *perf.* subjunct. be used in oblique narration, even when dependent on a *past* tense? In what mood will remarks stand that are the *reporter's* not the *speaker's*? In what mood do the verbs of subordinate clauses stand, when the principal verb of the proposition is in *infin.* or *subj.*? With what limitation is this rule to be applied? When may the *pres.* and *perf. subj.* be used, although the general rule would require the *imp.* or *pluperf.* May the *imp.* or *pluperf.* be ever used, when the general rule would require the *pres.* or *perf.*? How are the *acc.* and *infin.* used with *nē* in direct narration (473)?
- § 60. Mention some words, phrases, &c., with which *qui* takes the subj. [*Ans.* After *sunt*, in 'sunt qui,' 'erant qui,' &c., and after *negative* and *interrogative* sentences, *nemo, nihil, &c., est: quis est? an quisquam est? quotusquisque est?* &c. Also after *adsunt qui, non desunt qui, &c.*, and similar phrases with *reperio, invenio* (to find).]
- § 61. What mood does *qui* govern, when it introduces the *ground* of an assertion? What mood does *qui* take after *quippe, utpote? always* or *generally*? What mood does *qui* take when it is equivalent to *ut* with a *personal* or *possessive* pronoun? Mention some phrases with which *qui* has this force. In what other cases does *qui* govern the subj. (484, 485)?
- § 62. When does *quum* take the *indic.*? What mood does *quum* generally govern, when the verb of the sentence is in the *imperf.* or *pluperf.*? [The subj.!] How is the subject of congratulation expressed (492)? Mention some conjunctions that always govern the subjunctive. (Vocab. 68.) When are the *pres.* and *perf. subj.* used with *utinam*? when the *imperf.* and *pluperf.*? How is 'not' generally expressed after *utinam, dummodo, &c.*
- § 63. When the principal verb is in the present tense, in what mood is the verb after *antequam* or *priusquam* expressed? When the principal verb is in the *fut.*, in what mood or moods may the dependent verb be? When the principal verb is in a *past* tense, in what mood or moods may the dependent verb be? When should the *subj.* always be used after *antequam, priusquam*?
- § 64. When do *dum, donec, quoad* (= *until*) take the *indicative*? when the *subjunctive*? What mood do they and *quamdum* always take, in the sense of *as long as*? With the adverbs meaning *as soon as*, how should the English *pluperf.* generally be translated (514)?
- § 65. When is *that* expressed by *quod*? What class of verbs are followed by *quod*? What mood does *quod* take? with what exception?
- § 66. What was the *first* of the month called by the Romans? on what day did

---

\* But the *indic.* of *repeated* actions.

the *Nones* fall? on what day the *Ides*? In what months were the *Nones* on the *seventh*? How were the days between the *Kalends* and *Nones* reckoned? days between the *Nones* and the *Ides*? days after the *Ides*? Give the rules for each case.

- § 67. What may be used instead of a *conjunction* and *personal* or *demonstrative* pronoun? Mention some circumlocutions for the *imperative*.
- § 68. Was a *sestertium* a coin? How many *sesterces* made a *sestertium*? What is the meaning of *sestertium* with *numeral adverbs*? Is *sestertium* *declinable* in this construction? How may the value of *sestertium decies, centies, &c.*, be got approximately (547, note \*)?
- § 69. Give the division of the *as*. Explain *asses usurae*. By what other name was this rate of interest expressed?



A

**PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION**

TO

**LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.**

**PART II.**



A

PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION  
TO  
LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

PART II.

CONTAINING A FULL VIEW OF  
THE ORDER OF WORDS IN LATIN,  
AND  
LONGER LATIN EXERCISES.

---

BY

THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M. A.,  
RECTOR OF LYNDON,  
AND LATE FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

CAREFULLY REVISED AND RE-ARRANGED  
BY REV. J. A. SPENCER, A. M.

NEW YORK:  
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,  
549 & 551 BROADWAY.  
1872.



---

**ENTERED, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1846, by**

**D. APPLETON & CO.,**

**At the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern  
District of New York.**

---

## ADVERTISEMENT.

---

THE object of the following Work is to supply boys with an easy collection of *short* passages, as an Exercise-book for those who have gone once, at least, through the First Part of the Author's 'Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition.

T. K. A.

LYNDON,  
April 6, 1844.

[Consult the Preface to Part I., at the beginning of the volume.]

J. A. S.



# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

## PART II.

---

	PAGE
I. ON THE ORDER OF WORDS IN LATIN .....	233
§ 1. Position of Attributives .....	236
2. Dependent Genitive .....	239
3. Participial Clauses .....	240
4. Proper Names .....	241
5. Antithetical Words .....	242
6. Secondary Emphasis; position of words occurring in two } clauses.....	243
7. On the position of Sum .....	245
8. Pronouns .....	246
9. Pronouns (continued) .....	247
10. The Relative .....	249
11. The Relative (continued).....	250
12. Interrogatives.....	252
13. Prepositions .....	252
14. Conjunctions .....	254
15. Conjunctions; autem, enim, igitur with esse.....	255
16. Non. Haud.....	257
17. Comparatives, &c.....	258
II. LONGER LATIN EXERCISES .....	268
Cautions. ....	303
Differences of Idiom.....	308
Memorial Lines .....	312
Versus Memoriales .....	313
Vocabulary.....	315
Extracts from the "Antibarbarus".....	320
Index I.—English.....	332
Index II —Latin and Critical Remarks.....	350

## EXPLANATION OF MARKS, ETC.

---

Words in *Italics* are to be looked for in the Vocabulary.\*

\_\_\_\_\_ to which the mark || is prefixed, are to be looked for in the *Antibarbarus*.

Df. and C. stand respectively for the Differences and Cautions at the end of the book.

Df. (1) and C. (1) stand respectively for the Differences and Cautions of Part I.

<sup>a</sup>, <sup>b</sup>, after a word, mean that that word is to be the first or second word respectively in the clause.

<sup>i</sup>, <sup>v</sup>, mean that the word is to be the last, or last but one (respectively) in the clause.

*r. f.* mean that the relative clause is to be placed first.

*a. v.* that the sentence is to be translated by the active voice.

*i* means that the word is to be inserted in the relative clause.

<sup>a</sup> means that the word is to stand near the (*head* ==) beginning of the sentence.

<sup>m</sup> means that the word is to be placed in as emphatical a position as possible, near the *middle* of a sentence.

*p* means that the sentence is to be turned into a participial clause.

*a b* — *a b* indicates that the order is to be retained.

*a b* × *b a* indicates that the order is to be reversed.

<sup>\*</sup> mean that the words over which they are placed, are to be separated.

An accent over a word means that it is emphatic.

Words in spaced printing (*printing*) are those to which the direction intimated by a mark or reference applies.

<sup>o</sup> prefixed to a word, or to several words, in *spaced* printing, means that *it* or *they* are to be omitted.

---

\* The pupil will there find, not the word only, but the phrase of which it forms a part. For other words a dictionary must be used.

# PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION

## TO

# LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.

---

### I.

#### ON THE ORDER OF WORDS IN LATIN.

1. IN the usual arrangement of a Latin sentence, the subject, as the most important word, stands first ; and words which modify the meaning of another, precede the word whose meaning they modify.

1. *Ratio* præest ; *appetitus* obtemperat.—2. *Consuetudo* est altera natura.—  
3. Habent opinionem, *Apollinem* morbos depellere.

2. Hence (*a*) oblique cases mostly precede the verb (or other word) on which they depend ; (*b*) adjectives and dependent genitives precede the substantives to which they belong ; and (*c*) adverbs precede their verbs or adjectives.

- (*a*) *Corporis gravitatem et dolorem animo* judicamus.

- (*b*) 1. *Mamertina* civitas.—2. *Syracusius* Phillistus.—3. *Reliqua vitæ* instituta

- (*c*) 1. *Sui negotiis bene* gerens.—2. *Sapientia prope* singularis.

3. With respect to the *usual* order of oblique cases ;—

The nearer object precedes the more remote : e. g., the accus. after the transitive verb precedes an abl. of manner or instrument, &c.

- Helvetii legatos ad Cæsarem* mittunt. *Cæs.* [See also *exx.* under 2 (*a*).]

Descriptions of a place precede the mention of things existing, or actions done in it.

- Cæsar a Lacu Lemano ad montem Juram* millia passuum decem murum *struxit* et *campum* perducit. *Cæs.*

The cause precedes the effect.

Veniebant ad Eumenem, qui *propter odium fructum oculis ex ejus capere vellent.* C. Nep.

### Exercise 1.

4. [Does *mens* or *animus* denote the mind with all its passions, emotions &c. ? (92, note c.)]

1 We do not feel a disease of the mind by any bodily sensation.<sup>1</sup> 2 Caius is going to send a *copy*<sup>2</sup> of the letter to his father.  
3 There is no doubt that the plea of necessity is a valid *excuse* for Dionysius. 4 It cannot be denied, that he employed an *advocate* at Carthage. 5 It cannot be doubted that they lived in *affluence* at Rome. 6 We have been impatient for your *arrival*. 7 There were some who<sup>3</sup> looked forward with impatience to your *arrival*. 8 The Gauls attack the Romans, before they have disencumbered themselves of their *baggage*. 9 The Athenians are going to recall Balbus from *banishment*. 10 It would have been better<sup>4</sup> never to have returned from *banishment*. 11 It is one<sup>5</sup> thing to sin, another to throw the *blame* upon another. 12 There is no doubt that Philistus the Syracusan (*b*) lived many years at Rome. 13 It cannot be denied, that you are connected with Scipio by the ties of *blood*.

<sup>1</sup> 'By the body.'    <sup>2</sup> See EXAMPLE.    <sup>3</sup> Df. 1109.    <sup>4</sup> *sati*us fuit, 426, (5).  
<sup>5</sup> 38.

5. 6. Unusualness of position calls attention to a word so placed, and thus renders it emphatic.

6. Hence in a language which, like the Latin, admits of considerable variety in the collocation of words, what *the* effect by printing a word in Italics, is accomplished by placing it in an unusual position.
7. This unusualness of position is the great principle on which the emphasis or prominence of a word depends.
8. The beginning and the end of a clause are positions favorable to emphasis because "by the former our attention is excited, and on the latter it rests." But of course the beginning of the clause is not an emphatic position for the subject, nor the end for the predicate; but *vice versa*.
9. (a) The subject receives emphasis by being placed at or near the *end* of the clause: (b) the predicate by being placed at or near the *beginning* of the clause.

(a) 1. Sensit in se iri Brutus.—2. Semper oratorum eloquentiæ moderatrix fuit auditorum prudentia. C.

(b) Disces tu quidem quamdiu voles: tamdiu autem velle debebis, quoad tu quantum proficias, non plenitebit. C.

10. An emphatic subject often stands just before a verb which closes the sentence.

*Eorum, qui exactâ ætate moriuntur, fortuna laudatur. C.*

11. A verb stands at the head of its clause without emphasis, when it is used with *autem* to explain a previous assertion.

In English we should insert such an explanation parenthetically.

1. *Amicum ægrotantem visere volebam: habitat autem ille in parte urbis remotissimâ.*—2. [Cato] objectit ut probum M. Nobillori, quod is in provinciam poetas duxisset: *duxerat autem* consul ille in Ætoliâ, ut scimus, Ennius. C.

12. The verb or adjective precedes its oblique cases when its comparative importance to the whole meaning of the sentence is greater than theirs.

1. *Quæritur an is, qui profuit nobis, si postea nocuit, nos debito solverit. C.*
2. *Quæ perspicuam omnibus veritatem continet propositio, nihil indiget approbationis. C.*—3. *Iris nunquam non adversa soli est. Sen.*—4. *Similes parentibus ac maioribus suis filii plerumque creduntur. C.*

13. Oblique cases and adverbs receive emphasis by being placed at or near the beginning or end of the clause.

1. *Semper oratorum eloquentiæ moderatrix fuit auditorum prudentia. C.*—2. *Arbores serit diligens agricola, quarum adspiciet baccam ipse nunquam. C.*—3. *Erudito homini esse ego iratus, ne si cupiam quidem, non possum. C.*—4. *Ne vitiationem quidem doloris ipsam per se quisquam in rebus expetendis putavit. C.*

14. Of words standing close together, the reversing their usual order gives prominence (I think) to the first rather than to the second. Thus when *a b* becomes *b a*, it is *b* rather than *a* that receives prominence.

*Mirabile videtur, quod non rideat haruspex, quum haruspicem viderit. C.*

### Exercise 2.

15. It cannot be denied, that Hortensius<sup>2</sup> is going to follow the example of Cato. Let Hortensius defend himself from this charge by the plea of <sup>o</sup>bad health. Brutus felt <sup>a</sup>that he was invited to a share. He exclaims: "What<sup>1</sup> advantage will the Carthaginians derive from so great a wrong?" Let good examples<sup>7</sup> for imitation be proposed<sup>a</sup> to boys.<sup>a</sup> There is no doubt that the plea of necessity is a valid excuse for you. I<sup>1</sup> will follow<sup>a</sup> the advice of Cato. The examples of those who die<sup>2</sup> for their country are quoted-with-approbation.<sup>3</sup> We are looking impatiently <sup>a</sup>for the arrival of Cicero. I fear that he will not<sup>4</sup> undergo the danger



willingly.\* I could not follow\* such an *example*, even if I wished it (13, 3). He is always\* bringing me into *danger*. I fear that\* Hortensius\* will not ward off the *danger* from me. I fear that Hortensius will *die* by his own hands. How few there are who\* have altogether\* satisfied the *expectations*\* of men!\*

<sup>1</sup> How are questions of *appeal* asked in oblique narration? [460, (c) (2).]

<sup>2</sup> *Pro patriâ mortem or morte occumbere.* <sup>3</sup> *Laudare.* <sup>4</sup> Df. 153.

<sup>5</sup> Df. 1109, (14). <sup>6</sup> *Ex omni parte.*

### § 1. *Position of Attributives.*

16. (a) An attributive receives, perhaps, a slight emphasis from being placed after its substantive; but (b) it receives more by *separation* from it, especially if it be placed near the beginning or end of the sentence.<sup>1</sup>

(a) 1. Sedebat in rostris collega tuus, amictus togâ *purpureâ*, in sellâ *aureâ*, coronatus. C.—2. Jacet inter saltus satis clausus in medio campus *herbidus aquosusque*. L.

(b) 1. In miseriam nascimur *sempiternam*. C.—2. Ædui equites ad Cæsarem *omnes* revertuntur. Cæs.

17. If the attention is to rest on a substantive having an attributive with it, it is placed after the attributive, and separated from it, so as to be thrown as near the end of the sentence as possible.

1. Cimon *barbarorum* uno concursu *vim maximam* prostravit. C. Nep.—

2. In his perniciosus est error, qui existimant *libidinum peccatorumque omnium* patere in amicitia *licentiam*. C.—3. Miles quidam parum abfuit, quin Varum interficeret; *quod ille periculum*, sublato ad ejus conatum scuto, vitavit. Cæs

18. If an attributive belongs to two substantives, it either precedes both, or follows both, or follows the first.

<sup>1</sup> *Grysear* makes the position *after* its substantive the *usual* position of an attributive; that before its substantive the more emphatic one. This opinion seems to me utterly untenable; e. g. in the example, "sedebat in rostris collega tuus, amictus togâ *purpureâ*, in sellâ *aureâ*, coronatus," (Cic. Phil. ii. 34.) who can doubt that the adjectives *purple* and *golden* are here more important notions than the substantives *toga* and *chair*?—In this sentence, however, *purpureâ* and *aureâ* gain a little emphasis from their being followed by a slight pause.

(From her divine birth and origin.)

(1) A *divino* ortu et progenie.

(2) Ab ortu et progenie *divinâ*.

(3) Ab ortu *divino* et progenie.

} Not, ab ortu et *divinâ* progenie.<sup>2</sup>

19. Zumpt confines the position after the first to the 'familiar style;' but it occurs even in the Orations of Cicero, and is, I think, the best position, when the second substantive is an emphatic addition: e. g. Cic. Phil. ii. 33. "*Sed arrogantiam hominis insolentiamque cognoscite.*"

20. Of two adjectives or other words joined by 'and' (or some other *co-ordinate* conjunction) that which is to arrest the attention most is often placed towards the end of the sentence, and separated from the other by one or more of the words that belong equally to both.

*Obs.* The pronouns, and other small unaccented words, are very frequently used for the separation of connected words.

1. *Insula est Melita, satis lato ab Siciliâ mari periculosoque disjuncta.* C.--

2. *Omnibus officiis diligenter a me sancteque servatis, &c.*—3. *Et dolori fortiter ac fortunæ resistere.*—4. *Dominos esse omnium rerum et moderatores deos.*

21. *Obs.* This separation of co-ordinate notions is conveniently employed in dividing a long sentence into portions, and thus giving symmetry and strength to the style by preventing the accumulation of unaccented words. For instance, Wolf writes: '*nunc tandem jucundum fructum mihi capere licet variarum curarum:*' *jucundum* and *fructum* are here emphatic, *mihi capere licet* wholly unemphatic. By arranging the sentence thus, '*nunc tandem licet | jucundum mihi | variarum curarum | fructum capere,*' we have a nearly regular alternation of the rising and falling of the voice; or what Cicero calls *intervalla æqualia.* (Reisig.)

### Exercise 3.

[An accented pronoun is emphatic, and to be expressed.]

22. Is it the part of a Christian to yield basely to pain<sup>a</sup> and fortune<sup>a</sup> (20,3)? Thick<sup>a</sup> clouds<sup>a</sup> are covering the whole sky. (*Turn into pass. voice.*) It is a great thing to be able to endure cold<sup>a</sup> and

<sup>2</sup> This sentence (*sic*) is in Cic. Tusc. i. 12 (26), and Wolf improperly refers *divinâ* to both substantives: a supposition which Orelli appears to countenance by not condemning it.

hunger.\* They believe that they shall derive great *advantage* from this injury. He' gave me *advice* boldly\* and rashly.\* Fired with anger\* and *ambition*,\* he' heaped every kind of *abuse* upon me. It cannot be doubted, that he is easily *accessible* to flattery.<sup>1</sup> Which\* advice\* they' received with *asclamations*. He' did many\* and rash\* ° actions by the *advice* of Caius. There is no doubt that he is living by *alms*. Caius has made this question very *dark*. He has followed a bold' and rash' *advice*. Deliver me from the *yoke*\* of slavery.\* You see (*pl.*) the anger and ambition of the man (19)!

<sup>1</sup> 'that flatterers\* have easy\* access\* to his ears.'

23. When a substantive, with a notion joined to it attributively, is more nearly defined by some other words, those words are usually placed between the substantive and its attributive.

Tua erga *Luccium* benignitas. C. Tanta fuit in castris capiendis celeritas, &c. Cæs. Halesini pro multis et magnis suis majorumque suorum in rempublicam meritis atque beneficiis, &c. C. Pro hac, quam conspiciatis, ad conservandam rempublicam diligentia, &c. C. [Obs. the insertion of the relative clause.]

(a) A deviation from this rule occurs, C. Nep. *Miltiad.* 3, 3, 'hortatus est pontis custodes ne a fortuna & datam occasionem liberandi Græciæ dimitterent.' Here *fortuna* is emphatic.

(β) A notion joined attributively to a substantive may be expressed either by an adjective, or a participle, or a genitive case.

24. (a) A participle generally follows its substantive, as containing a *predicate* assumed attributively; but (b) where the predicate would precede the subject, if the clause were resolved, there the participle should precede the substantive.

(a) Ratibus junctis trajectus. L. Consules—regibus exactis creati sunt.

(b) Ingratus est, qui, remotis testibus, agit gratiam. Sen. Cæsar pulsus, non instante Pompejo, negavit eum vincere scire. Suet.

25. In other words, the participle should precede, when attention is to be called to *it* rather than to the substantive; and also when the participle and substantive together form one complex notion.

Tomeritas est videlicet florentis etatis. C. Itaque bene adhibita ratio cernit quid optimum sit. C.

*Exercise 4.*

26. It was decreed, that for his so-great merit towards<sup>1</sup> the state,<sup>1</sup> he should be called<sup>2</sup> king by the senate. Caius behaved with such courtesy<sup>3</sup> towards all,<sup>1</sup> that no man was so humble as not<sup>4</sup> to have access to him. I will strive to satisfy<sup>5</sup> men's great expectations of me.<sup>1</sup> I fear that I shall not<sup>6</sup> satisfy your great expectations of me.<sup>1</sup> If (*Ego, si, &c.*) such an opportunity of success<sup>7</sup> were offered me, I' would eagerly seize it [I. 445, α, (1).] The Gauls, having lost their baggage, all' fled. The troops of Lentulus restore the fortune of the day,<sup>8</sup> and rout the enemy. Are you' the man<sup>9</sup> to lose such<sup>10</sup> an opportunity of success<sup>7</sup> by your-own laziness?<sup>11</sup> I fear that I shall not<sup>12</sup> be able to recompense<sup>13</sup> you for your so-great benefits towards<sup>14</sup> me.<sup>1</sup> There were some, who looked forward to your arrival with impatience.

<sup>1</sup> in with acc.    <sup>2</sup> *appellare*.    <sup>3</sup> Say; 'was of such courtesy' (abl.). See D. *humanitas*. Choose the word that is nearly = *affability*.    <sup>4</sup> Use *qui non*. See Pt. I. p. 215, note d.    <sup>5</sup> I. 75.    <sup>6</sup> Df. 153.    <sup>7</sup> *rei gerendæ*.  
<sup>8</sup> See BATTLE.    <sup>9</sup> Df. 1109, (9).    <sup>10</sup> *tam præclarus*.    <sup>11</sup> See D. *ignavia*.  
<sup>12</sup> Df. 153    <sup>13</sup> *gratiam referre*.<sup>a</sup>    <sup>14</sup> in.

§ 2. *Dependent Genitive.*

27. When a gen. depends on two substantives it generally precedes both.

*Hujus autem orationis difficillius est exitum quam principium invenire. C.*

28. When a gen. depends on a substantive that has another genitive dependent upon it, with which it forms one complex notion, it is generally placed before it.

The gen. that forms, as it were, one notion with the substantive, generally follows<sup>1</sup> it: it is very often an *objective* genitive.

1. *Fortissimi viri magnitudinem animi desideras. C.—2. Themistoclia vitia ineuntis ætatis magnis sunt emendata virtutibus. C. Nep.—3. Cupio ab hac hominum satietate nostri discedere. C.—4. Hujus vos animi monumenta retinebitis corporis in Italiâ nullum vestigium esse patiemini? C.*

<sup>1</sup> Not always: e. g. *hujus rex animi magnitudinem admirans. C. Nep. li. 10*

## Exercise 5.

29. It is more difficult to avoid the snares of these men, than to endure<sup>1</sup> ° their arms. Nearly all men's<sup>a</sup> youthful<sup>2</sup> *opinions* are gradually weakened.<sup>3</sup> Who would not praise ° this great philosopher's contempt<sup>4</sup> for<sup>5</sup> external things? I am not the man<sup>6</sup> to laugh at the Christian's contempt<sup>4</sup> for<sup>5</sup> the things of this life.<sup>7</sup> I have very often admired both<sup>8</sup> the courtesy and the benevolence of Cimon. Extreme<sup>9</sup> cheapness<sup>7</sup> followed<sup>10</sup> that year's<sup>a</sup> dearness of *provisions*. I don't doubt that extreme dearness will follow<sup>11</sup> this year's cheapness of *provisions*. My Tullia's weak state<sup>12</sup> kills<sup>13</sup> me with ° anxiety.

<sup>1</sup> *sustinere*.    <sup>2</sup> Say; 'opinions of commencing life.' Should it be *iniens ætas*, or *ætas iniens*? (See 25. last clause.)    <sup>3</sup> Dd. *paulatim*.    <sup>4</sup> *despicientia*.  
<sup>5</sup> Pt. I. 156.    <sup>6</sup> Df. 1109 (9).    <sup>7</sup> Say; 'of human things.'    <sup>8</sup> *quem-*  
*tum*.    <sup>9</sup> *Summus*.    <sup>10</sup> *consequi*.    <sup>11</sup> Pt. I. 290 (d).    <sup>12</sup> *imbecillitas corporis*.    <sup>13</sup> *exanimare*.

## § 3. Participial Clauses.

30. When a participial clause is equivalent to an apposition or relative sentence, it stands as near as possible to the word it modifies.

1. Pisistratus primus Homeri *libros, confusos antea, sic disposuisse dicitur, ut nunc habemus*. C.—2. Sæpe homines *rationem, bono consilio a diis immortalibus datam, in fraudem malitiamque convertunt*. C.

31. But when a participial clause is equivalent to a sentence beginning with a conjunction, it is sometimes inserted in the principal sentence, sometimes placed before it, sometimes after it, as its relation to the principal sentence requires.

1. *Egyptii et Babylonii, in camporum patentium æquoribus habitantes, (= quum hab.) omnem curam in siderum cognitione posuerunt*. C.—  
 2. *Perditis (= licet perd.) rebus omnibus, tamen ipsa virtus se sustentare potest*. C.—3. Brutus Consul ita prælio uno accedit Vestinorum res, ut dilaberentur in oppida, *se defensuri (= ut defend.)*. I.

## Exercise 6.

[F means that the sentence is to be turned into a participial clause.]

32. ° My *reputation* being lost, nothing<sup>1</sup> remains<sup>2</sup> but that I

should *die* by my own hands. I gladly receive the *honours*<sup>4</sup> offered to me for<sup>3</sup> having saved the state. They all<sup>1</sup> *fly* to the town to defend themselves<sup>2</sup> othere. Be sure<sup>4</sup> not to neglect your *health*, which is now re-established.<sup>2</sup> Can any one cure *a body*, that is worn-out<sup>2</sup> by such<sup>2</sup> labours? Who doubts, that such<sup>5</sup> *opinions*, so deeply<sup>6</sup> implanted, so long entertained,<sup>7</sup> are very hard to root up?<sup>8</sup> The *example* of a man who makes glory his first *object*, is not to be followed.

<sup>1</sup> *nihil aliud nisi.*      <sup>2</sup> See l. 83.      <sup>3</sup> *ob.* Say; 'on account of the republic saved.'      <sup>4</sup> *cave.* See Df. (1), 118.      <sup>5</sup> C (1), 10.      <sup>6</sup> *tam penitus.*  
<sup>7</sup> *vetustus*: the word for *old* which refers to the superiority of age. D<sup>3</sup>d. *antiquus.*      <sup>8</sup> Df. (1), 93.

#### § 4. *Proper Names.*

33. A proper name generally precedes its apposition.

1. *Ex præpositio: tis syllaba: s litera.*—2. *Cato, vir clarissimus.*—3. *Lemnos insula.*

34. But if the attention is to rest upon the apposition, or if it has a nearer relation to some preceding notion, it stands first.

1. *Ejus doctor* Plato triplicem finxit animum. C. (because the *ejus* refers to *Xenocrates* in the former sentence.)—2. *Homo mirificus, Dionysius* (*that wonderful person, Dionysius*).

#### *Exercise 7.*

35. I will make no objection<sup>1</sup> to your hissing off the *stage* o that very bad actor<sup>2</sup> Balbus. I remember that Pamphilus, my host, said<sup>3</sup> that he would not come. You (*sing.*) have heard Q. Minucius Rufus say, that king Antiochus lodged<sup>4</sup> at his house<sup>1</sup> o when at Syracuse.<sup>2</sup> Verres *invited* Antiochus, king of Syria, to supper. I hear that the excellent Lucilius,<sup>5</sup> a friend of mine, is suffering from a *disease* that must end fatally. I am *vexed* that Rutilius, a man<sup>2</sup> who has deserved well of me, should be *living* on such confined means. I fear that Satureius, an excellent man, and o one who has deserved extremely well of the state, will be brought into danger of his *life*. It is your o business to beseech the conqueror to spare the *life* of Pamphilus, your host.

Your connection<sup>6</sup> Rutilius swore that he owed his *life* to me : his father<sup>7</sup> Numantius<sup>7</sup> would not beg Cæsar to spare mine.

<sup>1</sup> Df. (1), 19. <sup>2</sup> *histrio* (= 'stage-player') implies something of depreciation.

<sup>3</sup> Df. (1), 2. <sup>4</sup> *deversari*. (*Luc. vir. opt.*) <sup>5</sup> *affinis*.

<sup>7</sup> The accent over *father* shows that it is to precede the proper name.

### § 5. *Antithetical Words.*

36. From 7, it follows that antithetical words or notions will naturally often stand, the one at the beginning, the other at the end of the clause.

1. *Necessitatis inventa antiquiora sunt, quam voluptatis. C.—2. Errare mehercule malo cum Platone, quam cum istis vera sentire. C.*

37. If the antithetical notions consist of more than one word (each answering to one of the other set), the order of the first set is very often reversed in the second.

38. If the antithetical notions are in different sentences, they stand,

- (a) Either both at the beginning } of their respective clauses :  
 (b) Or both at the end }  
 (c) Or the one at the end of its clause, the other at the beginning ; the order of the first being generally reversed in the second, if they consist of several words.

(a) *Stulti malorum memoriâ torquentur ; sapientes bona præterita, gratâ recordatione renovata, delectant. C. (a b — a b.)*

(a, b) *Multi in amicis parandis adhibent curam : in amicis eligendis negligentes sunt. C. (a b — a b.)*

(c) 1. *Ut cupiditatibus principum et vitiis infici solet tota civitas : sic emendari et corrigi continentia. C.—2. Metuo ne scelera dicam in te, quod pro Milone dicam pie. C. (a b × b a.)*

39. When a substantive is repeated in a sentence, the two cases generally stand close together.

*Obs.* Not always : e. g. *nihil semper floret : ætas succedit ætati. C.* In sentences of the kind to which this rule applies, the pron. '*another*' might generally be substituted for the second substantive, '*one*' being added to the first. '*Man kills man*' = '*one man kills another.*'

1. *Vir virum legit.—2. Ex domo in domum migrare.—3. Diem ex die expectare.—4. Arma armis propulsare.*

40. These forms will be indicated thus :

*a b — a b* will indicate that the order is to be retained ; *a b × b a* that it is to be reversed.

*Obs.* The inverted order is called *Chiasmus*, and is the *favourite* form for antithetical sentences.

*Obs.* These rules are not invariably observed: e. g. *Rerum copia verborum copiam* gignit. C. Pausanias *magnam belli gloriam turpi morte* maculavit. Nep. *Iniquissimam pacem iustissimo bello* antefero. C.

### Exercise 8.

[*Obs.* When 'one' is to be omitted (°one), 'another' must be translated by a case of the substantive that follows one.—°Then indicates that the question is to be asked by *an*.]

41. I don't see, how past pleasures<sup>a</sup> can assuage<sup>1</sup> present evils (*a b × b a*). I confess that the judgment of the generality<sup>2</sup> differs<sup>3</sup> from my judgment. Laws<sup>a</sup> punish<sup>4</sup> the wicked, defend and protect<sup>5</sup> the good. The *opinion*<sup>a</sup> which<sup>a</sup> you<sup>1</sup> are implanting in my mind, Rutilius is rooting up.<sup>6</sup> The *opportunity*<sup>a</sup> which<sup>a</sup> you are seizing, Caius has let slip.<sup>6</sup> The more difficult it is to acquire a *knowledge* of heavenly things,<sup>7</sup> the more do they kindle °in us the *desire* of knowing<sup>8</sup> ° them. It is one<sup>9</sup> thing to be unanimously *acquitted*, another to escape by a *sentence*<sup>10</sup> purchased by bribery (*a b — a b*). Do you °then believe, that the mind is strengthened by pleasure, °and weakened by continence?<sup>a</sup> (*a b × b a*). Arms must be resisted by arms (39, 4). Is it °then true that °one poet always envies °another? I by Hercules had rather be condemned<sup>a</sup> than acquitted<sup>a</sup> by a *sentence*<sup>10</sup> purchased by bribery (36, 2).

<sup>1</sup> *Sedare.*    <sup>2</sup> *vulgus.*    <sup>3</sup> *dissentire* (a quā re).    <sup>4</sup> *supplicio<sup>a</sup> afflicere<sup>a</sup>.*

<sup>5</sup> Död. *tueri*: or I. 374.    <sup>6</sup> Invert. I. 30 (*d*).    <sup>7</sup> 'heavenly things, the more difficult knowledge they admit of (*habent*), &c.    <sup>8</sup> *cognoscere.*

<sup>9</sup> I. 39.    <sup>10</sup> See JUDGMENT.

### 6. Secondary Emphasis: position of words occurring in two clauses.

42. In a sentence of some considerable length a word receives a slight emphasis or prominence by being placed just before or after a pause.

For instance, just after an apposition clause that belongs to the subject. In fact, the beginning or end of any *group of words* is a slightly emphatic position.



1. *Oratoris nomen apud antiquos in Græciâ | majori quadam vel copiâ, vel gloriâ floruit. C.*—2. *Cælius talis tribunus plebis fuit, ut nemo contra civium perditorum popularem turbulentamque dementiam | a senatu et a bonorum causâ steterit libentius. C.*

43. A word that is the subject or object of two sentences should generally precede both.

1. *Hostes, ubi primum nostros equites conspexerunt, impetu facto, celeriter nostros perturbaverunt. Cæs.*—2. *Quem, ut barbari incendium effugisse viderunt, telis eminus missis, interfecerunt. Nep.*

The position of a subject at the head of a sentence before the conjunction of an accessory sentence is so common, that it is often found there, even when it is *not* the subject of the principal sentence also.

1. *Hic etsi crimine Pario est accusatus, tamen alia fuit causa damnationis. Nep.*—2. *Romani postquam Carthaginem venerunt——tum ex Carthaginiensibus unus, &c.*

14. A word that is the subject of one sentence and the object of another, should generally stand before both (as belonging to the principal sentence) and be represented in the accessory sentence by the proper case of *is, ea, id*.

1. *Rex Prusias, quum Hannibali apud eum exulanti depugnari placeret, negabat se audere. (When Hannibal, who was residing as an exile with King Prusias, wished, &c.—he said——&c.) C.*—2. *Boios, petentibus Æduis, quod egregiâ virtute erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent concessit. Cæs.*

### Exercise 9.

45. If the Boii<sup>a</sup> had sued for *peace*, they would have obtained it. If Caius does<sup>1</sup> this, he will endanger his *reputation*. Dionysius<sup>a</sup> having seen me at Rome, left nothing undone<sup>2</sup> to bring me into *odium*. Could<sup>a</sup> my *favourite*, your connection,<sup>3</sup> Rutilius, upon hearing this<sup>4</sup> (*pl.*) almost *die* with laughter? When your *favourite*<sup>1</sup> Saufeius was staying with<sup>5</sup> my friend Lucilius,<sup>a</sup> <sup>c</sup>the latter used to get an *appetite* by walking. (14). When Metellus<sup>a</sup> was at Athens, he <sup>o</sup>used to devour literature with <sup>o</sup>that wonderful<sup>6</sup> person<sup>1</sup> Dionysius.

<sup>1</sup> 'Shall have done.'

<sup>2</sup> Df Pt. I. 18.

<sup>3</sup> *affinis.*

<sup>4</sup> Abl. Absol.

*apud quem deversari*, to stay with any body for a time as a guest. <sup>6</sup> *homo virificus.*

§ 7. *On the position of Sum.*

46. *Sum*, as the mere logical copula, stands either between the subject and predicate, or after them both.

*Homo est mortalis: or homo mortalis est.*

47. *Sum*, when it precedes both subject and predicate, is more than the mere copula, and expresses existence emphatically [= 'exists:.' 'there is.']

*Est homo mortalis (man is undoubtedly mortal).*

In *est necesse* the '*est*' is emphatic (= '*is absolutely necessary:*') or '*must infallibly.*'

1. Non vident id se cupere, quod fugitivo alicui aut gladiatori concedi *est necesse*. C.—2. Se esse tertium illum Cornelium, ad quem regnum hujus urbis pervenire *esset necesse*. C.

48. *Sum*, when unemphatic, should generally be placed after an emphatic word.

Hence is it not placed after *enim, autem, &c.*, except when it is emphatic.

1. Postquam divitiæ honori *esse* cōpere, &c. C.—2. Hæc conficta arbitror a poetis *esse*. C.—3. Ut a te paulo *est* ante dictum. C.—4. Natura est ipsa fabricata. C.—5. In eoque colendo sita vitæ *est* honestas omnis. C.

49. On this principle *esse* is often placed after its governing verb; especially after such verbs as affirm or deny existence, such as *credo, nego, ajo, volo, veto*.<sup>1</sup>

1. Is igitur verum in oratione *velat esse*. C.—2. Defensum *neget esse*. C.—3. Quos equidem *credo esse*, &c. C.—4. Ut socios honore auctiores *velit esse*. C.

50. *Esse* in compound infinitives very frequently precedes a *hyperdissyllable* participle; the participle often standing at the end of its clause.

Abs te *esse liberatas*: per te *esse recreatas*; latrocinia *esse depulsa*: *esse adeptos*: operam *esse* ponendam (but, *prorogatus esse videatur*)—all in a small portion of one letter (*Epp. ad Quint. Fratr.* lib. 1. 1).

51. The *est* of a compound tense often stands after its participle, at the end of a clause.

1. Nihil amplius desiderarem hoc statu, qui mihi jam *partus est*. C.—2. Quæ tamen (ut in malis) acerbitati *anteponenda est*. C.

<sup>1</sup> By no means always: omniratione tueare, ut *esse* quam beatissimos *velit* *Epp. ad Quint. Fratr.* lib. 1. 1.

## Exercise 10.

52. Dionysius, who says that virtue is not productive of *pleasure*, is blamed<sup>1</sup> by many. Caius denies that gain should be pursued as a first *object*. He says that this should be the first *object* with those who are placed over others,<sup>2</sup> that those who are under their command<sup>3</sup> should be as happy °as possible.<sup>4</sup> I believe that the boy is a liar.<sup>5</sup> He says that pleasure is not to be our first *object*. All cry-out, that this very false<sup>6</sup> man °is not to be believed upon his *oath*. He promised that he would place no *obstacle* °in the way of accomplishing so great an object.<sup>7</sup> Are you' °then going to feel *affronted* at this? They teach °us, that that *opinion* should be given up.

<sup>1</sup> Död. *reprehendere*.<sup>2</sup> To be placed over others, *præcæ aliis*. Indic.<sup>3</sup> To be under any body's command, *in cuius imperio esse*.<sup>4</sup> I. 410. p. 144.<sup>5</sup> *mendax*, adj.<sup>6</sup> *mendacissimus*.<sup>7</sup> *res*.

## § 8. Pronouns.

53. When a substantive has both an adjective and adjective pronoun with it, there are six possible positions, without separation.

a	b
1. Tuæ suavissimæ litteræ	4. Suavissimæ tuæ litteræ
2. Tuæ litteræ suavissimæ	5. Suavissimæ litteræ tuæ
3. Litteræ tuæ suavissimæ	6. Litteræ suavissimæ tuæ.

(a) If both the predicates are emphatic, the forms 2. 5. should probably be preferred.

(β) There may be two adjective pronouns and an adjective: e. g. *tuum hoc suburbanum* Gymnasium. *C. De. Orat.* I. 1, 21 (*end*).

(a) *Examples of form 1 (which is the English order) are:* in hac nostrâ actione (*C. De Orat.* III. 59): suis lenissimis postulatis (*Cæs. B. C.* I. 5): in meo gravissimo casu (*C. ad Fam.* IV. 6, 1): in hac præclarâ epistolâ (*C. de Fin.* II. 31).

54. If the substantive has a demonstrative pronoun and two adjectives joined by *et*, &c., the most usual place of the pronoun is after the first adjective.

*Crassus hic et concretus* aer. *C.*

## Exercise 11.

55. Do not pester °that excellent man with your threatening

*letters*. He never answered a single word<sup>1</sup> to my very kindly expressed<sup>2</sup> *letters*.<sup>3</sup> I cannot but<sup>3</sup> return some answer to your very acceptable *letters*. Those wrong *opinions* ° of yours must be rooted-up out of your mind. Is it ° the part of a Christian to spend all his life in making *gain*? You must strive to retain<sup>4</sup> that great *reputation* ° of yours. You must take care<sup>5</sup> lest your so-great *reputation* should be *endangered*. No *obstacle* shall be placed by me (° in the way of accomplishing) this so great and difficult an object.<sup>6</sup> Is it then the part of a Christian to increase this *unpopularity*<sup>6</sup> of mine?

<sup>1</sup> *Nullum unquam verbum.*<sup>2</sup> *humanissimus.*<sup>3</sup> Df. (1), 18.<sup>4</sup> Pt. I. 75.<sup>5</sup> *cavere.*<sup>6</sup> See ODIVM.

### § 9. *Pronouns continued.*

56. *Quisque* with a superlative or ordinal numeral follows the adjective.

*Optimus quisque: altissima quæque flumina: quinto quoque verbo.*

*Quisque* is generally placed immediately after a case of *sui* or *suus* referring to it.

*Placet Stoicis suo quamque rem nomine appellare. C.*

57. (a) *Quidam* generally follows its noun, whether substantive or adjective: but

58. (b) *Quidam* precedes its noun, when there is an opposition between the *quidam* and some others: and in other cases where the *quidam* is very emphatic.

(c) For instance, where the *quidam* means 'some that I could name:' 'some we know of'

(a) 1. Interim Agyllius quidam vincula laxavit. *Nep.*—2. Sed audio majorum quendam in urbe timorem esse. *C.*

(b) Clamor iste indicat esse quosdam cives imperitos, sed non multos. *C.*

(c) Otium præstaturi videntur, si quidam homines patientius eorum potentiam ferre potuerint. *C.*

59. The *ille* of celebrity follows its substantive, if there is no adjective with it: if there is, it generally stands between the two.

*Obs.* Not always: e. g. *illcm acerbissimam ministram Prætorum avaritiæ calumniam. C. Ep. ad Q. Fratr.* i. 1, 8. *Herculem Xenophontium illum. C. Xenophon Socraticus ille. C.*

1. *Habetur vir egregius L. Paullus ille, qui, &c. C.*—2. *Omnis illa vis et quasi flamma oratoris, &c. C.*—3. *Antipater ille Sidonius. C.*—4. *Mnæarchus, auditor Panætii illius tui. C.*

60. *Aliquis* in connection with another adjective generally takes the second place.<sup>1</sup>

*Bene dicere non habet definitam aliquam<sup>2</sup> regionem.*

61. (a) When its substantive has no other adjective or pronoun with it, *aliquis* generally follows the substantive, when both are unemphatic; but (b) precedes it, when either is to receive prominence or emphasis.

*Obs.* *Aliquis* is emphatic and precedes the substantive, when it means 'some at all events,' 'some if not much.' e. g. qui sedulitatem mali poetæ duxerit *aliquo* tamen præmio dignam, &c. C.

(a) 1. Aut de pingendo *pictor aliquis* diserte dixerit aut scripserit. C.—2. Si *hujusce rei ratio aliqua*, &c. C.

(b) 1. *Ejus* facti, si non bonam, at *aliquam* rationem afferre. C.—2. Quid mihi—tamquam *alicui Græculæ* otioso et loquaci—quæstiunculam—ponitis? C.—3. Timide tamquam ad *aliquem* scopulum<sup>3</sup> libidinis, sic tuam mentem ad philosophiam appulisti. C.

62. Two pronouns, or an adverb with the pron. from which it is derived, are generally brought close together.

*Obs.* Not always: even when the pronouns relate to the same person:

e. g. "cum quibus te non *tuum* iudicium sed temporum vincula conjungunt." C. Fam. x. 6.

*Equites, sine duce relictī, alii aliā in civitates suas dilapsi sunt. L.*

63. (a) When *ipse* with a case of *sui* stands for *himself*, &c., it generally follows the case of *sui*: but (b) when there is to be particular emphasis on the subject, *ipse* precedes, and is used in the nominative, even though the opposition intended is between *oneself* and *somebody else*.

(a) 1. Deforme est, de *se ipsum* prædicare, falsa præsertim. C.—2. Non ego medicinā; *me ipse* consolor. C.—3. Lentulum mihi *ipsi* antepono. C.

(b) 1. Si quis *ipse sibi* inimicus est, &c.—2. *Ipsi se* curare non possunt.

[Sometimes, however, the *ipse* follows: si te *ipse* contineas. C.]

64. In other words: whenever what is asserted of the *agent* with respect to *himself* is a strange thing, *ipse* is to be in the nom. and precede *sui*, even when the meaning is *himself*, opposed to *others* (of whom the assertion might be expected to be made).

<sup>1</sup> For 'any other,' *alius ullus* is more common (I think) than *ullus alius*: but this depends, of course, on the relative emphasis of 'any' or 'other.' To express it strongly, separate the adjectives, as: non *ullam rem aliam* extimescens nisi, &c. C.

<sup>2</sup> In *unus aliquis* this order should be observed, unless there is another adj. (e. g. *aliquis unus* pluresve), or the *aliquis* is emphatic

## Exercise 12.

[‘The ° famous,’ ‘the ° great,’ &c., to be translated by *ille*.]

65. I far prefer<sup>1</sup> this suburban gymnasium ° of yours (53, β) to the ° famous Academy and Lycæum. Every body loves himself.<sup>2</sup> Every one is dear to himself. The longest letters are ° always<sup>3</sup> the most agreeable. To each virtue its own<sup>4</sup> peculiar<sup>5</sup> praise is due.<sup>6</sup> Does it ° then become an orator almost to *die* with laughing every third word? They cry-out, that each man must abide by his own *judgment*. Would you<sup>7</sup> dare to refuse to abide by the *judgment* of the ° great Plato? I must explain, what<sup>8</sup> was the opinion of that god ° of mine, Plato. That Epicurus ° of yours boasts that he had no master. Epicurus says that he attended<sup>9</sup> ° the lectures of a certain Pamphilus at Samos. It cannot be denied, that some<sup>10</sup> corpuscles are smooth, others rough, others round (*ab × ba*). Do you ° then believe, that this immense and most beautiful world was made<sup>11</sup> of<sup>12</sup> certain corpuscles, by no natural compulsion,<sup>13</sup> but by a certain fortuitous concourse? Let us honour this ° man’s<sup>14</sup> diligence with some *reward*, if not a great ° one.<sup>15</sup> Do you ° then compare me to some Scythian (61, b)? Is it ° then like a philosopher<sup>16</sup> to defend pugnaciously some doubtful *opinion* ° or other?

<sup>1</sup> *Longe antepone.*

<sup>2</sup> I. 363. Begin with *ipse*.

<sup>3</sup> I. 399, b.

<sup>4</sup> peculiar, *proprius*. To be due, *deberi*. <sup>5</sup> *quisnam*. <sup>6</sup> to attend a person’s lectures, *audire aliquem*. Turn the verb into the passive, ‘*was heard by him*.’

<sup>7</sup> *quidam*. <sup>8</sup> *efficere*. <sup>9</sup> *ex*. <sup>10</sup> ‘no nature compelling.’ <sup>11</sup> if

with no (*non*) great, yet (*at*) with some reward.’ (See Ex. 61, b.) <sup>12</sup> Say: ‘of a philosopher.’

## § 10. The Relative.

66. (a) The relative (except when it refers to *is*, *ea*, *id*) should stand as near as possible to its antecedent: (b) the place of the antecedent being often determined with this view.

(a) Xerxem per literas certiozem fecit id agi, ut pons, *quem ille* in Hellesponto fecerat, dissolveretur. *Nep.*

(b) Bellum grave et periculosum vestris vectigalibus atque sociis a duobus potentissimis regibus infertur, *Mithridate et Tigraue*; *quorum* alter, &c. C.

67. This applies only to strictly relative clauses: not to *qui* = the demonstr. *is*, with *et*, *nam*, *igitur*, *autem*, &c.

68. Appositions, and even single adjectives (especially superlatives), that in English precede the relative clause, are in Latin generally placed in that clause.

Hence 'the very celebrated general Epaminondas, in whose house' *would be*: Epaminondas, *cujus celeberrimi imperatoris* in domo, &c. 'The immortal glory which the Greeks acquired,' gloria, quam *inmortalem* Græci retulerunt. So: 'a city which,' quæ urbs, &c.—'the city he first visited,' quam urbem primam adiit.—'an opinion which,' quæ sententia, &c., (*city* and *opinion* being in *apposition* to something preceding.)

### Exercise 13.

69. In the same year Cumæ, a city<sup>1</sup> which<sup>2</sup> the Greeks were then in possession of,<sup>1</sup> is taken by the Campanians. The Amanus divides Syria from Cilicia, a mountain which was full of our constant<sup>3</sup> enemies.<sup>4</sup> I hope that you will<sup>5</sup> recover from the very severe *disease*, with which you are now afflicted. I hope that you will<sup>6</sup> keep the many<sup>7</sup> and very beautiful<sup>8</sup> *promises*, which you made me. The very great<sup>9</sup> and beautiful<sup>10</sup> *reward*, with which I have been presented, wonderfully<sup>11</sup> delights me. That Athenagoras of Cyme,<sup>12</sup> who had dared to export corn in a famine,<sup>13</sup> was scourged<sup>14</sup> with rods.<sup>15</sup>

<sup>1</sup> To be in possession of, *tenere*.  
sentence.

<sup>3</sup> *fore ut* . . .

<sup>4</sup> *mirifice*.

<sup>5</sup> *Constant, sempiternus*: to end the sentence.

<sup>12</sup> *Cymæus*.

<sup>14</sup> *virgis cædi*.

### § 11. The Relative continua.

70. (a) When the subject is defined by *ille* and a relative clause, it is often placed in, and at the end of, the relative clause: so, (b) when a relative clause stands before the principal clause (the relative being in the nominative), the antecedent often terminates the relative clause.

(a) Ille, qui in Timæo mundum ædificavit Platonis *ævus*.

(b) Quæ perspicuam omnibus veritatem continet *propositio*, nihil indiget approbationis. C.

71. When the relative clause precedes the principal one, the rel. *may* give up its usual place (as the first word) in favour of a notion that is to be made prominent.

*Tributa vix, in fœnus Pompeii quod satis sit, efficiunt. C.*

72. Of two cases of *qui*, an oblique case precedes a nominative.

*Senatus ille, quem qui ex regibus constare dixit, unum, veram speciem Romani senatus cepit. L.*

73. When *qui* refers to something preceding, no conjunctions can go with it but *sed, et* (before), *tamen, quidem, que* (after).

1. *Perturbat me, C. Cæsar, illud interdum: quod tamen, quum te penitus recognovi, timere desino. C.*—2. *Morositas senum habet aliquid excusationis, non illius quidem justæ, sed quæ probari posse videatur. C.*

74. Other conjunctions, such as *autem, vero, enim, igitur*, cannot stand with *qui*, unless its reference is to something that follows.

1. *Quæ autem secundum naturam essent, ea sumenda et quadam æstimatione dignanda docebat. C.*—2. *Qui igitur adolescens, nondum tantâ gloriâ præditus, nihil unquam nisi severissime et gravissime fecerit, is eâ existimatione, eâque ætate saltavit? C.*—3. *Quorum vero patres aut majores aliquâ gloriâ præstiterunt, ii student plerumque eodem in genere laudis excellere. C.*—4. *Quæ ergo ad vitam tuendam pertinent, partim sunt in animo, &c. C.*

### Exercise 14.

[*r. f.* means that the rel. clause is to stand first (see Part I. 30): *a. v.* that the sentence is to be translated by the active voice.]

75. That *opinion*<sup>1</sup> of yours, which is injurious<sup>1</sup> to us, must be rooted-up out of your mind. That Rupilius,<sup>1</sup> who for so many years had sat at *the helm* of the state, had *fled* away secretly. (*r. f.*) Let those therefore, to whom we all owe our *lives*, be *buried* with military honours. (*r. f.*) Will therefore<sup>1</sup> that Lucilius,<sup>1</sup> who is prepared for his *fate*, whatever it may be, *fly* away secretly? (*r. f.*) You are therefore<sup>1</sup> driving from the *helm* of the state those, to whom both you and I owe our *lives*. (*r. f.*) The General who had so often saved the state, was suffered by his fellow-citizens to be deprived of *burial*. (*a. v.*) We have scarcely corn<sup>a</sup> enough<sup>2</sup> for a month. Let <sup>o</sup>those therefore<sup>1</sup> who have kept back their *corn*, be fined a sum-of-money.<sup>3</sup> *Peace* must be sued for; which those who sue for it (*fut.*), will obtain.

<sup>1</sup> *Lade-re.*  
example(71).

<sup>2</sup> Say: 'which may be enough for ('in') a month.'<sup>a</sup> See  
<sup>3</sup> *pecunia*. abl.



§ 12. *Interrogatives.*

76. (a) Interrogatives, except *ne*, take the first place in an indirect question that follows the principal sentence: but,

77. (b) In direct questions, or indirect questions that precede the principal sentence, the interrogative sometimes yields the first place to an emphatic notion.

(a) Quæritur, *cur* doctissimi homines de maximis rebus dissentiant. C.

(b) 1. *Dii utrum* sint, necne sint, quæritur. C.—2. Quid? *Alexandrum Phœæum quo* animo vixisse arbitramur? C.

*Exercise 15.*

78. What? is not nearly<sup>1</sup> the whole heaven<sup>a</sup> filled<sup>1</sup> with the human race? But whether these numbers<sup>a</sup> are poetical, or of<sup>2</sup> some other kind, must be seen next.<sup>3</sup> When Socrates<sup>a</sup> was asked,<sup>4</sup> whether he did not think Archelaus,<sup>a</sup> the son of Perdiccas, happy; I don't know, said he, for I have never conversed with him.<sup>5</sup> What? did not the ° famous Cato of Utica<sup>c</sup> die by his own hands? What? with what feelings do we think that Lucilius of Ariminum saw his *mistake* (b)? I wish to remark<sup>7</sup> ° here, what<sup>8</sup> a calamity over-confidence<sup>9</sup> usually<sup>10</sup> is.

<sup>1</sup> Ramshorn says: *complere*, to fill completely; *implere*, to fill what is hollow empty; *opplere*, to fill to the brim, to fill to overflowing, to cover a surface by filling. Nearly so Jentzen: *plenum quod est ad satietatem dicitur completum, expletum: repletum est, quod exhaustum erat, ut fossa: opplatus ad superficiem, refertus, differtus, confertus ad spatium interius pertinent.*

<sup>2</sup> *ex.* <sup>3</sup> *deinceps.* <sup>4</sup> 'Socrates, when it had been inquired of him' (*subj.*) &c., *querere ex aliquo.* <sup>5</sup> *colloqui cum aliquo.* <sup>6</sup> *Uticensis*, adj.—see

*Ariminensis* below. <sup>7</sup> *Libet interponere.* <sup>8</sup> C. (1), 21. Df. (1), 50.

<sup>9</sup> *nimia fiducia.*

<sup>10</sup> 'is wont to be.'

§ 13. *Prepositions.*

79. Prepositions (except *versus* and *tenus*) generally stand before their nouns. (a) When the substantive has an attributive with it, the preposition stands between the attributive and its substantive, when either of them is emphatic. (b) When the attributive is a rel. pron., the preposition generally stands between the pron. and its substantive

(a) 1. Magnâ *cum* curâ atque diligentîâ scripsit. C.—2. Romani Horatium accipiunt eo *maiore cum gaudio*, quo prope metum res fuerat.

(b) In some expressions the preposition nearly always takes the middle place; e. g. *quâ in re*; *quam ob rem*; *eâ de causâ*.

80. Even when the relative has no substantive with it, the preposition often follows it.

1. Senatus, *quos ad* soleret, referendum censuit. C.—2. Homo disertus non intelligit eum, *quem contra* dicit, laudari a se, &c. C.—3. Socii putandi sunt, *quos inter* res communicata est. C.—4. Res, *quâ de* agitur. C.

81. *Cum* is always appended to *me*, *te*, *se*, *nobis*, *vobis*, *qui* (= quo): and also to *quo*, *quâ*, *quibus*, when the *cum* is entirely unemphatic.

1. Maxime cavendum est, ut eos, *quibuscum* sermonem conferimus, et vereri et diligere videamur. C.—2. Ira procul absit, *cum* (emphatic) *quâ* nihil recte fieri, nihil considerate potest. C.—3. Noli adversum eos me velle ducere, *cum quibus* (*opp. to adversum eos*) ne contra te arma ferrem, Italiam reliqui. Nep. 25, 4.

82. When a substantive governed by a preposition has other words attached to it, these words are often placed between the preposition and its noun.

1. Erat olim mos ut faciles essent *in suum cuique* tribuendo. C.—2. Honore digni *cum ignominia dignis* non sunt comparandi. C.

A preposition is sometimes separated from its noun by *que*, *ve*, *vero*, *autem*, *tamen*, *quidem*, *enim*.

1. Sensim hanc consuetudinem et disciplinam jam antea minuebamus; *post vero* Sullæ victoriam penitus amisimus. C.—2. So: *post autem* Alexandri mortem. Nep.—3. *Post enim* Chrysippum. C.

83. Even in prose, *per* in adjurations is separated from its case by the acc. pronoun of the person addressed, the verb *adjure*, *beseech*, *implore* being omitted.

Nolite, iudices, *per vos* *fortunas*, per liberos vestros, inimicis meis, iis præsertim quos ego pro vestrâ salute suscepi, dare lætitiâ. C.

### Exercise 16.

84. On these matters I would wish<sup>1</sup> you (*pl.*) to deliberate<sup>2</sup> with Pomponius, with Camillus, with whomsoever<sup>3</sup> it shall seem<sup>4</sup> good to you. As to<sup>5</sup> him, in whose<sup>6</sup> hands<sup>7</sup> all<sup>8</sup> power<sup>9</sup> is lodged, I see nothing to fear.<sup>10</sup> Epicurus showed himself a sufficiently apt<sup>11</sup> scholar in receiving<sup>12</sup> this nerveless<sup>13</sup> and effeminate<sup>14</sup> opinion; after him Philonymus the Rhodian ||

*asserted* that to be without pain is the summum bonum. They fix a certain limit,<sup>9</sup> beyond which, <sup>o</sup> they say, we ought not to advance. Neither in those who frame constitutions,<sup>10</sup> nor in those who wage wars, is the desire of oratorical power<sup>11</sup> wont to arise. I believe that a limit in sepulchres is properly<sup>12</sup> required: for to what expenses that matter<sup>13</sup> has already advanced, you see in the tomb of C. Figulus. Pomponius is going to set out for Sicily: a matter<sup>1</sup> concerning which I have || *fished out* a great deal<sup>4</sup> from Hortensius.

<sup>1</sup> *Velim* with subj. (*ut* omitted).<sup>2</sup> The simple relative.<sup>3</sup><sup>4</sup> To be in any body's hands, *penes aliquem esse*.

Df. (1), 108.

<sup>5</sup> *ad**aliquid satis docilem se præbere*.<sup>7</sup> *enervatus*.<sup>8</sup> *muliebris*.<sup>9</sup> *modum**adhibere*. <sup>10</sup> *constituere rempublicam*.<sup>11</sup> *dicendi*.<sup>12</sup> *recte*.<sup>13</sup> *res*.<sup>14</sup> *multa*.

### § 14. Conjunctions.

85. A conjunction stands at the head of the clause to which it belongs.

86. But the relative or demonstrative pronoun, and any emphatic notion, may precede any but the co-ordinate conjunctions, *et*, *ac*, *atque*; *vel*, *aut*; *sed*; *at*, *verum*; *nam*, *namque*, *etenim*; *quamobrem*, *quapropter*; *ita*, *itaque*, *sic*, &c.

1. *Id ille ut* audivit, domum reverti noluit. *Nep.*—2. *Huic si* paucos putatis affines esse, vehementer erratis.—3. *Commentarios quosdam Aristotelis veni ut* auferrem. *C.*—(So in subordinate sentences.) 4. Atilius Regulus — *sententiam ne* diceret, recusavit. *C.*—5. Gorgiæ Leontino tantus honos habitus est a Græcis, *soli ut* ex omnibus Delphis non inaurata statua, sed aurea statueretur. *C.*

87. When two conjunctions come together, the conjunction of the principal precedes that of the subordinate sentence.

*Itaque, si* aut requietem natura non quæreret, aut eam posset aliâ quadam ratione consequi, facile pateremur. *C.*

88. *Quam* (*how*) with an adjective is often separated from the adjective, for the purpose of adding emphasis to it.

*U: credam ita esse, quam est id exiguum?* *C.*

### Exercise 17.

89. When he' heard this,<sup>a</sup> he suffered nobody to *rest*. I am come to recompense you with some *reward*, if not a great <sup>o</sup> one

(86, 3). When he heard this,<sup>a</sup> he uttered the name of Quinctilius in a very *pathetic* manner. I will call upon Caius, whom, though I think he will keep his *promises*, I will nevertheless bind by an *oath*. Do you <sup>o</sup> then think those evils are to be feared, which are over in a moment of *time*? *Listen* to what that Caius (of) yours<sup>a</sup> has done. If Demetrius has an *audience*, it will be all over<sup>1</sup> with the army. Though Caius<sup>a</sup> owes his *life* to me, yet he endeavours to bring me into *odium*. If therefore (87, b) they think that they *owe* their lives to me, I should be honoured <sup>o</sup> by them with some<sup>a</sup> reward.<sup>a</sup> If therefore (87, b) they have derived any *advantage* from my care, let them confer some<sup>a</sup> reward<sup>a</sup> upon me.

<sup>1</sup> *Actum esse de.*

§ 15. *Conjunctions.*—*Autem, enim, igitur*, with *esse*.

90. *Obs.* *Igitur, tamen, ergo, deinde, praterca, ilaque*, take the first place, when they modify the whole clause, and not merely any particular notion of it. When they modify a particular notion, only or especially, they follow that notion, or the first and most important of the words by which it is expressed. In Cicero, however, *ilaque* always takes the first place, *igitur* never.

91. If *esse* or the *subject* begins the sentence, *autem, enim, igitur*, take the second place.

1. *Est enim* effectrix multarum et magnarum voluptatum. C.—2. *Sunt autem* clariora ——— indicia naturæ. C.—3. *Id autem* est perfectum officium. C.

92. If the sentence begins with the *predicate* or *non, num, nemo, nihil quis*;<sup>1</sup> or if *esse* is emphatic; *esse* (generally) takes the second, and the particle the *third* place.

<sup>1</sup> *Quis enim est*, &c., occurs *Tusc.* iv. 2, and elsewhere. The thing to be considered is; whether the question or assertion relates to the *existence* of the thing or to its *nature*. “Quo minus recte dicatur *quid enim est, nihil enim est*, nulla obstat ratio.—Discrimen proficiscitur ex naturâ verbi *esse*, quod, quum non plenam significationem præstet, cum nomine conjungitur in unam notionem, et encliticorum more comprehenditur uno accentu: sed ubi significat *vere esse, exstare*, attrahit interrogandi particulam.—Qui quærit, *quid est enim?* aut expectat responsum *nihil esse*, vel *nihil aliud esse*; aut an res vere sit, dubitat. Qui interrogat, *quid enim est?* de certo genere rei quærit, vel, interrogationis

1. *Dicendum est enim* quod sentio. C.—2. *Nihil est enim* aliud, quamobrem  
 &c. C.—3. *Quis est enim* qui, &c. ?—4. *Nemo est igitur*, qui.

93. (a) A preposition throws these particles into the third place, unless it is emphatic ; (b) when they may stand between the preposition and its noun.

(a) *Ex hac igitur* illud efficitur. C.

(b) 1. *Post vero* Sullæ victoriæ (hanc consuetudinem) penitus amisimus. C.—2. Herillus jam pridem est rejectus : *post enim Chrysippum* non est disputatum. C.

94. Sometimes *est* follows a preposition and its case, and thus the particle is thrown forward to the fourth place.

*Ab eâ est* — *enim* interfectus. C.

95. *Quoque*, *quidem* (which always follow the word they belong to) also throw *autem*, *enim*, *igitur* to the third place.

*Ei quoque enim* proconsuli imperium in annum prorogabatur. L.

96. A partial exception to what is here said of *quidem*, arises from the affection of the pronominal particle *quidem* for a pronoun. Thus in *tibi que persuade esse te quidem mihi carissimum, sed multo fore cariorem, si, &c.*, the *quidem*, which properly belongs to *carissimum*, has deserted to the pronoun.

97. So with other verbs the particle takes the third place, when the verb has a word with it, from which it cannot well be separated.

*Nec video autem, &c.* — *Num vis igitur* audire, &c. ?

98. The *post-positive* conjunctions may separate a prænomen from a cognomen, and even such a compound word as *jusjurandum*, *plebiscitum*.

1. *L. quidem Philippus* gloriari solebat. C.—2. *Rem vero publicam*.—3. *Jurisque jurandi*.—4. *Rogationibus, plebisve scitis*.

### Exercise 18.

99. For I must say how salutary<sup>1</sup> *religion* is to men. For some *reason* must be given of this, as it appears to you at least,<sup>2</sup> strange counsel. For who is there, whose ears that *report* has

vi intentâ, non hoc esse, vel prorsus nihil esse. Nam tota vis continetur uno verbo *quid*.—Hoc ad alias quoque formas pertinet, quæ verbum *est* encliticum nominâ conjunctum habent." (*Hand. Turs.* ii. 400.)

not reached? I approve of that:<sup>3</sup> for there is nothing from which you can derive greater *advantage*. Be of good<sup>a</sup> courage:<sup>4</sup> for there is nobody to eject you from *possession*. Do you wish therefore to *listen* to what that Pomponius<sup>a</sup> has done? You see what prudence, and how firm<sup>a</sup> a mind<sup>a</sup> there is need of; for <sup>o</sup> we must take the *helm* of the state. For who is there who denies, that you both sit at the *helm*, as the *saying* is, and above all others<sup>5</sup> watch over<sup>6</sup> the state? <sup>o</sup> We waver<sup>7</sup> and change <sup>o</sup> our opinion even in clearer things: for in these there is some obscurity. I approve of that:<sup>3</sup> for there is no rapidity<sup>8</sup> which can come-into-competition<sup>9</sup> with that<sup>10</sup> of the mind.

<sup>1</sup> To be salutary, *saluti esse*<sup>2</sup> *quidem*.<sup>3</sup> *laudo id quidem*.<sup>4</sup> *animus*.<sup>5</sup> *unum ex omnibus maxime*.<sup>6</sup> *prospicere* with dat.<sup>7</sup> *labare*.<sup>8</sup> *celeritas*.<sup>9</sup> *contendere*.<sup>10</sup> The subst. must be repeated.

### § 16. *Non. Haud.*

100. (a) *Non* (or *haud*) generally stands before the word whose notion it denies: thus when there is an opposition, it is always prefixed to one of the antithetical words: but,

101. (b) *Non* (*haud*) takes the first place in negative sentences that express a consequence, (hence so frequently with *ergo*, *igitur*,) and (c) in hypothetical conclusions, when *nisi* is the conditional particle.

(a) 1. *Non paranda nobis solum sapientia sed fruenda etiam.* C.—2. *Oti fructus est non contentio animi, sed relaxatio.* C.

(b) *Non igitur de improbo, sed de callide improbo quærimus.* C.

(c) *Non jam Troicis temporibus tantum laudis in dicendo Ulyssi tribuisset Homerus, nisi jam tum honos esset eloquentiæ.* C.

102. *Non* (*haud*) may also take the first place, when the denial is to be very emphatic; especially in negative questions.

1. *Non ego jam Epaminondæ, non Leonidæ mortem hujus morti antepono.* C.—2. *Quid bestiæ? non pro suo partu ita propugnant, ut vulnera recipiant?* C.

103. The place of *non* in the case of *est*, &c., with a participle, or of an auxiliary verb (with infin.) is next before *est* or the auxiliary verb (when there is no *antithesis*).

1. III vos, quoniam libere *non licet*, tacite rogant, &c. C.—2. Regulo *non fuit* Jupiter metuendus, ne, &c. C.—[When there is antithesis, the non precedes the antithetical word.] 3. Non modo—*non* deterritus, sed—concitatus est.—4. Hanc epistolam cur *non scindi* velim, causa nulla est. C.

104. The place of *non* is optional, when it belongs to a predicate (*esse* being the copula), or when it belongs to a *universal* negative proposition with *quis* or *qui*.

1. Jove tonante cum populo agi *non* est fas. C.—2. Nihil est, quod Deus efficere *non* possit. C.—3. Nihil est enim, quod *non* alicubi esse cogatur. C.

### Exercise 19.

105. I' should not have *risked* all<sup>1</sup> my fortunes,<sup>2</sup> unless I had made you take an *oath* in words prescribed by me. I' should not have been *banished*, unless you had brought me into *odium*. You shall not therefore receive any *reward* of your improbity from me. I do not therefore consider myself to be ° too richly *rewarded* for my great<sup>1</sup> labour. What therefore ° did Caius ° do? did not<sup>3</sup> he' receive from you the *reward* of his crimes?<sup>3</sup> I shall not therefore place much reliance on your *promises*. I know that you favour me: I will not therefore bind you by an *oath*. Caius would not have fallen into so great<sup>1</sup> a *calamity*<sup>2</sup> unless he had ceased to be in *favor* with you. There is hardly any thing which does not admit of the *excuse* of ignorance.

<sup>1</sup> Say: 'for my so-great labour.'      <sup>2</sup> Ask the question with *non*, which is often used for *nonne* in vehement interrogations.      <sup>3</sup> See Död. *delictum*.

### § 17. Comparatives, &c.

106. In comparisons with *quam*, both the substantives connected by *quam* often precede the comparative.

1. Adventus hostium fuit *agris*, quam *urbi*, *terribilior*. L.—2. Maris *subita tempestas*, quam *ante provisa*, terret navigantes *vehementius*. C.—3. Ex multis judicari potest *virtutis* esse, quam *atatis*, cursum *celeriores*. C.—4. *Themistoclis* nomen, quam *Solonis*, est *illustrius*. C.—5. Pompejus fuit *restituendi mei*, quam *retinendi*, *studiosior*. C.—6. *Facere*, quam *sanare*, vulnera *facilius* est. Q.

107. A vocative is inserted after some words of the sentence.

*Quum in omnibus causis gravibus, C. Cæsar, initio dicendi commoveri so-  
leam vehementius. C.*

108. *Inquam* also is inserted after some words; as *ait* is, when not followed by an *infin.* or *sic, ita, &c.*

1. *Te, inquit, Appi, tuumque caput, &c. L.*—2. *Hoc te uno quo possum, ait modo, fillia, in libertatem vindico. L.*

109. If *inquam* has a nom., the verb generally stands first.

110. So with *ut ait*; *ut narrat*; &c., the verb precedes its nominative.

1. *Sed dum palato quid sit optimum judicat, cœli, palatum (ut ait Ennius) non suspexit. C.*—2. *Pacideianus aliquis hoc animo, ut narrat Lucilius, &c.*

111. So *mihî crede* (usually in this order), *credo, opinor, puto, existimo*, (all four with or without *ut*,) *quæso, obsecro*, are often thrown parenthetically into the middle of a sentence.

1. *Rubeo, mihî crede, sed jam scripseram. C.*—2. *Tranquillatis autem rebus Romanis, remigravit Romam, ut opinor, L. Cottâ et L. Torquato Coss.*—3. *Nolite, obsecro vos, pati, mihî acerbiozem reditum esse, quam fuerit, ille ipse discessus. C.*

OBS. *Crede mihî* is by no means uncommon in Cicero: the 'believe' is then emphatic. Thus, *Jam enim dico meum; antea, crede mihî, subdubitabam.*—*Cic. ad Att.* xiv. 5, 2. *Crede* may then stand at the head of its clause; as, *Crede, igitur mihî, Plance, omnes, &c.*—*Cic. Fam.* x. 6.

### Exercise 20.

112. It is easier to tie a *knot*, than to untie it. °My return was more bitter to me, than that departure itself.° Lucilius was honoured with a more splendid *funeral* than Demetrius. The Boii fled to °their camp in more complete disorder than the Ædui. It is easier to make a *promise* than to perform it. Is it not sometimes¹ a harder °thing to perform a *promise* than to make it? You ought to blush (111) believe me; for you have wrested these things from my *hands*. Do not, I beseech you, allow this lucky opportunity to slip through your *fingers*.² These things, as I imagine, would not be in our *power*,³ if you had not let this lucky opportunity slip through your *fingers*.³ Terroui,



as Ennius says, banishes<sup>1</sup> all<sup>2</sup> wisdom<sup>3</sup> from my mind. Separate<sup>4</sup> yourself at length,<sup>5</sup> I beseech °y o u, from those, with whom not your °o w n judgment, but the *circumstances* of the times have united<sup>6</sup> you.

<sup>1</sup> *Rarius interdum quam nonnunquam esse memento.*

<sup>2</sup> See HAND.

<sup>3</sup> *quid mihi ex animo expectorare.* For *ex animo* others read *exanimato* Terror, pavor.

<sup>4</sup> *sejungere.*

<sup>5</sup> *allouando.*

<sup>6</sup> *conjungere.*

## EXPLANATION OF MARKS, &c.

---

Words in [ ] are to be omitted in translation.<sup>1</sup>

- ¶ Words in italics, to which this mark is prefixed, are to stand at the head of their clause. If the word that follows || is not in italics, the mark applies to that word only.
- \* This mark denotes, that the word to which it is prefixed is to be looked for in the Extracts from the 'Antibarbarus,' appended to the volume.
- ‡ This mark means, that the clause to which it is prefixed is to precede the whole or part of that which stands before it in English.
- † This mark means, that the *active* voice is to be turned into the *passive*, or *vices versâ*.

Numerals followed by a curve refer to the Cautions at the end of the volume.

Numerals without a curve refer to the Differences of Idiom at the end of the volume.

C. and Df. refer, respectively, to the Cautions and Differences of Idiom in Practical Introduction, Part I.

V. M refer to the *Versus Memoriales* at the end of the volume.

M. L. refer to the *Memorial Lines* at the end of the volume.

☞ Numerical references in the notes refer to the First Part of the 'Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition.'

☞ Words in the notes marked by single inverted commas, are the *literal* translation of the Latin to be used.

---

<sup>1</sup> In the first five Exercises, words to be omitted are marked by ° prefixed to words in spaced printing.



# PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION

TO

## LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.

---

### II.

#### LONGER LATIN EXERCISES.

(On connecting propositions by the relative pronoun, where in English we should use a demonstrative.)

1. PROPOSITIONS are in Latin often connected by the relative *qui, quæ, quod*, where in English we should use *and, for, but*, *now*, &c., with the demonstrative.

2. (a) Nam et prætor pedestribus exercitibus præfuit, et præfectus classis res magnas mari gessit. *Quas ob causas* (= *atque ob eas causas*, 'and for these reasons') præcipuus ei honos est habitus.

(b) Namque omnibus unus insulis præfuit. *In quâ* (= *nam in eâ*) potestate Pheras cepit, coloniamque Lacedæmoniorum. (*Nep.* ix. 1.)

3. The relative in these propositions is equivalent to the unemphatic *is, ea, id*, with *et, autem, igitur*; or even *nam, tamen, sed, vero*. If the demonstrative pronoun required is the more strongly demonstrative *hic, ille*, or even if there would be any emphasis on '*is*,' the relative must not be used: nor if the conjunction would be emphatic, e. g. *itaque, ergo, at, verum, nempe, nimirum*, &c.

4. Whether *is* should be retained, or this construction with the relative used, depends on various considerations. Thus in Cic. Cluent. 7: *Postremo unus, qui erat reliquus Dineæ filius Cn. Magius est mortuus. Is fecit heredem illum adolescentem Oppianicum*. Here the '*is*' is retained because a *qui* had so lately preceded.

5. The connection by the relative is very often used, when there is a dependent or subordinate sentence, which is then placed immediately after the relative: hence this *qui* very often precedes a *quum, postquam, ut, ubi*.

6. Reddita inclusarum ex speluncâ boum vox Herculem convertit. *Quem quum* vadentem ad speluncam Cacus vi prohibere conatus esset, ictus clavâ fidem pastorum nequidquam invocans morte occubuit. (*Liv.*)

7. When an English relative clause is followed by a subordinate clause containing a demonstrative, or has such a clause inserted in it, the *relative* is, in Latin, placed in this *subordinate* clause (which then stands first), and either '*is*' is used in the other clause or (if the pronoun is in the same case in both clauses) the pronoun is omitted.

8. An example or two will make this clear.

(a) 'A man (*whom* I should have spoken to), (*if* I had seen *him*).'

In Latin this would be:

'A man (*whom* if I had seen), (I should have spoken to).'

(b) 'A man by *whose* treachery I should have been ruined, *if* I had not discovered *it* in time.'

In Latin:

'A man (*whose* treachery if I had not discovered in time), (I should have been ruined *by it*).'

(c) Thus instead of

'Non vident id se cupere, *quod* (si adepti sunt *id*) fugitivo alicui aut gladiatori concedi sit necesse,'

A Roman would have written:

'Non vident id se cupere, (*quod si* adepti sunt) fugitivo alicui aut gladiatori concedi sit necesse.' (*Cic.*)

9. Hence never write *qui, quum is, &c., qui, quum ejus, &c., qui, quum ei, &c.*; but *qui, quum — ; cujus quum — ; cui quum, &c.* So not *qui, si ejus, &c.*, but *cujus si, &c.*

### Exercise 1.

[See Pract. Intr. Part I. 441.]

Alexander died at Babylon, ° a man who, if *his* life had been a longer ° ~~one~~, would have subdued the whole world.\* Alexander died at Babylon, ° a man who, if a longer life had fallen-to-his-lot,° would have subdued the whole world. Alexander died at Babylon, ° a man who, if fate had kept° him alive ° for a longer ° time, would have subdued the whole world. Alexander died at Babylon, a man who, unless fate had taken from him his life prematurely,° would have subdued the whole world.—His death was the ruin of° all his fellow-citizens,° by whom he was slain° because he wished to save them. I have very often read that there is no evil° in death, ° for that if any sense remains

after it,<sup>1</sup> it ought to be considered immortality rather than death. The power<sup>1</sup> of conscience is great, *and* those who neglect *it*, betray<sup>k</sup> themselves. Philosophy contains the doctrine<sup>1</sup> both of duty and of morality :<sup>m</sup> those <sup>o</sup> t h e r e f o r e who profess *it* seem to me to support a very important character.† King Eucratides reduced India under his dominion,<sup>o</sup> but when he was returning thence,<sup>p</sup> was slain on his march by his son.

<sup>a</sup> *World* should not be translated by *mundus* except when the meaning is *universe*. When the earth or its countries are meant, *orbis terræ* or *terrarum* should be used; the latter especially when there is reference to different countries. <sup>b</sup> Should you use *contingit*, or *accidit*? <sup>c</sup> *reservare*. <sup>d</sup> *immature*. <sup>e</sup> *perdere*. <sup>f</sup> *civis*. <sup>g</sup> *Död. interficere*. <sup>h</sup> Part I. 161, *Obs.*, and end of 162. <sup>i</sup> 'in it.' The verb in the next clause should be subj., it being the speech or sentiment of the person or persons from whom the narrator had heard the opinion. Pt. I. 460 (b). <sup>j</sup> *vis*. <sup>k</sup> *indicare*. Express both *ipse* and *suus*. Pt. I. 368. <sup>l</sup> *disciplina*. <sup>m</sup> Say, 'of living well.' <sup>n</sup> *personam sustinere*. <sup>o</sup> *in potestatem redigere*. <sup>p</sup> Use *rel. adverb.*—*scilicet*.

### (On Rhetorical Figures.)

1. *Geminatio*, or the *doubling* of an emphatic word.

(a) *Crux, crux* inquam misero et ærumnoso parabatur. (C.)

2. *Repetitio* (ἐπανάφορά), when several clauses or members of a sentence begin with the same word.

(a) *Nihilne* te nocturnam præsidium Palatii, *nihil* urbis vigilæ, *nihil* timor populi, *nihil* consensus bonorum omnium, *nihil* hic munitissimus habendi senatus locus, *nihil* horum ora vultusque moverunt? (C.)

3. *Conversio* (ἀντιστροφή), when several clauses or members of a sentence end with the same word.

(a) *Urbis vigilæ nihil* te moverunt, *timor populi nihil*, *consensus bonorum omnium nihil*, &c.

4. *Complexio* is when several clauses or members of a sentence both begin with the same word and end with the same word.

(a) *Quis* legem tulit? *Rullus*. *Quis* majorem partem populi suffragiis prohibuit? *Rullus*. *Quis* comitiis præfuit? *Rullus*. *Quis* decemviros quos voluit renuntiavit? *Rullus*. (C.)

5. *Traductio*, when a word occurring in a clause, occurs again (intentionally and as an ornament) in one or more subsequent clauses.

(a) Eum tu *hominem* appellas, qui si fuisset *homo*, nunquam tam crudeliter vitam *hominis* petisset.

(b) Qui nihil habet in *vita* jucundius *vita*, is cum virtute *vitam* non potest tollere. (C.)

6. *Polysyndeton* (πολυσύνδετον), the using many conjunctions, i. e. one between each pair of words or notions.

(a) Et inimico proderas, et amicum lædebas, et tibi ipsi non consulebas. (C.)

7. *Annominatio* (παρονομασία) is the antithesis of words of nearly the same sound.

(a) —ut eum non facile non modo extra *lectum*, sed ne extra *lectum* quidem quisquam videret. (C.)

(b) Hanc reipublicæ pestem non paulisper *reprimi*, sed in perpetuum *comprimi volo*. (C.)

(c) Expetenda magis est *decernendi* ratio, quam *decertandi* fortuna. (C.)

8. *Ὁμοιόπτωτον*, when the members of a sentence are of parallel construction, having the same cases, or the same persons of the same tense. When they end with the corresponding case or tense, it makes *ὁμοιοτέλειον*.—Both occur in the following example :

(a) Vicit pudorem libido, timorem audacia, rationem amentia. (C.)

9. *Ἰσόκωλον*, when the clauses are very nearly of equal length.

(a) Alii fortuna felicitatem dedit : huic Industria virtutem comparavit.

10. *Ἀντίθετον* (antithesis) requires this *equality of length* in the antithetical portions.

(a) Est igitur hæc, iudices, non scripta sed nata lex ; quam non didicimus, accepimus, legimus, verum ex naturâ ipsâ arripuimus, hausimus, expressimus ; ad quam non docti, sed facti, non imbuti, sed instituti sumus ut, &c. (C.)

11. *Commutatio* (ἀντιμεταβολή) is when the antithesis consists in the *conversion* of a proposition.

(a) Quia stultus es, eâ re taces ; non tamen quia taces, eâ re stultus es : si poema loquens pictura est, pictura tacitum poema debet esse :

12. *Regressio* (ἐπανοδός) is when this kind of conversion is a conversion of a part only of a proposition.

(a) Ut eloquentium juris peritissimus Crassus, juris peritorum eloquentissimus Scævola haberetur. (C.)

13. *Gradatio* (κλίμαξ) is the mounting up as it were from one word to another, the preceding word being repeated.

(a) Imperium Græciæ fuit penes Athenienses : Atheniensium potiti sunt

*Spartatæ; Spartiatus superavere Thebani; Thebanos Macedônes vicērunt, qui imperium Græciæ brevi tempore adjunxerunt Asiam bello subactam. (Ad Herenn.)*

14. *Ἀποσιώπησις* is the purposely breaking off the discourse and suppressing a statement one was about to make.

(a) De nostro enim omnium—non audeo totum dicere. (C.)

15. *Dissolutio* (*ἀσύνδετον*), the omission of the copulative conjunction.

(c) Qui indicabantur, eos vocari, custodiri, ad senatum adduci jussit. (C.)

16. *Correctio* (*ἐπανόρθωσις*) is the correcting an expression previously used.

(a) Hic tamen vivit. Vivit? immo vero etiam in Senatum venit. (C.)

17. *Dubitatio* is the purposely expressing a doubt; under which intentional forgetting and remembering may be reckoned.

(a) Tu istud ausus es dicere, homo omnium mortalium—nam quo te digno moribus tuis appellem nomine? (C.) (Here is also *aposiopesis*.)

## *Exercise 2. (On Rhetorical Figures.)*

*(Litteris delector.)*

[GEMINATIO.] Literature, literature alone, I say, delights<sup>a</sup> me, [REPETITIO.] Literature nourished me when a boy; literature preserved me when a young man<sup>b</sup> from the infamy of lust: literature assisted me when I was a man, in the administration<sup>c</sup> of the republic: literature will comfort the weakness of my old age.<sup>d</sup> [CONVERSIO.] Literature delights us with the most dignified<sup>e</sup> pleasure; it delights us with the discovery of what is new; it delights us with the most certain hope of immortality. [COMPLEXIO.] Do you think him<sup>f</sup> a bad citizen, who is delighted with literature? who is delighted with the discovery of truth? who is delighted with the diffusion of learning? [TRADUCTIO.] What do you mean? Are you<sup>g</sup> delighted with literature, who hate what is the foundation (pl.) of all literature? [POLYSYNDETON.] Literature both instructs, and delights, and adorns, and consoles. [*ὁμοιοπύκτων, ὁμοιοτέλειον*.] Do you think it possible, that one who is devoted to the pursuit of literature, should be bound by the chains of lust? [*Ἀντιθέτον*.] Do you, who say that you are delighted with literature, allow yourself to be en



tangled by pleasure? [*Ἀντιμεταβολή.*] I do not cultivate literature because I am delighted with it, but am delighted with it because I cultivate it. [GRADATIO.] The pursuit of literature has acquired for me learning: learning ° has acquired for me glory: glory ° has drawn upon me envy and malevolent depreciation. [APOSIOPESIS.] What? do you: do you charge me' with this, ° a man who have never in my life pursued<sup>c</sup> any thing but virtue and learning?—What you have pursued——; but I am silent, lest I should seem to have brought against you a railing-accusation.<sup>a</sup> [*Ἀσύνθετον.*] What shall I say about the use of literature? it instructs, adorns, delights, ° and comforts ° a man. [CORRECTIO.] Literature delights me: why do I say delights? nay,<sup>i</sup> it comforts me, and affords me my only refuge from these annoyances of my laborious life! [DUBITATIO.] Literature instructs, or delights, or comforts me; for which of these words I should use rather than the others, I do not know.

<sup>a</sup> oblectare. Comp. Dōd. oblectatio.      <sup>b</sup> Dōd. puer.      <sup>c</sup> 359.      <sup>d</sup> Dōd. vetus (2).      <sup>e</sup> honestissimus.      <sup>f</sup> 'of new things.' Should 'things' be expressed? C. 5.      <sup>g</sup> expetere. 483, (2).      <sup>h</sup> convicium facere.      <sup>i</sup> immo nero.      <sup>j</sup> 'amongst.'

### Exercise 3.

Pausanias tells ° us in his book on Attica<sup>a</sup>, that the Athenians, having been praised<sup>b</sup> by Pindar in one of his Odes<sup>c</sup>, set so high a value<sup>d</sup> upon the testimony of that<sup>e</sup> great and sublime poet, that they not only<sup>f</sup> sent him many presents in return<sup>g</sup> for it, but also raised<sup>h</sup> a statue<sup>i</sup> to his honour<sup>k</sup> at Athens. No wonder<sup>l</sup>, that in those times there were many great poets, when<sup>m</sup> those who were endowed with the poetic faculty<sup>n</sup> both received ° the most magnificent presents, and were rewarded<sup>q</sup> with the most splendid honours.

<sup>a</sup> Attica, orum.      <sup>b</sup> 'because (I. 516) they had been praised.' Since this clause is here quoted from Pausanias, in what mood should the verb stand? Why? (I. 460, a.)      <sup>c</sup> 'In a certain ode' (carmen). When 'a certain' means a particular one that we do not, however, think it necessary to name, it should be translated by *quidam*. When *certus* is so used, it implies that one has good reasons for not being more explicit: *Quoties ego eum et quanto cum dolore vidi insolentiam certorum hominum—extimescentem* (Cic. Marc. 6.) A practical rule may be, not to use *certus*, unless the meaning is, 'a certain one,—you know pretty well which (or whom) I mean'      <sup>d</sup> 'To set a high value on,' *magni fa*

**EXERCISE 4.** Adapt this phrase to mean, 'so high a value.' \* Which pronoun should be used for the 'that' of celebrity? (I. 381, b.) † Not only—but also; here simply, *et—et* (both—and). ‡ *ob.* § To place or erect (a statue), *simulacrum* or *statuam ponere, locare, statuere*, or (*Nep.*) *constituere*. ¶ What words express whole-length sculptured images? With what distinction? (Dödl. § *nago.*) † 'to him.' † This imperfect sentence must be completed: 'it is not therefore wonderful:' for 'that' use 'if,' *si.* † 'When.' Does the 'when' do more than simply date the time? (See I. 489.) † *ed facultate.* \* *received—and were rewarded.* Of two connected verbs having the same nominative case, it is better, as a general rule, that they should both be in the same voice. Alter this accordingly, by turning *received* into the passive voice: this must be done by choosing such a phrase as 'to be loaded, presented, &c., with gifts.' † *honoribus mactari* (*Cic.*) On the derivation of this word see Part I. p. 103. (278, a) and note †.

### Exercise 4.

To destroy<sup>1</sup> the credit<sup>a</sup> of Socrates's speech, and cause the judges to listen to it with suspicion,<sup>b</sup> his || accusers<sup>c</sup> had warned them beforehand<sup>d</sup> to be on their guard,<sup>e</sup> ° telling<sup>f</sup> them that he was very powerful<sup>g</sup> in speaking, and possessed such<sup>h</sup> ability<sup>i</sup> and dexterity, that he could make the worse cause ° appear the better.

<sup>a</sup> To destroy the credit of any thing; prevent it from being believed; *alicui, or alicui rei, fidem derogare* or *abrogare.* <sup>b</sup> 'render it suspected to the judges.' <sup>c</sup> *Oss.* When an English sentence begins with a secondary clause, and a word which occurs in the principal clause occurs also in this, it is better to begin with such a portion of the principal clause as will contain this word, and then use a pronoun for it in the secondary clause. Thus, instead of 'Socrates's speech,'—'his accusers,' let it be: 'the accusers of Socrates,' and—'his speech;' placing 'the accusers of Socrates' first. <sup>d</sup> To warn beforehand, *præmonere.* (I. 75.) <sup>e</sup> To be on one's guard, *sibi cavere.* (I. 460, c, 1.) Express a 'for.' <sup>f</sup> To be very powerful, *plurimum posse.* <sup>g</sup> Such, *is, ea, id:* repeat it before 'dexterity,' *calliditas.* <sup>h</sup> *vis.*

### Exercise 5.

[(*p*) prefixed means that the verb is to be turned into a participle: (*r*) after a word, that the rel. pronoun is to be used.]

Peribœa, or Phylonome,<sup>a</sup> as others call her, being rejected with disdain,<sup>b</sup> accused<sup>c</sup> Tennes to<sup>d</sup> his father, in exactly<sup>e</sup> the same manner as Phædra ° accused Hippolytus. The credulous father (*p*) shut up his son in<sup>f</sup> a chest, ° and cast him into the sea. Neptune || came to the assistance<sup>g</sup> of his innocent grandson; and the chest floated<sup>h</sup> to the island of<sup>i</sup> Leucophrys. When

the inhabitants of the island opened<sup>a</sup> it (*r*), and learned what had happened,<sup>1</sup> they not only offered Tennes the throne,<sup>m</sup> but even named the island Tenedos after him.<sup>n</sup> Nay, they even<sup>o</sup> worshipped him as a god<sup>o</sup> after his (*p*) death.

<sup>a</sup> Since it is *left doubtful* which was her right name, what word should be used for 'or?' (Pt. I. p. 161, note a.) <sup>b</sup> 'being rejected and refused.' Take the word for 'refuse,' that means to refuse a *pleasure*, whether a *sinful* one or not. Död. *negare* (end). <sup>c</sup> Which is the best word for to accuse falsely? (I. 201.) <sup>d</sup> *apud*. <sup>e</sup> *plane*. C. 9. <sup>f</sup> *includere*, implying to put into, and there shut up, often takes the acc. with *in*: but also the abl. *Antonius armatos in cellâ Concordiæ inclusit*.—*pene orationem in epistolam* inclusi: *includere aliquem in custodias*. (Cic.) <sup>g</sup> *ferre opem*. <sup>h</sup> *deferri* (ad). I. 140. I. 489. <sup>i</sup> Död. *aperire*. <sup>j</sup> *res*. <sup>k</sup> To offer any body the throne, *deferre regnum alicui*. <sup>l</sup> 'from (*de*) his own name.' <sup>m</sup> Nay—even: *quin et*.

### Exercise 6.

When<sup>a</sup> Ulysses, according to fabulous history,<sup>b</sup> might have lived<sup>c</sup> with<sup>d</sup> Calypso<sup>e</sup> in all [possible] luxury, he yet preferred<sup>f</sup> even to immortality that<sup>g</sup> rough and rocky country [of his]: (*p*) which he would [surely] not have done,<sup>h</sup> if he had approved-of<sup>i</sup> that opinion<sup>k</sup> of Teucer's, [that] 'every man's<sup>l</sup> country is<sup>m</sup> wherever he is<sup>n</sup> well off.'<sup>o</sup>

<sup>a</sup> Not, *quum Ulysses*, but *Ulysses, quum*, &c. I. 489. <sup>b</sup> 'as it is in the fables.' <sup>c</sup> I. 128, 130. <sup>d</sup> *apud*. <sup>e</sup> 'Feminines in *o* (as *echo, Calypso, Dido, Sappho*) have generally the Greek gen. in *us* (*echus, Didus, Sapphus*), the Latin gen. *onis* being less common. The dat. and acc. end in *o*, or in *oni, onem* respectively.' (Zumpt.) Ramshorn adds, that Cæsar preferred the regular Latin declension, *onis, oni, onem, one*. <sup>f</sup> I. 227. <sup>g</sup> I. 381 (*b*). <sup>h</sup> *non ita facturus*. <sup>i</sup> I. 441. <sup>j</sup> Död. *sententia*. <sup>k</sup> *quisque* <sup>l</sup> I. 460 (*a*). <sup>m</sup> I. 460 (*b*). <sup>n</sup> 'I am well off,' *bene est mihi*.

### Exercise 7.

Xenophon has given us a very<sup>a</sup> sound<sup>b</sup> opinion<sup>c</sup> of Gobryas's, and [one] which every day's<sup>d</sup> experience<sup>e</sup> confirms,<sup>f</sup> namely,<sup>g</sup> 'that it is more difficult to find<sup>h</sup> men who [bear] prosperity [well], than [men] who bear adversity well.' For in prosperity a great many<sup>i</sup> men grow insolent,<sup>k</sup> and are puffed up [with pride]: but in adversity all are recalled to temperance and moderation.

<sup>a</sup> *Admodum* (ad-modum, 'to a degree') is 'very' with adjectives, participles and adverbs. <sup>b</sup> *gravis* (weighty). <sup>c</sup> Död. *sententia*. <sup>d</sup> Adj. *quo*

*tidianus*; but see the next note. \* *Experientia* in the best prose writers is *trial*: 'knowledge gained by experience' is *usus*, or *usus rerum*; *res*; *tempus*, &c. [in Tac. also *experientia*.] Hence *experientia docet*, and the like, should not be used, but *tempus* or *rerum usus docet*. With *rerum usus* the adj. *quotidianus* should be left out. [Virgil has '*apibus quanta experientia parcis*.' *Geor.* i. 4.] † 'declares to be true.' § *videlicet* as the second word.

‡ Diff. 93. Död. *invenire*. † Död. *plerique*. \* *Inolescere* was used by Sallust (after the old Cato), and was followed by Tacitus and Justin: it is better, however, to use *insolentem fieri*; *se insolenter efferre* or *gerere*, &c. (Krebs.)

### Exercise 8.

#### (On the Theogony of Hesiod.)

Of all<sup>a</sup> the remains<sup>b</sup> of Greek literature that are now extant,<sup>c</sup> none in my opinion<sup>d</sup> is more remarkable than the Theogony<sup>e</sup> of Hesiod. For although || *this poem* cannot<sup>f</sup> be compared to the works of Homer and other famous poets in size, or in the magnificence of its subject,<sup>h</sup> and of its *particular portions*,<sup>i</sup> or in the variety and beauty of its diction, yet it has another recommendation, and that<sup>k</sup> [one] peculiar [to itself], [so] that on this ground<sup>l</sup> it appears even to *deserve the preference*<sup>m</sup> over those poems.<sup>n</sup>

<sup>b</sup> 'All—which' is expressed strongly by using *quotquot* instead of the simple relative. (For 'of' see I. 165, h.) <sup>b</sup> *monumenta*. <sup>c</sup> *superesse*: 'now,' *hodie*. <sup>d</sup> Död. *sententia*. <sup>e</sup> *Theogonia*. <sup>f</sup> Relative pron. <sup>g</sup> Omit 'not:' using *neque—neque* with the ablatives. <sup>h</sup> *argumentum*. <sup>i</sup> *res*, pl. <sup>k</sup> I. 395. <sup>l</sup> *causa*. <sup>m</sup> 'to be to-be-preferred.' part. in *dus*. <sup>n</sup> Greek neuter plurals in *a* make dat. and abl. in *is*, not *ibus*. *poemata*, *poematum*, *poematis* (not *poematibus*).

+

### Exercise 9.

That<sup>a</sup> ancient philosopher, whom Hesiod followed, said that first of all Chaos existed: by<sup>b</sup> which he meant, not, as very many<sup>c</sup> subsequent<sup>d</sup> [authors], a rude and undigested mass<sup>e</sup> of matter, but [according] to the proper meaning<sup>f</sup> of the word, 'SPACE' in which no matter is contained.<sup>g</sup> For he says that 'MATTER' was not created till afterwards.<sup>h</sup> To Chaos he added a connective<sup>i</sup> power, because without such a power<sup>j</sup> MATTER would have lain inactive, and nothing<sup>k</sup> would have been created.

<sup>a</sup> I. 391, b. <sup>b</sup> In this idiom the acc. is used in Latin. Thus: 'whom do you understand (or mean) by a wise man?' *quem tu intelligis* (or *intelligi vis sapientem*?) <sup>c</sup> Död. *plerique*. <sup>d</sup> Simply *postea*. <sup>e</sup> (See the first lines of Ovid's *Metamorphoses*.) <sup>f</sup> *significatio*. <sup>g</sup> 'which is empty'

(*vacuus*) of all matter.'    *h copulatrix, icis.*    'Where we repeat the substantive in this way, the Romans (being richer in demonstrative pronouns than we are, and able to give them more prominence) generally used a pronoun only. So also when we use *another* substantive with '*such*,' or a demonstrative pronoun, in reference to a preceding substantive. Thus if '*this prince*' were used in reference to '*Alexander*' which had been mentioned in a preceding sentence, it would be better to leave the word '*prince*' untranslated, and say '*for he*.'    'nor any thing.' What word for *any* (thing)? Pt. I. § 50 p. 137.

### Exercise 10.

1. With<sup>a</sup> the ancient philosophers it is an intricate<sup>b</sup> and perplexed<sup>c</sup> inquiry, whether the soul remains<sup>d</sup> (*p*) when it is freed from the chains of the body, or whether *the death of our bodies is also the death of our souls.*<sup>e</sup> Epicurus thinks that our souls perish, deeming it wrong<sup>f</sup> that, *having so many points of agreement with swine,*<sup>g</sup> he should differ from them *in this single respect.*<sup>h</sup>

2. The Stoics allow<sup>i</sup> to them a long life, as [they do also] to crows, but not an eternal<sup>j</sup> one. But Pythagoras is indeed a pleasant [personage], for he teaches, that they remain indeed [alive], but migrate from [their own] bodies into others, so that he<sup>k</sup> may perchance<sup>k</sup> be a cock to-day, who in the time of the Trojan war was<sup>l</sup> Agamemnon.

1. <sup>a</sup> *Apud.*    <sup>b</sup> *perturbatus.*    <sup>c</sup> *implicatus.*    <sup>d</sup> *permanere.*    <sup>e</sup> 'whether that] which [is the death] of [our] bodies is also (I. 387) the death of [our] souls.' *nefas.*    <sup>f</sup> 'since (*quum*, I. 489) so many things agree to him (I. 370) with swine.'    <sup>g</sup> 'by this one thing.'

2. <sup>i</sup> *tribuere.*    <sup>j</sup> *Död. continuus.*    <sup>k</sup> *Forte* is '*accidentally*,' except after *et, nisi, num, nē, ecquid*, where it is the regular word for '*perchance*.' Here use *fortasse.*    <sup>l</sup> 'had been.'

### Exercise 11.

1. I am well again!<sup>a</sup> I know for a certainty,<sup>b</sup> that I could not find<sup>c</sup> a beginning<sup>d</sup> for my letter [that would be] more agreeable to you || *than this, or one that you would more desire to receive.*<sup>e</sup> [My disease] was a tertian fever, *like that which<sup>f</sup> you cured for me<sup>g</sup> three years ago<sup>h</sup>* at Ferrara:<sup>i</sup> except that<sup>j</sup> this was [of] a milder<sup>j</sup> [character.]

2. Accordingly it left me<sup>k</sup> on the eighth day *after my seizure.*<sup>l</sup> I was cured not only by medicine,<sup>m</sup> but also by bleeding,<sup>n</sup> by<sup>o</sup> the advice of my [friend] Angelus Justinianus, who not only pre-

scribed<sup>2</sup> for me himself, but also made up<sup>3</sup> a great part of the medicines with his own hand.

1. \* *Convalescere*. By what tense should '*I am well*' be translated? b 'certainly.' Both *certe scio* and *certo scio* occur. The difference is thus given by Hand: *certe scio* means, '*it is certain that I know*;' *certo scio*, '*I have a certain knowledge of the thing stated*.' Which should be used here? c Död. *invenire*. d *principium*. \* more wished (*optatus*) by you. f *qualis*. \* 'drove away from me,' *febrim abigere, disculere*. h *Ferraria*. i *nin quod*. j 'Mild,' *mitis et remissus*.

2. \* 'A fever leaves anybody,' *decedit*. (C): *ab aliquo discedit*. Krebs warns against *reliquit* or *deseruit quem*. Doletus quotes *a febre relinqui* from Cic. ad Att., but I cannot find the passage. l 'After it had seized me,' *corripere*. (Pt. I. p. 114, 310, note \*.) m *medicamenta*, pl. n *missio sanguinis*. o *de*. p 'To prescribe' (of a physician), *remedia, medicamenta, &c., præscribere, præscribere* (Cels.); *præscribere*, or *morbo proponere* (Nep.). q Muretus uses *conficere ac concinnare* (of which the latter is not found in Cicero); better *parare* (Cic.). Columella has *componere*, Curtius *in poculo diluere*, which of course expresses only a particular kind of preparation. \*

### Exercise 12.

1. When *it was the general opinion*,<sup>a</sup> that a brave man should<sup>b</sup> die by his own hands<sup>c</sup> rather than endure<sup>d</sup> any<sup>e</sup> great and bitter evil, Aristotle wisely perceived that the opinion<sup>f</sup> was false; [and] asserted,<sup>g</sup> that they who acted thus, *far from being considered brave, should be looked-upon*<sup>h</sup> as cowards,<sup>i</sup> and men of a mean and abject spirit.

2. For such men prove<sup>j</sup> that they are not able to endure what they fly from, *and are too weak to support the calamity*,<sup>k</sup> on account of which they give up their lives. Now<sup>l</sup> this argues effeminacy,<sup>m</sup> rather than any greatness of soul.

1. \* 'it was commonly ( *vulgo*) believed.' b I. 191. c 'To die by one's own hands,' *necem or mortem sibi consciscere, mortem or vim sibi inferre; manus sibi afferre, &c.*† d Död. *ferre*: choose the verb that means 'to endure heroically.' e I. 392. f 'that that opinion of men.' g *pronuntiare*. h 'were not only not [to-be-considered] brave, but [were] to-be-considered cowards,' &c. i *Non modo* is sometimes used for *non modo non*, but only

\* Scribon. Larg. has *temperare*.

† *se interficere, se occidere*, are generally rejected; but they *do* occur, though less commonly, (1) *se ipsum interficere* (Sulpicius in Cic. Epp. Fam. 4, 12. 2): *Crassum suapte manu interfectum*, Cic. Or. 3, 3, 10; and Liv. 31, 18, 7, *qui ipsi interficiunt*. (2) Quintil. (5, 10, 69) quotes from a lost oration of Cicero's, *cum ipse sese conaretur occidere*. (Krebs.)

when the following clause is negative, or equivalent to a *negative*, and both clauses have a common verb expressed in the second. Thus

Not only not — but not even; or, but scarcely.

*non modo* — { *sed ne—quidem*,  
                          *sed vir*.

Should the 'not' be inserted or omitted here? *ignarus*. (Död. p. 234, 4.

2. *docere*. This passage in the original is given as a statement by the writer and therefore in the indicative. It will be a useful exercise to translate it both ways: i. e. first as the writer's opinion, and then as *Aristotle's view stated by the writer*, and therefore in *orat. obliq.* (See I. 460.) \* 'and not (*neque*) equal to bearing that calamity,' &c. Should *equal* be translated by *æquus*, *æqualis*, or *par*? (Död. *æquus*.) *autem*. <sup>m</sup> 'an effeminate weakness' (*mollities*) of soul.'

### Exercise 13.

It is an acknowledged fact, that || Cicero in his Orations borrowed much from the Greek orators: and that, *besides being*<sup>a</sup> an eager<sup>b</sup> and diligent imitator of the artifices,<sup>c</sup> which he perceived<sup>d</sup> them to have employed<sup>e</sup> for<sup>f</sup> moving<sup>g</sup> and governing the minds of their hearers, he not seldom transferred whole enthymemes<sup>h</sup> of theirs to his own orations.

<sup>a</sup> 'and not (*neque*) only was—but also introduced.'

<sup>b</sup> *acer*.

<sup>c</sup> *sing.*

<sup>d</sup> i. e. not of any particular artifice or artifices, but *indefinitely*, such as he observed in them. What mood should be used? I. 475, 476.

<sup>e</sup> *uti*.

<sup>f</sup> *in*.

<sup>g</sup> *versari*.

<sup>h</sup> *enthymema, atis*.

### Exercise 14.

1. Oh [this] sad and bitter<sup>a</sup> news about the King of Navarre!<sup>b</sup> We had indeed heard it (*r*) here from others; but<sup>c</sup> nevertheless were supported by some hope, till your letters arrived.<sup>d</sup> I (*p*) received both of them yesterday evening,<sup>e</sup> and communicated [their contents] to all our [friends]: nor was there *one amongst them*,<sup>f</sup> who did not *declare it as his firm belief*<sup>g</sup> that, when you' wrote *in such language*,<sup>h</sup> the recovery<sup>i</sup> of this excellent and religious prince must be quite *given up as hopeless*.<sup>j</sup>

2. I fear that in a few days we shall feel *to our sorrow*<sup>k</sup> what a blow [both] France and the cause of religion<sup>m</sup> have received by the death of this (*r*) [prince]. Behold, what fruits † are born<sup>n</sup> by civil wars! Miserable *France wanted but this one*<sup>o</sup> [*affliction*], to see<sup>1</sup> those old Theban calamities renewed in her own blood!

1. <sup>a</sup> 'sad' and bitter<sup>to us</sup>. (See p. 237, 20.)

<sup>b</sup> *Navarra*.

<sup>c</sup> 'which

although, &c.—yet.'      d 'To arrive' (of a letter), *afferri*, it being always brought to the receiver.—'Till' What mood? I. 507, 508.      e *heri vesperi* (yesterday in the evening).      f 'any (single one) of them.' I. 389, 390, 391  
 g 'To declare one's conviction' (or firm belief), *statuere* often with *sic* or *ita* *Ego autem sine ulla dubitatione sic statuo et judico, neminem*—*habuisse*, &c. (Cic. de Or. 2, 28, 122; *nisi hoc ita statuisses, te—facturum*.)      h *ita*.  
 i *salus*.      j 'that it could not be but that' (Diff. 20.) the recovery, &c.'  
 k 'To give a thing up as lost or hopeless,' *deplorare quid*.—the effect (*weeping*) for the cause (*a persuasion that the thing is hopeless* &c.). But this use, though found in Ovid, Livy, &c., does not occur in Cicero or Cæsar. Perhaps it is better therefore to use *desperare*, *desperatur quid* or (seld. in Cic.) *de aliquâ re*.  
 2. l 'with our great evil.'      m 'how great a blow France, how great [a blow] religion, &c., has received.'      n Active voice.—*fructus parère*.      o 'This one thing remained to—France,' &c.

## Exercise 15.

It is said by the ancient<sup>a</sup> poets, that there are in the ocean certain<sup>b</sup> islands, to which the souls of those who have *led a holy and religious life*<sup>c</sup> are borne after their death: that there they dwell together<sup>d</sup> most delightfully and pleasantly, in a<sup>e</sup> most beautiful<sup>f</sup> meadow, which is enamelled<sup>g</sup> with perpetual flowers: that the sun is ever bright<sup>h</sup> in that happy region,<sup>i</sup> the trees green, the flowers and herbs in bloom: that [there all nature:] smiles, and the gentlest zephyrs perpetually breathe, by whose fanning<sup>k</sup> the leaves of the trees (*p*) are softly stirred,<sup>l</sup> and delight<sup>m</sup> the ear with the softest [possible] murmur.

<sup>a</sup> Död. *antiquus*. The distinction at the bottom of the page (in Död.) should be translated thus: '*Antiqui scriptores* means the classics, inasmuch as the age in which they flourished has long been past; *veteres*, inasmuch as they have lived and influenced mankind for 2000 years.'

<sup>b</sup> 'Certain:' (Ex. 3, c.)  
<sup>c</sup> *sancte religioseque vivere*. Remember that this whole passage is a statement gathered from the poets: it is their doctrine, not the writer's. I. 460.

<sup>d</sup> *inter se*.      I. 393.      f 'What is the proper word for beautiful,' as applied to objects that please the sight? [I. 212, note v.]      g *distinguere* properly to relieve a surface by ornaments placed upon different parts of it.

<sup>h</sup> *nitet diffuso lumine cælum*. (Lucr.)      i 'there.'      j 'all [things].'

<sup>k</sup> *flabella*, pl.      l *ventilare*. *Ut cum purpurcas ventilat aura comas*. (Ovid.) Obs. The words and general character of this passage do not always belong to *sober prose*; but as it is a representation of *poetical* descriptions, this is perhaps permissible here.      m *blandiri*. What case?

## Exercise 16.

1. Ancient authors are not agreed<sup>a</sup> upon the reasons, why this



or that animal was sacrificed to this or that god. For some assert<sup>a</sup> that the favourite animal of each god was slain<sup>c</sup> before his altars; and thus the horse was the victim offered to Mars. And [on the other hand] *it was not lawful to offer a wild boar to Venus*,<sup>d</sup> ‡ because that animal<sup>b</sup> had killed Adonis.

2. Others [however] held<sup>a</sup> that a god was best pleased with the blood of the animal, ‡ which he<sup>b</sup> hated: that thus a cock<sup>c</sup> was sacrificed to NIGHT, because that bird seems<sup>d</sup> to be calling forth the day by its song, [and] driving away the night: [and] a goat to PALLAS, because [that animal] *inflicts great injury upon*<sup>e</sup> the olive-tree.

1. <sup>a</sup> 'We are not agreed,' non satis convenit inter nos (de aliquâ re). See Ex. 15, note a.) <sup>b</sup> 'To assert' is not *asserere*. <sup>c</sup> 'that the [animal] which was most acceptable (*gratus*) to each was wont to be slain,' &c. Relat. clause to precede. I. 31. <sup>d</sup> 'and because a wild-boar had, &c.— it was not-lawful (*nefas*), that sacrifice should be made (*rem divinam fieri*) to Venus with a wild-boar.'

2. <sup>a</sup> 'thought,' *putare*. <sup>c</sup> *gallus gallinaceus*. <sup>e</sup> The verbs *seems*—*infuse* express the *reasons alleged* by the holders of the opinion. Will this circumstance have any effect on the mood? If so, why? <sup>b</sup> *insigniter ledere* (Cic. *has insigniter diligere*.)

### Exercise 17.

If nothing<sup>a</sup> is sacred and religious, but what is without ornament, let gold be removed<sup>c</sup> from our temples; let jewels, images; and<sup>b</sup> pictures be removed, and, in a word, votive-offerings of every kind. But if *it is an impiety even to entertain such a thought as this*,<sup>e</sup> let us confess what common-sense<sup>d</sup> itself in a (393) manner teaches [us], that wealth is not<sup>c</sup> better employed *in any thing*<sup>f</sup> than in the worship of God, nor eloquence<sup>e</sup> better<sup>b</sup> than in refining<sup>d</sup> and beautifying philosophy.

<sup>a</sup> Dikl. *imago*. Choose the word that means 'any plastic work: in opposition to *tabula*, *pictura* (pictures). <sup>b</sup> Use the fig. *asyndeton*. 'in a word.' *denique*; 'votive-offerings,' *denaria*. (Liv.) <sup>c</sup> 'this is impious (*nefarius*) even to be thought.' *Cogitare*, which denotes the usual activity of the mind, which cannot exist without thinking or employing itself about something," is here the best word for a thought entering the head. <sup>d</sup> *ratio*. <sup>e</sup> *neque* — *neque* <sup>f</sup> 'any where.' *Usquam* follows the same rule as *ullus*, i. e. stands in negative and virtually negative sentences: *alicubi* and *usquam* answer respectively to *aliquis* and *quispiam*; *ubivis* to *quisvis*, *quilibet*. <sup>e</sup> *dicende* *copia*. <sup>a</sup> *proelarius*. <sup>c</sup> *excolere*.

## Exercise 18.

1. I should never have thought *it possible*<sup>a</sup> that I could derive pleasure,<sup>b</sup> I *will not say*<sup>c</sup> from your<sup>d</sup> grief, but from any<sup>d</sup> [man's]. And yet if the truth<sup>e</sup> must be spoken, I am obliged<sup>f</sup> to confess, that it was most gratifying<sup>g</sup> to me to learn<sup>h</sup> from your letter, that you were exceedingly<sup>i</sup> grieved, as soon<sup>j</sup> as the news of my illness<sup>k</sup> reached<sup>l</sup> you.<sup>m</sup>

2. For that grief could not arise *from any other source*,<sup>n</sup> than from your great<sup>o</sup> affection for me; and from [the time] that I first saw you, and heard from<sup>p</sup> very many others how *distinguished you were for learning and virtue*,<sup>q</sup> I have had no fonder wish<sup>r</sup> than to be loved<sup>s</sup> by<sup>t</sup> you.

1. <sup>a</sup> 'that it would be' (that I could derive, &c.)      <sup>b</sup> 'To derive or receive pleasure, pain, &c., from any thing,' *capere voluptatem, dolorem, &c., ex aliquâ re.*      <sup>c</sup> *non modo.*      <sup>d</sup> I. 389-391.      <sup>e</sup> 'the truth' must be translated by *vera* ('true things'), whenever the meaning is, '*what is true*,' '*true things*.' If a single thing is meant, the sing. *verum* may be used. *Veritas* is 'truth,' as an abstract notion.      <sup>f</sup> *necesse est.* I. 504 (1): take the second form.      <sup>g</sup> *gratissimus.*      <sup>h</sup> 'that (*quod*) I learnt.' *intelligere*, the notion being, of '*being made aware*.'      <sup>i</sup> *vehementer.*      <sup>j</sup> I. 512.      <sup>k</sup> *valetudo* ('state of health') or *infirmâ valetudo*. Cic. has two or three times *invalitudo*, but the reading is mostly doubtful.      <sup>l</sup> *afferri: allatum esse.*      <sup>m</sup> 'to where you are,' *istuc.* I. 387.

2. <sup>n</sup> 'from elsewhere,' *aliunde.*      <sup>o</sup> *eximius.*      <sup>p</sup> 'a man of what erudition and virtue you' were.'      <sup>q</sup> 'nothing has been more desirable (*optabilis*) to me.'      <sup>r</sup> I. 348.

## Exercise 19.

1. Socrates, in the<sup>d</sup> dialogue which is entitled<sup>a</sup> 'the first Alcibiades,' employed || a witty<sup>b</sup> and refined<sup>c</sup> artifice to check<sup>d</sup> the presumption<sup>e</sup> of Alcibiades. For whereas<sup>e</sup> the young man persuaded himself, *with the characteristic self-confidence of his age*,<sup>f</sup> that he was already abundantly furnished with *all the knowledge that a statesman required*,<sup>g</sup> Socrates (*p*) accosted him courteously, and *by proceeding from one question to another*,<sup>h</sup> made it plain *from his own answers*,<sup>i</sup> that he had as yet obtained<sup>j</sup> no knowledge<sup>k</sup> of justice and injustice.<sup>l</sup>

2. And when Alcibiades took it impatiently, and was indignant as considering<sup>m</sup> himself to be reproached with ignorance,<sup>n</sup> Socrates defended himself [from the charge], and asserted<sup>o</sup> that he<sup>p</sup> was

not saying any thing whatever<sup>a</sup> of that sort against him, [but] that it was Alcibiades himself, who was *making the confession*<sup>a</sup> about himself.

1. <sup>a</sup> *inscribi*.      <sup>b</sup> *urbanus*, which denotes refined and polished wit.  
<sup>c</sup> *elegans*. Cicero speaks of an *elegans jocandi genus*: 'to check,' *reprimere*.      <sup>d</sup> Död. *superbia*.      <sup>e</sup> *quum*. I. 489.      <sup>f</sup> 'which is wont to be the character (*ingenium*) of that age.' What is the word for *age* = '*time of life*?'      <sup>g</sup> 'with all those things which had reference (*pertinere*) to governing the state.' 'To govern,' *administrare*, of a statesman managing it under a sovereign power.      <sup>h</sup> 'by questioning step-by-step' (*paulatim*). Quintilian *nas paulatim et (ut dicitur) pedetentim interrogare*.      <sup>i</sup> 'brought him to that point, that it was plainly established by his own answers.' 'To bring any body to that point,' *aliquem eo perducere, ut*, &c. 'To be plainly established,' *aperte effici (ex)*.      <sup>j</sup> Död. *invenire*.      <sup>k</sup> Död. *cognitio*.  
<sup>l</sup> *justum, injustum*: not the abstract *justitia*, but that which is actually *just* or *unjust* in practice.

2. <sup>m</sup> 'because—he thought.' (On the mood after *quod*, see I. 518.)  
<sup>n</sup> 'not—any thing whatever,' *nihil prorsus*.      <sup>o</sup> *Fateri*. Translate '*descended*,' '*asserted*,' by the *historical present*. I. 414.

### Exercise 20.

1. How highly the Athenians valued<sup>a</sup> || *the poems of Homer*, and how useful they judged them to be for inflaming<sup>b</sup> [men's] minds with a love of honour<sup>c</sup> and worth,<sup>b</sup> may be perceived<sup>c</sup> from their having passed<sup>d</sup> a law, that<sup>e</sup> every<sup>e</sup> fifth year, at<sup>f</sup> the Panathenaic festival, the poems of *Homer*, and of none but *Homer*,<sup>g</sup> should be publicly recited.

2. For *their opinion was*,<sup>h</sup> that laws do indeed enjoin<sup>i</sup> what is to be done and [what] avoided, but that from their [necessary] brevity, they do not teach [this knowledge]; but that the poets, who, imitating human life, *give a copious narrative* of brave and noble actions, and almost<sup>k</sup> place them before [men's] eyes, are *better calculated*<sup>l</sup> to persuade [us to imitation].

1. <sup>a</sup> To value highly, *magni facere*. How must this be modified to express *how* highly?      <sup>b</sup> *dignitas* (= worth, virtue) as in Cic. *voluptatem concessuram dignitati*, &c.      <sup>c</sup> *existimare*.      <sup>d</sup> I. 75.      <sup>e</sup> I. p. 139, note *d*.      <sup>f</sup> Express the preposition 'in.' The Panathenaic festival, *Panathenaea* (sc. solemnity). Varr.      <sup>g</sup> 'of him alone out of the whole number of poets.'

2. <sup>h</sup> 'thus they thought.'      <sup>i</sup> Död. *jubere*.      <sup>j</sup> *copiose exponere*.      <sup>k</sup> *pro comodum*.      <sup>l</sup> *aptior* (ad aliquid faciendum).

## Exercise 21.

1. The Lacedæmonians paid a similar honour<sup>a</sup> to Tyrtæus. For though in general<sup>b</sup> they were indisposed<sup>c</sup> to poetic studies, and not<sup>d</sup> fond<sup>e</sup> of listening to the strains of poets, they nevertheless had passed a law,<sup>f</sup> that whenever<sup>g</sup> an army [of theirs] *was drawn up for a general engagement*,<sup>h</sup> the soldiers should be summoned to the royal tent, and there *\*inspired with a contempt<sup>i</sup> of death in their country's cause*,<sup>j</sup> ‡ by listening to the poems of Tyrtæus.

2. To Æschylus, too, nearly the same honour was paid<sup>a</sup> by the Athenian people; for it was enacted by a public decree that even after his (p) death *his plays should be \*acted, a privilege which was granted to no other tragic poet*.<sup>k</sup>

1. <sup>a</sup> 'To pay an honour to any body,' *honorem alicui habere, tribuere; honorem alicuius officere*: not *honorem alicui exhibere*. <sup>b</sup> *ceteroqui* (= 'in other respects,' 'with this exception'). <sup>c</sup> *alienus*, I. p. 77, note y. <sup>d</sup> *neque*. <sup>e</sup> Diff. 111. Idiom given for 'don't like to,' &c. <sup>f</sup> 'had appointed by law,' *lege constituere*. <sup>g</sup> 'as often as,' *quoties*. <sup>h</sup> *cum hostibus dimicaturus in procinctu constitisset*. <sup>i</sup> Participle. Should you use *spernere, contemnere, or despiciere*? (V. M. 5) <sup>j</sup> 'for (pro) their country.'

2. <sup>k</sup> (the plays) 'of [him] alone out of all the tragic poets—should be \*acted.'

## Exercise 22.

## (Dreams.)

'We sleep through whole nights,<sup>a</sup> and there is hardly any<sup>b</sup> [night] in which<sup>c</sup> we do not dream: and do we [yet] wonder, that what we have dreamed sometimes<sup>d</sup> comes true?'<sup>e</sup> These are the words || of a philosopher (p) who is discussing<sup>f</sup> the unreality<sup>g</sup> of dreams, and asserting<sup>h</sup> that [even] if some<sup>i</sup> dreams † are confirmed<sup>j</sup> by the event, it does *not* follow<sup>k</sup> from this, that dreams are not to be looked upon<sup>l</sup> as [mere dreams]. For out of<sup>m</sup> such<sup>n</sup> a number and variety [of them], it would be more wonderful if nothing ever came true<sup>d</sup> of what we † *see when we are asleep*.<sup>m</sup>

<sup>a</sup> I. 302. <sup>b</sup> I. 477. <sup>c</sup> I. 402. <sup>d</sup> 'to come true,' *evadere*, or *evenire*, both Cic. <sup>e</sup> *exagitare*, to discuss a thing repeatedly; to *work a point*. <sup>f</sup> *vanitas*. <sup>g</sup> *comprobare*. <sup>h</sup> to follow from any thing, *ex aliqua re effici* followed by *ut*: here by *ut ne*: Pt. I. p. 38, note). <sup>i</sup> *haberi*. <sup>j</sup> *in*; with abl. <sup>k</sup> C. 10. <sup>l</sup> I. 402. <sup>m</sup> *per quietem*.

## Exercise 23.

(Semiramis.)

1. Semiramis is said to have *gained a throne*<sup>a</sup> from<sup>b</sup> a very low rank [of life] by an exceedingly || ingenious<sup>d</sup> and clever plan. She had by degrees<sup>c</sup> *obtained such influence over* || king Ninus,<sup>f</sup> that nothing was so great that Semiramis would not dare to ask<sup>e</sup> it (*r*) of the king, or that the king would venture to refuse her, (*p*) if she did ask it.

2. And so, having once<sup>b</sup> thrown out<sup>i</sup> (358) in conversation, that there was<sup>10</sup> something which she desired very much, and the king having told<sup>j</sup> her to name<sup>k</sup> it openly and fearlessly, † whatever<sup>l</sup> it might be, 'I should wish you,' she said, 'to † grant<sup>m</sup> me this [favour,] that I might (128) sit on<sup>16</sup> your throne and administer justice<sup>n</sup> for but<sup>11</sup> a single<sup>o</sup> day: and that, for the whole of that day, all *should obey me* [*just*] *as they do you*.'<sup>p</sup>

1. <sup>a</sup> 'To gain a throne,' *ad regnum pervenire*. <sup>b</sup> *ex*. <sup>c</sup> *humilis et abjectus*. <sup>d</sup> Död. *astutus*. <sup>e</sup> Död. *paulatim*. <sup>f</sup> 'had no bound (*astringere*) king Ninus to herself.' <sup>g</sup> *petere*. (See I. 252, Remark.)

2. <sup>h</sup> *aliquando*. <sup>i</sup> *injicere*. <sup>j</sup> *jubere*, I. 76. <sup>k</sup> *profiteri*. <sup>l</sup> *quicquid tandem*. <sup>m</sup> *tribuere*. <sup>n</sup> *jus dicere*. <sup>o</sup> *unus*. <sup>p</sup> 'as (*quicquidmodum*) they do to you, so (*ita*) they should obey me.' <sup>q</sup>

## Exercise 24.

(Semiramis continued.)

The king laughed, and granted [her] what she † requested. Immediately it is proclaimed, that on an (393) appointed<sup>a</sup> day, all men should *obey the commands*<sup>b</sup> of Semiramis: *that such was the king's pleasure* :<sup>c</sup> that she for that day † *was placed over*<sup>d</sup> them all with sovereign *authority*<sup>e</sup> and power. When (512) the<sup>13</sup> day arrived, the queen sat on<sup>16</sup> the throne in royal pomp.<sup>f</sup> *Vast crowds assemble*<sup>g</sup> [before her.] She at first, *by way of experiment*,<sup>h</sup> *issues some commands of no great importance*.<sup>i</sup>

<sup>a</sup> *Certus*. <sup>b</sup> *dicto audientem esse*, with dat. of person. <sup>c</sup> 'that so it pleased the king.' <sup>d</sup> *præesse*. <sup>e</sup> *imperium*. <sup>f</sup> *cultus*, implying *more* than apparel only; all the attendant circumstances of a king's sitting in state. <sup>g</sup> 'A very great concourse (*concursum*) takes place.'

<sup>h</sup> *experiendi causâ*. <sup>i</sup> 'commands some things (*acc.*) of no<sup>12</sup> great moment.'

## Exercise 25.

(Semiramis continued.)

When<sup>a</sup> she saw that all men obeyed her in earnest,<sup>b</sup> *whatever she commanded*,<sup>c</sup> she orders the *royal body-guard*<sup>d</sup> to arrest<sup>e</sup> (75) the king himself: they arrest him. To bind him [in chains]: he is bound. To *put him to death*:<sup>f</sup> he is put to death. *In this manner*<sup>g</sup> her reign of a day is made perpetual.<sup>h</sup> This is [the queen] who surrounded Babylon with walls of brick,<sup>i</sup> and whose famous hanging<sup>k</sup> gardens were the objects of such admiration.<sup>l</sup>

<sup>a</sup> 'When' = 'as soon as' (512). What tense and mood? (514.) <sup>b</sup> *serio*.  
<sup>c</sup> 'in all things.' With respect to the *place* of 'all,' see p. 242, 39, which should lay down the rule as *general*, not as confined to *substantives* only. <sup>d</sup> *satellites ac stipatores regi corporis*. (Cic. Rull. 2. 13, 32, has; *stipatores corporis constituit eosdem ministros et satellites potestatis*.) <sup>e</sup> *comprehendere*.  
<sup>f</sup> *interficere*. <sup>g</sup> *ita*. <sup>h</sup> 'from<sup>3</sup> [that] of-a-day (*diurnus*) becomes a lasting [one].' Lasting, *diuturnus*: there is a sort of play on the similarity of sound in *diurnus* and *diuturnus*. This is called *Paronomasia*, see above, p. 264. So *non magis amore quam more*, (C. Nep.); *in ore atque amore* (Cic.), &c.' <sup>i</sup> of brick, *latericius*. <sup>j</sup> I. 381. <sup>k</sup> *pensilis*.  
<sup>l</sup> 'had such admiration.' C. 10.

## Exercise 26.

Cicero, an extremely<sup>a</sup> good judge<sup>b</sup> of eloquence, \*thought so highly || of Plato, that he said Jupiter himself, if he wished to speak \*Greek, would use no<sup>c</sup> language but<sup>(1)</sup> that<sup>(1)</sup> of Plato. And then<sup>22</sup> Aristotle! did he not<sup>d</sup> both lay down<sup>e</sup> the rules<sup>f</sup> of eloquence *better than any other man*,<sup>g</sup> and *possess such eloquence*<sup>h</sup> himself, that the same Cicero called him a river flowing with gold?

<sup>a</sup> *in primis*. <sup>b</sup> *existimator*. <sup>c</sup> *non alius*. <sup>d</sup> *Nonne* is, of course, the regular interrogative particle here: but 'non' is often used without *ne* in vehement questions—especially questions of appeal.  
<sup>e</sup> *tradere*. <sup>f</sup> *præceptum*. <sup>g</sup> *unus omnium optime*. <sup>h</sup> 'of such (C. 10.) eloquence.'

## Exercise 27.

1. Philosophy heals these and similar diseases, and produces in her [followers] such<sup>b</sup> a firmness of mind, as<sup>c</sup> neither<sup>d</sup> the allurements of pleasure (*pl.*), nor the fires<sup>e</sup> of pain (*pl.*), no: the

splendour of riches, nor obscure and despised<sup>f</sup> poverty, nor the thirst of honour (*pl.*), nor the fear of disgrace, nor the desire of life, nor the fear of death, can shake<sup>e</sup> and overthrow.<sup>h</sup>

2. For as the poets say that the top of Olympus is always calm, because<sup>i</sup> it is too high for<sup>j</sup> the power of the winds and tempests to reach it:<sup>k</sup> so the mind of philosophers is too lofty<sup>l</sup> and elevated<sup>l</sup> to feel those whirlwinds<sup>m</sup> of desires (*p*) that rage and battle<sup>n</sup> together<sup>o</sup> on the ground for<sup>17</sup> things [of the] most worthless [nature].

1. <sup>a</sup> *efficere*.      <sup>b</sup> *is, ea, id.* (See I. 483 (2)).      <sup>c</sup> C. 9.      <sup>d</sup> *Translatam*  
neither—nor—nor, by I. 478 (4).      <sup>e</sup> *fax* (torch).      <sup>f</sup> Död. *spernere*.  
<sup>g</sup> *convellere*, 'pull violently from its place.'      <sup>h</sup> *labefactare*.

2. <sup>i</sup> *propterea quod*: which is stronger than *quia* or *quod* only, and gives more prominence to the reason assigned.      <sup>j</sup> Diff. 94.      <sup>k</sup> 'to arrive thither,'  
*eo pervenire*.      <sup>l</sup> Död. *altus* (i).      <sup>m</sup> *status* (4s).      <sup>n</sup> *digladiari*.  
<sup>o</sup> *inter se*.

### Exercise 28.

I should scarcely have dared to ask you to write<sup>a</sup> to me in Latin, fearing that this would seem to you an exceedingly<sup>b</sup> difficult [task]. Consequently,<sup>c</sup> the Latin<sup>d</sup> letters which I have lately received from you were the more acceptable,—[they were] not indeed<sup>e</sup> entirely<sup>f</sup> faultless,<sup>g</sup> but yet much more correctly and elegantly written<sup>h</sup> than I should have believed [possible]. I encourage<sup>i</sup> you therefore to hope *with confidence*,<sup>j</sup> and<sup>14</sup> not to doubt but<sup>11</sup> that, under my guidance,<sup>k</sup> you will *one day*<sup>l</sup> attain<sup>m</sup> to some<sup>n</sup> [considerable] facility in this accomplishment, as well as in others.<sup>o</sup>

<sup>a</sup> 75.      <sup>b</sup> *oppido*.      <sup>c</sup> *Quo* (the relative adverb, instead of the demonstrative *eo*), with the comparative adj.      <sup>d</sup> 'written by you in Latin,'  
*Latine*. See I. 53, note \*.      <sup>e</sup> I. 383.      <sup>f</sup> *omni ex parte*.      <sup>g</sup> *emendatus*.  
<sup>h</sup> *nitidiores et cultiores*.      <sup>i</sup> *jubeo*, 'I bid you.'      <sup>j</sup> *bene*.  
<sup>k</sup> I. 364.      <sup>l</sup> *aliquando*.      <sup>m</sup> Död. *invenire*.      <sup>n</sup> *aliquis*.      <sup>o</sup> 'of this kind also.'

### Exercise 29.

(On a Recovery from Illness.)

Certainly, when all<sup>l</sup> my medical-attendants<sup>a</sup> asserted-repeat<sup>o</sup> edly<sup>b</sup> with one<sup>c</sup> consent, that there was hardly any hope left c/

*my recovery*,<sup>a</sup> I had so prepared myself and composed my mind, as<sup>o</sup> to be neither grieved nor frightened by the fear of, as it was supposed, approaching<sup>f</sup> death: and asked nothing<sup>14</sup> else<sup>s</sup> of<sup>h</sup> the \* Almighty, but<sup>11</sup>) that He would deal with me \* mercifully, would pardon the errors<sup>i</sup> of my past life, and, in that separation of body and soul, would not<sup>14</sup> suffer me to be tormented *either in a greater degree or for a longer time*) than my strength could bear.

<sup>a</sup> *medici.*                      <sup>b</sup> *dictitare.*                      <sup>c</sup> *summus.*                      <sup>d</sup> 'of my escaping,'  
<sup>e</sup> *evadendi.*                      <sup>e</sup> I. 66.                      <sup>f</sup> *imminens.*                      <sup>g</sup> *alius.*                      <sup>h</sup> I. 252, Obs.  
<sup>i</sup> *errata.*                      <sup>j</sup> more violently, or longer.' Comparatives of *vehementer*  
 and *diu*.

## Exercise 30.

(Same subject continued.)

But I hope that *I have been allowed by God to remain in this world*,<sup>a</sup> that the stains contracted<sup>b</sup> in former years may be blotted out by my tears; and that at last (*p*) I may slight<sup>c</sup> and reject the temptations<sup>d</sup> of vice (*pl.*), and pursue *now at least in my old age*<sup>e</sup> that course of life which I ought to have pursued<sup>f</sup> from the beginning. And I beseech you, \* again and again, *noble Sir*,<sup>g</sup> that, as you stimulate<sup>h</sup> me to the (*p*) performance of this resolution<sup>i</sup> by your example, so you would *be kind enough*) to assist me [to do so], not only<sup>k</sup> by your admonitions and advice, but also by offering \* prayers to God *in my behalf*.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>a</sup> 'I *have* been left by God in this life.'                      <sup>b</sup> 'To contract a stain,' *maculam concipere*: 'to blot it out or efface it,' *maculam delere* or *eluere*.  
<sup>c</sup> *omittere.*                      <sup>d</sup> *illecebræ.*                      <sup>e</sup> *saltem jam senex.*                      <sup>f</sup> C.                      <sup>g</sup> *vir*  
<sup>h</sup> *clarissime.*                      <sup>h</sup> *incitare.*                      <sup>i</sup> *animi mei propositum.*                      <sup>j</sup> *dignare*  
<sup>k</sup> 'not only—but also,' *et—et*: or in the usual way, *non solum—sed etiam*.  
<sup>1</sup> 'for me.'

## Exercise 31.

[Obs. When a demonstrative is to be translated by a relative, the conjunction at the head of the sentence must be omitted.]

Deucalion, in Ovid,<sup>a</sup> ingeniously interprets the response<sup>b</sup> given him by Themis, (*p*) when he asked by what means<sup>c</sup> he could restore the human race, (*p*) which had been destroyed by the flood. For, being ordered 'to throw behind his back the bones



of his great mother,' || he (r) made out<sup>d</sup> [that] || by the name of mother the earth [was meant], and that stones were called<sup>e</sup> the bones || in her (r) body.

<sup>a</sup> 'The Ovidian Deucalion.' *Ovidianus.* <sup>b</sup> *sors.* <sup>c</sup> *ars.* <sup>d</sup> intel *ligere.* <sup>e</sup> *Subj.*, as being a thought of *Deucalion's*.

### Exercise 32.

[All men] submit to punishment with a better grace,<sup>a</sup> when<sup>b</sup> they think that they deserve to be punished.<sup>c</sup> Wherefore Aristotle, in his second book on the *Art of Rhetoric*,<sup>d</sup> sets-down<sup>e</sup> this argument with others<sup>f</sup> among those which tend to soothe the mind; that we should point out to those who think that an injury has been done them, that they<sup>g</sup> began,<sup>h</sup> and that what<sup>i</sup> they complain of<sup>j</sup>, has befallen them deservedly.

<sup>a</sup> 'bear || with a more even mind that they should be punished.' <sup>b</sup> Express 'all men—when,' by *quicumque* (whosoever). <sup>c</sup> I. 486 (b). <sup>d</sup> 'On the rhetorical art,' *rhetoricus.* <sup>e</sup> *ponere.* <sup>f</sup> *quoque.* <sup>g</sup> 'were the first (*priores*) in inflicting injury.' <sup>h</sup> = 'those things which.'

### Exercise 33.

Soon [afterwards] he fell ill of<sup>a</sup> a severe disease, and suffered so much from it<sup>b</sup> for two<sup>c</sup> months, that his friends and medical-attendants feared for<sup>d</sup> his life, and<sup>e</sup> (p) though he †shook off the disorder,<sup>f</sup> it was<sup>g</sup> but<sup>h</sup> very slowly indeed<sup>i</sup> that he recovered the <sup>j</sup> bodily strength (p) he had lost, and his former<sup>k</sup> health.

<sup>a</sup> *in morbum incidere* or *cadere.* <sup>b</sup> 'was so shaken or oppressed by it; morbo urgeri, tentari, affligi (Cic.), conflictari (Corn. Nep.).' <sup>c</sup> *bini*, the two months being considered as one space. *Bini* 'extra distributionem' significat duo, non separatim, sed simul sumpta.' (Facciolati.) <sup>d</sup> I. 231. <sup>e</sup> To shake off a disorder, *morbum* or *vim morbi depellere.* <sup>f</sup> *admodum tarde ac lente.* <sup>g</sup> *prius.*

### Exercise 34

I send you back your review,<sup>a</sup> in which I have scarcely found [any thing] to cavil at,<sup>b</sup> much less<sup>c</sup> to censure. Your judgment is correct<sup>d</sup> and sure: your style elegant and in good Latin.<sup>e</sup> That<sup>f</sup> you have made such progress<sup>g</sup> in this (r) I rejoice the more, because<sup>h</sup> it was<sup>i</sup> principally<sup>j</sup> by my advice<sup>k</sup> that you were

*persuaded to add this accomplishment* of writing well, to your other graces<sup>k</sup> of genius and learning.

<sup>a</sup> *censura*.      <sup>b</sup> Diff. 108 (1). 'To cavil at,' *calumniari*.      <sup>c</sup> 'much less,' *nedum*, \* I. 443.      <sup>d</sup> 'and quite (plane) Latin'      \* I. 517, note x.  
'To make such progress,' *tantum proficere*.      \* I. 516.      <sup>h</sup> *potissimum*, I. 364.      <sup>i</sup> Use the subst. *auctor*. (See I. 364.)      <sup>j</sup> 'thought that this credit (*laus*)—should be added,'—*conjungere*, as it was to be, not *appended* to them but *united* with them.      <sup>k</sup> *ornamenta*.

### Exercise 35.

As if<sup>a</sup> my house were turned into an infirmary,<sup>b</sup> there are ill in it both my youngest daughter, and my two maid-servants. I am therefore obliged to ask<sup>c</sup> you to defer<sup>d</sup> your coming,<sup>e</sup> which for<sup>f</sup> many reasons I was so anxiously<sup>f</sup> expecting, to a time more convenient to us. Farewell, excellent man. Leyden, March 19.<sup>g</sup>

<sup>a</sup> I. 494.      <sup>b</sup> Sen. uses *valetudinarium*. The term in Justinian's Code of Laws is *nosocomium*, from νοσοκομειον.      <sup>c</sup> I. 252.      <sup>d</sup> I. 75.      <sup>e</sup> *adventus*  
<sup>f</sup> *tantopere*.      <sup>g</sup> I. 526, 528. These rules may be given thus:—  
Adde *diem* semper Nonis atque Idibus *unum*:  
Accipiatque *dies* mensis *lux* ultima *binos*.

### Exercise 36.

The more<sup>a</sup> lazy<sup>b</sup> I grow<sup>c</sup> in writing letters, the more vehemently do I desire to converse with you, especially since<sup>d</sup> [we] have<sup>e</sup> innumerable subjects<sup>f</sup> of conversation.<sup>g</sup> You will therefore *highly gratify*<sup>h</sup> both me and all mine, if you will revisit us, and [that after so] long a time,<sup>i</sup> during the Easter holidays. The cold is sharp, I allow; but *you shall have*<sup>k</sup> a bright<sup>j</sup> fire<sup>j</sup> in your bed-room.

<sup>a</sup> I. 407.      <sup>b</sup> Död. *ignavia*.      <sup>c</sup> 'age makes me.'      <sup>d</sup> I. 489.  
<sup>e</sup> *esse*.      <sup>f</sup> *argumentum*.      <sup>g</sup> Gerund.      <sup>h</sup> 'will have done [a thing]  
most gratifying,' *gratissimus*.      <sup>i</sup> *intervallum*.      <sup>j</sup> *feriæ Paschales*.  
<sup>k</sup> 'there shall be prepared for you'      <sup>l</sup> *focus*.

---

\* '*Nedum* is rare in Cicero, who generally uses *non modo* instead of it after *ne—quidem*.'

## Exercise 37.

Your letters are *few and far between*;<sup>a</sup> but they make up for their rarity by their wonderful<sup>c</sup> tenderness.<sup>c</sup> Many *parts of them*<sup>d</sup> have delighted me, but nothing more than the<sup>d</sup> affection, which you not only manifest<sup>e</sup> to me in my *life-time*,<sup>f</sup> but also solemnly<sup>g</sup> promise to manifest<sup>h</sup> to my [family], when I *am gone*.<sup>i</sup>

- <sup>a</sup> 'are certainly rare,' *rarus quidem*.      <sup>b</sup> *compensare*.      <sup>c</sup> *sensibilis*.  
<sup>d</sup> 'many [things] in them.'      <sup>e</sup> *amorem prestare* (to manifest by substantial kindness).  
<sup>f</sup> 'to me alive.'      <sup>g</sup> *sermo*.      <sup>h</sup> *Diff. 2*  
<sup>i</sup> 'shall have ceased to be.'

## Exercise 38.

As to<sup>a</sup> my property<sup>b</sup> [which is] small<sup>c</sup> indeed,<sup>d</sup> but in a tolerably good condition,<sup>e</sup> let us converse [about it] when you come in the spring.<sup>f</sup> I am so strong<sup>g</sup> both in body and mind, that unless I † am carried off by apoplexy,<sup>h</sup> I seem as if I might<sup>i</sup> arrive at the same age that my mother reached: nor do I feel that I am \*growing an old man || *from any thing*<sup>k</sup> but<sup>l</sup> my laziness in letter-writing.<sup>m</sup>

- <sup>a</sup> *De*.      <sup>b</sup> *res* (pl.).      <sup>c</sup> *modicus*.      <sup>d</sup> I. 383.      <sup>e</sup> 'but sufficiently uninvolved,' *satis explicatus*. (So Cic. *provincia quam maxime apta explicataque*.)  
<sup>f</sup> *sub tempus vernum*.      <sup>g</sup> 'To be strong,' *vigere*.      <sup>h</sup> *apoplexia* or *apoplexia*.  
<sup>i</sup> 'to be able.'      <sup>j</sup> *attingere*.      <sup>k</sup> '[from] any other circumstance,' *res*.  
<sup>l</sup> 'in writing letters.'

## Exercise 39.

Of our [men]<sup>a</sup> not more than twenty were [either killed or] missing<sup>b</sup> [after] all the engagements. But in the castle there was not a single<sup>c</sup> soldier who was not wounded: and of one cohort four centurions lost<sup>d</sup> their eyes. And desiring<sup>e</sup> to \*produce evidence of their exertions<sup>f</sup> and the danger *they had been in*,<sup>g</sup> they counted over before<sup>h</sup> Marius about thirty thousand arrows<sup>i</sup> [which had been] shot into the castle, and brought to him the shield<sup>k</sup> of the centurion Scæva, in which there were found<sup>k</sup> a hundred and twenty holes.<sup>l</sup>

- <sup>a</sup> In such enumerations the *possessive* adjective is often used, of course in agreement, instead of *partitive gen.*, or *ex*, &c. Cæsar, especially, is fond of this construction: thus *nostri circiter septuaginta ceciderunt*. (Bell. Civ. 1.41.)  
<sup>b</sup> To be [killed or] missing (i. e. *lost* in any way), *desiderari*.

\* 'Single' after general negatives, such as *nemo, nullus, neque quisquam* or *ullus*, is best translated by *omnino* = 'at all, in all,' which extends the meaning strictly to all. Here *nemo—omnino*.      <sup>d</sup> I. 56, n.      \* 'when (*quum*) they desired.' (subj.)      † *labor* (sing.).      ‡ 'their danger.'      † 'To count over (again) before any body,' *renumerare* cui.      † For military matters *Cæsar* and *Livy* are the best authors to copy, but especially *Cæsar*. With respect to compound numerals of this kind, he so *nearly* always places the *thousands* first, then the *gen.*, and then the *number of thousands*, that this is a very good order to follow. Thus, *millia passuum decem; millia hominum circiter viginti*, &c.      † 'To shoot' (of weapons *hurled*, as those of the ancients were), *conficere*.      † 'the shield being brought (*referre*), [*there*] were found in it,' &c.      † *foramen*.

## Exercise 40.

He sends thither *M. Valerius* with five cohorts of the eighth legion. *The people of Veii*<sup>a</sup> as soon as they saw our standards, opened<sup>b</sup> their gates; and all,<sup>c</sup> both inhabitants<sup>d</sup> and soldiers, came forth<sup>e</sup> to meet<sup>f</sup> *Valerius* with their congratulations.<sup>g</sup> *Sulpicius* and *Manlius* threw themselves down from<sup>h</sup> the wall. *Manlius*, being brought<sup>i</sup> before<sup>j</sup> *Valerius*, begs to be sent<sup>k</sup> to *Marius*. *Valerius*, with the cohorts and *Manlius*, returns on the same day that<sup>k</sup> he had set out [upon his march thither]. *Marius* incorporated<sup>l</sup> the legions with his own army, and dismissed *Manlius* unpunished.<sup>m</sup>

<sup>a</sup> *Veientes*      <sup>b</sup> V. M. 7.      <sup>c</sup> *universi*.      <sup>d</sup> *oppidani* (inhabitants of the town).      <sup>e</sup> *exire*.      <sup>f</sup> 'To meet' is generally translated by *obviā* with a dat., (*ire* (*exire*, &c.) *obviā* alicui.      <sup>g</sup> 'congratulating.'      <sup>h</sup> *deduci*.      <sup>i</sup> *ad*.      <sup>j</sup> I. 75.      <sup>k</sup> C. 25.      <sup>l</sup> *conjungere aliquem cum aliquā rē*.      <sup>m</sup> *incolumis*.

## Exercise 41.

I have heard our friend *Pomponius* say<sup>a</sup> that he had two soldiers in Spain, rich brothers from<sup>b</sup> the Faliscan territory; *their father* † *having left them a small country-house*,<sup>b</sup> and a field<sup>c</sup> of certainly<sup>d</sup> not more than one acre, they<sup>b</sup> formed an apiary<sup>e</sup> round the whole house, and had a garden [there], and filled up<sup>f</sup> the rest with thyme, cytissus, and balm.<sup>g</sup> These<sup>b</sup> [brothers, he said] used never to make<sup>h</sup> less, *on an average*,<sup>i</sup> than ten thousand sester tia by<sup>j</sup> their honey.

<sup>a</sup> *I have heard you say*, *is, audivi te (ipsum) dicere; audivi, quum diceres, audivi te dicentem.*      <sup>b</sup> 'to whom when a small country-house had been left by their father.'      <sup>c</sup> *agellus*.      <sup>d</sup> *sane*.      <sup>e</sup> *alvearium*, i. e. a system of

bee-hives.      † obsepire      § apiastrum.      ‡ Continue this in oblique  
 narration.      † ut peras. ut ducerent.      † 'to make so much by any thing,  
*recipere* (with acc. of the thing) *ex*.

### Exercise 42.

If there is no<sup>a</sup> food [for them] naturally-growing<sup>b</sup> [there], the owner ought to sow what bees *like best*:<sup>c</sup> such as<sup>d</sup> roses, wild-thyme,<sup>e</sup> balm,<sup>f</sup> poppies, beans, lentils, peas, basil,<sup>g</sup> the [sweet-scented] rush,<sup>h</sup> lucerne,<sup>i</sup> and especially cytissus, which is *extremely good* for them [when] in health. For it begins to flower at<sup>k</sup> the vernal equinox, and continues [in flower] *to the autumnal equinox*. But though<sup>m</sup> this is best for<sup>n</sup> [their] health, thyme is best *with reference to the*<sup>o</sup> making of honey.<sup>o</sup> For<sup>n</sup> this reason the Sicilian honey bears the \* *palm*, because<sup>p</sup> the thyme is there good and abundant.<sup>q</sup>

<sup>a</sup> 'not.' (See p. 257, 103.)      <sup>b</sup> *naturalis*.      <sup>c</sup> 'most follow.'      <sup>d</sup> 'these are.'  
*Obs.* All the names are to be in the *singular*.      <sup>e</sup> *serpyllum*.      † *apiastrum*.  
<sup>f</sup> *ocimum*.      <sup>g</sup> *cyperum*.      † *medica* (sc. *herba*).      † *utilissimus*.  
<sup>h</sup> 'from,' *ab*.      † 'to the other equinox of autumn.' What is the word for  
 'other' of two things?      <sup>m</sup> 'as this is best—so thyme,' &c., *ut—sic*.      <sup>n</sup> *ad*.  
<sup>o</sup> *mellificium*.      <sup>p</sup> *quod*.      <sup>q</sup> *frequens*.

### Exercise 43.

#### (On the Medical Art.)

As agriculture [provides] nourishment for healthy bodies, so medicine promises \* health to [them when] diseased.<sup>a</sup> There is<sup>b</sup> indeed nowhere, [where] this [art] does not exist: since<sup>c</sup> even the most uncivilized<sup>d</sup> nations are acquainted with herbs and other simple<sup>e</sup> [remedies] for<sup>f</sup> the cure<sup>f</sup> of wounds and diseases. Among<sup>g</sup> the Greeks, || *however*, it was cultivated considerably<sup>h</sup> more than amongst<sup>i</sup> other nations: and<sup>j</sup> [yet] even amongst these, not from the first beginning [of their national existence], but [only] a few centuries before us, since Æsculapius was celebrated as the first inventor [of it]; who, because he studied somewhat<sup>k</sup> more profoundly this science, [which was] still rude and *in its infancy*,<sup>l</sup> was worshipped after his death as a god.<sup>m</sup>

<sup>a</sup> V. M. II.      <sup>b</sup> *siquidem*.      <sup>c</sup> *imperitissimus*.      <sup>d</sup> *promptus* (i. e.  
 eady at hand)      <sup>e</sup> *ad*.      † *auxilium*, i. e. *help* against them, *whether*

whole or partial cure.      <sup>c</sup> aliquanto, I. 402.      <sup>h</sup> in, with abl.      <sup>i</sup> az.  
<sup>!</sup> utpote quum, with subj.      <sup>k</sup> paulo.      <sup>l</sup> vulgaris.      <sup>m</sup> 'was received  
 into the number of the gods.' recipi.

## Exercise 44.

(Same subject continued.)

After [him] || his two sons Podalirius and Machaon, following Agamemnon in the war against Troy,<sup>b</sup> afforded no<sup>12)</sup> inconsiderable<sup>a</sup> service to their comrades.<sup>d</sup> But yet Homer has described<sup>e</sup> || them (*r*) not as having rendered them any<sup>f</sup> aid against<sup>g</sup> pestilence,<sup>h</sup> nor<sup>10)</sup> the various kinds of diseases, but only as being accustomed to cure<sup>i</sup> wounds with the knife and medicinal applications.<sup>k</sup> From which it [plainly] appears,<sup>10)</sup> that these [were] the only branches<sup>l</sup> of medicine which<sup>m</sup> they † attempted; and that [consequently] these are the oldest. And we † may learn [from] the same author,<sup>a</sup> that diseases were referred to the anger of the gods, and that it was<sup>10)</sup> from them [that] assistance used to be implored.

<sup>a</sup> Deinde.      <sup>b</sup> 'Trojan.'      <sup>c</sup> mediocris.      <sup>d</sup> commilitones.      <sup>e</sup> proponere, with inf.  
<sup>f</sup> The regular words after negatives are *quisquam* and *ullus*: but *aliquis* is sometimes found. According to *Matthias* this is: 'when the thing either really exists, or might be supposed to have existed.' (Ad. Cic. Cat. 1, 6, 15.) Use *aliquis* here: and see I. 160.      <sup>g</sup> in, with abl.      <sup>h</sup> Död. lues.      <sup>i</sup> V.  
 M. 19.      <sup>j</sup> ferrum.      <sup>k</sup> medicamentum.      <sup>l</sup> para.      <sup>m</sup> Diff. 8  
<sup>a</sup> 'Author' is never *auctor* (but *scriptor*, &c.) except when, as here, he is our authority for a statement.

## Exercise 45.

(Same subject continued.)

And it is <sup>a</sup> probable, that though there were no remedies<sup>a</sup> against bad health, yet that men for the most part enjoyed good health,<sup>b</sup> on account of their good habits<sup>c</sup> [of life], which neither sloth<sup>d</sup> nor luxury had corrupted. For<sup>e</sup> it is<sup>10)</sup> these two [vices], which first<sup>f</sup> in Greece, and then<sup>21)</sup> amongst<sup>18)</sup> ourselves, have injured<sup>g</sup> [men's] constitutions. And consequently,<sup>h</sup> this complicated<sup>i</sup> [art of] medicine, which was unnecessary in former days, and is so now amongst other nations,<sup>j</sup> enables<sup>k</sup> but a very few<sup>l</sup> of us to reach the beginning (*pl.*) of old age.

\* *inter nulla auxilia*, followed by gen.    b 'yet that it generally (*plerumque*),  
 tel-to-men's-lot (*contingere*) good.'    c *mores*.    d Död. *ignavia*.  
 e *siquidem*.    f *prius*, there being only *two* cases mentioned.    g *affligere*!  
 'constitutions,' *corpora*.    h V. M. 20.    i *multipler*.    j 'neither  
 necessary in former days—nor amongst<sup>13</sup> other nations.' In former days  
*dim*. V. M. 9.    k 'Enables to reach,' *perducit ad*, &c.    l *vis aliqui*.

### Exercise 46.

Sylla with an inferior force<sup>a</sup> was besieging troops *which had yet suffered no loss or disaster*,<sup>b</sup> they being<sup>c</sup> [also] supplied with an abundance of every thing: for every day<sup>d</sup> a great number of ships arrived *from all parts*<sup>e</sup> to bring them provisions: *nor could the wind blow from any quarter that was not favourable to some of them*.<sup>f</sup> He,<sup>g</sup> on the other hand,<sup>h</sup> having consumed all the corn *round about*,<sup>i</sup> was in great distress;<sup>j</sup> but yet his men<sup>k</sup> bore *their privations*<sup>l</sup> with extraordinary patience. For they called to mind<sup>m</sup> that, after<sup>n</sup> suffering the same [hardships]<sup>o</sup> in Bithynia the year before, they, by their exertions and patient endurance,<sup>p</sup> put an end<sup>q</sup> to a very formidable<sup>r</sup> war: they remembered<sup>s</sup> that, after<sup>t</sup> suffering great distress<sup>u</sup> before Nicomedia, and much greater still<sup>v</sup> before Mantinium, they gained a victory<sup>w</sup> over mighty nations.

\* *millum numerus*.    b *copiae integrae atque incolumes*. According to Död. *incolumis* and *integer* both mean 'unhurt and untouched.' *integer*, opp. to 'being attacked,' *incolumis*, to 'being wounded.' Död. *salvus*.    c *quum illi*.    d 69, I. 1.  
 e *undique*.    f 'nor could any wind blow, but (*quin*) they had a favourable course from some quarter (*pars*).<sup>1</sup> 'Could' should be the *imperfect*, as it is an expression of a repeated possibility.    g *ipse*.    h *autem*.    i *far and wide*.  
 j *angustiae* (a 'strait'), pl.    k 'these things.' (See I. 24.)    l See I. 24.  
 m *patientia*.    n *conficere*.    o *maximus*.    p I. p. 72, note q.    q *inopia* (distress for provisions).    r V. M. 21.    s 'To gain a victory,' *victorem* or *victores decedere*, with gen. of course.

### Exercise 47.

1. In the mean time,<sup>a</sup> L. Sanga, whom Sylla at his departure (*p*) had left in command of the camp,<sup>b</sup> being informed [of what was going on], came to the assistance<sup>c</sup> of the cohort with two legions. On his (*r*) arrival, the Africans were easily repulsed; they did || *not*<sup>d</sup> [so much as] stand<sup>e</sup> the sight<sup>f</sup> and [first] shock of our [troops], but [as soon as] (*p*) their first ranks were broken,<sup>g</sup> the rest turned<sup>h</sup> their backs and fled from the field.<sup>i</sup> But Sanga

recalled our men, that they might not pursue them *to any great distance*.<sup>1</sup>

2. Now many men think, that if he had chosen<sup>24</sup> to pursue them *more warmly*,<sup>1</sup> the war might have been terminated on that day: it does not however \* appear that his decision was [justly] censurable:<sup>m</sup> for the duties<sup>a</sup> of a lieutenant are one,<sup>o</sup> those of a general another:<sup>o</sup> the former<sup>p</sup> ought to act in every thing according to *his instructions*; <sup>1</sup> the latter<sup>p</sup> to *decide without restraint according to what seems best with reference to the whole state of affairs*.

1. \* I. p. 141, note g.      b 'had placed over the camp,' *præficere*.  
 ° I. 242 (1).      d *neque vero*.      ° *ferre*.      † Död. *videre*.      ‡ 'To break the first ranks,' *primos dejicere*.      h *loco cedere*.      † *longius*.  
 2. † *At*.      k *acrius*.      † I. 297.      m *reprehendendus*. The adjectives in -able, -ible, may be translated by the part. in *dus*, when they mean what *ought* to be done: not when they mean what *can* be done.      n *partes*.  
 ° I. 38.      p *alter—alter*.      q *ad præscriptum libere ad summam rerum consilere*.

### Exercise 48.

He<sup>a</sup> disposes his men [along] the<sup>13</sup> works he had begun<sup>b</sup> to raise, not *at certain intervals*,<sup>o</sup> as *was done on*<sup>d</sup> the preceding<sup>e</sup> days, but *in a continued line of guards and posts*,<sup>f</sup> so that [the parties] touched<sup>g</sup> \* each other, and [all together] *filled up the whole line of works*.<sup>h</sup> He orders<sup>i</sup> the military tribunes and officers of the cavalry to patrol [about the works], and begs<sup>j</sup> them not only to be on their guard against<sup>k</sup> sallies, but also to *keep an eye upon individuals secretly leaving the gates*.<sup>1</sup> Nor<sup>m</sup> was there of the whole [army] *a single individual*<sup>n</sup> of so indifferent<sup>o</sup> and sluggish<sup>p</sup> a mind, *as to take a wink of sleep*<sup>q</sup> that night.

- a 'He' (of the general), *ipse*.      b *instituere*.      c 'certain space being intermitted.'  
 d 'as was the custom of,' &c.      ° *superior*.  
 f *perpetuis vigiliis stationibusque*.      ‡ 'disposes, being the historical present. What *tenses* would both be correct here? I. 414.      h *munitionem explere: explere*, to leave no gaps; *complere*, to fill as full as a thing will hold.  
 i 'to order to patrol,' *circummittere*.      † *hortari*, I. 75.      k 'To be on one's guard against any thing,' *cavere ab aliquâ re*.      † 'to observe the secret exits (*exitus*) of individuals,' *singuli homines*.      m *neque vero*: the *vero* adding emphasis to the assertion.      n 'any (one).' What word for 'any?'  
 1. 389—391.      ° *remissus*.      p *languidus*.      q *as to rest, con- quiescere*. (See I. 66, note s. Translate according to I. 493 (a).)



## Exercise 49.

## (Death of Polycarp.)

1. When<sup>a</sup> they † arrived<sup>b</sup> || there,<sup>25</sup> he being<sup>c</sup> from<sup>d</sup> his age weak in his legs, and [consequently] *allowed to ride upon an ass*,<sup>e</sup> a great concourse (pl.) took place both of Jews and Pagans : some<sup>c</sup> of whom, remembering his old reputation, *had compassion*<sup>f</sup> on his age : but most [of them] were \* exasperated [against him] from<sup>d</sup> their hatred against<sup>g</sup> the Christians, *and especially because*<sup>h</sup> Polycarpus *had prevented the offering of sacrifice*<sup>i</sup> to the gods of their country.

2. Hence when, [upon] being ordered to curse Christ, he said<sup>j</sup> that he would never do that to his King and Saviour, he was immediately handed-over<sup>k</sup> to the executioners to<sup>l</sup> be burnt<sup>m</sup> alive. When they † were leading him to death, a certain presbyter, with whom he had been intimate,<sup>n</sup> met<sup>a</sup> him : ° [and] said weeping, ‘O Polycarp, *what undeserved treatment art thou receiving !*’<sup>p</sup> he [replied] :<sup>q</sup> ‘But not unexpected<sup>r</sup> [treatment], for many Christian bishops will hereafter<sup>s</sup> *meet with this fate !*’<sup>t</sup>

1. <sup>a</sup> ubi : what tense ? I. 512, 514.      <sup>b</sup> pervenire. I. 296.      <sup>c</sup> quum, with subj.      <sup>d</sup> ‘riding upon an ass,’ *asino vehi*.      <sup>e</sup> Instead of making these principal sentences, connect them with the preceding by *quum* with subj. *Some—but most ; alii—plurimi vero.*      <sup>f</sup> miserari.      <sup>g</sup> I. 156.      <sup>h</sup> maximeque quod.      <sup>i</sup> *sacra fieri prohibuerat.*
2. 1 Diff. 2.      <sup>k</sup> tradere.      <sup>l</sup> comburi.      <sup>m</sup> familiariter uti.
- <sup>n</sup> obviam esse      <sup>o</sup> is quum.      <sup>p</sup> ‘what undeserved [things] thou art offering !’      <sup>q</sup> huic ille.      <sup>r</sup> inopinatus.      <sup>s</sup> deinde.      <sup>t</sup> hunc exitum habere.

## Exercise 50.

It is [kind in you and] like a brother<sup>a</sup> to exhort<sup>b</sup> me, but [you exhort me who am] now<sup>c</sup>, by Hercules,<sup>d</sup> running [apace, that way myself, so] that I lavish<sup>e</sup> all my [assiduous] attentions<sup>f</sup> upon<sup>g</sup> him<sup>h</sup> alone. Nay,<sup>i</sup> I shall perhaps<sup>j</sup> with my ardent zeal accomplish<sup>k</sup> what often happens to travellers, ‡ when they make haste ;<sup>l</sup> [I mean] that as [they], if they have happened<sup>20</sup> to rise later than they intended,<sup>m</sup> [yet] by quickening their speed,<sup>n</sup> they arrive even earlier<sup>1</sup> at their journey's end,<sup>o</sup> than if they *had lain awake all the morning ;*<sup>a</sup> sc I, since I have so long *overslept myself*<sup>o</sup> in the ob-

servance<sup>r</sup> of this man, [though], *by Hercules, you have many a time tried to awake me,*<sup>a</sup> will make up for my laziness by running.

<sup>a</sup> *fraterne* (adv.).      <sup>b</sup> *mehercule*. The *now*<sup>r</sup> is to be made emphatic by *quidem*.      <sup>c</sup> *conferre*.      <sup>d</sup> *studia* (pl.).      <sup>e</sup> *him* = *him* whom you mention, &c. What pron. should be used for 'he?' I. 377 (c).      <sup>f</sup> *Ego vero*: the *vero* adding emphasis to the statement.      <sup>g</sup> V. M. 15.  
<sup>h</sup> *efficere*.      <sup>i</sup> V. M. 22.      <sup>j</sup> *velle*.      <sup>k</sup> *properare*.      <sup>l</sup> *citius*.  
<sup>m</sup> 'whither they wish,' *velle*.      <sup>n</sup> *de multâ nocte vigilare*.      <sup>o</sup> *in dormire*.      <sup>p</sup> *colere*. I. 359.      <sup>q</sup> 'you by Hercules often rousing me'  
<sup>r</sup> *corrigere*.

### Exercise 51.

Cato in Sicily was refitting his old ships of war,<sup>a</sup> and *commanding the states to provide new ones for him*.<sup>b</sup> These [objects] he pursued with great zeal. In Lucania and Bruttium,<sup>c</sup> he, by means of his lieutenants, *raised troops*<sup>d</sup> of Roman citizens: and required<sup>e</sup> from the states of Sicily a certain amount<sup>f</sup> of infantry and cavalry. When these [preparations] were almost completed, being informed of Curio's arrival, he complained *in an address to his troops*,<sup>g</sup> that he was abandoned and betrayed by Pompey, who, *though utterly unprepared*<sup>h</sup> *in every respect*,<sup>i</sup> had begun<sup>j</sup> an unnecessary war; and [when] questioned in the senate by him and other [senators], had asserted<sup>k</sup> that he had<sup>l</sup> every thing *ready and in good order*<sup>l</sup> for<sup>17)</sup> a war.

<sup>a</sup> *naves longæ*.      <sup>b</sup> 'was commanding new [ones] to the states.' So *imperare frumentum civitatibus*, &c.      <sup>c</sup> *In Lucanis Bruttisque*. The name of the people (*Lucani*) is often thus used, where we use the name of the territory.      <sup>d</sup> *delectus habere*.      <sup>e</sup> *exigere*.      <sup>f</sup> *numerus*.      <sup>g</sup> *in concione*. Use the *pres. historicum*.      <sup>h</sup> *imparatissimus* followed by prep. *ab*.      <sup>i</sup> 'all things.'      <sup>j</sup> *inscipere*.      <sup>k</sup> Diff. 47.      <sup>l</sup> *apta et parata*.

### Exercise 52

Having given [him] these instructions,<sup>a</sup> he arrives at Canusium with six legions, *three of them being composed of veteran soldiers*,<sup>b</sup> the rest such as he had formed<sup>c</sup> out of the new levies, and filled up<sup>d</sup> on<sup>18</sup> his march: for he had sent Domitius's<sup>e</sup> cohorts straight from Corfinium to Sicily. He found that the consuls were gone<sup>f</sup> to Dyrrachium with a great part of the army, and that Lucceius was remaining at Brundisium with twenty cohorts; nor could it

be found out [for] certainty, whether he had remained there for the purpose of holding<sup>b</sup> Brundisium, that<sup>c</sup> he might the more easily remain master of the whole Hadriatic, or had [merely] stopped there for<sup>16</sup> want of ships.

<sup>a</sup> *mandata*.                      <sup>b</sup> 'three [of them] veteran [legions].'  
<sup>c</sup> *dilectus* (sing.).            <sup>d</sup> *completa*.            <sup>e</sup> Domitianus (adj.).            <sup>f</sup> *protinus*  
<sup>g</sup> *proficisci*.            <sup>h</sup> *obtinere*.            <sup>i</sup> What word for 'that'?

### Exercise 53.

When the excited<sup>a</sup> *body of young men*<sup>b</sup> were rashly taking arms, and endeavouring to *make a hostile attack upon*<sup>c</sup> the unoffending<sup>d</sup> Thessalians, it was I who compelled the senate to repress by its authority the violence of [these] striplings: it was<sup>10</sup> I who *strictly charged*<sup>e</sup> the quæstors not to supply money<sup>f</sup> for the payments [of the troops]: it was<sup>10</sup> I who, (*p*) when the arsenal<sup>h</sup> was broken open, withstood [the multitude], and prevented<sup>7</sup> [any] arms from being carried out. And thus you know that it was<sup>10</sup> by *my exertions, and mine alone*,<sup>i</sup> that an unnecessary war was not brought about.

<sup>a</sup> *concitare*.            <sup>b</sup> *juventus*.            <sup>c</sup> *manu lacessere*.            <sup>d</sup> *quietus*.            <sup>e</sup> *interminar*  
 (Ter. followed by *ne*).            <sup>f</sup> *sumptus*.            <sup>g</sup> *stipendium*.            <sup>h</sup> *armamentarium*.  
<sup>i</sup> 'by my exertions [of me] alone.' Exertions, *opera*, *æ*, sing. (Comp. Cic. *solius erim: meum peccatum; in unius meâ salute*.)

### Exercise 54.

See how uncertain<sup>a</sup> and variable<sup>a</sup> the condition<sup>a</sup> of life is; how unsettled<sup>b</sup> and inconstant [a thing] fortune; what<sup>c</sup> unfaithfulness<sup>c</sup> there is in friends; what<sup>c</sup> simulations<sup>d</sup> *suited to times and circumstances*,<sup>e</sup> what<sup>c</sup> desertion<sup>d</sup> [even] of our nearest [friends] in [our] dangers, what<sup>c</sup> cowardice.<sup>d</sup> There will, there will, *I say*,<sup>f</sup> be a<sup>4</sup> time, and the day will come<sup>g</sup> *sooner or later*,<sup>h</sup> when you will miss<sup>i</sup> the affection of a most friendly, the fidelity of a most worthy person, and the high spirit<sup>k</sup> of the bravest man *that ever lived*.<sup>i</sup>

<sup>a</sup> *ratio*. How to make *uncertain* and *variable* emphatic, see p. 236, 16 (b).  
<sup>b</sup> *vagus*.            <sup>c</sup> Caut. 21.            <sup>d</sup> Plural.            <sup>e</sup> *aptus ad tempus*.            <sup>f</sup> *profecto*  
 (assuredly, verily).            <sup>g</sup> *lucescere* (will dawn, i. e. begin to shine).  
<sup>h</sup> *aliquando*.            <sup>i</sup> *desiderare*. In this construction the *subj. present* is to be  
 used: not the fut. indicative.            <sup>j</sup> *gravissimus*.            <sup>k</sup> *animi magnitudo*.  
 On the position of the two genitives see Introd. 27.            <sup>l</sup> 'The bravest man  
 'that ever lived,' *unus post homines natos fortissimus vir*

## Exercise 55.

Are you *trying to find*<sup>a</sup> a new method of governing the state? Why,<sup>b</sup> you cannot discover<sup>c</sup> a better [one] than [that which] you have received from your forefathers. Are you trying to find out, at a *vast outlay*,<sup>d</sup> how you may not pay<sup>e</sup> taxes? Why,<sup>b</sup> you cannot by taking counsel (*pl.*) increase the resources<sup>f</sup> of the treasury, which you desire [to increase]. Are you trying to find out how you may spare men [who are] polluted by crime?<sup>g</sup> Why,<sup>b</sup> you cannot, by pardoning the guilty,<sup>h</sup> secure<sup>i</sup> the safety of the innocent.

<sup>a</sup> *quarere*.  
outlays.<sup>j</sup> *sumptus*.  
(guard).

<sup>b</sup> *at*.

<sup>c</sup> *conferre*.

<sup>e</sup> V. M. 2.

<sup>f</sup> *opes*.

<sup>d</sup> 'by making very great

<sup>g</sup> *nocentes*.

<sup>h</sup> *custodire*

## Exercise 56.

Even the bravest men have not, except in extreme necessity, *flung their lives away*<sup>a</sup> for the sake of avoiding some<sup>a</sup> disgrace: as [for instance] P. Crassus Mucianus, [when] conducting<sup>b</sup> the war against Aristonicus in Asia, being taken [prisoner] between Elæa and Smyrna by [some] Thracians, of whom *that prince*<sup>c</sup> *had a large force in his fortified towns*,<sup>d</sup> that he might not *fall into his hands*,<sup>e</sup> escaped [this] disgrace by a *voluntary death*.<sup>f</sup> For he is reported to have thrust<sup>g</sup> his *riding-stick*<sup>h</sup> into the eye of one of the barbarians: who [then], enraged<sup>i</sup> by the violence of the pain, stabbed Crassus with his dagger in the side,<sup>j</sup> and [thus], whilst<sup>k</sup> he avenged himself, delivered a Roman general from *the disgraceful violation*<sup>l</sup> of his dignity.<sup>m</sup>

<sup>a</sup> 'sought death voluntarily,' *mortem ultro oppetere*. Some, I. 392. <sup>b</sup> *gerere* (*bellum cum*).

<sup>c</sup> Only a pronoun.

<sup>d</sup> 'had a great number in garrison.'

*in ditionem ejus pervenire*.

<sup>f</sup> *arcessita ratio mortis*.

<sup>g</sup> *dirigere*.

<sup>h</sup> a riding stick, *virga, quâ aliquis ad regendum equum utitur*. The tense of the verb, of course, to be altered according to circumstances.

<sup>i</sup> *accendi*.

<sup>j</sup> 'stabbed (*confodere*) Crassus's side with his dagger.'

<sup>k</sup> I. 509.

<sup>l</sup> *turpitudine*.

<sup>m</sup> *majestas*: which Cic. attributes to consuls, judges, &c.

## Exercise 57.

*It was ever my persuasion*,<sup>a</sup> that<sup>b</sup> all friendships should be maintained<sup>c</sup> with a *religious exactness*,<sup>d</sup> but especially<sup>e</sup> those which<sup>f</sup>

are renewed<sup>s</sup> after<sup>27)</sup> a quarrel :<sup>b</sup> because<sup>i</sup> in friendships [hitherto] uninterrupted; a failure<sup>k</sup> of duty is easily excused<sup>i</sup> by a plea<sup>m</sup> of inadvertency, or, to<sup>1)</sup> put a worse construction<sup>n</sup> upon it, of negligence : [whereas] if, after a reconciliation,<sup>o</sup> any [new] offence be given,<sup>p</sup> it does not pass for negligent, but wilful :<sup>q</sup> and is not \*imputed<sup>21</sup> to inadvertency, but to perfidy.

<sup>a</sup> 'I have always thought.' <sup>b</sup> Connect these two clauses by *quum—tum* both—and). <sup>c</sup> *tueri*. <sup>d</sup> 'with the greatest scrupulousness (*religio*) and fidelity.' <sup>e</sup> 'In *quum—tum*, the *tum* is often strengthened by *vero, certe etiam, præcipue, maxime*.' <sup>f</sup> I. 476. <sup>g</sup> *reconciliari in gratiam*. <sup>h</sup> *inimicitiae*, pl. <sup>i</sup> *propterea quod*. <sup>j</sup> *integer*. <sup>k</sup> *prætermittere*. <sup>l</sup> *defendere*. <sup>m</sup> *excusatio*. <sup>n</sup> *gravius interpretari*. <sup>o</sup> *reditus in gratiam*. <sup>p</sup> 'any thing is committed.' I. 389—91. <sup>q</sup> 'is not thought neglected, but violated.'

### Exercise 58.

Having called together his men for the purpose of addressing them,<sup>a</sup> 'Know,' he says, 'that in a very few days from this time,<sup>b</sup> the king will be here<sup>c</sup> with ten legions, thirty thousand horse, a hundred thousand light-armed<sup>d</sup> [troops], and<sup>e</sup> three hundred elephants. Therefore let certain persons cease to inquire or \*imagine [any thing] beyond [this], and let them believe me, who have certain knowledge :<sup>f</sup> or, assuredly,<sup>g</sup> I will order them (p) to be put on board<sup>h</sup> the oldest vessels [in the service], and to be carried to whatever country the wind may happen to take them.'

<sup>a</sup> 'to an assembly.' *ad concionem vocare, advocare, or convocare*.—in *concionem advocare*. (M. L. 4.) <sup>b</sup> The pron. *hic*, in agreement with 'days.' In I. 311 *paucis his diebus* is given for 'a few days ago.' It may also mean 'within a few days ;' the *hic* marks nearness to the speaker (i. e. to the time of his speaking), on either side. <sup>c</sup> *adesse*. <sup>d</sup> *levis armatura*. <sup>e</sup> Diff. 88. <sup>f</sup> See above, Ex. 3, c. *compertum habere*. Compare *perspectum habere, absolutum habere*, I. 264. <sup>g</sup> *aut quidem* : the *quidem* adding emphasis to the *aut*. <sup>h</sup> V. M. 23 <sup>i</sup> 'by any wind whatever into any lands whatever.' *quicunque*.

### Exercise 59.

On<sup>16)</sup> his approach being announced, L. Plancus, who \*commanded the legions, being compelled by the critical state of affairs,<sup>a</sup> takes [a position on] a rising ground, and draws up his army in two divisions<sup>b</sup> facing different ways,<sup>c</sup> that he may not (414) be

surrounded by the cavalry. Thus, *though his forces were inferior*,<sup>d</sup> he kept his ground<sup>e</sup> against furious charges [both] of the legions and of the cavalry. When (*p*) the cavalry were already engaged, both parties † behold at a distance<sup>f</sup> the standards of two legions, which V. Attius had sent from the upper bridge to the support<sup>g</sup> of our troops, *anticipating what really occurred*,<sup>h</sup> that<sup>i</sup> the generals of the opposite party would use the opportunity unexpectedly offered them, to fall upon our men. By the approach of these (*r*) legions the battle was broken off,<sup>j</sup> and each general marched back his legions to his camp.

<sup>a</sup> *necessaria res.*      <sup>b</sup> *pars.*      <sup>c</sup> *diversus*, in agreement with *acies*.

<sup>d</sup> 'having engaged (*congregati*) with an unequal number.'      <sup>e</sup> *sustinere* (to support: to bear without yielding). Use the *historical* present.      <sup>f</sup> V. M. 24.

<sup>g</sup> *subsidiū*. Use the construction I. 242.      <sup>h</sup> 'suspecting [that] that would be which happened,' *accidere* or *contingere*. Why? M. L. 1.      <sup>i</sup> 'U' is sometimes used (with subj.) as explanatory of a demonstrative pronoun,—where *quod* might rather have been expected, or the acc. and inf.      <sup>j</sup> Pres. histor.—*dirimere*.

### Exercise 60.

Whilst he was preparing and carrying out<sup>a</sup> these [plans], he sends his lieutenant, C. Fabius, before him into Spain, with three legions, which he had put into winter-quarters at Narbo *and its neighbourhood*,<sup>b</sup> and directs that the passes<sup>c</sup> of the Pyrenees should be quickly seized, which L. Valerius † was then occupying with his troops:<sup>d</sup> the other legions, *which were in more remote winter-quarters*,<sup>e</sup> he orders to follow. Fabius, *according to his instructions*,<sup>f</sup> having made great despatch, *clears the pass*,<sup>g</sup> and proceeded by forced marches against Valerius's army.

<sup>a</sup> *administrare.*      <sup>b</sup> *circum ea loca.*      <sup>c</sup> *saltus*. So *saltus Thermopylarum*. (Liv.)      <sup>d</sup> *præsidia*.      <sup>e</sup> 'which were-in-winter-quarters (*hiemare*) further-off.'      <sup>f</sup> 'as had been commanded.'      <sup>g</sup> *præsidium ex saltu dejicere*. *dejicere* in this sense is a *technical* term of military science.

### ON THE TENSES IN A LETTER.

1. It is a peculiarity in Roman letter-writing, that the writer puts himself (as it were) in the time when the letter *will be received*, and thus speaks of what *he is doing*, as what *he was doing*.

and so uses the *imperfect* and *pluperfect* instead of the *present* and *perfect*.

2. Thus: 'I have nothing to write,' *nihil habebam quod scriberem*: 'I have heard no news,' *nihil novi audieram*. And this extends to the *adverbs*: instead of 'yesterday,' we find 'the day before.'

3. To see that these are the tenses the receiver would use, suppose him relating the substance of such a letter: *tum quum Cicero hanc epistolam scripsit, nihil habebat quod scriberet, neque enim novi quidquam audierat, et ad omnes meas epistolas rescripserat pridie, &c.*

4. But *general truths* and statements that are not made *relatively to the time of writing* stand in the usual tenses (e. g. *ego te maximi et feci semper et facio*): nor does the use of the imperf. and pluperf. always occur where it *might* stand.

### Exercise 61.

Although I have nothing to write,<sup>a</sup> and moreover † am possessed by a<sup>27</sup> strange unwillingness<sup>b</sup> to write<sup>c</sup> [at all], yet I am unwilling that this good-for-nothing<sup>d</sup> [lad of] mine should go to your neighbourhood<sup>d</sup> without [any] letters of mine to you. I love you more every day,<sup>e</sup> because I am \*persuaded that you<sup>f</sup> † love<sup>f</sup> your studies<sup>g</sup> in the same way. But I would wish you to write to me an accurate statement<sup>h</sup> with what \*author you are now engaged, whether Cicero or Terence, or as<sup>i</sup> I would rather [have it], with both? You ought also to take pains<sup>j</sup> to employ, in what you write<sup>k</sup> to me, the phrases<sup>l</sup> which you have observed in their works: that this<sup>m</sup> itself may be a proof<sup>n</sup> to me of the \*accuracy with which you read them.<sup>o</sup> Farewell. Tibur, Aug. 28.

<sup>a</sup> Use the favorite form *nihil est quod* (477).      <sup>b</sup> odium.      <sup>c</sup> verbero (onis).

<sup>d</sup> What adv. expresses 'to where you are,' 'to your neighbourhood?' I. 387.

<sup>e</sup> Distinguish between *quotidie*, *indies*. Which is used in both senses? I. 69, 1. To be expressed by the passive voice, to avoid the ambiguity which the two accusatives would occasion. 'amuse yourself,' *oblectare*. See Död. *oblectatio*.

<sup>f</sup> *litterarum studia*.      <sup>h</sup> 'accurately.'      <sup>i</sup> 'which.'      <sup>j</sup> *dare operam*

(followed by *ut*).      <sup>k</sup> shall write—shall have observed (*notare*): the conduct being recommended as what should be followed in future.      <sup>l</sup> *loquendi genera*.

<sup>m</sup> Express *res*.      <sup>n</sup> *fidem facere cujus rei*.      <sup>o</sup> 'of your \*accuracy in reading them.'

*Exercise 62.*

If I had as often<sup>a</sup> encountered<sup>b</sup> toils and dangers against<sup>c</sup> you and my country, and our household-gods, as I have from the beginning<sup>d</sup> of my manhood † scattered *by my arms* your most wicked enemies, and † won<sup>e</sup> safety for you, you could not have decided<sup>f</sup> any thing more against me *in my absence*, O Conscript Fathers, than you have hitherto been doing. You first<sup>g</sup> hurried me off, *though not yet of the legal age*,<sup>h</sup> to a most cruel war, and then<sup>i</sup> destroyed me, with my most deserving army, by hunger, the most wretched of all deaths.<sup>37</sup> Was this the hope with which the Roman people sent out her children to war? are these the rewards for our wounds, and for<sup>18</sup> our so often shedding our blood for our country? Being tired of writing and sending messengers, I have exhausted all my private resources and expectations, whilst<sup>h</sup> you all the time have in three years sent the pay of scarcely one year.<sup>i</sup>

<sup>a</sup> 'so many' [toils, &c.]. A sentence is occasionally arranged in this not strictly accurate way, where *tot* refers to *quoties*. (Thus Cic. pro Balbo, 20; *et tot consulibus meruisset, quoties ipse consul fuisset*.) 'under my command,' *ductu meo*. <sup>b</sup> *suscipere*. <sup>c</sup> I. 179. <sup>d</sup> *quaerere* (which is often used of a successful search: nearly = *invenire*). <sup>e</sup> To 'do,' when used in this way as the representative of a preceding verb (here *to be doing* = *to be deciding*), is mostly *facere*, but sometimes *agere*: e. g. Sall. Cat. 52, 19. <sup>f</sup> First—then may often be translated by turning the verb with 'first' into a past participle, thus 'me, being hastened away—you destroyed,' &c. 'To hurry a man off, *projicere* (if he be sent away recklessly, to be never cared for afterwards). <sup>g</sup> 'against [my] age,' *contra aetatem*. <sup>h</sup> *quum*—*interim*, words often used indignantly of conduct that is a strong contrast to what it *should* have been. <sup>i</sup> 'scarcely one-year's pay has been given by you.' One-year's, *annuus*. Pay, *stipendium*; but *sumptus* when considered as given to the commander-in-chief to defray with it all the expenses of the war.

*Exercise 63.*

(*The same subject continued.*)

By the immortal gods, is it<sup>10</sup> that you think I serve<sup>a</sup> for a treasury? or that I can have an army without provisions and pay? I confess that I set out for this war with more zeal than prudence; seeing that<sup>b</sup> (*p*) though I had received from you only the name of *general*,<sup>c</sup> I raised an army in forty days, and drove back<sup>d</sup> the enemy, (*p*) who were already hanging over Italy,<sup>e</sup> from the Alps



into Spain. Over<sup>f</sup> these [mountains] I opened<sup>e</sup> a different<sup>a</sup> road from [that which] Hannibal [opened], and [one] more convenient for us. I recovered Gaul, the Pyrenees, Laetania, the Indigetes; and with newly-raised<sup>i</sup> troops, and much inferior [in number], stood the first attack of the victorious<sup>e</sup> Sertorius: and [then] spent the winter in camp, amongst the most savage enemies; not in the towns, or *with any such indulgence to my troops as a regard to my own popularity with them would have suggested.*<sup>k</sup>

<sup>a</sup> *præstare vicem* (alicujus rei).

<sup>b</sup> *quippe qui*: here with indic. I. 482.

<sup>c</sup> 'of a command,' *imperium*.

<sup>d</sup> *summovère*.

<sup>e</sup> *in cervicibus jam*

*Italia agere*. Nearly so: *nunc in cervicibus sumus*, 'are immediately upon them:' *bellum ingens in cervicibus erat*, 'impended:' both Liv.

<sup>f</sup> *per*.

<sup>g</sup> V. M. 7.

<sup>h</sup> 'different from,' *alius atque*.

<sup>i</sup> *novus*.

<sup>j</sup> *sustinère*.

<sup>k</sup> *ex ambitione mea*. The kind of *ambitio* meant, is the courting

popularity with an army by allowing it such indulgences as comfortable winter quarters, &c.

### Exercise 64.

(The same subject continued.)

Why should I go on to enumerate<sup>a</sup> the battles [I have fought], my winter expeditions, or the towns (*p*) that I have retaken or destroyed? since facts are stronger<sup>b</sup> than words. The taking<sup>c</sup> of the enemy's camp at the Sucro,<sup>e</sup> the battle at the Darius,<sup>d</sup> the (*p*) utter destruction<sup>e</sup> of C. Herennius, the general of our enemies, with Valentia, and his whole army, are apparent<sup>f</sup> enough to you. and for these (*r*) [benefits] you give us in return,<sup>g</sup> ye grateful Fathers, want and famine. And thus the condition of my army and that of my enemies is the same: for pay *is given to neither*<sup>h</sup> [of them]: and each, [if] || *victorious*, may come into Italy. [Wherefore] I advise and beseech you to<sup>i</sup> attend to this (*r*), and not compel me, by my necessities, to consult my own interests *apart from those of the state.*<sup>j</sup>

<sup>a</sup> 'Why should I after this (*dein*, for *deinde*) enumerate?' (*sing.*) has more weight.' *plus valere*.

<sup>b</sup> 'the thing

<sup>c</sup> The Xucar.

<sup>d</sup> The Douro.

<sup>e</sup> Use participles. I. 359.

<sup>f</sup> *clarus*.

<sup>g</sup> *reddere*.

<sup>h</sup> 'is given to

neither.'

<sup>i</sup> L. 75.

<sup>j</sup> *privatim*.

## Exercise 65.

(The same subject continued.)

Either I (*pl.*) or Sertorius have laid waste the whole of hither Spain, and cut off all its inhabitants ;<sup>a</sup> except the maritime cities, which [are however only] an additional<sup>b</sup> burden and expense to us. Last year [indeed] Gaul maintained<sup>c</sup> the army of Metellus with money and corn, but now, in consequence of a bad harvest,<sup>d</sup> that [country] hardly supports itself.<sup>e</sup> [For myself] I have exhausted<sup>f</sup> not only my private fortune, but also my credit. You [alone] remain : and, unless you (*r*) succour us, the army, and with it the whole Spanish war, will remove itself from this country<sup>h</sup> into Italy, ‡ against my will, indeed, but according to my predictions.<sup>i</sup>

<sup>a</sup> 'have wasted hither Spain to extermination,' *ad internecionem vastare*.

<sup>b</sup> Express by the adv. *ultra* (properly meaning, 'further on'). See I. 237.

<sup>c</sup> *alere*.      <sup>d</sup> *malis fructibus*.

<sup>e</sup> 'itself hardly gets on.' *agitare*.

<sup>f</sup> *consumere*.      <sup>g</sup> *transgredi*.

<sup>h</sup> 'hence.'

<sup>i</sup> 'I being unwilling and [yet] foretelling.'

## Exercise 66.

Herennius, since his rear<sup>a</sup> was pressed by the cavalry, and he saw the enemy before him, (*p*) when he had reached<sup>b</sup> a certain hill, halted there. From this he despatched<sup>c</sup> four cohorts of targeteers<sup>d</sup> to the highest of all the hills in sight ;<sup>e</sup> and orders them to make all possible haste to take possession of this,<sup>f</sup> with the intention of following<sup>g</sup> them with all his troops, and, changing his route, reach Octogesa by the hills. As the targeteers were making for this hill in an oblique line, the cavalry of Marius (*p*) saw [them] and charged the cohorts ; who<sup>h</sup> did not stand for a single moment against the impetuosity of the cavalry, but (*p*) were surrounded by them, and all cut to pieces in the sight of both armies.

<sup>a</sup> *novissimum agmen*.

<sup>b</sup> *nancisci*.

<sup>c</sup> *mittere*. Use the historical present.

<sup>d</sup> *cetrati*.

<sup>e</sup> 'to a hill which was the highest of all in sight.' Döb. *videre* (4).

<sup>f</sup> 'with that intention, that he — would follow.'

<sup>g</sup> *magno cursu concitato occupare*.

<sup>h</sup> 'nor did the targeteers stand,' &c.

## Exercise 67.

I have received your three<sup>a)</sup> letters: but in the last there were some [parts] so carelessly written, that it was plain<sup>a</sup> you were thinking of something else when you wrote it. I will show you these [faults], when I come *to your part of the world*,<sup>b</sup> and shall pull your ear,<sup>c</sup> that you may be for the future more attentive *when you write*,<sup>d</sup> and avoid at least such blunders,<sup>e</sup> as even *little boys*<sup>f</sup> would avoid, who are learning their accidence.<sup>g</sup> Do not, however, be distressed by this admonition of mine: for I do not wish to †take away any<sup>h</sup> [thing] by it from your cheerfulness, but †to add [somewhat] to your attention. Adieu. Tibur, 23 Sept.

- <sup>a</sup> 'It is plain,' *facile constat*: 'to be thinking of something else,' *aliud agere*.  
<sup>b</sup> 'to where you are:' to be expressed by an adv. derived from *iste*, the demonstrative of the second person. I. 387.      <sup>c</sup> *auriculam pervellere*.  
<sup>d</sup> 'in writing.'      <sup>e</sup> *error* or *solecismus* (a solecism).      <sup>f</sup> *puerulus*  
<sup>g</sup> 'to be learning one's accidence,' *primis literis imbuti*.      <sup>h</sup> I. 389—391.

## Exercise 68.

Your letter *gave me much pleasure*,<sup>a</sup> as every thing [does] that proceeds<sup>b</sup> from you, although you had committed many<sup>c</sup> [faults] in it. But as lisping children<sup>d</sup> are listened to with delight<sup>e</sup> by fathers, and even their very mistakes are a pleasure to them, so this your infancy *of letter-writing*<sup>f</sup> is delightful to me. I send you it<sup>g</sup> back corrected by my own hand. For so, you know, we agreed.<sup>h</sup> Do you, *dear, dear*<sup>i</sup> Alexander, pursue with spirit<sup>j</sup> the path, to which your natural disposition leads you, and which *I have always exhorted and urged you to follow*.<sup>k</sup> I have, by my report<sup>l</sup> [of you], raised great expectations in the minds of your parents:<sup>m</sup> and you must now take all possible pains<sup>n</sup> that neither I nor they †may be disappointed<sup>o</sup> in them (*r*). Adieu. Tibur, July 7, 1570.

- <sup>a</sup> '[was] || sweet to me.'      <sup>b</sup> *proficisci (ab aliquo)*.      <sup>c</sup> By *multa peccare*.  
<sup>d</sup> *filii*.      <sup>e</sup> *libenter*.      <sup>f</sup> *in literis*.      <sup>g</sup> 'It itself.'      <sup>h</sup> 'We agree [to do any thing],' *convenit inter nos*.      <sup>i</sup> *dulcissime ac suavissime*.      <sup>j</sup> *magna*  
<sup>k</sup> *zimo*.      <sup>l</sup> 'and I have always been your exhorter and impeller.'      <sup>m</sup> *testi-*  
<sup>n</sup> *monium*.      <sup>o</sup> *magnam spem (alicujus) apud (aliquem) concitare*.      <sup>p</sup> *omni-*  
*tur & ac studio providere*.      <sup>q</sup> *spes fallit aliquem*.

## C A U T I O N S.

---

1. (a) Take care not to translate the English inf., when it expresses a purpose, by the Latin infinitive.—To make out whether the infin. expresses a purpose, try whether you can substitute for it 'in order that,' or 'that.'
- (b) The infin. after 'have,' 'is,' is to be translated by the part. in *dus*. with the proper tense of *esse*.
 

(Eng.) { I have something to do.  
          { There is something for me to do.

(Lat.) Something is to be done by me.
- (c) 'There is something for me to do,' may also mean, *there is something, which I may do, est aliquid, quod agam.*
2. In translating 'ago' by *abhinc*, remember, (1) that it must precede the numeral; (2) that the numeral must be a cardinal, not an ordinal, numeral; and (3) that the accusative is more common than the abl.
 

(a) Hence *abhinc annos quatuordecim* is right; *tertio abhinc anno, quarto decimo abhinc die*, doubly wrong; *tribus abhinc annis*, or *tres abhinc annos*, wrong.
3. Take care not to translate 'from' by 'a' or 'ab' in the following constructions:—
  - (1) To derive or receive pleasure, pain, profit, &c., *from, capere voluptatem, dolorem, fructum, desiderium ex* (not *ab*) *aliquâ re.*
  - (2) To hear from any body, *audire ex aliquo.*
  - (3) 'From [being] such—becomes so and so,'—*ex.*
  - (4) From such a district, town, &c. (it being a man's birth-place or residence)—*ex.*
  - (5) To recover from a disease, *convalescere ex morbo.*
  - (6) To return from a journey, *redire, reverti ex itinere.*
  - (7) From, = 'on account of,' *propter.* 'From their hatred against any body.'
  - (8) To fling or throw oneself from a wall, *se de muro dejicere (Cæs.): se ex muro præcipitare (Cic.).*
  - (9) From, = out of, *ex.*
4. When a substantive is followed by a relative clause which defines it, be careful not to omit the demonstrative *is, ea, id,* or *ille* (if there is emphasis), with the substantive, if a particular thing is meant. To determine this, try whether you cannot substitute 'that' for 'a' or 'the.'
 

(a) Thus: 'the oration which he delivered,' &c. (= *that particular oration which he delivered*), *ea oratio, quam habuit, &c.*

(b) So, when a substantive is defined by a relative adverb, the 'a' or 'the' is to be translated by a pron. Thus:

(Eng.) There will be a day, *when*, &c.

(Lat.) There will be *that* day, *when*, &c. (*quum*).

(Eng.) *The* day will come, *when*, &c.

(Lat.) *That* day will come. *when* &c. (*quum*). [Comp. Caution 13.]

5. Be very careful not to translate the English infinitive after a substantive or adjective, by the *Lat. infinitive*, unless you have authority for it. Always consider what the *relation* is, in which the infinitive stands. Can it be translated by a gerund in *di*? by *ad* with the gerundive (a participle in *dus*)? by a *relative clause*, &c.?

Thus: A desire *to pray*, = a desire *of praying*.

A knife *to cut* my bread *with*, = (1) a knife *for cutting* my bread; (2) a knife, *with which I may cut* my bread.

Obs. The '*for cutting my bread*' will not in Latin depend on *knife*, but on the verb: e. g. I borrowed a knife for cutting my bread *with*, = '*for the purpose of cutting my bread, I borrowed a knife.*'

6. Take care not to translate '*assert*' = '*affirm*,' by *asserere*, but by *affirmare*, *confirmare*, *dicere*, *docere*, *pronuntiare*, &c.; or, if followed by a *not* or other negative, *negare*.
7. Take care not to translate '*honour*' by *honor* or *honos*, when it means not '*an honour*' (i. e. external mark of respect), but '*the inward principle of honour*' (*honestas*); or '*integrity*,' '*trustworthiness*' (*fides*).
8. From *nemo*, let me never see { but *nullius* and *nullo*: or (after negative) *Neminis* or *nemine*; { tives) *cujusquam*, *quoquam*.
9. When a clause that *follows* another in English, is to *precede* it in Latin, it is often necessary to place in it a word from the preceding sentence.  
Thus: '*Alexander was blamed | because he indulged in drinking.*'  
'Because *Alexander* indulged in drinking, he was blamed.'
- (a) This is especially the case, when a *pronoun* in the second clause refers to a substantive in the first.
10. From our having hardly any power of altering the order of words in a sentence, it is very difficult to give emphasis to an oblique case without placing it in a separate sentence with the verb *to be*. Thus: '*I desire something*' very much, (the '*something*' being emphatic) would become: '*there is something, that I desire very much.*' Hence  
In a sentence beginning with '*it is*' or '*it was*' before '*that*,' the '*it is*' or '*it was*' is omitted, and the sentence with '*that*' made a principal sentence.  
(Eng.) *It is* the manufacturers, *that* I complain of.  
(Lat.) I complain of the manufacturers.\*
- (a) So in a sentence beginning with '*it is but*' or '*it was but*,' and followed by '*that*,' &c.  
(Eng.) It was but very slowly that he recovered.  
(Lat.) He did not recover *but* (= except, nisi) very slowly.
11. The boy has but a stupid head,  
Who always for a *but* puts *sed*

---

\* Instead of '*that*,' which is here a relative, *who* or *which* may occur. '*It is the farmers of whom I complain.*'

Or *at* : for other meanings '*but*' has got :

'*Only*,' '*except*,' '*at least*,' or '*who*' with '*not*.'

- (1) '*Stay but one day*' = stay *only* one day (*solum* or *modo*).
- (2) '*Do but stay*' = *at least* (or *at all events*) stay (*saltem*).
- (3) '*Nobody but Cæsar*' = nobody *except* Cæsar (*nisi* or *præter*).
- (4) '*There is nobody but thinks*' = there is nobody *who* does *not* think (*quin* or *qui nōn*).
- (5) '*Not to doubt but or but that*' . . . = *non dubitare quin*, &c.
12. '*No*' before another adjective, as in '*a man of no great learning*,' must be translated by *non*, not *nullus*.
13. '*The*,' when it relates to something that preceded, is often to be translated by a demonstrative pronoun. For instance, if it had been mentioned that a day had been fixed, if it were afterwards stated that '*the day*' arrived, it must be '*that day*' in Latin.

Hence, when '*the*' means a particular thing before-mentioned, it must be translated by a demonstrative pronoun. Or, in other words, when for '*the*' we might substitute '*that*,' it must be translated by the demonstrative pronoun. [Compare Caution 4.]\*

14. '*That*,' in a clause following a comparative with *quam*, or *alius*, *malle*, &c., is not translated.

(*Eng.*) I had rather support my country's cause than *that* of a private man.

(*Lat.*) *Patriæ causam malo, quam privati sustinere.*

15. Take care not to translate '*of*' by a gen., in the following constructions :—
  - (a) To deserve well *of* any body, bene mereri *de* aliquo.
  - (b) To complain *of* any thing, queri *de* aliquâ re.
  - (c) To be made *of* any thing, factum esse *ex* aliquâ re.
  - (d) A book *of* mine, liber *meus*.
  - (e) How many *of* us, three hundred of us, &c. See Pr. Intr. Pt. I. 174, 175.

16. Take care not to translate '*on*' or '*upon*' by *super*, in the following constructions :—

- (1) To lavish, &c. — *upon* any body, conferre — *in* aliquem.
- (2) To do any thing *on* his march, *in* itinere.
- (3) To sit *on* a throne, *in* solio sedere.
- (4) *On* this being known, } '*this being known*,' *abl. abs.*  
*Upon* —————, }
- (5) To write *on* a subject, scribere *de* (sometimes *super*) aliquâ re.
- (6) *On* describing the troops, 'the troops being described,' *abl. abs.*

17. Take care not to translate '*for*' by *pro*, in the following constructions :—

- (1) *For* many reasons, multis *de* causis.  
*For* which reason, quâ *de* causâ. Cic.  
*For* a weighty reason, gravi *de* causâ. Cic.  
*The reasons for* which, . . . causæ, *propter* quas, &c

---

\* I have inadvertently referred sometimes to this Caution instead of to Caution 4.

For that reason, *ob causam* causam. Cic.

For this reason, *propter* hoc.

- (2) Good or useful for any purpose, *utilis ad* aliquid.

Fit for, *aptus* or *idoneus ad* aliquid: also dative.

- (3) For, = a cause, abl.

(4) For = concerning, e. g. to battle for any thing, *de* aliqua re.

(5) My reason for not doing this, *causa non faciendæ hujus rei*.

8. Amongst, before the name of a nation, amongst whom a habit prevailed, is usually *apud* (not *inter*): sometimes 'in' with abl.

19. When two substantives are governed by the same preposition, the preposition is repeated, unless the two substantives are to form, as it were, one complex notion. Hence they are repeated whenever the two substantives are opposed to each other. Hence in

(a) *et—et*; *nec—nec*; . . . always repeat the preposition.

(b) *aut—aut*; *vel—vel*

after *nisi*,

after *quam* following a comparative,

Thus: *et in bello et in pace*: *nec in bello nec in pace*: *in nullâ aliâ re nisi in virtute*: *in nullâ aliâ re quam in virtute*.

10. Take care not to use *apparere* when 'appears' = 'seems' (*videtur*): nor to use *videri* (but *apparere*) when appears = 'is manifest'; or 'makes its appearance.'

21. A boy who is thoughtful is never perplex.

By 'then's' meaning 'at that time,' and 'therefore,' and 'next.'

(a) THEN, = 'at that time,' *tum tunc*; = 'next,' *deinde*; = 'therefore,' *igitur*, &c.

22. 'Men' is often used for 'soldiers,' *milites*. 'His men' should be 'his,' if there is any reference to their commander: if not, *milites*, 'the soldiers.'

23. 'Before' a town should be *ad*, not *ante*. See I. 457.

24. Choose often means, to 'wish,' to 'be pleased,' &c., *velle*, not *eligere*, &c.  
e. g. 'if you had chosen to do this' (*si voluisses*).

25. In modern English *there* is often used for *thither*, and must be translated by the adverbs meaning 'to that place' (*huc*, *illuc*, &c.)

26. 'Crime' is not *crimen* (which is 'a charge,' 'an accusation') but *scelus*, *facinus*, &c.

27. Take care not to translate *after* by *post*, in the following constructions:

(1) To be reconciled after a quarrel, *reconciliari in gratiam ex inimicitiiis*, &c

(2) Immediately after the battle, *confestim a prælio*.

28. Take care not to translate *in* by 'in,' in the following construction:

(1) It is written in Greek authors, *scriptum est apud Græcos*.

29. In 'this is life,' let 'this' with 'life' agree:

*Hoc id*, or *illud*, barbarous would be.

30. 'Ought' is a word that requires care: for it is often translated by an im-

---

\* Sometimes a common preposition preceding the conjunction is not repeated with *et—et*; *aut—aut*; e. g. *cum et nocturna et diurna metu*.

perfect or fut. indicative, where *our* idiom would lead us to use the present.

- (a) When a *present duty*, &c., exists, but is *not* acted upon, the imperfect is often used, especially when it is a *general duty*. (*Madvig*. 308.)

☞ Hence, when '*you ought*' = '*you ought (but do not)*,' use *aedebam* or *oportebat*.

- (b) When *ought* refers to what *will be* right or proper, *when* or *after something has taken place*, use *oportebit*, *debete*.

- (1) The '*after*' is often implied by an abl. absol., the participle being of the passive voice.

31. Remember the care with which the Romans mark both the *completion* of every *precedent* action, and the *futurity* of every *future* action.

- (a) Remember that the *fut. perf. of direct* becomes the *pluperf. subj. in oblique* narration.

32. When one verb has '*indeed*,' and the next '*but*,' take care not to *omit* the *pronoun* in Latin, if the *nom.* to the verb is a *pronoun*.

- (a) This pronoun should be followed by the *quidem*: if it is *ego*, write *equidem* for *ego quidem*.\*

(*Eng.*) He did not *indeed* laugh, but he smiled.

(*Lat.*) *Non risit ille quidem, sed subrisit.*

33. When for '*so that*' (introducing a consequence) you could put '*in such a manner, that*,' take care not to use *ut* only, but *ita—ut*, placing the *ita* in the preceding sentence.

34. Take care to use a *distributive* numeral instead of a cardinal one, with a *plural* noun used in a *singular* sense, as *literæ*, *castra*, &c.

☞ But observe, *uni* and *terni* are used, not *singuli* or *trini*.

\* For *equidem*, though probably not compounded of *ego quidem*, is yet used where *quidem* with the *personal pronoun* would be used for the *second* or *third* person.



# TABLE

OF

## DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM,

&c.

---

ENGLISH.	LATIN.
1. <i>All—</i> who or which, &c. } All men—who. }	Often :— <i>all—as-many-as</i> ( <i>omnes—</i> quotquot) : which is stronger ; = <i>all</i> <i>without exception.</i>
2. This was not done till afterwards.	This was done afterwards at length ( <i>postea demum</i> ).
{ <i>Nothing</i> is beautiful, but <i>what</i> . { <i>Those</i> things only are beautiful, <i>which</i> .	<i>Those</i> things at length ( <i>ea demum</i> ); <i>which</i> .
3. What do you mean <i>by</i> a wooden wall?	Quem tu intelligis murum ligneum?
4. I am reproached with ignorance.	Ignorance is objected ( <i>objicitur</i> or <i>ex-</i> <i>probratur</i> , which is stronger) to me.
PARTICIPIAL SUBSTANTIVE.	
5. [Nom.] Grieving. Your <i>sparing</i> the conquered is a great thing.	Dolère. It is a great thing, <i>that</i> you have spared the conquered.
6. [Acc.] Grieving.	[Magnum est, quod victis pepercisti.] Dolère. [Se peccati insimulant, quod dolere intermiserint.]
7. FROM, with part. subst. :—	<i>Prohibere</i> —alliquid fieri* (rare). ————— <i>ne fiat.</i> ————— <i>quominus fiat.</i>
(1) To prevent any thing from being done.	<i>Sive eo quod—existimarent, &amp;c</i> <i>Ex eo quod meminisset, &amp;c.</i>
(2) Either from thinking, that, &c.	<i>Tantum abest, ut hoc faciat</i> <i>ut, &amp;c.</i>
(3) He did it from remembering.	<i>Non quod aspernaretur—sed quod, &amp;c</i>
(4) Far from doing this, &c.	
(5) Not from despising—but because, &c.	
8. BY :— [The most usual way is the gerund in <i>do</i> ; or partic. in <i>dus</i> (in agreement).]	

---

\* Principally with the inf. pass : *ignes fieri in castris prohibet* (Cæs.),  
*prohibuit migrari* Vicius (Liv.).

ENGLISH.	LATIN.
By doing this.	(Often) 'this being done,' (abl. abs.).
9. IN:— To be wrong in <i>thinking</i> , &c.	<i>In hoc errare, quod putem</i> , &c
10. WITHOUT:— (1) He did any thing <i>without being asked</i> .	<i>Non rogatus</i> .
(2) He went away <i>without reading</i> the letter.	He went away, <i>the letter not being read</i> ( <i>epistolâ non lectâ</i> ).
(3) Many praise poets <i>without understanding</i> them.	Many praise poets, <i>nor understand</i> them ( <i>neque intelligunt</i> ).
(4) He never praised him <i>without adding</i> , &c.	He never praised him <i>so that</i> he did not add ( <i>ut non adjiceret</i> ).
(5) Nor ever saw him <i>without calling</i> him a fratricide.	Nor ever saw him <i>but</i> she called him a fratricide ( <i>quin—compellaret</i> ).
(6) I enjoy any thing <i>indeed</i> , but <i>not without perceiving</i> , &c.	I <i>so</i> enjoy any thing, <i>that</i> I perceive [ <i>aliquâ re itz potior, ut animadvertam</i> , &c.]
(7) I enjoy any thing <i>without perceiving</i> , &c.	I <i>so</i> enjoy any thing, <i>that</i> I do not perceive [ <i>aliquâ re ita potior, ut non animadvertam</i> , &c.]
11. TO:—Generally <i>ad</i> , with part. in <i>dus</i> . See <i>Obs.</i> on <i>FOR</i> .	
12. THROUGH:—By part. in <i>dus</i> , abl. of gerund; or by <i>ex eo quod</i> with subj. See <i>Df.</i> 7, <i>FROM</i> (2).	
*12. OF:—The gerund in <i>di</i> , or the part. in <i>dus</i> , in the gen., is the most usual form; but these forms do not always serve.	
(1) 'Let nobody repent of having preferred following,' &c.	<i>Ne quem pœniteat sequi maluisse</i> , &c.
(2) 'I do not despair of there being some one,' &c.	<i>Non despero fore aliquem</i> , &c.
(3) 'I think he should repent of having given up his opinion.'	<i>Ego illi, quod de sua sententiâ desessisset, pœnitendum censeo</i> .
(4) 'They accused Socrates of corrupting,' &c.	<i>Socratem accusarunt, quod corrumpere</i> , &c.
(5) 'Instead of.' See 32.	
13. FOR:— (1) 'Pardon me for writing.'	<i>Ignosce mihi, quod scribam</i> .
(2) 'To revile, abuse a man for having done any thing.'	<i>Maledicere homini, cur fecerit</i> , &c.
(3) 'Many reasons occurred to me for thinking,' &c.	<i>Multa mihi veniebant in mentem, quamobrem—putarem</i> , &c.
(4) 'I thank you for compelling me to do this.'	<i>Gratias ago, quod me (hoc facere) coegisti</i> .
(5) 'You are greatly to blame for having done this.'	<i>Magna tua est culpa, qui hoc feceris</i> .
14. And not.	Nor.
And nobody, nothing, no where, never, no	Nor any thing, nor any body, nor any where, nor ever, nor any ( <i>nec quidquam, quisquam, usquam, unquam, ullus</i> (or <i>quisquam</i> )).
And hardly any.*	Nor scarcely any ( <i>neque ullus fere</i> ).

\* The exceptions are, (1) When the negative is to be emphatic, *et semper me adit et a studiis nostris non abhorret*: (2) When *et non* or *ac non* = *not rather* or *much more* = *ac rôn potius* (the *potius* being often expressed), *si res verba postularêt, ac non pro se ips: loqueretur*.

ENGLISH.	LATIN.
15. Hardly any. Hardly any body.	<i>Prope nullus.</i> <i>Nemo fere.</i>
16. Your } His } accomplishments. Their }	<i>Sometimes</i> : 'the accomplishments which are in you, him, them,' &c.
17. AFTER with the <i>participial subst.</i> is mostly translated by the perf. participle.	{ (Eng.) <i>After having suffered</i> (or <i>suffering</i> ) this, I went, &c. { (Lat.) <i>Having suffered</i> this, I went, &c. { (Eng.) <i>After consuming</i> the corn, he went, &c. { (Lat.) The corn <i>being consumed</i> , he went, &c.
18. It is kind in you to ask me, &c.	You act kindly indeed, (in) that you ask me. ( <i>facis amice tu quidem, quod me rogas, &amp;c.</i> )
19. I shall accomplish <i>what</i> , &c.	(Often) I shall accomplish that ( <i>hoc</i> or <i>illud</i> ), <i>quod</i> , &c. : i. e. the dem. pron. is often inserted.
20. If they <i>happen</i> to do, &c.	If <i>perchance</i> they do, &c. ( <i>si forte</i> ).
21. It is ascribed, &c. (of a <i>general truth</i> ).	It is wont ( <i>solet</i> ) to be ascribed (Often: not always.)
22. <i>And then</i> Aristotle! (i. e. is not he a case in point? &c. in <i>appeals</i> introduced in an argument.)	What Aristotle? <i>Quid Aristoteles?</i>
23. A. <i>is right</i> in saying.	A. <i>rightly</i> says ( <i>recte</i> ).
24. From which.	Often ' <i>whence</i> ?' <i>unde</i> .
25. It seems likely [enough] that he will call, &c.	He seems about-to-call ( <i>videtur vocaturus</i> ).
26. <i>For</i> —not, &c.	<i>Neque enim</i> : but <i>non enim</i> is not uncommon even in Cic.; and is to be preferred, when there is any antithesis : i. e. when followed by a ' <i>but</i> .'
27. A strange fury	A <i>certain</i> strange fury ( <i>quidam</i> after the adj.—this addition of <i>quidam</i> to an adj. is very common).
28. <i>Must</i> (of a necessary inference). See to what a condition the state <i>must</i> come. He <i>must</i> have made great progress. What progress he <i>must</i> have made!	Cic. often translates this by <i>putare</i> . <i>Vide quem in locum rempublicam venturum putetis.</i> <i>Putandus</i> est multum profecisse. Quos progressus eum <i>putamus</i> fecisse!
29. To be on the point of being killed.	<i>In eo esse ut</i> interficeretur; or with part. in <i>rus</i> with <i>jam</i> . <i>Jam cursurum esse.</i>
To be on the point to run.	Examples.—1. <i>Sic</i> a majoribus suis acceperant, tanta esse beneficia, &c. C.—2. Quum sibi <i>ita</i> persuasisset ipse, meas — literas, &c. ( <i>with infin.</i> ) C.—3. Se <i>ita</i> a patribus <i>didicisse</i> , ut magis virtute quam dolo contenderent. <i>Cæs.</i> —4. <i>Ita</i> Helvetios — <i>institutos esse, ut</i> — consuerint, &c. <i>Cæs.</i> —5. <i>Ita</i> enim definit, <i>ut</i> perturbatio sit.
30. <i>Ita, sic</i> are often used where they seem superfluous, e. g. (1) With verbs of <i>hearing, learning, affirming, doubting, &amp;c.</i> —They are then generally followed by the <i>infin.</i> (if the verb would otherwise be so constructed), or with <i>ut</i> and the subj.	<i>Ita</i> sentit <i>ut</i> loquitur. <i>Ita</i> facere aliquid— <i>tanquam</i> . Est <i>ita</i> ut dicitur. <i>In Nervii.</i>
(2) Also in adverbial sentences of equality: He thinks <i>as</i> he speaks. To do any thing as if, &c. It is as is said.	
31. In the case of the Nervii.	
32. Participial substantive with ' <i>instead of</i> .'	

**ENGLISH.**

(1) Instead of reading, &c.

(2) Why do you laugh *instead of crying*?

**33. Participial subst. with 'far from.'**

(1) *Far from doing this*, he does that,  
&c.

(2) To be *far from doing* any thing.

(3) To be *not far from doing*, &c.

34. (1) A, B, C, *and* such, &c. }  
                  similar, &c. }

(2) A, B, C, *and* the rest. }  
          others. }

**35. Despairing.**

**36. Not *very* ancient.**

**37. The most wretched of all states.**

33. The very celebrated Clergy.

**LATIN.**

*Quum possit, or quum debeat legere, &c., according as the thing not done was a duty omitted, or merely a thing that might have been done.*

*Cur rides ac non potius lacrima-  
ris?*

(1) *Tantum abest ut*—*ut* (with subj.)—  
or, if the verb has a 'not' with it,  
*tantum abest ut*—*ut ne*—*quidem*, &c.

(2) *Longe abesse ut*, &c. (e. g. ille longissima *aberit, ut credat*, &c.)

(3) *Paulum, haud* or *non multum, o:*  
*haud procul abesse, ut, &c.*

Obs. The *abesse* is to be used *impersonally*.

**A, B, C, such.**

— similar.

**A, B, C, the rest.**

A, B, C, others.

**Since he despairs.**

Since he despaired.

(*Quum* with subj.)

Not so ancient, non *ita antiquus*: but  
non *valde*, non *admodum*, are not bar-

barous, as some teach.

The most wretched *state of all*.

§ Cicero, a very celebrated man.

Cloro, *vir clarissimus.*

## MEMORIAL LINES.

---

1. *Contingit* use of things we like,  
But *accidit* when evils strike.
2. From *nemo* let me never see } Use *nullius, nullo.*  
*Neminis* or *nemine.*
3. For *crime* let *crimen* never come,  
But *scelus, facinus, flagitium.*
4. When the word '*men*' means '*soldiers*,' these  
Should rendered be by *milites.*
5. The boy has but a stupid head,  
Who always for a '*but*' puts *sed*  
Or *at* : for other meanings '*but*' has got ;  
'*Only*,' '*except*,' '*at least*,' and '*who*' with '*not*.'  
(See Caution 11.)
- 6 A boy who is thoughtful is never perplex  
By *then's* meaning '*at that time*' and '*therefore*' and '*next*.'  
(See Caution 21.)
7. In '*this is life*' let '*this*' with '*life*' agree ;  
*Hoc, id* or *illud* barbarous would be.
8. In '*so many apiece*' leave *apiece* quite alone ;  
But of numerals use a distributive one.
9. After these impersonals *ut*  
Or *ne* will be correctly put :  
*Contingit, evenit, or accidit,*  
With *restat, reliquum est* and *fit.*<sup>a</sup>
10. Let '*that*' translated be by *quo,*  
When with comparatives it does go.
11. Vereor *ne,* I fear he *will* ;  
Vereor *ut,* I fear he *won't* :  
Turn *ful.* by *subjunctive present*  
After *fear* : forget it don't.
12. By *ut* translate infinitive  
With *ask, command, advise, and strive.* <sup>b</sup>  
But never be this rule forgot :  
Put *ne* for *ut* when there's a *not.*

---

<sup>a</sup> So after *sequitur* sometimes.

<sup>b</sup> Under *ASK* are included *beg, pray, beseech, &c.* ; under *COMMAND, charge, direct, &c.* ; under *ADVISE, exhort, admonish, persuade, impel, induce, &c.*



16. Dat -*facio*, -*fictor*, -*facio* sed dat tibi -*fio*.<sup>s</sup>
17. Quicquid habet pennas '*volucris*' complectitur: *Alas*  
Magna avis est: *osce*n prædicit *re*ce futura.
18. Ne potius quam non post *dum*, *modo*, *dummodo* dicas.
19. Et *morbum* et morbi spectat *medicamina sano*:  
*Ægrotum* *medeor* spectat *medicumque* peritum.
20. '*Atque igitur*' pravum est '*igiturque*':—'*ideoque*' *Latinum est*.<sup>h</sup>
21. '*Major adhuc*' Romæ dicebat serior ætas:  
Cum Cicerone '*etiam*' sed tu, et cum Cæsare dicas.<sup>l</sup>
22. *Festinare* potes *nimum*: *properare* virorum est  
Optatam quicumque volunt contingere metam.
23. Rectius *in navem* quam *nave imponere* dicas:  
Dicere sed *navi*, scribes si carmina, fas est.<sup>l</sup>
24. Quod *cernis* *procul* esse potest: quæ *longius* absunt  
Humanum effugient rerum discrimina visum.<sup>k</sup>
25. '*Non—pariter*' vites: '*non—æque*' dicere fas est.
26. *Nec* (*neque*) '*vero*' habeat post se: non accipit *autem*.
27. Particulas *ut*, *ne* recte *neve*, *neve* sequuntur.<sup>l</sup>
28. *Eximo* quæ *mala* sunt; *adimo* *bona*; *demere* possum  
*Quidlibet*:—hæc teneas justo discrimine verba.

<sup>s</sup> That is, the compounds of *facio* that retain the *a*, have *fio* in the passive. *Conficio* has *conficior*, according to the rule here given: but also sometimes *confieri*.

<sup>h</sup> That is, never use *igitur* when '*consequently*' or '*therefore*' follow '*and*?' but *ideo*:—*et ideo*, *atque ideo*, or *ideoque*.

<sup>l</sup> That is, *etiam* is the classical word for '*still*' or '*yet*,' with comparatives: not *adhuc*.

<sup>k</sup> *Milites in navem imponere*, Cæs. Liv.: *nave*, Suet.—*carina*, Ov.

<sup>l</sup> *Procul*, far off but within sight; *longe*, so far off as to be out of sight.

<sup>l</sup> But *nec*, *neque* are sometimes found: e. g. Liv. 24, 3.

# VOCABULARY.

aby = anybody  
athg = anything  
ci = alicui  
qâ = aliqua  
cs = alicujus  
qd = aliquid  
qo = aliquo

qm = aliquem  
qrm = aliquorum  
qs = aliquos

\* means that the phrase is not found in the classics, though probably correct.

## A.

**Abuse**, v. (qâ re perverse uti or abuti; or immodice, intemperanter, insolenter abuti, *when the a. lies in excess: e. g. to a. = trespass on a man's indulgence or patience*, indulgentiâ, patientiâ cs immodice abuti). To a. a person = rail at (conviciis qm consecrari or incescere). To load or cover a man with a., to heap every kind of a. on a man (omnibus maledictis qm vexare; omnia maledicta in qm conferre). To fling a. at a man (maledicta in qm conficere). To overwhelm aby with a. (qm contumeliis operire atque opprimere).

**Abuse** (usus or abusus perversus). An a. = a bad custom (mos pravus). To remove abuses (mores pravos abolere).

**Access**. To have a. to athg (habere aditum ad qd): to aby (ci ad qm aditus patet). He is easy of a. (aditus ad eum est facilis). He is easy of a. to private individuals (faciles aditus sunt ad eum privatorum). He is difficult of a. (aditus ad eum sunt difficiliores). An a. of fever (accessio febris). I grant a. to me to everybody (omnibus conveniendi mei potestatem facio).

**Accessible** (facilis accessu: of places). He is a. to flatterers, or flattery

(qm or facilem aditum ad aures ejus adulatorum habent.)

**Acclamations**. To receive athg with a.'s (plausu et clamore prosequi qd).

**Account** (ratio). To look through an a. (rationem cognoscere, inspicere). To go through a man's accounts; to examine them carefully (cs rationes excutere, dispungere). The debtor and creditor a.'s balance (par est ratio e. g. acceptorum et datorum, accepti et expensi). To state and balance a.'s (rationes conficere et consolidare). To compare a.'s (rationes conferre). To bring a sum of money to a. (pecuniam in rationem inducere). To demand an a. from aby (rationem ab qo repetere). To render an a. (rationem reddere *with gen. of thing*). To call upon a man to give an a. of his life (ab qo vitæ rationem respondere).

**Acquit**. To be unanimously acquitted (omnibus sententiis absolvi).

**Advantage; Benefit**. To gain, derive a. or b. from athg (utilitatem or fructum ex qâ re capere or percipere). It is to my a. (est e re meâ, or est in rem meam).

**Advice**. To give a. (ci consilium dare). To ask a. of aby (petere consilium ab qo). To follow aby's a. (sequi cs consilium: cs consilio



uti †). To do athg by aby's a. (qd *facere de or ex cs consilio*).

**Advocate** (*advocatus, one who assisted with his advice; patronus, one who pleaded the cause*). To employ or engage an a. (*adoptare sibi patronum or defensorem, if the person is accused: deferre causam ad patronum*).

**Affluence**. To live in a. (in omnium rerum abundantia vivere. *Circumfluere omnibus copiis atque in omnium rerum abundantia vivere. C. Am. 15*).

**Affront**. To put an a. on aby (*contumeliam ei imponere*). To look upon athg as an a. (qd in or ad contumeliam accipere).

**Alms**. To beg for a. from aby (*stipem emendicare ab eo*). To live by a. (*aliena misericordia vivere*). To give a. (*stipem spargere, largiri*).

**Ambition**. To be ambitious; to be led by a. (*gloria duci, ambitione teneri*). From a. or ambitious motives (*gloria ductus*). To be fired with a. (*ambitione accensus esse*).

**Answer**. To receive an a. (*responsum ferre, auferre*). I received for a. (*responsum est*). To a. (if by letter, *rescribere*). To return no a. (*nullum responsum dare*). To a. not a word (*nullum verbum respondere*).

**Appetite**. To have a good a. (*libenter cibum sumere, of an invalid: libenter cenare*). To have no a. (\* *cibum fastidire*). To give a man an a.; produce an a. (*appetentiam cibi facere, prestare, invitare*). To get an a. by walking (*opsonare ambulando famem*).

**Arrival**. To be impatient for—or look forward with impatience to aby's a. (*cs adventum non mediocriter capere*).

**Audience**. To grant aby an a. (*admittere qm*). To have an a. (*admitti; auditum ad qm habere*). Before a numerous a. (*frequentibus auditoribus; magna audientium celebritate*).

## B

**Baggage** (*sarcinæ, baggage of individual soldiers; impedimenta, of the army generally*). To take the b. (*impedimenta capere: impedimentis potiri*). To strip the enemy of all their b. (*omnibus impedimentis hostes exuere*). To lose one's b. (*impedimenta amittere: impedimentis exui*). To fight whilst encumbered with one's b. (*sub onere confligere*). To attack the enemy whilst they are encumbered with their baggage, before they have disencumbered themselves of their b. (*hostes sub sarcinis adoriri*). To hide their b. in the wood (*impedimenta in silvas abdere*). To plunder the b. (*impedimenta diripere*).

**Banish, Banishment**. To banish; to drive into banishment (*exsilio afficere, in exsilium ejicere, pellere, expellere, agere, ex urbe or civitate pellere, expellere, ejicere. ex urbe exturbare. de civitate ejicere. Ir. Roman law ei aqua et igni interdiceret, to compel a man to go into b. by forbidding aby to give him fire or water: he kept the rank of a Roman citizen, but lost all its privileges and honors; relegare, to send him to a fixed place, but without loss of rank or goods; deportare, to banish him for life to some desert spot, with loss of rank and property: this kind of b. belonged to the times of the Cæsars*). To banish aby for ten years (*relegare in decem annos*). To b. aby to an island for life (*deportare in insulam*). To b. from the society of men (*relegare ab hominibus*). To recall from b. (*revocare de or ab exsilio, reducere de exsilio, in patriam revocare or restituere*).—To return from b. (*exsilio redire*).

**Battle**. A b. by land (*prælium terrestre*); by sea (*prælium navale; pugna navalis*). A long and severe b. was fought (*pugnatum est diu atque acriter*). To draw an army out in b. array. to offer b. (*exercitum n aciem educere*). To be

† *Alas cs consilio obtemperare.*

gin the b.; to join b. (*prælium committeret*). To fight a b. (*prælium or pugnam facere or edere*). To renew the b. (i. e. *after an interval: pugnam repetere*). To restore the b.; to restore the fortune of the day (*pugnam novam integrare, prælium reintegrare or renovare: generally of fresh troops arriving*). To renew the b. the next day (*postero die pugnam iterare*). To win the b. (*prælio or pugna superiorem discedere: victorem prælio excedere*). To win a b. (*secundo Marte pugnare: rem prospere gerere*). To lose the b. (*pugna inferiorem discedere: prælio vinci or superari*). To lose a b. (*adverso Marte pugnare: rem male gerere*). To offer aby b. (*ci pugnandi potestatem facere*). To fight a pitched b. (*dimicare*).

**Benefit.** See *Advantage*.

**Blame.** I am to b. (*mea culpa est*). Nobody is to b. but myself (*culpa mea propria est*). To lay or throw the b. on aby (*culpam or causam in qm conferre, transferre: the latter of removing it from one's self, vertere*). One throws the b. on another (*causam alteri in alterum confert*). To be to b. (*innoxæ esse or teneri; in culpa esse*).

**Blood.** To staunch b. (*sanguinem sistere, suppressere, cohibere*). To thirst for b. (*sanguinem sitire*). To cost aby much b. (*multo sanguine ci stare*). To shed one's b. for one's country (*sanguinem pro patria profundere; sanguinem suum patriæ largiri*). To be connected with aby by the ties of b.: to be related to aby (*sanguine cum qo conjunctum esse: sanguine attingere qm*). To do athg in cold b. (*consulto et cogitatum facere qd*). To shed b. (*cædem or sanguinem facere: commit murder*). My own flesh and b. (i. e. *children: viscera mea or nostra*). To take some b. from aby, to bleed aby (*ci sanguinem mittere*).

**Body.** The body is worn out, e g with labors, diseases (*conficitur*).  
**Bury, Buried, Burial.** See *Funeral*

## C.

**Calamity, Affliction, Misfortune, Misery.** C. visits aby (*affligit qm calamitas*). To contrive aby's misery or c. (*calamitatem ci machinari*). To fall into a. (*in calamitatem incidere*). Misfortune happens (*accidit calamitas*). To be in affliction or misery (*in malis esse or jacere; malis urgeri: in miseriâ esse or versari*). To be the cause of a man's misery or misfortune (*calamitatem ci afferre, inferre, importare*). To alleviate aby's a. (*cæ calamitatem levare*). To ward off a. from aby (*qm prohibere calamitate, or a calamitate defendere*). To pine away in a. or misery (*in calamitate tabescere*). To be born to misery (*miseriis ferendis natum esse*). To suffer a misfortune, undergo a. (*calamitatem capere, accipere, subire*). To bear a misfortune (*calamitatem ferre, tolerare*). To be cast down by misfortune (*calamitati or ad calamitatem animi submitteret*).

**Circumstances.** According to c.'s (*pro re. pro re natâ—ex or pro tempore*). Trifling c. (*parvæ res, parva momenta: the latter of points on which athg turns*). C.'s of the time (*tempora (pl.): temporum ratio: temporum vincula*. C. *Fam* x. 6).

**Cloud.** The heavens are covered with c.'s (*cælum nubibus obducitur*).

**Cold.** To be able to endure c. (*algoris, frigoris patientem esse*). To be benumbed with c. (*gelu torpère*).

**Copy,** see *Example*.

**Corn; Provisions.** Corn is rising or getting up (*annona carior fit; ingravescit, incenditur*): is falling (*laxat or levatur*). To keep back

† Or *maximè conserere*.

† Brut. in Cic. Ep. 11, 3, 3. Liv 23, 23.  
‡ Hence, to lower the price of c., *annonam levare or laxare*; to raise it, keep or force it up, *incendere—also excoquendo facere, flagellare*.

their c. (annonam *or* frumentum comprimere). To be straitened for provisions: to be in want of c. (re frumentaria laborare). Provisions are scarce (annonâ laboratur). To get in a better supply of c., to remedy their deficient supply of c. (rei frumentariæ mederi: rem frumentariam expedire). To order the states to bring in so much c. (frumentum imperare civitatibus). Dearness, cheapness of p. (annonæ caritas, vilitas).

• D.

*Danger, Endanger, Peril.* To undergo d. (periculum obire, adire, subire, suscipere). To expose one's self to d. (in periculum se offerre, se inferre, in discrimen se conferre, inferre, *or* objicere). To peril one's life for aby (inferre se in periculum capitis atque vitæ discrimen pro cæ salute). To bring aby into d.: to endanger (qm in periculum *or* discrimen adducere, deducere, vocare): into great *or* extreme d. (multum periculi ci inferre: magnum, summum, maximum in periculum qm adducere). To bring the state into extreme d. (republicam in præceps dare). To seek *or* endeavor to bring aby into d. (periculum ci intendere *or* moliri). To be in d. (in periculo esse *or* versari, in dubio esse—*of life*). To be in extreme d. *of things* (in maximum periculum et extremum pæne discrimen adductum esse—*of things*: in præcipiti esse; in extremo situm esse). To share d.'s (pericula communicare). D.'s threaten aby: *or* aby is threatened with d. (instant ci pericula. *from aby*, ab qo). At my own risk (meo periculo). To ward off d. from aby (periculum ab qo prohibere; propulsare). There is d. that (periculum est ne). At his own risk and expense (sumptu periculoque suo). To fall into d. (in periculum venire, incidere).

† Not *se* periculo exponere.

Athg is endangered (qd in discrimen venit).

*Darkness; Dark: Obscurity, Obscure.* To make athg dark (ci rei tenebras obducere; *or* obscuritatem et tenebras offundere). To be *or* remain in darkness; to be veiled in obscurity (in tenebris latere; obscuritate involutum latere). To be buried in impenetrable darkness (crassis occultatum et circumfusum tenebris latere). Born of an obscure family; of obscure origin (obsuro loco natus, obscuris ortus majoribus). To explain what is obscure (res obscuras explanare: res involutas explicare).

*Death, Die.* To die a violent d. (violenta morte perire). To die by his own hands: commit suicide (suâ se mæu interficere: mortem sibi consciscere, *or* inferre). To meet d. with resignation (æque animo mortem oppetere: fidenti animo ad mortem gradi). To seek *or* court d. (mortem expetere). To meet an honorable d. (honesta occumbere). To punish with d. (morte multare; supplicio afficere). The punishment is d. (ci rei supplicium constitutum est). To condemn to d. (capitis *or* capite damnare, condemnare). To die of athg (ex qâ re mori). To starve himself to d. (per inediam a vitâ discedere). To die of laughter, *or* burst with l. (risu pæne emori, Ter. risu pæne corruiere. C.) To read one's self to d. (in studiis mori).

*Desire: Longing: Regret.* To lessen the regret that athg causes (lenire desiderium quod qs ex qâ re capit). To renew regret, *or* longing (desiderium refricare). To pine away with a longing d. (desiderio confici *or* tabescere). To excite *or* kindle the d. (cupiditatem incendere).

*Disease, Ill, Bad Health, Relapse, Poorly, Disorder, Sickness, Sick.* To fall ill (morbo affici, tentari, corripì). To catch a d., to fall ill of a disorder (morbum nancisci; in morbum cadere, incidere). To fall into bad health (in adversam val-

**tu**dinem incidere) To be dangerously ill (in periculosum morbum implicari). To be severely ill (gravi or graviore morbo implicari). To have bad health (infirmā atque ægrā valetudine esse). To be poorly (leviter ægrotare, minus belle valere). To have a disease in his feet, reins, &c. (ex pedibus, renibus laborare; pedibus ægrum esse). To have or suffer from a disease that must end fatally (ægrotare mortifere; mortifero morbo affectum esse, urgeri; novissimā valetudine conflictari). To be sick or diseased in mind (ab animo ægrum esse). To recover from a sickness (ex morbo convalescere). To die of disease (morbo mori, a morbo perire; in morbum implicitum mori or discedere). To recover one's strength after a disease (ex morbo recreari; vires recolligere). To have a relapse (in morbum recidere: de integro in morbum incidere). To be afflicted with a d. (morbo affici; affligi, afflictari, tentari). To treat a disease; or use a treatment, employ a method of cure to a d. (morbo curationem adhibere: to a person, curationem adhibere ad qm). To apply, use, or employ remedies agst d.'s (morbis remedia adhibere: fig. morbis animi).

## E.

**Endanger, see Danger.**

**Error, Mistake** To cause a m. (errorem gignere, creare). To be in e.: labor under a m. (in errore esse or versari). To see one's m. (erratum suum agnoscere). To lead aby into e. (qm in errorem inducere or conjicere). To remove aby's m. (errorem ci eripere, extorquere). From a mistaken notion (errore captus).

**Example, Instance, Warning, Copy.**

To produce an e. (exemplum supponere, proponere). To have an e. for imitation in one's own family (domesticum habere exemplum ad imitandum). To propose aby an e. for imitation (proponere ci exem-

plum ad imitandum). To set a bad e. to others (mali esse exempli). To follow aby's e. (sequi cs exemplum or auctoritatem). To take w. by aby; to take e. by aby (capere sibi exemplum de qo; ex quo sumere sibi exemplum). To set up in any person a pernicious e. (prodere in qo perniciosum exemplum). To form or fashion one's self after aby's e. (se formare in mores cs). To set an e. of severity (exemplum severitatis edere). For example, as an instance (exempli causā). To send a copy of my letter to aby (literarum exemplum ci or ad qm mittere). To set an e. (exemplum præbere, prodere).

**Excuse, Plea.** To admit of an e. (excusationem habere or qd excusationis). To admit of some e. (habere qd excusationis). My ignorance may be pleaded in e.: I may be excused on the ground of ignorance (est mihi excusatio inscientiæ). To plead bad health in e. (excusare morbum or valetudinem). To defend one's self from any charge by pleading or urging athg; or, on the plea of athg (qd cs rei excusatione defendere). To accept an e. (excusationem or satisfactionem accipere). To reject or not accept an e. (excusationem non accipere or probare). To e. one's self to aby's satisfaction (satisfacere ci). The plea of necessity is a valid or complete excuse for aby (necessitatis excusatio qm facile defendit).

**Expectation; Expect.** To lead men to e. athg (facere expectationem cs rei). To cause or raise in aby an eager e. of athg, to make aby eagerly expect athg (magnam expectationem cs rei ci movēre, † commovēre, dare, afferre: qm in expectationem adducere). To raise an e. (expectationem concitare). A person satisfies or comes up to mon's e.'s (opinionum hominum re-

† *Pessimi* for very bad.

‡ Also de: quantum tu mihi moves ex expectationem de sermone Bibuli.

spondet; omnium existimationi satisficit: *surpasses them, superat. disappoints them, fallit*). To surpass *e.* (expectationem vincere).

## F.

**Fate.** All will suffer the same *f.* (omnes eundem fortunæ exitum laturi sunt). To submit calmly to my *f.*, whatever it may be (quemcumque casum fortuna invexerit, quiete ferre). To be prepared for my *f.*, whatever it may be (ad omnem eventum paratum esse). If you are fated to—(si tibi fatum est, *with infin.*) The blows or storms of *f.* (fulmina fortunæ). Miserable, unhappy *f.* (fortuna mala, afflicta, miseru). Happy, prosperous *f.* (fortuna prospera, secunda, florens).

**Favorite.** My *f.* Dicæarchus (deliciæ meæ, Dicæarchus). That *f.* Pænætius of yours (Pænætius illi tuus).

**Favor.** To be in aby's *f.* (in gratiâ *cs* or *cum* qd esse, gratiosum esse *ci* or *apud* qm). To be in high *f.* with aby (*cs* gratiâ florere). To obtain aby's *f.* (*se* in gratiam ponere *apud* qm; gratiam *cs* sibi colligere or conciliare). To court aby's *f.* (gratiam *cs* aucupari). To forfeit aby's *f.* by abusing it (gratiam *cs* effundere). To restore aby to another's *f.*, to reconcile aby to another (qm *cum* qo in gratiam reducere, reconciliare, restituere). To receive or take again into *f.* (in gratiam recipere). To lose aby's *f.* (gratiam *cs* amittere, gratiâ *cs* ex-cidere). To recover aby's *f.* (*cs* gratiam recuperare). To give a verdict in aby's *f.* (secundum qm iudicare or litem dare). To bring a man into great *f.* with aby (qm *apud* qm magnâ in gratiâ ponere). To ask as a *f.* (beneficii gratiæque loco petere, ut, &c.): to grant as a *f.* (beneficii gratiæque causâ concedere).

**Fingers.** See *Hand*.

† With everybody (*apud omnes*).

**Flight, fly, flee, Escape, Rout.** To betake one's self to *f.* (*m* fugam *se* conferre, dare, or conjicere). To put to *f.* (in fugam dare, vertere, convertere, conjicere). To rout (*profligare*). To cut off aby's *f.* (fugam *ci* claudere or intercludere). To seek for safety by *f.* (fugâ salutem petere). To save one's self or escape by *f.* (*ex* fugâ evadere, fugâ *se* eripere). There is no other escape *fm* this thing (*alia* fugâ nujus rei non est). To fly in complete disorder to their camp (fugâ effusâ castra petere). To fly anywhere (fugâ locum petere: confugere or fugam capessere qo). To fly away secretly, to abscond (fugâ *se* subtrahere: clam *se* subducere).

**Funeral, Burial, Bury.** To honor aby with a splendid *f.* (*amplo*, *apparatiissimo*, &c. funere efferre). To bury aby with military honors (militari honesto funere humare). To bury aby alive (qm vivum defodere). To be buried alive (vivum terrâ obrui). To be deprived of burial (sepulchro carere). To be buried in oblivion (oblivione obrui, obrutum esse): in the waves (undis obrui or hauriri).

## G.

**Gain, Profits.** To make *g.* of aby (quæstum facere in qo): of athg (lucrum facere ex qâ re). To obtain immense profits (magnos quæstus prædasque facere). To turn athg to profit (quæstui habere qd). To count athg *g.* (in lucro qd ponere: putare esse de lucro deputare esse in lucro).

**Glory, Renown.** To gain *g.*, renown, credit, &c. (laudem sibi parare or colligere, gloriam quærere, consequi, adipisci). To have an eye to *g.* in every thing, or make glory his first object (omnia ad gloriam revocare). To cover a man with immortal glory (immortali gloriâ qm afficere, sempiternæ gloriæ qm commendare).

**Graft.** To *g.* a tree (arborem inserere, surculum arbori inserere). To

g. a good pear on a wild stock  
(pirum bonam in pirum silvaticam  
inserere).

*Grafting, insitio.*

## H.

*Hand, Traditional, Fingers, Art.*

To have a work, = book, in h.  
(opus in manibus habere). To  
take in one's h.'s (in manus sumere  
qd). To hold athg in one's h.  
(manu tenere qd). To have aby  
at h. i. e. to help one (habere sibi  
qm ad manum). The question  
which is now under discussion  
(questio quæ nunc in manibus est).  
To be placed in our own h.'s, to be  
in our power (esse in nostrâ manu).  
To give in: to drop my hands, i. e.  
in confession of defeat (dare ma-  
nus). Traditional (per manus tra-  
ditust). To wrest athg out of aby's  
h.'s (extorquere qd ei de manibus).  
To let the lucky opportunity slip  
through one's fingers (fortunam ex  
manibus dimittere). Athg slips  
through one's fingers (fugit, elabi-  
tur, or excidit qd e manibus: also  
elabatur de manibus). Not to stir  
or move a finger for athg (cs rei  
causâ manum non vertere). A city  
strongly fortified by art (urbs manu  
munitissima). To lay h.'s on aby  
(manum, manus asferre, inferre, in-  
jicere ei). Not to lay h.'s on aby, to  
keep your h.'s off aby (manus ab-  
stinere a qo). The matter is en-  
tirely in your h.'s† (huius rei potes-  
tas omnis in vobis sita est). To die  
by one's own h.'s (see *Death*).

*Health* (valetudo: if by itself, it is  
mostly equivalent to good h., which  
is bona, prospera, firma valetudo).  
To take care, or some care, of  
one's h. (valetudini parcere; vale-  
tudinem curare: valetudini tribu-  
ere qd). To take great care of  
our h. (valetudini tuæ servire).  
For your h.'s sake (corporis tuendi  
causâ). To neglect, or take no

care of, one's h. (valetudinem neg-  
ligere: valetudini parum parcere).  
To drink aby's good h. (salutem ei  
propinare, *Plaut.* \*amicum nomi-  
natim vocare in bibendo). Bad h  
(adversa, æg-ra, infirma valetudo)  
Your weak h. or weak state of h  
(ista imbecillitas valetudinis tuæ).  
[Obs. after curatio, excusatio, ex-  
cusare, &c. valetudo = *bad health*,  
just as in, "to excuse himself on  
the ground of his *health*," "his  
*health* will not suffer him, &c." it  
is implied that *bad health* is  
meant.] To enjoy good h. (bonâ  
valetudine uti: *excellent, optimâ*).  
To be in an indifferent state of h  
(valetudine minus commodâ uti).  
To injure one's h. by the neglect  
of one's usual exercise (valetudinem  
intermissis exercitationibus amitte-  
re). I am recovering my h  
(melior fio valetudine). H. is re-  
established (confirmatur). To be  
in good h. (recto valere): in better  
health (melius valere). To enjoy  
good h. (prosperitate valetudinis uti).

*Helm, Steer.* To take the h. (ad  
gubernaculum accedere). To sit  
at the h. (sedere in puppi clavum-  
que tenere. *C. fig. of a statesman*).  
To sit at the h. of the state (ad gu-  
bernacula reipublicæ sedere). To  
steer the vessel, the state (gu-  
bernacula reipublicæ tenere). To  
seize the h. of the state (guberna-  
cula reipublicæ prendere). To  
drive or cast aby from the h. of the  
state (qm a gubernaculis reipubli-  
cæ repellere or dejicere). To with-  
draw from or quit the helm (a gu-  
bernaculis recedere).

*Honor.* To be held in h. (esse in  
honore: of persons and things).  
To hold in h. (in honore habere).  
To bestow h.'s on aby for athg  
(honores ei habere pro qâ re: ho-  
nores dare or deferre propter q-  
rem). To load aby with h.'s (qm  
honore augere, ornare, decorare).  
To lavish h.'s upon aby (effundere,  
si ita vis,† honores in qm). To be

† E. g. religiones (religious observances)  
per manus traditæ.

† So, to be placed in your hands, in vestrâ  
manu situm esse

† These words show that this was an  
uncommon expression.

stow divine h.'s on aby (deorum honores ci tribuere). To raise a man to, or place him in, posts of h. (honorem ci dare, mandare, credere, committere). To arrive at h.'s (ad honores venire, pervenire). To climb to h.'s (ad honores ascendere). To pay or show h. to aby (honorem ci habere, Nep., to a superior).

## I.

*In.* Not difficult in itself (per se non difficilis). To be in our favor (a nobis facere; of things). In front (a fronte). In the eyes of men (apud homines). In breadth (in latitudinem: so in longitudinem, &c.) To be in the prosecutor's house (pene accusatorem esse: of witnesses in his power). To say athg in joke (qd per jocum dicere). To do athg in anger (qd per iram facere).

*Injury; Wrong.* To commit an i. against aby (injuriā ci facere, inferre, imponere, &c.; injuriā qm afficere). To suffer an i. (injuriā accipere). To bear i. or w. (injuriā pati, ferre). To abstain from committing any i. (abstinere injuriā). To pardon an i. at aby's request (injuriā ex precibus condonare). To forget i.'s or w.'s (injuriās oblivione conterere).

*Invite.* To invite one's self to dine with aby (cœnam ci condicere). To invite aby to dinner (qm ad cœnam invitare, vocare).

## J.

*Judge, Judgment, Sentence, Opinion.*

To acquiesce in a s. (judicium accipere, ferre). To refuse to acquiesce in a s. (judicium recusare). A s. procured by bribery (emptum judicium). To form a j. or pronounce s. about athg (facere judicium de qâ re or cs rei. *The thing by which, ex re*). To change my o. (animi judicium mutare). To ask aby's o. (cs judicium exquirere). To stand or abide by aby's j. (cs judicio stare).

Let others judge (aliorum sit judicium). I have always been of a (meum semper judicium fuit). To agree to abide by aby's j. in any matter (cs judicio qd permittero). To submit one's self to aby's j. (subicere se cs judicio). In my opinion (meo judicio). One who has an opinion of his own (homo sui judicii).

## K.

*Knot.* To tie a k. (nodum facere, nectere). To tie a fast k. (nodum astringere). To untie a k. (nodum solvere or expedire).

*Knowledge.* It is easy or difficult to acquire a k. of these things (hæc facilem or difficilem habent cognitionem).

## L.

*Law.* To bring in a bill; to propose a l. (legem rogare). The people passes the l. (accipit legem). throws the bill out; refuses to pass the l. (antiquat legem). To be passed or carried through (perferri). To draw up l.'s (leges condere, scribere, conscribere). To pass a l. (ferre legem, ut or ne; lege sancire, ut or ne; of the people). To give l.'s to a state—of a ruler (leges dare or constituere ci civitati). To impose l.'s on a state—of a tyrant (leges ci populo or civitati imponere). To overthrow l.'s (leges evertere or pervertere). To break a l. (legem negligere, violare). To evade a l. (legi fraudem facere). To swear obedience to a l. (in legem jurare). To advise the people to pass a l. (legem suadere): not to pass one (legem dissuadere). To oppose the passing of a l. by his veto (legi intercedere). To abrogate a l. (legem abrogare). To abrogate it partially (derogare legi or qd de lege). To abrogate a l. virtually by a subsequent enactment (legi obrogare). To trample

† i. e. of a Tribune of the people.

a l. underfoot (*legem conculcare*). To see that a l. is put in force or strictly executed (*efficere ut lex valeat or valeret*). To relax a l. (*laxamentum dare legi*). To procure the passing of a l. (*legem ferre*): on one's self (*legem mihi ipse dico: with gen. of law*). To observe a law (*legem servare, observare, conservare*).

*Letter.* (1) *Syllable*; of the alphabet. Not to write a l. (*nullam litteram scribere*). To know a single l. of Greek (*unam litteram Græcam scire*). Not to be able to utter a s. (*litteram non posse dicere*).

(2) *Epistle; correspondence* To write a l. (*epistolam scribere, exarare*). To write or send a l. to aby (*dare literas ad qm, literas mittere ei or ad qm*). To answer a l. (*rescribere literis or ad literas or epistolam*). To fold up a l. (*epistolam complicare*): to seal (*signare or obsignare*): to open (*epistolam aperire or solvere*). To break open the seal (*litteras resignare*). To converse with aby by l. (*cum qo per literas colloqui or agere*). To finish a l. (*litteras conficere*). To pester aby with l.'s (*litteris ei obstrepere*). To draw aby into a c. (*cs litteras elicere*). To long for a l. (*litteras expetere, requirere, desiderare*). By l. (*per literas*). To tear up a l. (*epistolam concerpere*. C.)

(3) *Literature; Learning; Study; Books.* To bury one's self in one's s.'s or b.'s (*litteris se involvere, abdere. in litteras se abdere*). To give up or devote one's self to l. or s. (*litteris se dare*). Devoted to l. (*litteris deditus*). To return to his s.'s; betake one's self to one's s.'s or b.'s again (*in litteras se referre*). To devour b.'s (*litteras vorare*). To spend one's life in s. (*agere ætatem in litteris*). To have paid even the slightest attention to l. (*litteras vel*

*primis lubris degustasse*. Q)—— Adj., profound, rare, abstruse, accurate (*litteræ interiores [quædam] et reconditæ*):—ordinary, superficial (*vulgares, communes*).

*Life, Live.* As sure as I live I will, &c. (*ita vivam. ut, &c., ne vivam, ne, salvus sim, ut*). To live as one pleases (*ad libidinem, ex libidine, ad arbitrium suum, arbitrio suo—vivere*). Not to be able to live without athg (*qâ re carere non posse*). If a longer l. had been granted him (*si vita longior suppeditasset*). To live on very confined means, on a very narrow income (*in tenui pecuniâ vivere*). To live in penury (*in egestate vitam degere*). To aim at aby's l. (*cs capiti insidiari*). To spare aby's l. (*ci vitam concedere, or mortem remittere*). To owe one's l. to aby (*ci salutem debere; also ab aliquo habere vitam; cs beneficio vivere*). To beseech aby to spare a person's l. (*cs vitam deprecari a qo*). To atone for, or expiate athg with one's l. (*capite luere qd*). My l. is at stake; I am in, or brought into, danger of my l. (*in vitæ periculum adductus sum: caput agitur*). The language of common l. (*genus sermonis usitatum*). To use the language of daily or common l. (*verbis quotidianis uti*). To spend one's l. (*omnem suam vitam consumere, or ætatem agere in qâ re*). The rest of one's l. (*qd reliquum est vitæ*). L. and spirit, i. e. in speaking (*calor et vehementia*). To depart this l. (*abire e vitâ: hinc demigrare*). *Adverbs used with vivere are; molliter, delicate (delicate ac molliter); parce, continenter, severe, sobrie.*

*Listen.* Listen to what he has done (*videte, quid fecerit*). I cannot listen to this (*aures meæ a commemoratione hujus rei abhorrent. qd ferre non possum*).

† To return some answer (*rescribere qd*).

† i. e. a condemned person's: *cs vitæ parcere, is a general expression.*



## M.

**Memory; Recollection.** As far as my m. or r. goes (ut mea est memoria). To recall or bring athg to aby's r. (ci qd m memoriam redigere, reducere. qm in memoriam cs rei reducere). Athg has slipped my r. (memoriâ qd excessit, delapsum est). To retain a lively r. of aby (cs memoriam vivam tenere). To renew, to exercise the m. (memoriam renovare or redintegrare; exercere). To refresh the m., or rub up the r. (memoriam reficere). In my r. (meâ memoriâ). In the r. of man (post hominum memoriam: *after negatives*). To have a good m. (memoriâ vigere).

**Mind.** Emotions of the m. (mentis perturbationes). To apply one's self to athg with one's whole m. (totâ mente in qd incumbere). Athg comes into my m., or occurs to me (qd in mentem mihi venit). Recall to mind what, &c. (redite in memoriam, qui, &c.) Athg brings the recollection of aby to m. (qd cs memoriam affert). To dazzle aby's m. (ci animi aciem præstringere). To be of another m. (in aliâ voluntate esse). Not to mind [= be anxious] about aby (de qo nihil laborare: ne quid, of course, when necessary). To blunt or dull the powers of the m. (aciem ingenii, animi, mentis præstringere. C.)

**Mistake.** See *Error*.

**Must.** He m. have done so and so,—when the m. is an *inference*: (pactandum est scilicet).

## N.

**Name; To enlist; Anonymous.** To give a n. to athg, or impose a n. on athg (nomen ci rei ponere or imponere). To receive a n. fr. athg

(ex qâ re nomen reperire†). For that I think is his name (nam, ut opinor, hoc nomen est). To call athg by its own n., a n. of its own (qd proprio nomine signare). To e (nomen or nomina dare, profiteri, edere). To answer to one's n. (ad nomen respondere). To call them over by n. (nominatim citare). His n. stands high amongst advocates (cs nomen in patronis magnum est). A certain foreigner Camelus by n. (quidam hospes, nomine Camelo or Caneli): whose n. was Camelus (cui erat nomen Camele or Camelus: *seld.* Cameli). An a. letter (literæ sine nomine scriptæ). An a. paper (libellus sine auctore propositus). A. poems (carmina incertis auctoribus vulgata). In aby's n. (cs verbis. or cs nomine‡). To be free in n. (verbo esse liberum).

**Good-Name; Reputation; Good-Opinion; Credit.** A g.-n. is better than money (bona existimatio præstat pecuniis). My g.-n. is at stake (mea existimatio agitur). Nothing could have happened that would be more injurious, or prejudicial, to my g.-n. (nihil mihi ad existimationem turpius potuit accidere). To endanger or risk one's g.-n. or r. (venire in discrimen existimationis). To court the g.-o. of men, i. e. by some bad means (existimationi se hominum venditare). A man of no r.; of such r. (homo sine existimatione; eâ existimatione). To leave my r. or g.-n. in aby's hands (committere ci existimationem meam). To get some c. (qm accipere existimationem). To get the c. of athg without deserving it (falso in eam venire existimationem). To recover one's r. (existimationem amissam reconciliare). To suffer in one's r.; one's r. suffers (de existimatione suâ qd perdere or depredere. detrimentum existima-

† The thing may be subst., infin., or sentence with *ut*. The thing may also be in the *gen.*: in mentem mihi venit cs ref.

† Or ab qâ re nomen trahere.

‡ Cs verbis, if a message is put in aby's mouth: cs nomine, when an inferior acts in the name, and by the authority of a superior.

tionis facere).—*Other phrases are:* *cs existimationi consulere, servire: cs existimationem violare, offendere, oppugnare: defendere, tueri: existimationem conservare, retinere.*—*Existimatio integra (unblemished), præclara, sanctissima. existimatio in discrimen venit (is endangered).*

*Necessarily.* This does not n. prove that (*hoc nihil necessitatis adfert, cur, &c. with subj.*)

## O.

*Oath.* To observe my o. (*jusjurandum servare, conservare*). To break an o. (*jusjurandum negligere, violare, relinquere*). To bind aby by o. (*jurejurando qm astringere, obstringere, obligare*). The sanctity of an o. (*jurisjurandi religio*). Not to believe aby on his o. (*jurisjurandi fidem ci abrogare*). To draw up an oath (*jusjurandum concipere*). To give aby one's o. (*jusjurandum ci dare*). To make aby repeat an o. after me; or to make a man take an o. in words prescribed by me (*in mea verba qm jusjurandum adigere*).

*Object.* O's of sense, or of our senses (*quæ sub sensus cadunt; or quæ sensibus subjecta sunt*). To make it one's first o. to do something (*id agere, ut, &c.*) This ought to be their first o., that (*huc omnia iis referenda sunt, ut—*). To make athg one's first o., or pursue athg as one's first o. (*omnia ad qd revocare, referre, or omnia qâ re metiri; huc omnia referre, ut*). Their o. in doing this was very different from what, &c. (*hoc longe alio spectabat atque, &c.*)

*Obstacle.* Athg is an o. in the way of accomplishing athg (*est qd impedimento ad rem*). To place an o. in the way of performing or accomplishing athg (*ci rei moram atque impedimentum inferre*). To conquer o.'s (*impedimenta superare*). To place an o. or impediment in aby's way (*moram ci afferre or interponere*).

*Odium; Unpopularity.* To bring, or

endeavor to bring, aby into a (*invidiam ci conflare or facere*). To incur the o. (*invidiam subire*). To increase aby's unpopularity (*cs invidiam augere, inflammare*).

*Opinion.* See *Judgment*. In my o. (*ut opinio nostra est, ut mea fert opinio*). Opinions are implanted (*inseruntur*): are rooted up (*evelluntur*): are imbibed (*imbibuntur*) prevail amongst men (*animos hominum pervadunt*): are shaken or weakened (*labefactantur, minuuntur*): are given up (*remittuntur or deponuntur*): are confirmed (*confirmantur*): are maintained or supported (*defenduntur*): wear away gradually or in time (*diuturnitate extabescunt*). His present political o.'s (*ea quæ de republicâ nunc sentit or sentiat*). To be driven fin an o. (*de opinione dejici, depelli*).

*Opportunity.* [*Occasio, facultas, &c.* See *Dôd. occasio*.] As soon as he saw an o. (*simul ac primum ei occasio visa est*). An o. is offered (*obfertur*): is given (*datur*): is had (*habetur, tenetur*): is let go or slip (*omittitur*): is wanting (*deest*): is seized (*arripitur*). To get an o. (*occasionem nancisci*). If I have, or shall have, an o. (*si fuerit occasio. si occasio tulerit*). To give aby an o. (*facere ci potestatem*). To make the most of an o. (*occasionem urgere*).

*Owe.* To consider one's self to owe one's life to fortune, children, &c to aby (*ab qo se habere vitam, fortunas, liberos, arbitrijs*).

## P.

*Part (i. e. in a play).* To act this p. of compassion (*has partes misericordiæ agere*). To undertake the p. of athg (*cs rei partes suscipere*). To play the first p. or fiddle (*primas agere*). To surrender or offer the first p. in athg to aby (*ci|| cs rei primas deferre*)

† Qd ci ex animo evellere.

‡ Simulac potestas primum data est C

§ In Pison. ii. § 25. See *Life*.

|| Or ad qm.

**Part; Share.** To call or invite aby to a share (in partem vocare).

**Pathetic.** To utter in a very p. manner (magnum cum misericordia pronuntiare).

**Peace.** To sue for p. (pacem petere, precibus exposcere, orare). To obtain p. (pacem impetrare). To make p. (pacem facere, conficere, constituere, componere—with aby, cum qo). To offer aby terms of p. (ci ultro pacis conditiones ferre). To break the p. (pacem frangere). To live in p. with aby (concorditer vivere cum qo). Without concluding a p. (pace infecta). To treat for p. (agere de pace). Negotiations for p. are on foot (de pace agitur).

**Plea.** See *Excuse*.

**Pleasure.** To be productive of p. (voluptatis efficientem esse). To produce or cause p. (voluptatem conciliare, parere). To derive p. fm athg (voluptatem ex re capere, percipere). To be moderate in the pursuit of p. (voluptatis fruentis modum tenere). With p. (lubens, lubenter). With great p. (lubentissime). P. tickles the senses (voluntas sensus titillat). To give one s. up to p. (voluptatibus se dederat, or totum se tradere). To have a pleasurable recollection of athg (cs rei recordatione frui). To increase p. (voluptatem augere, amplificare). To be soothed—corrupted (voluptate deleniri—corrupti). Inclined to p. (ad voluptatem propensus).

**Possession.** To put aby in p. of another's property (immittere qm in ei bona; or mittere qm in possessionem bonorum cs). To eject a person fm—(de possessione dimovere et dejicere: possessione depellere, deturbare). To remain in p. of athg (in cs rei possessione manere or permanere). To make athg one's own by long and uninterrupted p. (usucapere qd). To give up p. (possessione cedere, decedere). To be in p. of (esse in possessione cs rei).

**Power.** To have aby or athg in one's

p. (qm or qd in potestate sua habere). To have p. of life and death (vitae necisque potestatem habere C.). Athg is in my p. (situm est qd in potestate mea; est qd facultatis meae). To fall into aby's p. (in cs potestatem cadere). To reduce under one's p. (redigere in suam ditionem ac potestatem). To submit to the p. of aby (se sub cs potestatem subicere).

**Promise.** To make a p. (promissum facere). To abide by a p. (promisso stare): to fulfil or perform (promissum efficere, solvere): to make good (promisso satisfacere): to keep (promissum servare): not to depend much or place reliance on p.'s (promissis non valde pendere). To claim fm aby the fulfilment of a p. (promissum a qo exigere).

**Provisions.** See *Corn*.

## Q.

**Question.** The q. is put; is put to the vote; is determined (dissessio fit—of questions in the senate, when the ayes and noes arranged themselves on different sides).

## R.

**Reason.** I can give a r. for my belief (cur credam afferre possum). I have good r.'s for being silent, or for my silence (constat nobis silentii nostri ratio). To give the r. of or for athg (rationem cs rei afferre, dicere). To explain the r.; a plan (explicare, exponere rationem). With reason (optimo jure; jure meritoque; jure ac merito). And not without r. (nec injura).

**Religion** (pietas erga Deum, of personal religion; res divinae, of religion considered objectively). To apostatize from the r. of one's country (sacra patria deserere). To embrace or be converted to the Christian r. (sacra Christiana suscipere, especially of a body).

**Report.** A r. reaches aby (fama ad qm perfertur): aby's ears (ad cs aures pervenit). To spread a r. of athg (famam cs rei dissipare). A

**r.** begins to be whispered about or circulated from any place (*fama ab eo loco manat*). A **r.** is becoming current; there is a **r.** in men's mouth (*fama surgit or nascitur*). **R.** says (*fama nuntiat*) To hear *athg* by common **r.** (*communi famâ atque sermone audire qd de qâ re*).

**Reputation.** See *Name*.

**Rest.** Not to let *aby r.* (*qm quiescere or requiescere non pati*). To **r.** after long labors (*ex diuturno labore quiescere*). Not to have or take a moment's **r.** (*nullam partem quietis capere*). To be composing or preparing one's self for **r.** (*quieti se dare or tradere*).

**Reward.** To give a **r.** to *aby* (*præmium ci dare, tribuere*). To honor *aby* with a **r.**; to confer a **r.** on *aby* (*præmio qm donare, decorare, afficere: præmium ci deferret*). To be rewarded, to receive a **r.** (*præmio donari*). To recompense with a **r.** (*remunerari qm præmio*). To be rewarded or receive a **r.** for *athg* (*præmium or fructum cs rei capere, percipere, ferre*): for *athg* by *aby* (*fructus cs rei ferre ex qo*). I consider myself richly rewarded (*magnum rei fructum percepisse videor*). To earn a **r.** (*præmium consequi*).

**Risk.** To **r.** *athg.* or expose *athg* to a **r.** (*qd in aleam dare: ire in aleam cs rei*). To **r.** one's life (*committere se periculo mortis*). To take the **r.** of *athg* on one's self (*rem periculi sui facere*).

**Rout** (*pellere, profigare*) See *Flight*.

### S.

**Say.** Nothing is said about *aby* (*de qo silentium est*). After much had been said on both sides (*multis verbis ultro citroque habitis*). To **s.** *athg* merely to please *aby* (*qd auribus cs dare: cs auribus servire. C.*) As the saying is (*ut aiunt*).

**School.** To open a **s.** (*ludum aperire*). To put a boy to **s.** with *aby* (*qm ci in disciplinam tradere*) To send a

boy to a public **s.**† (*scholarum frequentiae et velut publicis præceptoribus tradere*).

**Sentence.** See *Judgment*.

**Share.** See *Part*.

**Side.** To be on a person's **s.** (*ab qo stare: cum qo sentire: to be of the same way of thinking on politica! questions*). *Athgt* is on *aby's s.* (*qd cum aliquo facit*).

**Stage.** To hiss off the **s.** (*exsibilare, or exsibilare et explodere*). To appear on the **s.** (*in scenam prodire*).

**Study.** To intermit one's learned **s.'s** (*intermittere studia doctrinæ*). To pursue these **s.'s** (*hæc studia colere*). To have made the arts one's **s.** (*artibus suum studium dedisse*). To return to these **s.'s** (*hæc studia repetere, renovare, recolere*) See *Letter* (3).

### T.

**Time.**‡ Before the **t.** (*ante tempus*) To leave one's self no **t.** for, &c. (*nullum sibi spatium relinquere ad &c.*) To try to gain **t.** (*spatium or moram interponere*). All the **t.** I can spare *fm athg* (*quod mihi de re qâ temporis datur*). To have **t.** to do *athg* (*cs rei faciendæ tempus habere*). Nor was there **t.** to, &c. (*nec fuit spatium ad, &c.*) It is **t.** to, &c. (*tempus est with ger. in di, infin. or ut*). He thought there was no more **t.** to lose (*nihil ultra differendum ratus est*). He says there is no **t.** to lose (*differendum esse negat*). To find **t.** (*tempus lucrari, nancisci*). To spend **t.** (*tempus in qm re ponere or consumere; ad qm rem conferre*). To watch one's **t.** for *athg* (*tempus ci rei observare*). To choose my or a convenient **t.** (*tempus cs rei scite et commodè capere*). To get a convenient or proper **t.** (*tempus idoneum nancisci*). To let the **t.** for action slip (*tempus rei gerendæ*

† To send a boy to a school, opp. to keeping him at home, *studia extra lin et proferre. Phin.*

‡ Truth, veritas.

§ Immediately or some time afterwards, *confestim aut ex intervallo*

† *Præmium ci deferre*, of a state rewarding *mes t.* by a public act, by public honours, &c.

dimittere) To sleep the t. away ('tempori indormire, *Phil.* 3, 14). To happen at a most inconvenient t. (in alienissimum tempus cadere). To be over in a moment of t. (fieri ad punctum temporis, *C. Tusc.* 1, 34, 82).

## U.

*Under.* To be u aby's command (esse sub cs imperio). To reduce u. aby's power (sub cs potestatem redigere).

*Understanding.* Our u. comprehends (intelligentia nostra capit qd). A man of u. (in qo inest or est intelligentia). To adapt athg to the u. of ordinary men (ad popularem intelligentiam qd accommodare.)

*Unhealthiness.* To escape from the bad effects of the unhealthy season (abesse ab injuriâ temporis).

*Unpopularity.* See *Odium*.

## V.

*Vex.* To be vexed at athg (molestiam capere or trahere: molestiâ affici; *all with ex qâ re*). To be vexed that (ægre, graviter, moleste fero; *with acc. and inf.*)

*Victory.* To gain a v. over aby (victoriam ferre or referre ex qo: victoriam reportare ab or de qo).

*View.* To dissent fm this v. (ab hac ratione dissentire). To do athg with the v. of (facere qd eo consilio, ut, &c.)

## W.

*Way.* To make w. for aby (decedere ci de viâ. dare ci viam). These things may be taught in two w.'s: or there are two w.'s of teaching these things (hæc duplicem habent docendi viam). To search out for new w.'s (inuitatas vias indagare). To desert old ways (vias tritas relinquere).

*Word.* Not to get a w. fm aby (verbum ex qo nullum elicere). Not to be able to utter a w. (verbum omnino nullum facere posse). To define one's w.'s (verba definire et describere). I wish to say a couple

of w.'s to you (tribus verbis te volo). By w. of mouth (verbo, *opp. scripturâ*). To have w.'s with aby (altercari cum qo). To have never had any w.'s with aby (nullo verbo concertasse cum qo). To was w.'s (verba frustra consumere). To listen to aby's w.'s (loquenti aures præbere). The w. plough (verbum aratri: *not verbum aratrum*†). Nor has this w. any other meaning (neque ulla alia huic verbo subjecta notio est, nisi). To use a w. (verbo uti: *but verbum ponere in qo if to use against a person*). To weigh the force of w.'s (diligenter examinare verborum pondera). The most appropriate w.'s (verba maxime cujusque rei propria). To give up an opinion for a w. (verbo de sententiâ desistere. *C.*) This word is usually applied to athg (hoc nomen de qâ re poni solet). To include two notions in this w.: or to include two things in the notion of this w. (huic verbo duas res subjicere. *Fin.* 2, 4, 3). To attach a meaning to a w. (vocabulo, verbo, &c., notionem or sententiam subjicere). To which the w. virtue is usually applied (in quo nomen poni solet virtutis).

## Y.

*Yoke.* To place a y. on aby (jugum ci imponere, *prop. and fig.*) To unyoke (jugum ci solvere or demere). To deliver aby fm a y. (jugum a cervicibus cs depellere). To free one's self fm, or shake off, a y. (jugum excutere. jugo se exuere. jugum exuere, *prop. and fig.: exuere, to do it gradually; to slip it off*). To bring aby under the y. of slavery (ci jugum servitutis injungere). To submit to the y. (jugum accipere).

† If the word in apposition is an adj., the following passage of Cicero is a good example: "To the word happy," &c.—huic verbo, quum beatum dicimus, &c. *Tus.* 5, 29.

## EXTRACTS FROM THE "ANTIBARBARUS."\*

*Accuracy*, diligentia, cura. [accuratio *once* Cic. Brut. 67, 238.]

*Act a play*, docere fabulam (of those who get it up, &c., and of the author): agere (of the player acting his part.)

*Again and again*, etiam atque etiam (= very earnestly with verbs of entreating). = several times, often: iterum et or ac tertio: iterum et sæpius;† iterum ac tertium. C.

*Against the stream*, amne or flumine adverso [not fluvio adv.].

*Agree*. (1) *I = make an agreement; agreement with any body*, mihi cum quo convēnit. *We agreed*, inter nos convēnit. *Even the consuls were not thoroughly agreed*, ne inter consules quidem ipsos satis conveniebat. L. [not convenio cum quo.] (2) = *correspond with, answer to, consentire cum quā re*. (3) *Of a thing it is used personally*: pax convenerat: quæ convenerant: si posset inter eos quid convenire. C.

*Almighty*, summus, maximus [not omnipotens, except as a theological term] or by Deus only for 'the Almighty.' *The Romans used Optimus Maximus with the name of Jupiter*.—Jupiter O. M.

*Appear* = 'make his appearance amongst us' (of one who is dead, &c.): existere.

— = 'seem,' videri (not apparere).  
— = 'to be manifest,' apparere (not videri).

*Appear (in a dream)*, ostendere se cui

in somnio; videri cui in somnis; per somnum, quiete, per quietem; *which likeness appears in their bodies*, quæ similitudo in corporibus apparet. C. *Appear in any body's eyes*, iudicio cujus esse; ab quo existimari; videri cui: esse apud quem.

— *Day appears*, dies venit (comes): illucescit (begins to shine).

*Assert*, dicere, affirmare [not asserere].

*Author*, scriptor.

*Authority*. An authority (used of a person), auctor. A weighty authority, locuples auctor.

*Bodily (pleasures)*, corporis (voluptates). Corporeus is 'consisting of a body.'

*Break*. To break down a bridge, pontem rescindere, dissolvere, interrumpere [not pontem rumpere or frangere].

*Classical author*, scriptor optimus, præstantissimus; or scriptor primæ classis. Cic. [Gellius introduced scriptor classicus, as opposed to scriptor proletarius.]

*Command (an army)*, præesse.

*Compassion*. From compassion, misericordiâ captus, ductus, or permotus.

*Demagogues*, concionatores: populares, or populares homines. [if demagogi be used quos Græci dicunt, or ut Græco verbo utar should be added.]

*Each other*, inter se; of what is done mutually or reciprocally: not invicem.

\* These Extracts are taken from a larger work of Mr. Arnold's, principally on the Latin Particles, which is in course of preparation for the American public.

† To ask again and again, etiam atque etiam; or iterum et sæpius rogare. But etiam atque etiam is never really numerical.

**EXASPERATE:** exacuere (*Nep.*); insensum reddere: iram cuius incendere. [*Exasperare, exacerbare. Liv.*]

**Experience,** usus rerum, usus [not experientia]. *From experience,* re, usu, exitu doctus, expertus: *from my own experience,* expertus in me, expertus.

**Fish out sting from any,** ab eo quod excipari, C.

**Flesh:** in 'to lose flesh,' 'gain flesh,' &c. corpus amittere [not carnem].

**Fleshly** (of pleasures, &c.), by gen., corporis.

**Greek.** To speak Greek or good Greek, Græce loqui.

**Grow** (an old man, &c. = 'become'), fieri.

**Health, valetudo.**—Good health, sanitas: bona or prospera valetudo (not valetudo only).—salus (the continued state or preservation of good health.)

**Imagine** (1) = to form a representation in the mind, animo cogitare, concipere, complecti:—animo fingere, effingere; cogitatione fingere or depingere:—proponere sibi ante oculos animumque: (2) = conjecture, conjecturam capere, facere: conjicere [*Imaginari belongs to the silver age*]. (3) = to entertain an unfounded notion, opinari, in opinione esse: induisse sibi falsam cuius rei persuasionem. Q. quid somnare (= dream it). (4) *Imagine* (inserted in a sentence), opinor: ut opinor.

**Impure.** An impure style, inquinatus sermo, inquinata oratio.

**Impute a thing to anybody,** tribuere, attribuire, adscribere, adsignare, acceptum referre (quid cui). [*Imputare, Quint. Plin. jun.*].

**Inspire anybody with hope, fear, &c.,** spem, admirationem, formidinem, cui injicere.

—anybody with a desire, quem cupiditate cuius rei faciendæ incitare, or incitare ad aliquid faciendum.

**Inspired,** afflatus numine divino; instinctu divino percussus; instinctus divino spiritu.

**Invite** (to supper, &c.), invitare (by word of mouth): vocare (by a slave).

**Key of a country, janua.** ['quum eam urbem sibi Mithridates Asiæ januam fore putasset, quâ effractâ et revulsâ tota patêret provincia.' C.]

**Latin.** To speak Latin or good Latin, Latine dicere, loqui.

**Mercifully** [not misericorditer, but] cum misericordiâ or miseratione, misericordiâ captus, &c. To deal mercifully with anybody, misericordem esse in aliquem; misericordiâ uti in aliquem; misericordem se præbere in aliquem.

**Offer violence,** vim afferre alicui.

**One or two,** unus et alter, unus itemque alter. Unus alterve (= one or at most two).

**Open a way or road** (e. g. by the sword), viam aperire, patefacere. L.

**Opportunity,** occasio, locus or facultas; tempus (alicujus rei faciendæ). An opportunity of doing any thing is offered, locus faciendæ alicujus rei datur.

† **Palm:** to bear the palm, palmam ferre.

**Pay honours to anybody,** cui honores habere, tribuere: honore alicui afficere (not honorem cui exhibere).

**Prayers.** To offer prayers, precationem or preces facere, preces Deo adhibere (C.). preces mittere (*Liv.*).

*Obs. preces fundere is poet.*

**Preserve** (states, &c.), conservare.

**Probable,** verisimilis [not probabilis, which means, 'respectable,' 'tolerably good']. It seems probable that Milo killed Clodius, Milo Clodium interfecisse videtur (but verisimilis is quite correct).

**Produce a passage, to,** locum (versum, &c.) afferre.

—witnesses, producere or proferre testes: to produce evidence, testimonium proferre.

—a reason, to, causas afferre.

**Pure** (of style), purus et emendatus.

**Purity of style,** integritas, castitas or sinceritas orationis.

**Quote an author, to,** producere, proferre scriptorem (producere, proferre testes being used, but not locum).

—a passage, locum afferre, proferre [not producere].

**Reason,** causa, when = 'ground,' 'motive.' To bring another reason, aliter afferre rationem or causam.

**Severe** (of a disease), gravis.

**Shed tears,** lachrymas effundere or profundere.

**Shed blood** = kill, occidere.

**Slay oneself** (lay violent hands on one

*self, die by one's own hands, commit suicide*, se interimere, mortem sibi consciscere; mortem *or* vim sibi inferre; se multare morte.\*

*Speak. The thing speaks for itself*, si res verba desideraret, ac non pro se ipso loqueretur. C.

*Style, oratio, dictio, genus scribend' or dicendi.*

——. *To express oneself in, or to possess a good style (of a Latin author)*

is, oratione emendatâ et Latinâ uti; emendate et Latine dicere.

*Suicide (to commit)*, mortem sibi consciscere; mortem *or* vim sibi inferre; se interimere, &c.; mortem ultro oppetere (*when the death is not committed by one's own hands; i. e. is virt, is not actual, suicide*).

*Think highly of, &c.*, de aliquo magnifice sentire.

---

\* *Also*: manus sibi afferre: manu sibi vitam exhaurire. (C.)



# INDEX I.

## ENGLISH.

[Q stands for Questions. — The numerals refer to the First Part of Latin Prose Composition.]

### A.

A, sometimes translated by *aliquis*, *quiespiam*, or *quidam*, 393.  
 abandoned, *perditus*.  
 able (to be), *posse*, *quire* (*quero*), 125, e.  
 Abdera (of), *Abderites*, G. æ.  
 abilities, *ingenium* (*sing.*).  
 abound, *abundare* (*abl.*).  
 about (= concerning), *de* (*abl.*).  
 about (= nearly), *fere*, *adv.*; *circiter*, *prep.*.  
 above (such an age), 306, and Q.  
 absence (in his), *absens*.  
 absent (to be), *abesse*, 227.  
 abstain from, *temperare ab*, 220.  
 abundance of, *abunde*, *adv.* (*gen.*).  
 acceptable, *gratus*, 212.  
 accident (by), *casu*.  
 accompany, *comitari*.  
 accomplish, *conficere*, *fec*, *fect*.  
 account: on — of, *ergo* (*gen.*): 207.  
 accuse, *accusare*; (if not in a court of justice) *incusare* (*gen.* of charge).  
 accused-person, *reus*.  
 accustomed (to be), *solere*, *solitus*.  
 acquainted, to become, *noscere*, 385.  
 acquit, *absolvere*, *solo*, *solut* (*gen.* of charge).  
 acquit of a capital charge, *capitis absolvere*.  
 adapted, *accommodatus*, 212.  
 addition: in — to this, *huc accedit*, *accedebat*, &c., 513.  
 adherents (his own), *sui*.  
 adjure, *obtestari* (*acc.*).  
 admire, *admirari*.  
 adopt a resolution, *consilium inire* or *capere*.  
 advantage, *emolumentum*.

advantageous: to be, *prodesse* (*dat.*).  
 advantageous: to be very —, *magna utilitati esse*, 242 (3).  
 adversity, *res adversæ*.  
 advice, *consilium*.  
 advise, *suadere* (*dat.*) See 222; *monere* (with *acc.* of person): both with *ut*, *ne*, by 75.  
 affair, *res*.  
 afraid: to be —, *timere*, *vereri*, S. 99, e.  
 afterwards, *postea*: with nouns of time: *post*, used adverbially.  
 after (before a sentence), *postquam*. See 514.  
 after, *prep.* *post* (with *acc.*).  
 after the battle, (*confestim*) *a prælio*.  
 again and again, *etiam atque etiam*.  
 again from the beginning, *ab integro*.  
 against, *adversus* (*acc.*); *in* (with *acc.* of feelings, actions, &c., against a person).  
 against his will, *invitus* (*adj.*).  
 against the will of Caius, *Caius invito* 364.  
 age (= time of life), *ætas*, *ætis*.  
 age (of that or such), *id ætatis* } 160, f.  
 age (of what?) *quid ætatis?* }  
 agitate, *perturbare*.  
 agitated (having his mind), *incensus animus*, 298.  
 ago, *abhinc* (to precede the sunst. or numeral), 305.  
 agreeable, *gratus*, 212.  
 agreed: it is —, *constat* (*acc.* with *infin.*).  
 agricultural operations, *res rusticæ*.  
 all, *omnia*, *cunctus*; (= whole), *universus*, *totus*.  
 all together, *cuncti universi*, 443.  
 all over again, *ab integro*.  
 all taken one by one, *singuli*.

allowed: it is —, *constat* (acc. with *infin.*).

allowed: I am —, *licet mihi*.

allow it to happen, *committere ut*.

almost, *prope, pæne*.

almost: I — think, *haud scio an*, 161.  
(See note on Diff. 25.)

alone, *solus*; or (if one person) *unus*.

Alps, *Alpes*, G. *ium*.

already, *jam*.

also, sometimes translated by the pronoun *idem*, 387.

altar, *ara*.

although, 451, and Q. on § 56.

although indeed, *quamquam* (indic.).

always, after *superlat.* by *quisque*. See 399.

a man (= any: indef.), *quis*.

amanuensis, *a manu servus*.

among, *inter*.

amongst (a people), *apud* with acc.

amuse, *delectare*.

and, p. 18, d; 'to me and you,' in Lat.  
'to me with you,' p. 78.

and that too, not —, *nec is*, 385.

anger, *ira*.

angry: to be —, *irasci* (dat.): *succrescere* (dat.) 222.

animal, *animal*, *alis*.

another, *alter*, *era*, &c. G. *alterius*: answering to 'it is one thing,' *aliud*, 33.

another man's, *alienus*.

answer, *respondere* (dat.).

antiquity, *antiquitas*.

any \* (after *expers*), *omnis*.

any. See 389.

any where (= any whither), *usquam*, 402.

any man may, *cujusvis est*. (See 389—92.)

appeal to, *appellare* (acc.).

appear, (= seem), *videri* (visus).

appear (show myself), *apparere*.

apply vigorously to, *incumbere in* (with acc.); *cubu*, *cubiti*.

approved (valour, &c.), *spectatus*.

arms, to take, *arma capere*.

army, *exercitus*, &c.

arrived at: men have —, *ventum est*, 296.

arrow, *sagitta*.

as, after *tam*, *talis*, *tantus*, *tot*, *is*, *quam*, *quantus*, *qualis*, *quot*, respectively.

as, after *idem*, *qui*, 43 (or *ac*, *atque*).

as far as I know, *quod sciam*, 56.

as far as I can, *quo deus facere possum*, 512.

as far as possible, } *quoad ejus fieri*  
as far as can be done, } *potest*, 512.

as it were, *quasi*.

as soon as, *simul ac*; *ut primum*; *quum primum*; *ubi*; *ut*, 512; 514.

as many as 200, *ad ducentos*.

as not to, after 'such' or 'so' in a negative sentence, *quin* (85): if 'such' or 'so' were in a positive sentence, *ut* would be used by 66.

ashamed: am — of, *pudet*, 207.

ask, *rogare*.

ask pardon for a fault, *delicti veniam petere*.

assault (a town), *oppugnare*.

assault: to accuse of an —, *reum facere de vi*.

assist, *auxiliari*, *adjuvare*, *opitulari*; *sublevare*, *succurrere*, *subvenire*, (See p. 81, k.)

at anybody's feet. See 75, l.

at once, — and; *idem* — *idem*, 396.

at, of place near which a battle is fought, &c., *apud* (or *ad*), 457.

at two miles' distance, *a millibus passuum duobus*, 348.

at two miles off, *a millibus passuum duobus*.

Athens, *Athenæ*.

Athenian, *Atheniensis*.

attached to, *amans*; *diligens* (with gen.), 183.

attack, *adgredi*, *gressus*; *adoriri*, *ortes* (acc.).

attend to, *attendere*, 229.

averse to, *alienus*, 212.

avoid, *vitare*.

authority, *autoritas*.

aware, to be, *intelligere*.

## B.

Baggage, *impedimenta*, pl. (properly *hindrances*).

banish, *pellere ex civitate* (*pepul*, *pule*).

banished from, *extorris* (abl.), 276.

banquet, *convivium*.

barbarian, *barbarus*.

base, *turpis*.

battle, *bellum*.

battle of Cannæ, *pugna Cannensis*.

be it far from us. See note t, p. 40.

bear, *ferre* (*tul*, *lat*, 33).

beasts, *feræ*.

beaten (to be), *rapulare* (ab).

become, *fieri*, *factus sum*.


become acquainted with, *noscere*, 385.

\* The pronouns and adverbs for 'any' may be exhibited in a convenient and

- becoming (to be) *decere* (acc.).  
 befall, *accidere* (dat.).  
 before, *adv. antea*.  
 before, *prep. ante* (acc.).  
 before (standing before a sentence),  
*antequam*, 498, &c.  
 before one's eyes, *ob oculos*.  
 behold, *adspicere*, *io, spes, spect.*  
 beg, *petere, petin, petit, ab.*  
 begin, *cœpisse* (began, before pass. inf.  
*cæptus est*).  
 beginning, *initium*.  
 believe, *credere*, (dat.) *credid, credit.*  
 believe, I can scarcely —, *vix credide-*  
*rim*, 428, and note.  
 believed, I am, *mihi creditur*, 285.  
 belongs. See 191.  
 benefit, *beneficium*.  
 benefit, v. *benefacere* (dat.).  
 bereave, *orbare* (abl.).  
 beseech, *obsecrare*.  
 bespatter, { *aspergere* (aliquid alicui,  
 besprinkle, { or *aliquem aliquâ re:*  
*spers*), 233.  
 best, *optimus*.  
 best to be done, { *optimum factu* (sup.).  
 best to do, {  
 betrayer, *proditor*.  
 better, *melior*.  
 better: it is — (= more satisfactory,  
 preferable), *satiùs est*, 116. Ex. 34,  
 p. 84.  
 better: it would have been —, *satiùs* or  
*utilius fuit*, 426 (5).  
 between, *inter*.  
 beware of, *cavere, cav, eaut*, 233.  
 bird, *avis*: (great bird) *ales*. *Volucris*  
 = any winged creature.  
 black, *niger*.  
 blame, *culpare*.  
 bleed afresh (of a wound), *recrudescere,*  
*crudu*.  
 blessing: a — on your valour! *macte*  
*virtute esto!* 280, a.  
 blind, *cæcus*.  
 blood, *sanguis, inis, m.* (when shed,  
*cruru*).  
 blot out, *delere, deler, delet.*  
 boast, *gloriari*, (abl.) also *de, in*, 273.  
 boast, to make the same, *idem gloriari*.  
 body, *corp-us, oris*.  
 border on, *adjacere*, 229.  
 born, *natus*: born to, *natus ad*.  
 born, to be, *nasci* (natus).  
 both — and: *et — et*.  
 bounds. See *Exceed*.  
 boy, *puer, G. pueri*.  
 branch-of-learning, *doctrina*.  
 breach of duty: it is a —, *contra offi-*  
*cium est*.  
 breadth, a finger's. See *Depart*.  
 break one's word, { *fidem fallere*;  
 break a promise, { *fefell*.  
 bribery, *ambitus, Æs*.

concise form, as in the following table:—

	Exclusion of <i>all</i> .*	Inclusion of <i>all</i> alike.	Inclusion of <i>some</i> .		
				Less em- phatical after <i>si, ne, num, &amp;c.</i>	
PRONOUNS.	quisquam ullus	quivis quilibet	aliquis quispiam	quis	any (body)
ADVERBS. (a) <i>Place</i> .	usquam { (af)	quovis (to)	aliquo (to)	quo (to)	any place or any where.
		ubivis { ubilibet } (af)	alicubi { uspian } (af)	—	
(b) <i>Time</i> .	unquam	—	aliquando	quando	any time or ever.

\*  All are generally excluded when 'any' follows negatives; or 'without, scarcely,' 'than:' and in questions that expect the answer 'no,' ('nobody, nothing,') &c.

**bridge**, *pons, ntis, m.*

**bring** an action or charge against, *reum facere*; *sec, fact*: (with *gen.* or *de*), 187.

**burden**, *onus, oneris.*

**burnt**: to be—, *deflagrare.*

**burst** out afresh, *recrudescere, c. udu.*

**business**, *negotium.*

**but if**, *sin*; *sin autem*, 451.

**but if not**, *sin minus*, 451.

**but** a little more, and he would have perished, *minimum abfuit (impers.) quin periret*, 91.

**but**, after universal negatives, (= who — not), *quin*, [or, *qui — non*], 44.

**but**, after universal negatives (= except), *nisi*, or *prep. præter.*

**but**, after cannot. See *Cannot.*

**butcher**, *trucidare.*

**buy**, *emere, em, empt.*

**by letter**, *per literas.*

**by** = near, *prope.*

C.

**Cæsar**, *Cæsar, aris.*

**call**, *vocare, appellare, nominare, dicere*, See 51.

**call** = summon, *vocare.*

**call upon**, *convenire, ven, vent (acc.).*

**call to mind**, *reminisci.*

**camp**, *castra, pl.*

**campaign**, *end of*, 303.

**can**, *posse, quire (queo)*, 125, c.

**Cannæ**, of, *Cannensis, adj.*

**cannot**: I cannot, *bu —, facere non possum quin, &c.*

**cannot**: it cannot be but that, *fieri non potest quin.*

**capable of containing**, *capax (gen.).*

**capital**, *cap-ut, itis.*

**care** a straw for, *floci facere.*

**care that for**, *hujus facere.*

**care**, *cura.*

**care**: for any thing I care, 470.

**careless of**, *negligens (gen.).*

**carry**, *portare.*

**Carthage**, *Carthag-o, inis.*

**cast forth**, *projicere jec, ject.*

**cause to be done**, *faciendum curare*, 351, 356.

**cease**, *desinere desi, desit*: ceased, before inf. pass. *desitus est.*

**cease speaking**, *tacere*, 299.

**censure**, *reprehensio, onis.*

**chameleon**, *chamaleon.*

**chance**, *casus, Æs.*

**character**, *morēs pl. G. um.*

**charge** (falsely,) *insimulare (gen. of charge).*

**charge**: bring, or prefer a —, = to make him an accused person, *reus facere de —*, 187.

**charge** (= enjoin), *mandare (dat.).*

**chargeable** (with a fault), *affinis*, 212

**chaste**, *castus.*

**children**, *liberi, pl.*

**cheese**, *caseus.*

**choose** (= elect), *eligere, leg, lect.*

**christian**, *christianus.*

**circumstance**. A circumstance which (referring to a preceding sentence), *quæ res*, 36, 37 (b).

**citizen**, *civis.*

**city**, *urbs, urbis.*

**civil-gown**, *toga.*

**claim**, *postulare.*

**clear** (= excuse), *purgare.*

**clothe oneself**, *induere*, 283.

**coast**, *ora*, 40.

**cold**, *frig-us, Æris.*

**come**, *venire, ven, vent.*

**come to the assistance of**, *alicui auxillio venire*, 242.

**come to a determination**, *consilium inire.*

**command**, *imperare (dat.).*

**command an army**, *præesse (dat.).*

**commission**, *mandare (dat.).*

**commit many sins**, *multa peccare.*

**common**, *communis.*

**common**: of a — kind, *vulgaris.*

**compassion**, *misericordia.*

**compel**, *cogere, coëg, coact.*

**completed**: I have — the work, *opus absolutum habeo*, 364.

**concerns** (it), *interest*, 207.

**condemn**, *damnare, condemnare*: to death, *capitis.*

**condemn a man to pay his vow**, *toti damnare.*

**conduct**, honorable, *honestas.*

**confer** (benefits) on, *conferre (beneficia)* in; *acc; tul, lat.*

**confer an obligation on**, *gratiam inire ab aliquo (Cic.) apud aliquem (Liv.)* 339.

**congratulate**, *congratulari*, 492.

**connection with**, *conjunctio*. See 157.

**conquer**, *vincere, vic, vict.*

**consequence**: it is of —, *interest.*

**consequence**: it is of no —, *nihil interest*, or *refert*, 207.

**consider** = think, *existimare, arbitrari*

**consider** = attend to, *attendere*, 229.

**considerable quantity**, *aliquantum.*

**considerably**, *aliquanto*, 405.

**constancy**, *constantia.*

**constantly**, *perpetuo.*

**constellation**, *astrum; sit: us, eris.*

**consul**, *consul, ulis.*

*consult, consulere, sulu, sult., acc.*  
 consult, for, } *consulere*  
 consult a man's interests, } *alicui*, 233.  
 contemporary, *æqualis*.  
 contented, *contentus* (*abl.*).  
 contention, *contentio*.  
 continue, *pergere, perrex, perfect*.  
 contract to build, *conducere faciendum*;  
*dux, duct*.  
 contrary to each other, *inter se con-*  
*trarii, a, a*.  
 convenient, *commodus*.  
 conversant, to be, *callere* (*acc.*).  
 converse, *loqui, locutus*.  
 corrupt, *corrumpere, rup, rupt*.  
 cost, *stare, constare*, 266. *abl.*: (*dat.* of  
 person).  
 count, *numerare*.  
 country, *patria*; as opposed to town,  
*rus, ruris*.  
 country, in the, *ruri*.  
 country, into the, *rus*.  
 country, from the, *rure*.  
 courage, *virtus, uis*.  
 courageously, *fortiter*.  
 courtesy, *humanitas*.  
 cross over, *transficere* or *trajicere, jec,*  
*ject, (acc.)*.  
 crown, *corona*.  
 cruelly, *crudeliter*.  
 cruelty, *crudelitas*.  
 cry out, *clamare*.  
 cultivate, *colere, colu, cult*: if it be a  
 study, e. g. eloquence—*studere*  
*(dat.)*.  
 cure, *mederi* (*dat.*).  
 custom, *consuetudo, inis*.  
 cut off, *intercludere, clus*, 233.

## D.

Dully, *quotidie, indies* or *in dies singu-*  
*los*. (See 69, 1).  
 danger, *periculum*.  
 dare, *audere, ausus sum*.  
 day, by, *interdiu*, 311.  
 deaf, *surdus*.  
 dearer, *pluris*, G. 266.  
 death, *mors*.  
 death, to (after condemn), *capitis*.  
 debt, *æs alienum*, 273.  
 debt, heavy, *magnum æs alienum*.  
 deceive, *decipere, io, cep, cept*.  
 decree, *decernere, crev, crel*.  
 deem, *putare*.  
 defend what is actually attacked, *de-*  
*fendere* (*fend, fens*): — what may  
 be attacked, *tueri*.  
 Degree, to what a —! *quo*, (with *gen.*)  
 512.

deliberation (after *cyces sed*), *consilia*,  
 271.  
 delight, *delectare*.  
 delightful,  *jucundus*.  
 delightful to the sense of sight, *amœnus*.  
 demand, *postulare*; *poscere, poposc*; to  
 demand importunately, *efflagitare*.  
 (See 257).  
 deny, *negare*.  
 depart a finger's breadth, *transversum*  
*digitum discedere*.  
 depend on, *niti, nisus* or *nirus*: (*in with*  
*abl.*).  
 deprive of, *spoliare, orbare*; (*abl.*).  
 desert, *deserere, seru, sert*.  
 deserve, *mereri* (*merit*); well of, *bene da*  
 deserving of, *dignus* (*abl.*).  
 deserving to be, &c., *dignus esse qui*,  
 with *subj.*  
 design, *consilium*.  
 desire, *velle*; *cupere, cupio, cupit*: = *ex-*  
*press* a wish, *optare* (See 420, x).  
 desirous, *cupidus* (*gen.*).  
 despair of, *desperare*.  
 destroy utterly, *delere, delet, delet*.  
 destroy (= burn), *concremare*, 141, c.  
 destroy: go about to destroy, *perditum*  
*ire*, 362, \* a.  
 deter, *deterere*. [See *From.*]  
 determine, *constituere*.  
 detrimental, to be, *detrimeto esse*, 242.  
 devote oneself to, *incumbere in*, with  
*acc. (cubu, cubit)*.  
 devote oneself to, *studere* (*dat.*).  
 die, *mori, ior, mortuus*; *mortem* or *su-*  
*preum diem obire*, 249.  
 difficult, *difficilis*.  
 difficulty: there is — in doing, &c. = it  
 is done, *difficile*.  
 difficulty: he has — in doing, &c. = he  
 does it, *difficile*.  
 difference, *distantia*.  
 difference, it makes a very great, *per-*  
*multum interest*, 122.  
 difference, what is there? *quid interest?*  
 difference, there is no, } *nihil interest*,  
 difference, it makes no, } or *refert*, 207.  
 diligence, *diligentia*.  
 dinner, *cæna*.  
 direct = instruct, *præcipere, cep, cept*  
 discharge, *fungi, functus*, (*abl.*) *per*  
*fungi*.  
 discipline, *disciplina*.  
 discontented, am—with, *pœnitentia*,  
 207.  
 discourse, *sermo, onis*.  
 discover, *invenire, repirere*. See 177, o.  
 disease, *morbis*.  
 disgraceful, *turpis*.  
 disgusted: am — at, *tædet* (*perf. per-*  
*tasum est*) *me*, 207.

dishonorably, *turpiter*.  
 displeasure, *displicere*, (dat.).  
 dissatisfied: am—with, *pœnitet me*, 207.  
 distance: to be at a distance of, &c. *abesse*, *distare*, 319.  
 distance: at two miles' distance, 348.  
 distant: to be—from, *abesse*; *distare* (a), 319.  
 ditch, *fossa*.  
 live, *exuere*, *exu*, *exui*, 233.  
 do nothing but—, *nil aliud quam* (*faciunt* omitted), 420.  
 do well, *præclare facere*.  
 dog, *canis*.  
 doubt: *dubitare*.  
 doubt: I don't at all—, *nullus dubito* (*quin*). See note 492.  
 doubt: there is no—, *non est dubium* (*quin*), 89.  
 dream, *somniare*.  
 dream, s. *somnium*.  
 draw, (= call) away, *avocare*.  
 draw up an army, *aciem instruere*; *strux*, *struxit*.  
 draw up an army in three lines, *triplicem aciem instruere*.  
 dress, *vestitus*.  
 drink, *bibere*, *bib*, *bibit*.  
 drink, s. *potus*, *us*, } 177.  
 drinking, *potio*, }  
 drive, *pellere*, *pepul*, *puls*:—drive away, *abigere*, *eg*, *act*.  
 dutiful affection, *pietas*.  
 duty, *officium*.

E.

Each (of two), *uterque*, *utraq*ue, *ultrumque*, G. *utriusque*.  
 each one, *unusquisque*.  
 each other (after 'to love,' &c.), *inter se*, 470.  
 each of them, singly, *singuli*, pl. *omnes*.  
 eagerly desirous, *studiosus*, (gen.); *avidus*, (gen.).  
 easy, *facilis*. Easily, *facile*.  
 eat, *edere* (*ed*, *es*); *vesci* (See 273).  
 eclipse, *defectio*.  
 eclipsed, to be, *deficere*, *sec*, *fect*.  
 efface, *delere*, *deleo*, *delet*.  
 either—or: *aut*—*aut*; *vel*—*vel*; *sive*—*sive*, 456.  
 elect, *eligere*, *leg*, *lect*.  
 election, *comitia*, n. pl.  
 eloquence, *eloquentia*, *facundia* (natural eloquence).  
 emulate, *amulari*, 229.  
 encamp, *considerere*, *sed*, *sees*.

encounter death, *mortem oppetere*.  
 encounter a danger, *periculum obire*.  
 end of, *extremus*, agreeing with its subst., 179.  
 endowed with, *præditus* (abl.).  
 endure, *sustinere*, *tinu*, *teni*.  
 enemy (private), *inimicus*.  
 enemy (public), *hostis*.  
 engage = fight with, *configere*, *fig*, *flit*.  
 engage = undertake, *recipere*, *cep*, *cepi*.  
 engaged in: to be—, *operam dare*, 337: (in a battle, affair, &c.) *interesse*, 224.  
 enjoy, *frui*, (abl.).  
 enough, *satis*, *affatim*. (See 512.)  
 enquire of, *querere ex*; *quesiv*, *quesit*.  
 enter into partnership, *coire societatem*.  
 entrust, *credere*, *credid*, *credidit* (dat. of person).  
 envy, *invidere*, *vid*, *vis* (dat.).  
 Ephesian, *Ephesius*.  
 equal, *par*, *dat*. Equal to (in magnitude, real or figurative), *instar* (gen.), 207.  
 error, *error*.  
 escape from, s. *fuga*, 157.  
 escape: it escapes me, *me fugit*, *fallit*, *præterit*, 259.  
 eternal, *æternus* (= everlasting); *sem-piternus*, 123, c.  
 even, *etiam*.  
 even mind, *æquus animus*.  
 even—not, *ne*—*quidem*.  
 evening, in the, *vesperi*.  
 every, *omnis*.  
 every body, *quisque*, 396.  
 every tenth man, *decimus quisque*.  
 every body who or that, *quisquis*, *quicunque*, 396.  
 every thing, *omnia*, pl.  
 ever, *unquam*, *aliquando*, *quando*, 402.  
 evil, *malum*, *neut*. adj.  
 exactly, with a numeral; *ipse*, in agreement, 308.  
 exceed the bounds of moderation, *modum excedere*, *cess*.  
 exceedingly, *vehementer*.  
 excel, *anteccellere*, *præstare*, 229.  
 exhort, *hortari*, *adhortari*.  
 expedient, *utilis* (dat.).  
 expedient: it is—, *expedit*.  
 expediency, *utilitas*.  
 experience (familiarity with a thing), *usus*, *us*.  
 exposed to, *obnoxi*, 212.  
 extortion, *pecuniæ repetundæ*; or only *repetundæ*.  
 extremely flourishing, *longe opulentissimus*.  
 eye, *oculus*.

## F.

**Faces**, to know a man by, *de facie nosse*.  
**fail** (a friend), *desse* (dat.), fail (one),  
*desere*, 229.  
**faith**, *fides*, 5.  
**faithful**, *fidelis*.  
**fall on** (= seize on), *inessere*, 229.  
**false**, *falsus*.  
**falsehoods**, utter many, *multa mentiri*,  
 38.  
**family**, *familia*.  
**far from** (thinking) this, *tantum abest*  
*ut* — (*ut*).  
**far**: not to be — from, *haud multum*  
 or *procul abesse* (quin), 91.  
**far be it from me** not, 83. See note t,  
 p. 40.  
**far, multo** (with compar. and superl.),  
 410.  
**farewell**, *ave, salve, vale*, 281.  
**fate**, *fatum*.  
**fault**, *culpa*.  
**favour**, *a, beneficium*.  
**favour**, *favere* (dat.), *fav, faul*.  
**fawn upon**, *adulari* (dat. or acc.).  
**fear**, of body, *timor*; of mind, *metus*, &c.  
**fear**, *timere, metuere, vereri*. See 99.  
**feeble**, *imbecillus*.  
**feed on**, *vesci*. See 273.  
**feel thankful**, *gratiam habere*.  
**fever**, *febris*, abl. 1.  
**few**, *pauci*, *a, a*.  
**few**: a few days ago, *paucis his diebus*.  
**few**: a few days before, *paucis illis*  
*diebus*.  
**fidelly**, *fides*.  
**field**, in the, *militia*.  
**fight**, *pugnare*; fight on horseback, *ex*  
*equo*.  
**find**, *invenire, reperire*, 177.  
**find**: hard to find, *difficilis inventu*,  
 364.  
**finger's breadth**. See Depart.  
**finish**, *conficere*.  
**fire**, *ignis*, (= conflagration) *incen-*  
*dium*.  
**first**, *primum*: at first, *primo*. See 83.  
**fit**, *aptus*, 212.  
**fitted**, *accommodatus*, 219.  
**fix by edict**, *edictare* (*ut*).  
**flank**, on the, *a latere*.  
**flatter**, *adulari* (dat. or acc.).  
**flaw**, *vitium*.  
**flight**, *fuga*.  
**flogged**, to be, *virgis caedi; caesus*.  
**folly**, *stultitia*.  
**fond**, *cupidus* (gen.).  
**food**, *cibus*, *i*.  
**foot**, *pes, pedis*.  
**for**, when untranslated, 255.

**for how much?** *quantum?*  
**for as much**—as, *tanti—quantum*, 268.  
**for less**, *minoris*, 266.  
**for just as much**—as, } *tantidem* —  
 for no more, than } *quantum*, 228.  
**for** (= in behalf of), *pro*.  
**for** (= owing to, of obstacles), *proe*, (abl.  
 for instance, *verbi causa*.  
**for some time**, *dudum, jamdudum*, 420.  
**for** (after to fear), sign of *dat*.  
**for any thing I care**, *per me licet*.  
**for us** (after make), *a nobis*.  
**foreign to**, *alienus*, 212.  
**foretell**, *praedicere*.  
**forget**, *oblivisci, oblitus*, 199.  
**former**, the, *ille*, 378.  
**forsooth**: as if—, *quasi vero*, 494.  
**fortune**. See Good.  
**fortune**: let—see to it, *id Fortuna*  
*videri*.  
**found**, *condere, candid, condit*.  
**founder** (of a family), *princeps familiae*.  
**free from**, *liberare* (abl.).  
**freedman**, *libertinus*: (but with refer-  
 ence to his master, *libertus*.)  
**friendly**, *amicus*.  
**friends**, his own, *sui*.  
**from a boy**, *puero*.  
**from the heart**, *ex animo*.  
**from a wall**, *ex muro*.  
**from your neighbourhood**, *istinc*.  
**from a different direction**, *aliunde*.  
**from, after conceal**, omitted, 251.  
**from, after prevents, deters, &c.**, *quom-*  
*nus*, 94.  
**from, after recover**, *ex*.  
**front**, in, *a fronte*.  
**frugality**, *frugalitas*.  
**fruits** (of the earth), *fruges*: (of a tree)  
*fructus*.  
**full**, *plenus*, 182.  
**fury**, *furor*.

## G.

**Gain an advantage**, *emolumentum ca-*  
*pere* (*cep, capt*),—*ex*.  
**gain possession of**, *potiri* (abl. gen.).  
**Gaul**, *Gallus*.  
**get possession of**, *potiri, potitus* (abl.).  
**gift**, *donum, munus, eris*. (See 242.)  
**give information**, *docere*, 253: give  
 much information, *multa docere*  
*(de)*, 252.  
**give battle to**, *praelium committere*  
*cum; mis, miss*.  
**given over**, *desperatus*.  
**given it is**, *datur*.  
**glad**, to be, *letari*, 521.  
**glory**, *gloria*.

glorious, *gloriosus*.  
 go wrong, *errare*.  
 go away, *abire, decedere, cess*. See 308.  
 go about to destroy, *perditum ire*, 362\*, a.  
 go on, *pergere, perrex, perrect*.  
 go on in your valour! *macte virtute esto!* 280.  
 god, *Deus*, 56.  
 gold, *aurum*.  
 golden, *aureus*.  
 good, *bonus*; (= beneficial, expedient) *utilis*.  
 good: to do —, *prodesse* (dat.).  
 good fortune: it was my — (*contigit mihi*, —ut, 374).  
 good time, in, { *in tempore*.  
                           *tempore*.  
 govern, *imperare*, dat.; (= regulate, direct) *moderari* (acc. or dat. See 220).  
 grateful, *gratus*.  
 gratitude, *gratia*.  
 greatest (when degree is meant rather than size), *summus*.  
 greedy, *avidus* (gen.).  
 Greece, *Græcia*.  
 Greek, *Græcus*.  
 grief, *dolor*.  
 grieve, *dolere, mœrere*. See 521.  
 ground, *humus*; on the ground, *humi*.  
 grudge, *invidere* (dat.), *vid, vis*.  
 guard against, { *cavere* (acc. 233), *cav*,  
 guard, be on my, { *caut*.  
 guidance, under your, *te duce*; under the guidance of Herdonius, *Herdonii ductu*.

H.

Habit of silence, *taciturnitas*.  
 had rather, *malles*, 150 (conjug. 142, l).  
 hail, *ave, salve*, 281.  
 hand, *manus*, &c., 4. f.  
 hanging, *suspensum*.  
 happen (of evils), *accidere*: of fortunate events, *contingere* (tig): = turn out, *evenire*. (See 374).  
 happen: how does it happen that . . . ? *qui fit ut*, &c.  
 happy, *beatus, felix*. (See 443.)  
 hard: are hard to avoid, *difficile vitantur*.  
 hard to find, *difficilis inventu* (sup.).  
 hardly (= scarcely), *vix*.  
 hardly any body, *nemo fere*.  
 harvest, *messis, f*.  
 hate, *odisse* (with tenses derived from perf.).

hateful, to be, *odio esse*, 242.  
 have, *habere*.  
 have a thing done, *faciendum curare*, 356.  
 have an interview with, *convenire*, (acc.).  
 have, in such sentences as, 'with whom we have to do.' (See 336.)  
 head, *caput, capitis*, n.  
 heal, *mederi* (dat.).  
 healed, to be (of a wound), *consanescere*.  
 health, to be in good, *valere*.  
 hear, *audire*.  
 hearing: without hearing him (= him unheard), *inauditum* (acc. masc.).  
 heart (as the seat of the affections), *animus*, 92.  
 heart, *cor, cordis*, n.  
 heavy, *gravis*.  
 height: to such a —, *eo, adv.* (gen.).  
 help (a person in perplexity), *subvenire* (dat.); *juvare* (acc.), *auxiliari* (dat.), *succurrere* (dat. See 222, k.).  
 her (acc. sing.), *se*, if relating to nom. of sentence; if not, *eam*.  
 her, adj. *suus, a, um*, if relating to nom. of sentence; if not, *ejus*.  
 hesitate, *dubitare*.  
 hidden, *occultus*.  
 him, *se*, if relating to nom. of sentence if not, *eum*.  
 himself, 369; 373, c. (Q. on § 48.)  
 hinder, *impedire*. See Q. on § 15.  
 hindrance, *impedimentum*.  
 his own friends, *adherents, &c.*  
 hit (= strike), *ferire, icere, cadere, co- cid, cæs*. See 299, l.  
 hold, *tenere*.  
 hold a levy of troops, *delectum habere*  
 hold one's tongue, *silere, tacere*, See 299, g.  
 hold cheap, *parvi pendere*, 266.  
 home, to, *domum*: at, *domi*: from, *doma*  
 honey, *mel, mellis*.  
 honour (= the honorable), *honestas*, (= probity) *fides, ci*.  
 honour, to be an, { *honori esse*, 242.  
 honorable, to be, {  
 honorable conduct, *honestas*. Honor-  
 able, *honestus*. Honorably, *honeste*.  
 hope, *sperare*. (See 15.)  
 horseback, on, *ex equo*: (of more than one person) *ex equis*.  
 house, at my, *domi mea*.  
 how (with adj.), *quam*.  
 how disgraceful it is, *quanto opprobri- est*.  
 how many, *quot*.  
 how much, *quantum*.  
 how does it happen? *qui fit, ut . . . ?*



how few there are, who — ? *quotus-  
quisque est, qui . . ?* (with subj.)  
477.

human-feeling, } *humanitas*.  
humanity, }  
hunger, *fames*, *is*.  
hurry, to be in a, *festinare*.  
hurt, *nocere*, *dat.*; *lædere* (*acc. læ.*)  
hurtful, to be, *nocere*.  
husband, *vir*, 291.

## I.

I for my part, *equidem*.  
if — not, *nisi*, 451.  
if however, *sin autem*, 451.  
ignorant, to be, *ignorare* (*acc.*).  
ignorant: not to be ignorant that, *&c.*,  
*non ignorare, quin*.  
ignorant: who is ignorant that, *&c.*?  
*quis ignorat, quin . . ?*  
ignorant of, *rudis* (*gen.*).  
immediately after the battle, *confestim  
a prælio*, 348.  
immense, *ingens*.  
immortal, *immortalis*.  
impiety, *impietas*.  
impiety: if it may be said without —,  
*si fas est dictu*, 364.  
impiety: it cannot be said without —,  
*nefas est dictu*, 364.  
importance, it is of, *interest* (*gen.*), 203.  
importance, it is of great, *magni* (or  
*multum*) *interest*, 206, a.  
important, *gravior*.  
inopportune, *flagitare*.  
impose on, *imponere, ponu, posit*, 233.  
impute as a fault, *vitio* or *culpæ dare*  
or *vertere*, 242.  
in the presence of the people, *apud  
populum*.  
in (an author), *apud* (*Xenophontem*,  
&c.).  
in front, *a fronte*.  
in flank, *a latere*.  
in the rear, *a tergo*.  
in triumph (to lead), *per triumphum*.  
inattentive to, *negligens* (*gen.*), 183.  
increase, *augere, aux, auct*, (*trans.*)  
*crecere, crev* (*neut.*).  
incredible, *incredibilis*.  
inconsistent with, *alienus*, 212.  
inconvenient, *incommodus*.  
induce, *adducere ut, &c.*  
indulge, *indulgere, duls, dull* (*dat.*).  
industry, *diligentia*.  
inflict punishment on, *aliquem pœnâ  
afflicere*, 276.  
influence: to have great — with, *mul-  
tum valere apud aliquem*.

inform, *certiorem facere*, 187.  
information. See *Give*.  
inhabit, *incolere, colu, cult*.  
injure, *violare*, (= do harm to) *lædere*  
(*acc.*).  
injurious, it is, *nocet* (*dat.*).  
injury, *injuria*.  
innocent, *innocens*.  
insignificant · how — ! *quam nullus!*  
insolence to such a height of, *eo* (*adv.*)  
*insolentia*, 512.  
instance, for, *verbi causâ*.  
interest (= true interest), *utilitas*.  
interest: it is the — of, *interest* (*gen.*),  
203.  
interests (to consult the). See 233.  
interests (to provide for). See 233.  
interview. See *Have*.  
intimate: to be — with, *familiariter uti*,  
*abl.*  
inventor, *inventor, fem. inventrix*.  
invest (= blockade), *obsidere, secû, scss*.  
invoke, *appellare*.  
iron-hearted, *ferreus*.  
is (= is distant), *distat*.  
island, *insula*.  
it cannot be but that, *fieri non potest  
quin*.  
it is not every man who can, &c., *non  
cujusvis est, &c.* 190.  
Italy, *Italia*.

## J.

Javelin, *jaculum*.  
jest, *jocus*.  
jewel, *gemma*.  
join battle with, *commillere prælium  
(cum)*.  
journey, on the, *inter viam*.  
joyful, *lætus*.  
just (equitable), *æquus*.  
justice, *justitia*.

## K.

Keep, *servare*.  
keep one's word, *fidem præstare*.  
keep up a certain state, *splendens se  
gerere*.  
kill, *interficere, occidere, necare*, 308.  
king, *rex, regis*.  
know, *scire, novisse, callere*, 385.

## L.

Labour, *labor*.  
lame of one leg, *claudus alter o pedu*.  
lamp, *lucerna*.

large, *magnus*.  
 lasting, *sempiternus*.  
 latter, the, *hic*.  
 laugh, *ridere, ris, ris*.  
 law, *lex, legis*.  
 lay on, *imponere*.  
 lay down, *ponere, posu, posit*.  
 lay aside, *ponere, posu, posit*.  
 lay a person under an obligation, *gratiam ab aliquo inire*.  
 lay down a magistracy, *magistratum abdicare*; (or *se* with *abl.*, 306.)  
 lead a life, *agere vitam*; *eg, act*.  
 league, *fœdus, eris*.  
 learning, branch of, *doctrina*.  
 lean on, *nili, nisus, nixus (abl. 273)*.  
 learn, *discere, didic*.  
 learn by heart, *ediscere*.  
 leave, *relinquere, lig, lict*: (by will), *relinquere*.  
 leave (= go out of), *excedere (with abl.) cess, 83*.  
 leave nothing undone, *nihil prætermittere quin*.  
 leave off, *desinere, desi, desit*.  
 leg. See *Lame*.  
 leisure: I have —, *vacat mihi, 154*.  
 Lemnos, *Lemnos, G. i*.  
 let me know, *fac sciam (with ut omitted)*.  
 let out to be built by contract, *locare faciendum*.  
 letter, *litteræ, pl.: epistola*.  
 levy troops, *delectum habere*.  
 liable to, *obnoxius, 212*.  
 liar, *mendax (adj.)*.  
 lie, *mentiri*.  
 lie near, *adjacere, 229*.  
 life, *vita*; (= life-time) *ætas*. In the life-time of Augustus, *Augusto vivo, 364*.  
 lift up, *tollere, sustul, sublat*.  
 light, *levis*.  
 light (= kindle), *accendere: succendere rogum, &c. (See 299, h.)*  
 lightning, *fulmen, inis*.  
 like, *similis, dat.:* (= equal to in size) *instar, (gen.)*.  
 like (verb). See 491, *d*.  
 lines: to draw up an army in three—, *triplicem aciem instruere*.  
 literature, *litteræ*.  
 little, or a little (= few things,) *pauca, 23*.  
 little: but or too —, *parum*.  
 little, a (= some, but not much), *paulum; paululum, 402*.  
 long, *diu: pridem, jamdiu, jampridem. See 420*.  
 long for, *avere, of an impatient, gestire of a joyous longing*.

look to that yourself, *id ipse vidēris*.  
 loquacious, *loquax*.  
 lose, *perdere, perdid, perdit*: lose (passively), *amittere*. (See 56.)  
 lose an opportunity, *occasionem amittere*.  
 lose flesh, *corpus amittere*.  
 love, *amare, diligere*. (See 185, a.)  
 lover of, *amans, diligens (gen., 183.)*.  
 lover, such a lover of, *adeo amans or diligens (gen., 183)*.  
 lowest, *infimus, imus*.  
 lust, *libido, inis*.  
 luxurious, *luxuriosus*.  
 lyre, to play on the. See *Teach*.

## M.

Mad, to be, *furens*.  
 madness, *amentia, 512*.  
 magistracy, to hold, *magistratum gerere*.  
 make, *facere (sec, fuct)*; *efficio: am made, fio. Obs. 'makes all things (acc.) flourish'; in Lat. 'makes that (ut) all things (nom.) should flourish,' 254*.  
 make the same promise, *idem polliceri, pollicitus*.  
 make treaty, &c., *fœdus icere, 299*.  
 make this request of you, *illud te rogo (ut ne)*.  
 make (= appoint to an office), *creare*.  
 make mention of, *meminisse, recordari, 201*.  
 make sport of, *illudere, lus (dat.)*.  
 make merry with, *illudere, lus (dat.)*.  
 make the same boast, *idem gloriari*.  
 make it my first object, *id agere (ut)*.  
 make for us, *a nobis facere*.  
 make a decree in a man's favour, *secundum aliquem decernere; decreta, decret*.  
 making haste (after *opus est*), *propere, (abl. part. 171)*.  
 maker, *effector: fem. effectrix*.  
 man, *homo, vir*. (See 33, y.)  
 man: I am not the — to; *non is sum, qui (subj.)*.  
 manners (= morals, character,) *mores, um, pl*.  
 many, *multi*.  
 march against the enemy, *obviā ire hostibus*.  
 marry (of a female), *nubere (dat. 222)*.  
 Marseilles, *Massilia*.  
 master, *magister, dominus, verus*. (See 180.)  
 matter, *res*.  
 mean, *sibi velle*.

mean time; in the —, *interim, interea*.  
 (See 402.)  
 means, by no, *minime*.  
 meat, *cibus*.  
 medicine, *medicina*.  
 meditate, *meditari* (acc.).  
 meet, to go to, *obviam ire* (dat.).  
 melt, *liquecere, licu*.  
 merchant, *mercator*.  
 middle of, *medius* (in agreement with  
 its subst. 179).  
 mile (= 1000 paces), *mille passus*: pl.  
*Milia passuum*.  
 Miletus, of, *Mileus*.  
 milk, *lac, lactis*.  
 mind, *mens, mentis; animus*.  
 mindful, *memor* (gen.).  
 miserable, *miser, era, &c.*  
 mistaken, to be, *falli*.  
 mistaken, I am, *me fallit*.  
 mock, *illudere* (dat. 229).  
 moderate, *moderari* (acc. or dat. 220).  
 money, *pecunia*.  
 month, *mensis, m.*  
 moon, *luna*.  
 moral, *sacculus*.  
 morals, *mores, um*.  
 more, *plus* (with gen.). For more,  
*pluris*.  
 mortal, *mortalis*.  
 most men, *plerique*.  
 motion, *motus, &c.*  
 mound, *agger*.  
 move, *movere, mov, mot*. Move, *neut.*  
*moveri*.  
 much, *nulla, n. pl.* (but if opposed to  
 many things, or followed by gen.  
*multum*.)  
 much less, *nedum*, 443.  
 multitude, *multitudo, into*.

## N.

Naked, *nudus*.  
 name, *nominare* (also = to appoint).  
 nature, *natura; rerum natura*.  
 near, *prope* (acc.).  
 near, to be very, *minimum abesse* (im-  
 pers.) *quin*, 92.  
 nearer, *propior*; (adv.) *propius*, 211.  
 nearer am, *propius abeum* (quam), 319.  
 nearest, *proximus*.  
 nearly, *prope, pene*.  
 need, *egere, indigere* (abl. or gen.).  
 need, have — of, *opus est*, 176, c.  
 need, you have no —, *nihil opus est*.  
 negligent, *negligens* (gen.), 183.

neighbourhood, in your, *istic*,  
 neighbourhood, from your, *istinc*. } 387  
 neighbourhood, to your, *istuc*.  
 neither — nor, { *neque — neque*.  
                           { *nec — nec*  
 neutral, *medius*.  
 never, *numquam*.  
 nevertheless, *tamen*.  
 news of the town, *res urbana*.  
 next: the next thing is, *sequitur ut*, 85  
 night, by, *noctu* or *nocte*.  
 no, *nullus*; after *ne*, *quis*.  
 no one, *nemo*.  
 no painter, *nemo pictor*.  
 no where, }  
 no whither, } *nusquam*.  
 no time, *nihil temporis*.  
 nobody, *nemo, inis*\*.  
 none of you, *nemo vestrum*.  
 none of those things, *nihil eorum*.  
 nor, *neque, nec*: but after *ut* or *ne* it  
                           is *nec* or *neq*.  
 not, *non*. After *rel.*, see p. 215, d.  
 not yet, *non dum*.  
 not one's own, *alienus*.  
 not even, *ne — quidem*.  
 not only — but also, *non solum — sed*,  
                           or *verum etiam*.  
 not so far off, to be, *propius abesse*.  
 not to say, *ne dicam*.  
 not that — but, *non quod — sed*; *non*  
                           *quis — sed*; *non eo* or *ideo quod —*  
                           *sed*, 492.  
 not at all, *nihil*.  
 not as if not, *non quin*, with *subj.*  
 not to be far from, *haud multum* (or  
                           *haud procul*) *abesse* (quin).  
 nothing, *nihil*.  
 nothing but, *nihil aliud nisi*, 185.  
 nourish, *alere, atu, alit* or *alt*.  
 now (= already), *jam*.  
 number, *numerare*.

## O

Obey, *parere, obedire* (dat. See 222)  
 object, not to, *non recusare quin*, 92.  
 obligation, lay a man under a great,  
 confer an — on, *magnam ab aliquo*  
 (Cic.), *apud aliquem* (Liv.), *grati-*  
                           *am inire*, 339.  
 obliging, *commodus*.  
 obstruct, *intercludere, clus*.  
 obtain, *potiri* (abl. gen.).  
 occasion: you have no — to hurry,  
                           *nihil est quod festines*, 477.

\* *Neminis* and *nemine* are not found, but *nullius, nullo*:—except now and then  
*nemine* with pass. participle.—*Nemo ablativum nec habet, nec habet genitivum*

occasion : have — for *opus est*, 170.  
 ocean, *oceanus*.  
 occupy myself in, *operam dare*, 337.  
 odious, to be, *odio esse*, 242.  
 of, after 'strip,' &c. (*abl.*)  
 of, after 'become,' 'deserve well,' &c.  
   'am persuaded,' and when of =  
   concerning, *de*.  
 of, after 'enquire,' *ex*.  
 of others, *alienus*, *a*, *um*.  
 of such a kind, *ejusmodi*.  
 offend, *offendere*, *fend*, *fens* (*acc.*).  
 offend against, *violare*.  
 offence : if I may say so without —,  
   *pace tuâ dixerim*.  
 old, *vetus*, *veteris* (*n. pl. vetera*).  
 old man, *senex*, *G. senis*, *G. pl. um*.  
 old age, *senectus*, *etia*.  
 one (of two), *alter*, *G. ius*.  
 one thing — another, *aliud* — *aliud*, 38.  
 one (= a certain), *quidam*.  
 one (= some one, no matter who),  
   *aliquis*.  
 one's, *eius*.  
 only, adj. *solus*, *G. ius*.  
 only : the — one who, *isus qui* (*with*  
   *subj.*).  
 only son, *unicus filius*.  
 opinion, to be of, *censere*.  
 opportunity, *occasio*.  
 oppose, *repugnare* (*dat.*), *obstare* (*dat.*).  
 or, *aut*, *vel*, *ve*, 456 (*in questions an.*).  
 or not, *neque*. See 122.  
 orator, *orator*.  
 order, *jubere*, *juss* (*acc. with inf.*).  
 ought, *oportet*. See 126.  
 out of, *e*, *ex*.  
 out of doors, *foras*.  
 out : to dine out, *cenare foris*, 339.  
 over : it is all over with, *actum est de*.  
 over against, *adversus*.  
 overpower (with emotion), *frangere*,  
   *freg*, *fract*.  
 overthrow, *evertere*, *vert*, *vers*.  
 owe, *debere*.  
 owing : it is owing to, *per aliquem stat*,  
   *quominus*, &c. 99.  
 own (*emphatic*), *ipsius* or *ipseorum*, after  
   *meus*, *tuus*, &c.

## P.

Pace, *passus*, *ds*.  
 pained, to be, *dolere* (*acc. or abl. with*  
   *de.*).  
 pardon, *venia*.  
 pardon, *ignoscere*, *nov* (*dat.*); (of a su-  
   perior) *veniam dare*.  
 parent, *parens*; *geniter*, *fem. genitrix*.  
 part, *pars*, *partis*. •

partner, *consors*, 185.  
 party, to be on our, *a vobis sentire*.  
 past, the, *præterita*.  
 peck, *modius*.  
 peculiar, *proprius*, 212.  
 perceive, *sentire*.  
 perchance (in questions), *quid in ec-*  
   *quid*, *numquid*, 400.  
 perform, *fungi*, *perfungi*, *functus* (*abl.*).  
 perhaps, *fortasse*.  
 permitted, it is, *licet*.  
 permitted, I am, *licet mihi*.  
 perpetual, *semperiternus*.  
 perseverance, *perseverantia*.  
 persist, *perseverare*.  
 persuade (= advise), *suadere* (*dat.*); =  
   advise effectually, *persuadere*, *suas*  
   (*dat.*).  
 persuaded, I am, *persuasum est mihi*  
   *de*, &c., or *persuasum habeo*, 291.  
 perverse, *perversus*.  
 perversely, *perverse*.  
 philosopher, *philosophus*.  
 philosophy, *philosophia*.  
 piety, *pietas*.  
 pity (I), *miseret me*, or *miseror*, *gen.*  
   (See 201, r.).  
 pity, *misericordia*.  
 plainly : see — through, *perspectum*  
   *habeo*, 364.  
 planet, *planeta* or *es*.  
 plan, *consilium*.  
 plant, *serere*, *se*, *sai*.  
 play, *ludere*, *lus*.  
 play on the lyre. See *Teach.*  
 plea, a cause, *agere causam*.  
 pleasant, *jucundus*.  
 please, *placere* (*dat.*).  
 pleasure, *voluptas*.  
 poet, *poeta*.  
 point : to be on the — of, *in eo esse ut*,  
   479.  
 poison, *venenum*.  
 Pompey, *Pompejus*.  
 possession, to be in, *tenere*.  
 possession, to gain, *potior* (*abl. or gen.*).  
 possible as (after *superl.*), *quam*, *vel*,  
   410.  
 possibly. As great as can possibly be,  
   *quantus maximus potest esse*, 412.  
 post himself, *considerare*, *sed*, *se*.  
 poor, *pauper*.  
 power, *potentia* of actual, *potestas* of  
   *legal*, *conceded*, &c., *power*.  
 power : to put himself in their —, *po*  
   *testatem sui facere*.  
 power : to be in our —, *in nostrâ po*  
   *testate esse*.  
 powerful, *potens*.  
 practice (justice, &c.), *colere*, *colu*, *cult*  
 praise, *laus*, *laudis*.

praise, to, *laudare*.  
 pray (= beg earnestly), *orare*.  
 predict, *prædicere*.  
 prefer, *anteponere*, *poni*, *posui*.  
 prefer a charge, *reum facere de*, 187.  
 prefer a capital charge against, *capitalis reum facere*, 187.  
 prefer a charge of immorality against, *de moribus reum facere*, 187.  
 prejudicial, to be, *obesse* (dat.).  
 prepare, *parare*.  
 present with, *donare*, 207.  
 present, give us a, *dono* or *muneri dare*, 242, (3).  
 present, to be, *adesse* (dat.).  
 preservation: tend to the—, 335, c.  
 pretend, *simulare*.  
 pretty often, *nonnunquam*.  
 prevent, *obstare*, *obstul* (dat.).  
 priest, }  
 priestess, } *sacerdos*, *otia*.  
 proceed against a person, *consulere in aliquem*.  
 produce (= fruits), *fruges*, pl.  
 productive of, *efficiens* (gen.), 183.  
 profitable, to be, *prodesse* (dat.).  
 promise, *polliceri*, *licitus*; *promittere*.  
 See 17, l. See 15.  
 prompt execution (after *opus est*), *maturo facto*, 177.  
 prone, *proclivis* (ad.).  
 property, all my, *omnia mea*.  
 property, all their, *omnia sua*.  
 prosecute, *postulare*, 201.  
 protection, take under one's, *tueri*, 374.  
 proud, *superbus*.  
 prove an honour, *honori esse*; (prove done by *sum* with the dat., 242.)  
 prove myself mindful; *præstare me memorem*.  
 prove my gratitude, } *gratiam* re-  
 prove myself grateful, } *ferre*.  
 provide for the interests of, *providere* *vid*, *vis*; *prospicere*, *spec*, *spect* (both with dat.).  
 provided that, *dum*, *modo*, or *dummodo* (after which 'not' is ne), 494.  
 pull down, *diruere*, *ru*, *ru*.  
 punishment, *pæna*.  
 purpose, for the, *causâ*.  
 purpose, to no, *nequicquam*, *frustra*.  
 put; put down, *ponere*, *poni*, *posui*.  
 put off, *exuere*, *exu*, *exui*.  
 put in mind of, *admonere*, 194.  
 pyre, *rogus*.

Q.

Quite (to be without), *plane* (carere).

R.

Ratify a treaty, *scire factus*.  
 rather, I had, *malô*.  
 rational faculty, *mens*.  
 rear, in the, a *tergo*.  
 reason, you, &c., have no, *nihil est quod* (subj.).  
 receive, ac-, ex-, re- *cipere*, *cep*, *cepi*. (See 308.)  
 receive favourably, *boni consilere* (in *Quintil.*, *Seneca*, &c.); in *bonam partem accipere*, 185.  
 reckon, *numerare*.  
 reckon one thing after another, *posthabere*.  
 reckon as a fault, *vitio vertere*, 242.  
 recollect, *reminisci*.  
 reconciled, to be, in *gratiam redire* (cum).  
 recover, *convalescere*, *valua*.  
 recruit myself, *me reficere*.  
 refrain: I cannot—from, *temperari mihi non possum*, *quin*, &c.  
 regard the interests of, *prospicere*, *spec*, *spect* (dat.).  
 reign, *regnare*.  
 reign: in your—, *te rege*: *te regnante* or *imperante*, 364.  
 reject, *repudiare*.  
 rejoice, *gaudere*, *gavisus sum*.  
 relate, *narrare*.  
 relieve from, *liberare* (abl.); (of a partial relief) *levare* (abl.).  
 religion, *religio*.  
 relying on,  *fretus* (abl.).  
 remainder = rest of, 179.  
 remains, it, *reliquum est*, *restat* (ut).  
 remedy, *remedium*.  
 remember, *meminisse* (*Imperat. memento*); *recordari*, *reminisci*. (See 201, q.)  
 remind, *admonere* (gen.).  
 render, *reddere*, *did*, *didi*.  
 renew, *renovare*.  
 repair, *reficere*, *fec*, *fecit*.  
 repay a kindness, *gratiam referre*.  
 repent: I—me, *me pœnitet* (gen.).  
 report, *fama*.  
 require, *egere*, *indigere* (gen. abl.).  
 required, are, *opus sunt*, 172.  
 resignation, *æquus animus*.  
 resignation, the most or greatest, *æquisimus animus*.  
 resist, *resistere*, *resisti*; *repugnare* (dat.).  
 resolve, *constituere*, *stitui*, *stitui*.  
 rest, *requies*.  
 rest on, *niti*, 273.  
 rest of, adj. *reliquus*. (See 179.)  
 rest, all the, *cetera omnia*.

restore liberty to his country, *patriam in libertatem vindicare*.  
 restrain, *temperare* (dat.), 220.  
 restrained, to be, *inhiberi*.  
 retain a grateful sense, *gratiam habere*.  
 return, *redire, reverti, revenire*. (See 339, p.)  
 return thanks, *gratias agere*; eg, act.  
 revile, *maledicere* (dat.).  
 reviler, *vituperator*.  
 revolt from, *deficere ab*; sec, sect.  
 rich, *dives*.  
 riches, *divitiæ*.  
 right, *rectus*: (of situation,) *dexter*.  
 rise, *oriri, ior, ortus*. (See 443.)  
 rival, *æmulari* (dat. or acc.).  
 river, *flumen, amnis, fluvius*, 472, o.  
 rob, *spoliare* (abl.).  
 rod, *virgæ, pl.*  
 rope (= hanging), *suspensum*.  
 Rome, *Roma*.  
 Roman, *Romanus*.  
 rule, *regula*.  
 ruling power, to be *rerum potiri*.

## S

Safety, *salus, utilis*.  
 sail past, } *prætervohi, vectus* (acc.).  
 sail along, }  
 sake: for the — of, *causâ*.  
 sake, for its own, *propter seæ*.  
 salute, *salutare*.  
 same, *idem*.  
 satisfaction, to your, &c., *ex (tuâ) sententiâ*.  
 satisfactorily, *ex sententiâ*.  
 satisfy, *satisfacere* (dat.).  
 say, *dicere*: (= *asserte*) *ait*.  
 say that — not, *negare*.  
 say: not to say, *ne dicam*.  
 say: they (= people) say, *ferunt*.  
 say: as they say, }  
 saying: as the — is, } *ut aiunt*.  
 says he, *inquit*.  
 sauce, *condimentum*.  
 scarcely, *vis*.  
 sea, *mare*. By sea and land, *terrâ marique*.  
 season, *tempestas*.  
 seasoning, *condimentum*.  
 second, *alter*.  
 sedition, *seditio*.  
 see, *videre*; (= distinguish; have the sense of sight) *cernere*.  
 see that you don't, *vide ne*.  
 see (plainly) through (any thing), *aliquid perspectum habere*, 364.  
 see; do you see to that, *id tu videris*.  
 seem, *videri, visus*.

seize on, *incessere* (of fear, &c.), 229.  
 self, selves. (See 368.) I myself, *ipse*, 33.  
 sell, *vendere* (*vendid, vendid*).  
 sell, neut. *venire* (*veneo*), 267.  
 senate, *senatus*.  
 send, *mittere, mis, miss*.  
 send forward, *præmittere*.  
 send (news by letter), *perscribere*.  
 send to the assistance of, *auxilio mittere* (two datives).  
 sentence, *sententia*.  
 serpent, *serpens*.  
 serve a campaign, *stipendium merere*, or *mereri*, 308.  
 serves, *est* (with dat. 257).  
 service, to be of, *prodesse* (dat.).  
 serviceable, *idoneus*.  
 sesterce, *sestertius*.  
 set on fire, *incendere, succendere*. See 299.  
 set out, *proficisci, sectus*.  
 set out to the assistance of, *auxilio proficisci* (two datives).  
 set at liberty, }  
 set free from, } *liberare* (abl.).  
 several, *plures*.  
 several times, 420.  
 severe, *gravis*: *gravior*, 409, g.  
 severity, *gravitas*.  
 shadow, *umbra*.  
 shed, *profundere, fud, fus*.  
 should, = ought, *debere, oportet*, 126 or (after Exerc. 49, Pt. I.) *part in dus*, 326, 327.  
 show (myself brave), *præbere*.  
 Sicily, *Sicilia*.  
 sick, *æger, gra, grum*: (of body or mind) *ægrotus*.  
 side, to be on our, *a nobis stare*.  
 siege, *obsidio*.  
 silence, *silentium*: (habit of) *taciturnitas*.  
 silent, *tacitus*: (habitually) *taciturnus*.  
 silent, to be, *silere, tacere*. See 299.  
 silver, *argentum*.  
 sin, *peccare*.  
 since, *quum, quoniam*, 492  
 sister, *soror*.  
 size, *magnitudo*.  
 skilled in, *peritus* (gen.).  
 slaughter, *trucidare*.  
 slave, *servus*.  
 slave, to be the, *servire* (dat.).  
 slay, *occidere, cid, cis*.  
 sleep, *somnus*.  
 smack of, *redolere* (acc.), } 245.  
 smell of, *olere*, }  
 snatch away, *eripere, rips, repl* (dat of pers.).  
 snares, *insidiæ*.

snow, *nix, nivis*.

so near home, *tam prope a domo*.

so. The thing is so, *res ita se habet*.

Socrates, *Socrates, Gen. is*.

sold, to be, *venire (veneo)*, 267.

some, *aliquis, quospiam*, 392. See  
*in* to x. and 390, v.

some one or other, *nascio quis*, 394.

some body of consequence, *aliquis*, 396.

some other place, to, *alio*, 394.

some other place, from, *aliunde*.

some other direction, in, *alio*.

some other direction, from, *aliunde*.

some considerable, *aliquantum*.

some — others, *alii — alii*.

sometimes *nonnunquam, aliquando, interdum*. See 402.\*

somewhat. Omit, and put adj. in  
*compar.* 408: or translate by *paulo*  
 with *compar.*

sorry: I am — for, *piget me (gen.)*.

soul, *animus*.

sow, *serere, sēo, sat*.

Spain, *Hispania*.

spare, *parcere, pepere (dat.)*.

speak, *loqui, locutus*.

speak the truth, *verum dicere*.

spear, *hasta*.

speech, *oratio*, 249.

spend his life, *vitam agere*.

spend his time (in), *tempus impendere*,  
 337.

spoken ill of, to be, *male audire*.

sport: to make — of, *illudere, lus*  
*(dat.)*.

stand in need of, *agere (gen. abl.)*.

stand by, *adesse (dat.)*.

star, *stella*, See 51.

stay (in a place), *commorari*.

starvation, *fames*.

state, *respublica*.

stick, *bacillum*.

stir out of the city, *urbe excedere*, 249.

stone, *lapis, adj. lapideus*.

storm, *oppugnare (acc.)*.

storm, to take by, *per vim expugnare*.

strange, *mirus*.

strength, *vires, ius*.

strip off, *exuere*.

strive, *niti, eniti, nitus, nixus, ut*.

struck (by stones, lightning, &c.), *ictus*.

study, *studere (dat.)*.

subject to, *obnoxius (dat.)*.

succeed (= follow), *excipere (acc.)*.

successfully, *ex sententiā*.

vaccour, *succurere (dat.)*.

such, *talis*.

such is your temperance, *quæ tua est*  
*temperantia*, 56.

such a manner, in, *ita (ut)*.

suffer, *sincere, sis; pati, passus*. See  
 532.

suggestion, at your, *te auctore*.

suitable, *idoneus*, 212.

sun, *sol*.

superior, to be, } *antecellere, præstare*,  
 surpass, } 229.

superstition, *superstitio*.

supper, *cena*.

support (= nourish), *alere, alu, alit, or*  
*alt*.

surround, *circumdare (urbem muro, or*  
*murum urbi)*.

survive, *superesse*.

survivor, *superstes, itis*.

suspense, to be in anxious, *pendere*  
*animi, animo* (or if necessary,  
*animis*).

suspicion, *suspicio*.

swallow, *hirundo, dinis*.

swear, *jurare*.

Syracuse, *Syracusæ*.

## T.

Take,† *capere (cep, capt)*: *sumere*  
*(sume, sumpt)*. See 492.

take by storm, *expugnare*.

take in good part, *boni consulere*, 185.

take away, *adimere, eximere*. See 385,  
 o (em, empl): *eripere (dat. of pers.)*.

take measures against, *consulere in*  
*(acc.)*.

take cruel measures against, *crudeliter*  
*in (aliquem) consulere*.

take a camp, *exuere hostes castris*, 233

take care, *cavere, cav, caut*.

take care that, *vide (ne)*.

take under one's protection, *tueri*, 374.

take hold of, *prehendere*.

teach, *docere*, two acc. 257.

teach to play on the lyre, *fidibus docere*  
 (l. e. *teach with or on the strings*).

teacher, *magister*; *sem. magistra*.

temple, *templum*.

tenacious, *tenax (gén.)*.

tend, to, 335, c.

terrify, *terrere*.

territory, *ager*.

thank, *gratias agere*.

that (after *doubt, dēny*, &c. with neg.)  
*quin*.

\* *Rarius interdum quam nonnunquam esse memento.*

† *Take arms, arma capere, or sumere. (Cicero.)*

that (after *fear*), *ne*; that—not, *ut* (or *ne non*).  
 that, as nom. to 'is,' &c., agrees with nom. after it, 386, m.  
 that famous, *ille*, 381.  
 that (after 'it remains,' 'it follows'), *ut*.  
 that too, *et is*; *idemque*, } 385.  
 that too not, *nec is*, }  
 that only, *is demum*, 385.  
 Thebes, *Thebæ, arum*.  
 then (= at that time), *tum*.  
 then (= after), *deinde, inde*.  
 then (= therefore), *igitur, itaque*.  
 there, *ibi*.  
 there is no doubt, *non est dubium quin*.  
 there are some who (think), *sunt qui* (*putent*).  
 there are not wanting, *non desunt qui* (*subj.*).  
 there are found some who, *reperiuntur qui* (*subj.*).  
 think, *censere, putare, existimare, arbitrari*, See 257.  
 think nothing of,  *nihili facere*, 266.  
 thigh, *femur, oris, n.*  
 thing. A thing which (referring to a preceding sentence), *id quod*: sometimes, *quæ res*, 36.  
 thirst for, *sitire*, acc., 240.  
 this being the case, *quæ quum ita sint*.  
 thousand, *mille*, adj.; *pl. millia*, subst.  
 threaten, *minari*. See end of 222.  
 three hundred, *trecenti*.  
 three days, space of, *triduum*.  
 three years, space of, *triennium*.  
 through, expressing the cause, sign of *abl.*  
 throw before, *projicere, jec, ject* (see 75, l.).  
 throw off, *exuere*.  
 till, *colere, colu, cult*.  
 till, *donec, dum, quoad*, 507, &c.  
 time, at that, *id temporis*.  
 time: at the time of the Latin Games, *Ludiis Latinis*.  
 time, for a long, *dudum, diu, jamdudum*, &c. See 420.  
 times, two or three (= several times),\* *bis terque*.  
 times, two or three (= not more than),\* *bis terve*.  
 times. many times as great, *multis partibus major*.  
 timid, *timidus*.  
 tired: am — of, *tædet me* (gen.).  
 to death (after condemn), *capitis*.  
 to no purpose, *nequicquam, frustra*. See 33.

to each other (after *contrary, compare*), *inter se*.  
 toga, *toga*.  
 together (after to compare), *inter se*.  
 to-morrow, *cras*.  
 tongues: to hold their —, 299.  
 too much, *nimius* (*nimius somnus, or nimium somni*).  
 too dear, *nimio*.  
 top of, *summus*, (adj. See 179).  
 torch, *tæda*.  
 tortured: to be — in mind, *discruciarî animi*.  
 towards, *adversus, erga*, 470: in, 281.  
 treachery, *proditio*.  
 treason, *proditio*.  
 treaty, *fœdus, eris*.  
 tribune, *tribunus*.  
 triumph, *triumphus*.  
 triumph in, *per triumphum* (ducere).  
 triumph: gain a — for a victory over the Gauls, *de Gallis triumphare*.  
 troublesome, *molestus*.  
 Troy, *Troja*.  
 true: it is — but, *ille quidem—sed*, 383.  
 truly, *vere*.  
 trustworthy, *fidelis*.  
 truth, *veritas*.  
 turn back, *revertere, reverti*, 339.  
 turn out, *evadere, vas*.  
 turn it into a fault, *vicio vertere*, 242, (2).  
 Tuscan, *Tusculus*.  
 two days, space of, *biduum*.

## U.

Unacquainted with, *rudis* (gen.).  
 unbecoming, it is, *dedecet* (acc.).  
 unburied, *inhumatus*.  
 under favour, *bonâ tuâ veniâ*.  
 under such an age, 306.  
 understand, *intelligere, lex, lect*.  
 undertake, *suscipere*: (= engage to do) *recipere*.  
 undertake to corrupt, *corrumpendum suscipere*.  
 unexpectedly, *de improviso*.  
 unfriendly, *inimicus*.  
 unless, *nisi*, 451.  
 unless indeed, *nisi vero*, or *forte*.  
 unless I am mistaken, *nisi me fallit*.  
 unlike, *dissimilis* (dat.).  
 unmindful, *immemor* (gen.).  
 unskilled in, *imperitus* (gen.).  
 unteach, *dedocere*; (*two accus.*)  
 unwilling, to be, *nolle*.



unwilling, } *invitus*.  
 unwillingly, }  
 unworthy, *indignus* (abl.).  
 use, *uti* (*usus*), abl.  
 use, make a bad — of, *male uti* (abl.).  
 use, make a perverse — of, *perverse uti* (abl.).  
 useful, *utilis*, 212.  
 useless, *inutilis*, 212.  
 utter many falsehoods, *nulla mentiri* (de), 38.

## V.

Vain, in, *nequicquam*; *frustra* (See 33).

value, *æstimare*, 264.  
 valuable, *pretiosus*.  
 very (with *superl.*), *vel*, 410.  
 very many, *permulti*.  
 very much, *permulta*.  
 very little, *perpauca*.  
 very, to be translated by *magnus* or *summus*, when the adj. after 'very' is translated by a subst. 'Is *very* honorable,' '*magno honori est*,' 242.

vice, *vitium*.  
 violence, *vis*.  
 virtue, *virtus*, *virtutis*.  
 virtuous, *honestus*.  
 virtuously, *honeste*.  
 visit (on *business*), *adire*; (as a friend) *visere*; (on *business*, or not) *convenire*. See 249.  
 voyage, to have a prosperous, *ex sententiâ navigare*.

## W.

Wage, *gerere*, *gess*, *gest*.  
 wait, *manere*.  
 wait for, *expectare*, *opperiri*, *præstolari*, See 239.  
 wait upon, *convenire* (acc.).  
 walk, *ambulare*.  
 wall, *murus*; (of a walled city) *mœnia*, pl.; (of a house) *paries*, *etis*: (of a garden, &c.) *maceria*.  
 wanting to be, *desse* (dat.).  
 war, in, *bello*.  
 warn, *monere* (ut, ne). See p. 222, note.  
 washed, to be (of an island), *circumfundi*, *fusus*.  
 watch over, *cavere*, *cœ*, *caut* (dat.).  
 water, *agua*.  
 wave, *fluctus*, &c.  
 way, in such a, *ita* (ut).  
 weary, and, *tædet me* (gen.).

weight, *onus*, *eris*.  
 well, *bene*: (= rightly), *recte*.  
 whatever, *quicquid*, neut. as subst.  
     *quicumque* (adj.).  
 wheat, *triticum*.  
 when, *quum*, *quando*, 105. (= as soon as) *ubi*, *ut*, 512.  
 whence, *unde*.  
 where, *ubi*.  
 where you are, *istic*; from where you are, *istinc*; to where, &c. *istuc*.  
 where in the world, *ubi* or *ubinam gentium*.  
 whether—or (of two statements left doubtful), *sive—sive*: *seu—seu*.  
 whether (in double dependent questions), see 118, 119; *num* (in single dependent questions).  
 which (of two), *uter*.  
 whip with rods, *virgis cadere*; *cecid*, *cœs*.  
 white, *albus*.  
 whither, *quo*.  
 why, *cur*, *quare*, 105.  
 whole, *totus*, *universus*. (See 179.)  
 will, against my, *invitus*. Against the will of Caius, *invito Caio*.  
 willing to be, *velle*.  
 wind, *ventus*.  
 wine, *vinum*.  
 winter (as adj.), *hibernus*.  
 wisdom, *sapientia*.  
 wise, *sapiens*.  
 wish, *velle*, 142.  
 wish well to, *cupere alicui*.  
 with, *cum*.  
 with, after, 'to do,' *de*.  
 with, after 'to make a beginning,' *a*, *ab*.  
     { in the house of, }  
     { in the mind of, } *apud* (acc.)  
 with= { in the estimation } (and after  
     { of, } *multum*  
     { in the presence of, } *valere*.)  
 without, *sine*; or adj. *expers* (gen.).  
 without, to be, *carere* (abl.).  
 without being heard, *inauditus*, *a*, *um*.  
 without: before *partic.* subst., *non*, or some other negative, with participle, 363, *c. neque, ut non, quin*, 520.  
 without, after *nunquam* and before *particip.* subst. *quin* with subj., 88, *c*.  
 wolf, *lupus*.  
 wonder at, *admirari*.  
 wonderful, *mirus*.  
 wont, to be, *solere*, *solitus sum*.  
 wool, *lana*.  
 word, *verbum*.  
 word for word, *ad verbum*.  
 worship, to, *colere*, *coti*, *cult*.

world, *mundus: orbis terræ* or *terrarum*.

world, in the (after *superl.*), *vel*, 410.

worthy, *dignus* (*abl.*).

would have been (better), } *fuit*, not

would be (tedious, &c.), } *fuisse*.

wound, *vulnus, eris*.

wound, *ferire, icere*, 299.

wretched, *miser, a, um*.

write (news), *perscribere*.

Y.

Yesterday, *heri*.

young, *juvenis*.

youth (= time of), *juventūs, ūtis; juvenitās*.

youth (= body of), *juventūs*. See 339

# INDEX II.

## LATIN, AND CRITICAL REMARKS.

Words followed by (s) are distinguished from their synonymes.

A, ab, abs, 348.  
 ab hinc: *not with ordinals. Place of,*  
 abhinc, 305.  
 a nobis stare; *facere; sentire,* 348.  
 a manu servus, 348.  
 abdicare magistratum, *or se magis-*  
*tratu,* 306.  
 abesse (s), 227, r. (propius).  
 ac, atque (s), 4, d.  
 accedit (huc — quod *or* ut), 513.  
 accendere (s), 299, h.  
 accidere (s), 374, d.  
 accipere (s), 299, h.  
 ACCUSATIVE of the personal pronoun  
 seldom omitted before the infin, ex-  
 cept after *fateri, dicere, opinari, &c.*  
 p. 55, s.  
 acies (s), 348, t.  
 actum est de, 59.  
 adesse (s), 227, q.  
 adimere (s), 385.  
 adire (s), 294, k.  
 adjuvare (s), 222, k.  
 adspargere aliquid alicui, *or aliquem*  
*aliqua re,* 233.  
 ædes (s), 356, y.  
 æqualis, 212, x.  
 æqui boni facere, 185\*.  
 æternus (s), p. 49, c.  
 ait esse paratus, 149, c.  
 ales (s), 480, u.  
 aliquando (s), } 402.  
 aliquantum (s), }  
 aliud — aliud, 38.  
 aliud alio (fertur), 400, d.  
 amare (s), p. 68, a.  
 ambulatum est, 296.  
 amittere (s), 56, n.  
 amnis (s), 472, o.  
 amœnus (s), 212, v.

an, *in single questions,* 120, f.  
 an non (s), 122, b.  
 an quisquam? p. 139, c.  
 anima, -us (s), 92, c.  
 apparere (s), 150, w.  
 appellare (s), 51, i  
 aptus (s), 212.  
 astrum (s), 51.  
 audis seu *Jane,* 272, p.  
 aut (s), 456.  
 auxiliari (s), 222, k.  
 ave (s), 281, s.  
 avere (s), 420.  
 avis (s), 480, u.

### B.

Beatus (s), 443.  
 bibere (s), 278, k.  
 bis terque, } 420.†  
 bis terve, }  
 bonâ tuâ veniâ, 428.  
 boni consulere, 185.  
 aut *after* nemo, nullus, &c. 44.

### C.

cadere (s), 299, i.  
 callere (s), 385.  
 capere (s), 492.  
 caput feritur alicui, 294 (b).  
 carere (s), 273, h.  
 caritas (s), 281, r.  
 cave putes, 539.  
 cavere alicui; aliquem; sibi; ab ali  
 quo, 233.  
 censere (s), 257, x.  
 certiorum facere, 187.

† BIS TERQUE AUGEBIT, MINUET BIS TERVE NOTATUM.

CHARGE in the acc. if expressed by a  
neut. pron., 194.

circumdare urbem muro, } 232.  
circumdare murum urbi, }

CIVITAS in appos. to the plural name of  
a people: Carmonenses, quæ est  
civitas, 138, k.

claudus altero pede, 276.

cœpi (s), 150, x.

cœptus est, 150, x.

comes (s), 185, z.

comissatio (s), 428, b.

committere ut, 479.

COMPARATIVE of an ADVERB, p. 37, v.

compilare, 257, g.

componere (s), 222, r.

concessum est (s), 124, d.

CONDITIONAL forms of the infin., p.  
160, x.

conferre (s), 222, r.

CONSEQUENCE in perf. subj. for im-  
perf., 418, †

consors (s), 185, z.

consulere alicui: in aliquem, 233.

contendere (s), 222, r.

contingere (s), 374, d.

convenire (s), 249, f.

convivium (s), 428, b.

creber (s), 410, n.

crederes, 426.

credor (when right), 474, r.

cruor, 229, f.

cujus es temperantiæ, 56.

culpa (s), 242, g.

cuncti (s), 443.

cupere (s), 420.

cur (s), 105, f.

curare aliquid faciendum, 351.

## D.

damnare voti, votis, 201, s.

damnare capitis, 201.

damnor a nolente esse bono, not Latin.  
152, y.

dapes (s), 428, b.

de facie nosse, }

de improvviso, } 521.

de industriâ, }

debere (s), 126, f.

deesse (s), 227, r.

defendere, 374.

delictum (s), 428, c

DEMONSTRATIVE PRON. sometimes ex-  
pressed after QUIN, p. 30, note e.  
See 88, (a).

desitus est, 150, y.

desperatus, 229.

deterior (s), 410.

dicere (s), 177, q.

diligere (s), p. 68, a.

diu (s), 420.

dolere (s), 521, a.

dominus (s), 180.

dono dare, 242, (3).

donum (s), 242, h.

dubito. See Questions, § 14.

dudum (s), 420.

dulcis, 211, v.

dum, 494.

dummodo (ne), 494.

## E.

E re meâ est, 542.

ec, }

ecquis, } 400, e.

edere (s), 257.

egere (s), 273, h.

ego credor, when correct, 474, r.

eo insolentiæ, 512.

epulæ (s), 428, b.

ergo, with gen., 207.

esse honori alicui, 242.

est infinitum, 426.

et is (idem, &c.), 385.

evenire, 374, d.

EVER, how translated, p. 141, k.

ex pedibus laborare, 542.

excedere urbe, urbem, 244, q.

excipere (s), 299, a.

eximere (s), 385.

expilare (s), 257, g.

expectare (s), 227, z.

exsul } (s), 276, u.

extorris }

## F.

fac ut, 539.

facere de, 291; facere non possum  
quin, 89.

facturos pollicentur, 149, c.

fallere (s), 38, z.

fallit me, 209.

familiariter uti, 456.

fanum (s), 356, v.

fari (s), 177, q.

fas est, 124, d.

faustus (s), 443.

felix (s), 443.

† Potius dixerim, ubi de re præteritâ agatur, perfectum subjunctivi magis  
eventum facti spectare; imperfectum mentem et consilium agentis. Günther.

testinare (s), 177, m.  
 heri potest ut, 129.  
 flagitare (s), 257.  
 fluvius (s), 472, v.  
 forsitan, 494.  
 fortior quam prudentior, 452, w.  
 frequens (s), 410, n.  
 fructus } (s), 33, u.  
 'ruges }  
 frustra (s), 33, v.  
 fugit me, 239.  
 suit utilius, &c., 426.  
 fundamental rule for the sequence of  
 tenses, 40.  
 FUTURE SUBJUNCT., 41.

## G.

gaudere (s), 521, a.  
 gestire (s), 420.  
 gratus (s), 212, v.

## H.

hæres ex drodante, &c., 556.  
 haud (s), p. 70, h.  
 haud scio an, 116.  
 haud scio an nemo, stronger than haud  
 scio an quisquam. Is the latter  
 form correct? See note on Diff.  
 of Idiom, 25.  
 herus (s), 180.  
 hic, 377, &c., relating to the more remote  
 word, 378, h: to id de quo potissi-  
 mum agimus, 378, h (3).  
 homo (s), 38, y.  
 hostis (s), 221, z.

## I.

icere (s), 299, i.  
 id, not to be used as nom. to 'to be'  
 when a subst. follows, but to agree  
 with that subst., p. 136, m.  
 id ætatis 163, &c.  
 id quon for quod only, adds emphasis,  
 p. 27, note \*.  
 idem (= also), 387.  
 idem est qui (or ac, atque), 45, b.  
 idoneus (s), 212\*, qui, 486.  
 'ignoscere (s), 428, c.  
 ille, 49, 377, &c.: with quidam in par-  
 tial concessions, followed by a 'but,'  
 383.  
 imperare (s), 78, w.  
 impertire aliquid alicui; or aliquem  
 aliquā re, p. 86, c.  
 in ante diem, 530.  
 in dies, 69, t.

incendere (s), 299, h.  
 incipere (s), 150, z.  
 incolumis (s), 542.  
 incumbere rei or in rem, p. 86.  
 incusare (s), p. 72, m.  
 indigere (s), 257.  
 induere, 233.  
 inimicus (s), 212, z.  
 INFINITIVE, with participle or subst. in  
 the nom. by attraction, 54.  
 inquit, 177, q.  
 inspergere aliquid alicui or aliquem ali-  
 quā re, p. 86, d.  
 instar: when to be used, 207.  
 inter se contraria, 25.  
 interdum (s), 402.  
 interea (s), 402; in neg. sentences, see  
 note g.  
 interesse (s), 227, q.  
 interest Ciceronis esse eloquentis,  
 wrong, 152, z.  
 interficere (s), 308.  
 interim (s), 402.  
 invenire (s), 177, o.  
 ipse (= exactly), 308.  
 IPSE, with pers. pron., when in the nom.,  
 when in oblique case, 368.  
 IPSE, hardly ever in the nom. (in Cic.)  
 after appended met, p. 131, c.  
 irasci (s), 222.  
 is sum qui, 483.  
 is (ea, id), the usual pron. for the third  
 person where there is no emphasis,  
 no distinction to be marked, 37, u.  
 iste, that of yours, 377 (c).  
 iste, in LETTERS, refers to the place  
 where one's correspondent resides,  
 382.  
 istinc, 387.  
 ita justum, si est. &c., 451.

## J.

jampridem cupio, 413.  
 JUBERE (acc. with inf.; ut when used  
 absolutely), p. 80, h.  
 jucunde vivi non potest, 504.  
 jucundus (s), 211, v.  
 juvare (s), 222, k.

## L.

lætari, 521.  
 latet me, or mihi (had), 259, a.  
 libenter (= like to), 492.  
 libertinus } (s), 561.  
 libertus }  
 licet (s), 124, d.  
 licet esse beatum, or beato, 153, b, c.

licet (*although*), 451.  
iocare aliquid faciendum.  
locare (s), 480, v.  
loqui (s), 177, q.  
ludis Latinis, 311.  
lugere (s), 521, a.

M.

maceria (s), 233.  
macte esto, &c., 280, q.  
major annis viginti, &c., Q. on § 42.  
male audire, 492.  
mandare (s), 78, w.  
me (miserrum) qui, 486, l.  
mcedi (s), 222, l.  
medicina } (s), 257, l.  
medicamentum }  
memini (s), 62, q. 61, l.  
memini legere, 426.  
mens (s), 92, c.  
metuere (ne, ut), 95; s. 99, e.  
minari mortem alicui, 222.  
miserari }  
miserari } (s), 201, r.  
miseret me }  
modo, 494.  
mœnia (s), 233.  
mœrere (s), 521,  
monere †, ut; ne; acc. with inf., 189, k.  
monere (s), 222, i.  
munus (s), 242, h.  
murus (s), 233.

N.

nam appended to interrogatives, p. 140, 398.  
ne quis (not, ut nemo), }  
ne quid (not, ut nihil), } when a purpose is  
ne unquam (not, ut nunquam), } expressed without  
negative, 80.  
ne = that after verbs of fear, 95.  
ne — quidem, 185.  
ne dicam, 443.  
necare (s), 308.  
necesse est, 504.  
necne (s), 122, b.  
nedum (ut), 145.  
nemo pictor, 443: nemlais, nemine;  
see note p. 129.

neque, with verb = without, 520.  
nequicquam (s), 33, v.  
nescio quis, 394.  
nescio an, 116.  
nihil me terret, 443.  
nihil habeo quod, 477  
nihil aliud nisi, 185.  
nihil aliud quam ridet, 450.  
nisi, 451.  
nisi forte, or vero, 451.  
noli putare, 539.  
nolle = would not, 541.  
nomen est mihi Caio, 239.  
non (s), p. 70, h.  
non possum quin (for facere non possum quin; or, non possum non with infin.) should not be imitated. [Cicero quotes non possum quin exclamem, from Plautus.]  
non quod, or quo — sed, 492.  
non desunt qui putent, 477.  
non solum — verum (or sed) etiam, 257.  
non est quod, 477.  
nonne, 102.  
nonnunquam (s), 402.  
noscere (s), 365.  
nostrum, vestrum, after partitives, and with omnium, 372.  
nullus dubito, 492.  
num, 102  
nuptam esse, 222, m.

O.

ob, in oborro, &c. = amb, ἐμφι, 248, r.  
obedire (s), 222.  
obire mortem, &c. (s), 249, u.  
obtingere }  
obvenire } (s). 374, d.  
obviam ire, 512.  
occidere (s), 308.  
operæ pretium est, 532.  
optulari (s), 222, k.  
oportet (s), 126, f.  
oportet me facere, }  
oportet (ego) faciam, } 126.  
opperiri (s), 229, z.  
oppetere mortem (s), 249, u.  
oppidum (s), 63, z.  
opprobrium (s), 242, l.  
optare (s), 420, opto ut, p. 214.  
opus est (s), 126, f. 170, l.  
opus est properato, 177.  
opus absolutum habeo, 364.

† Monco, = to warn a person to do something, sometimes takes infin. instead of ut with subj.—Cic. hardly ever uses the infin. if any particular subject is named:—ratio ipsa monet, amicitias comparare.

orare (s), 257.\*

ORIGIN OF THE PERFECT WITH 'HAVE'  
IN MODERN LANGUAGES, p. 130, s.  
oriundus } (s), 551.  
ortus }

## P.

pace tuā dixerim, 423.

par (s), 212, x.

parere (s), 222.

parum (s), 402.

paries (s), 233.

PARTICIPIAL SUBSTANTIVE, Caution  
26. See also p. 151, e.

PARTICIPLES IN RUS AND DUE, § 46, p.  
126.

PARTICIPLES of deponent verbs, 365.

parci (s), 257, k.

patri (s), 532.\*

paululum } (s), 402.

paulum }

peior (s), 410.

PERF. SUBJ. (for imperf.) in a conse-  
quence with ut, 418: in obl. narr.  
p. 161, z.

PERSONAL PRON. EXPRESSED, when there  
is a distinction between two actions  
of the same person, p. 17, note.

persuadere (s), 222, i.

persuasum est mihi, 291.

persuasissimum habeo (bad), 291, z.

petere (s), 257.\*

pietas (s), 281, r.

plerique: plerorumque plerarumque,  
not found, 291.

polliceri (s), 17, l.

polliceri, with *infra. fut.* 15, a.

ponere (s), 480, v.

poscere (s), 257.\*

possum (s), 125, e.

post — annos quam excesserat; or ex-  
cessit, 310, s. 514.

posthabere aliquid alicui, 227.

postquam, 512.

postulare (s), 257.\*

potare, 257, k.

potentia } (s), 451.

potestas }

potestatem sui facere, 451.

præbere } se fortem, 229.

præstare }

præmium (s), 242.

præsens, } 227, q.

præsentem esse, }

præstolari (s), 227, z.

præterit (non me), 259.

prehendere (s), 492.

PRES. after si in connection with *fut.*,  
p. 146, t.

PRES. and IMPERF. PASSIVE of Eng-  
lish verb, 135, e.

PRES. or PERF. SUBJ. in connection  
with *Infinitive*, where the general rule  
would require imperf. or pluperf.,  
469.

pridem (s), 420.

prim-um, o (s), 83, a.

probrum (s), 242, i.

{ pro re natā, }

{ pro virili, }

{ pro eo ac mereor, } 542.

pro tuā temperantiā, 56.

prælium (s), 348, t.

profugus (s), 276, n.

projicere se alicui ad pedes; or ad  
alicujus pedes, p. 89, note i.

promitto (s), 17, l.

properare (s), 177, m.

proptor, 211.

propius (dat. or acc.), 512.

propius abesse, 319.

prosper (s), 443.

prospicere, } 233.

providere, }

proxime, 512.

proximus, 211.

pugna (s), 348, t.

purgandi sui causā, 334.

putares (you would have thought), 426.

## Q.

quæ res, 36.

quæ quum ita sint, 492.

quæ tua est temperantia, 56.

quam pro (after compar.), 409, f.

quam nullus, 492.

quam ut sit, &c. (after compar.), 486.

quam brevissime, &c., 410.

quam omitted after amplius, &c., 552, k.

quamquam, } 451. See note u.

quamvis, }

quanta maxima potest esse, &c., 410

quare, 105, f.

quasi, 494.

queo (s), 125, e.

quid ætatis, 164, β.

quid facerem? 427, c.

quillibet (s), 390, u.

quin, 44, 3. See note q, p. 30, and  
note d, p. 215.

quin after verbs of doubting, &c., in  
negative sentences, 85, 86.

quippe (qui), 432, a.

quis est qui? 477.

quis sum qui? 483.

quisquam, 389, 390, (γ).

si quisquam, 391, w.

quisquam: an est — qui? 477.

quisque: doctissimus *quisque*, 399.  
 quivis (s), 390, u.  
 quo, 63, *without compar.*, p. 215, e  
 quo amentia, 512.  
 quoad ejus, &c., 512.  
 quod sciam, 56.  
 quominus, 54.  
 quoniam, 492.  
 quot estis, &c., 174.  
 quotidie, 69, t.  
 quotusquisque est, qui (subj.), 477.  
 quum interrogaretur, *not* interrogatus  
 esset, 415. a.

## R.

re = forth, 249, v. (= *ip̄i* ?)  
 recipere (s), 308, a.  
 recordari, p. 72: (s), 201, q.  
 redire (s), 330, p.  
 RELATIVE PRONOUN, *when it does not*  
*agree with its proper antecedent*, 48.  
 remedium (s), 257, l.  
 reminisci (s), 201, q.  
 reperire (s), 177, o.  
 reperiantur, &c., qui, 477.  
 res ita se habet, 451.  
 reum facere, 187.  
 reus, *its meaning*, 188, f.  
 revenire } (s), 339, p.  
 reverti }  
 rivus (s), 472, v.  
 rogare (s), 257.\*

## S.

salutare (s), 249, f.  
 salve (s), 281, s.  
 salvus (s), 542.  
 sanare (s), 222, l.  
 sanguis (s), 299, f.  
 sapientior Caio,  
 sapientior quam Caius, } 405, m.  
 satis, 512.  
 satius, ex. 34.  
 scelus (s), 243, g.  
 scire (s), 385.  
*se often inserted by Cic. after velle*, p.  
 55, r.  
 secundum aliquem decernere, 504.  
 securus (s), 542.  
 sempiternus (s), 123, c.  
 sensit delapsus, 149, u.  
 sententiā (ex), 17.  
 si = *whether*, p. 158, t.  
 si hoc dicas, p. 153, h.  
 si (mood), 451, t.  
 si aliquis }  
 si quisquam } (s), 391, w: 402, h.

si quis,  
 si quisquam } 391, w.  
 siue, seu, 456, a.  
 sidus (s), 51.  
 silere (s), 299, g.  
 similis tui, tibi, 212, w. (212, x.)  
 simulac, &c., 512.  
 simulare, 15 (a); (s), 17, m.  
 sin minus,  
 sin autem,  
 sin secus,  
 sin aliter, } 451.  
 sine aliquo or aliquo, *when right*, 390, v.  
 sine omni curā, *wrong*, 391, w.  
 sinere (s), 532.\*  
 sodalis } (s), 185, z.  
 socius }  
 spoliare (s), 273.  
 stella (s), 57.  
 stipendium mereri, 308.  
 suadere (s), 222, i.  
 suavis (s), 212, v.  
 sublevare } (s), 222, k.  
 subvenire }  
 succendere (s), 299, h.  
 succurrere (s), 222, k.  
 sumere (s), 492.  
 succensere (s), 222.  
 summus mons, 179.  
 SUNT QUI putent, 45 and 477.  
 SUPERLATIVE and other adj. placed in  
 the relat. instead of in the principal  
 clause, 53.

## T.

tacere (s), 299, g.  
 tanquam, 494.  
 tantum abest ut — ut, 534.  
 templum (s), 356, y.  
 timere (s), 99, p.  
 triplicem aciem instruere, 456.  
 trucidare (s), 308.  
 -to, -tote (*imperative forms in*), 480, x.  
 tueri, 374.  
 tutus (s), 542.

## U.

ubi terrarum, } 512.  
 ubinam gentium, }  
 universi (s), 443.  
 unquam, 402.  
 ut = *as soon as*; *when*, 512.  
 ut = *that not*, 95.  
 ut omitted, 417, b.  
 UT NE, *when used for ne*, 77, note.  
 ut quisque — ita, 407.  
 ut ajunt, 319.



uterlibet (s) 390, u.  
utervis (s), 390, u.  
utinam, 494.  
utpote qui, 482.

V.

vacat mihi, 154 : 337.  
valere apud aliquem, 463.  
vapulare ab 291.  
ve, } 456  
vel, }  
velim (u<sup>t</sup>) iudices, 417 f.  
velle = would, 541.

velle sibi, 242.  
veniam dare, 428, c.  
verbi causi, 443.  
vereri (s), 99, e.  
videri, 150, w.  
vir (s), 38, y.  
vis, *decl.* p. 69, *note* g.  
visere (s), 249, s.  
vitium (s), 242, g.  
vitio vertere, &c., 242.  
vix crediderim, 428. \*  
vocare (s), 51, i.  
volucres (s), 480, u.  
vult { se esse principem, } 149  
      { esse princeps. }

THE END.

## Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War.

With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory; a Lexicon, Geographical and Historical Indexes, a Map of Gaul, etc. By Rev. J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo, 408 pages.

In the preparation of this volume, great care has been taken to adapt it in every respect to the wants of the young student, to make it a means at the same time of advancing him in a thorough knowledge of Latin, and inspiring him with a desire for further acquaintance with the classics of the language. Dr. Spencer has not, like some commentators, given an abundance of help on the easy passages, and allowed the difficult ones to speak for themselves. His Notes are on those parts on which the pupil wants them, and explain, not only grammatical difficulties, but allusions of every kind in the text. A well-drawn sketch of Cæsar's life, a Map of the region in which his campaigns were carried on, and a Vocabulary, which removes the necessity of using a large dictionary and the waste of time consequent thereon, enhance the value of the volume in no small degree.

## Quintus Curtius :

Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great. Edited and illustrated with English Notes. By WILLIAM HENRY CROSBY. 12mo, 385 pages.

Curtius's History of Alexander the Great, though little used in the schools of this country, in England and on the Continent holds a high place in the estimation of classical instructors. The interesting character of its subject, the elegance of its style, and the purity of its moral sentiments, ought to place it at least on a par with Cæsar's Commentaries or Sallust's Histories. The present edition, by the late Professor of Latin in Rutgers College, is unexceptionable in typography, convenient in form, scholarly and practical in its notes, and altogether an admirable text-book for classes preparing for college.

*From PROF. OWEN, of the New York Free Academy.*

"It gives me great pleasure to add my testimonial to the many you are receiving in favor of the beautiful and well-edited edition of Quintus Curtius, by Prof. Wm. Henry Crosby. It is seldom that a classical book is submitted to me for examination, to which I can give so hearty a recommendation as to this. The external appearance is attractive; the paper, type, and binding, being just what a text-book should be, neat, clear, and durable. The notes are brief, pertinent, scholar-like, neither too exuberant nor too meagre, but happily exemplifying the golden mean so desirable and yet so very difficult of attainment."

## Arnold's Greek Course.

Revised, Corrected, and Improved, by the Rev. J. A. SPENCER,  
D. D., late Professor of Latin and Oriental Languages in Burling-  
ton College, N. J.

**FIRST GREEK BOOK**, on the Plan of the First Latin Book. 12mo, 254 pages.

**PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION.** 12mo, 237  
pages.

**SECOND PART TO THE ABOVE.** 12mo, 248 pages.

**GREEK READING BOOK.** Containing the substance of the Practical Introduction to  
Greek Construing, and a Treatise on the Greek Particles; also, copious selections  
from Greek Authors, with Critical and Explanatory English Notes, and a Lexicon.  
12mo, 618 pages.

A complete, thorough, practical, and easy Greek course is here presented. The be-  
ginner commences with the "First Book," in which the elementary principles of the lan-  
guage are unfolded, not in abstract language, difficult both to comprehend and to re-  
member, but as practically applied in sentences. Throughout the whole, the pupil sees  
just where he stands, and is taught to use and apply what he learns. His progress is,  
therefore, as rapid as it is intelligent and pleasant. There is no unnecessary verbiage,  
nor is the pupil's attention diverted from what is really important by a mass of minor  
details. It is the experience of teachers who use this book, that with it a given amount  
of Greek Grammar can be imparted to a pupil in a shorter time and with far less trouble  
than with any other text-book.

The "First Book" may with advantage be followed by the "Introduction to Greek  
Prose Composition." The object of this work is to enable the student, as soon as he can  
decline and conjugate with tolerable facility, to translate simple sentences after given ex-  
amples and with given words; the principles employed being those of imitation and very  
frequent repetition. It is at once a Syntax, a Vocabulary, and an Exercise-book. The  
"Second Part" carries the subject further, unfolding the most complicated constructions,  
and the nicest points of Latin Syntax. A Key is provided for the teacher's use.

The "Reader," besides extracts judiciously selected from the Greek classics, contains  
valuable instructions to guide the learner in translating and construing, and a complete  
exposition of the particles, their signification and government. It is a fitting sequel to  
the earlier parts of the course, everywhere showing the hand of an acute critic, an ac-  
complished scholar, and an experienced teacher.

*From the REV. DR. COLEMAN, Professor of Greek and Latin, Princeton, N. J.*

"I can, from the most satisfactory experience, bear testimony to the excellence of  
your series of Text-Books for Schools. I am in the daily use of Arnold's Latin and  
Greek Exercises, and consider them decidedly superior to any other Elementary Works  
in those languages."

# A Latin Grammar for Schools and Colleges.

By A. HARKNESS, PH. D., Professor in Brown University.

---

To explain the general plan of the work, the Publishers ask the attention of teachers to the following extracts from the Preface:

1. This volume is designed to present a systematic arrangement of the great facts and laws of the Latin language; to exhibit not only grammatical forms and constructions, but also those *vital principles* which underlie, control, and explain them.

2. Designed at once as a text-book for the class-room, and a book of reference in study, it aims to introduce the beginner easily and pleasantly to the first principles of the language, and yet to make adequate provision for the wants of the more advanced student.

3. By brevity and conciseness in the choice of phraseology and compactness in the arrangement of forms and topics, the author has endeavored to compress within the limits of a convenient manual an amount of carefully-selected grammatical facts, which would otherwise fill a much larger volume.

4. He has, moreover, endeavored to present the whole subject in the light of modern scholarship. Without encumbering his pages with any unnecessary discussions, he has aimed to enrich them with the *practical results* of the recent labors in the field of philology.

5. Syntax has received in every part special attention. An attempt has been made to exhibit, as clearly as possible, that beautiful system of laws which the genius of the language—that highest of all grammatical authority—has created for itself.

6. Topics which require extended illustration are first presented in their completeness in general outline, before the separate points are discussed in detail. Thus a single page often foreshadows all the leading features of an extended discussion, imparting a completeness and vividness to the impression of the learner, impossible under any other treatment.

7. Special care has been taken to explain and illustrate with the requisite fulness all difficult and intricate subjects. The Subjunctive Mood—that severest trial of the teacher's patience—has been presented, it is hoped, in a form at once simple and comprehensive.

## Second Latin Book.

Comprising an Historical Latin Reader, with Notes and Rules for Translating, and an Exercise Book, developing a Complete Analytical Syntax, in a series of Lessons and Exercises, involving the Construction, Analysis, and Reconstruction of Latin Sentences. By ALBERT HARKNESS, A.M., Senior Master in the Providence High School. 12mo, 362 pages.

This work is designed as a sequel to the author's "First Latin Book." It comprises a complete analytical syntax, exhibiting the essential structure of the Latin language, from its simplest to its most expanded and elaborate form.

The arrangement of the lessons is decidedly philosophical, gradually progressive, and in strict accordance with the law of development of the human mind. Every new principle is stated in simple, clear, and accurate language, and illustrated by examples carefully selected from the reading lessons, which the student is required to translate, analyze, and reconstruct. He is also exercised in forming new Latin sentences on given models. This, while it gives variety and interest to what would otherwise be in the highest degree monotonous, completely fixes in the mind the subject of the lesson, both by analysis and synthesis.

The careful study of this volume, on the plan recommended by the author, will greatly facilitate the pupil's progress in the higher departments of the language. Such is the testimony of the numerous institutions in which Harkness's improved edition of Arnold has been introduced.

*From J. A. SPENCER, D. D., late Professor of Latin in Burlington College, N. J.*

"The present volume appears to me to carry out excellently the system on which the late lamented Arnold based his educational works; and in the Selections for Reading, the Notes and Rules for Translating, the Exercises in Translating into Latin, the Analyses, etc., I think it admirably adapted to advance the diligent student, not only rapidly, but soundly, in an acquaintance with the Latin language."

*From PROF. GAMMELL, of Brown University.*

"The book seems to me, as I anticipated it would be, a valuable addition to the works now in use among teachers of Latin in the schools of the United States, and for many of them it will undoubtedly form an advantageous substitute."

*From PROF. LINCOLN, of Brown University.*

"It seems to me to carry on most successfully the method pursued in the First Book. Though brief, it is very comprehensive, and combines judicious and skillfully-formed exercises with systematic instruction."

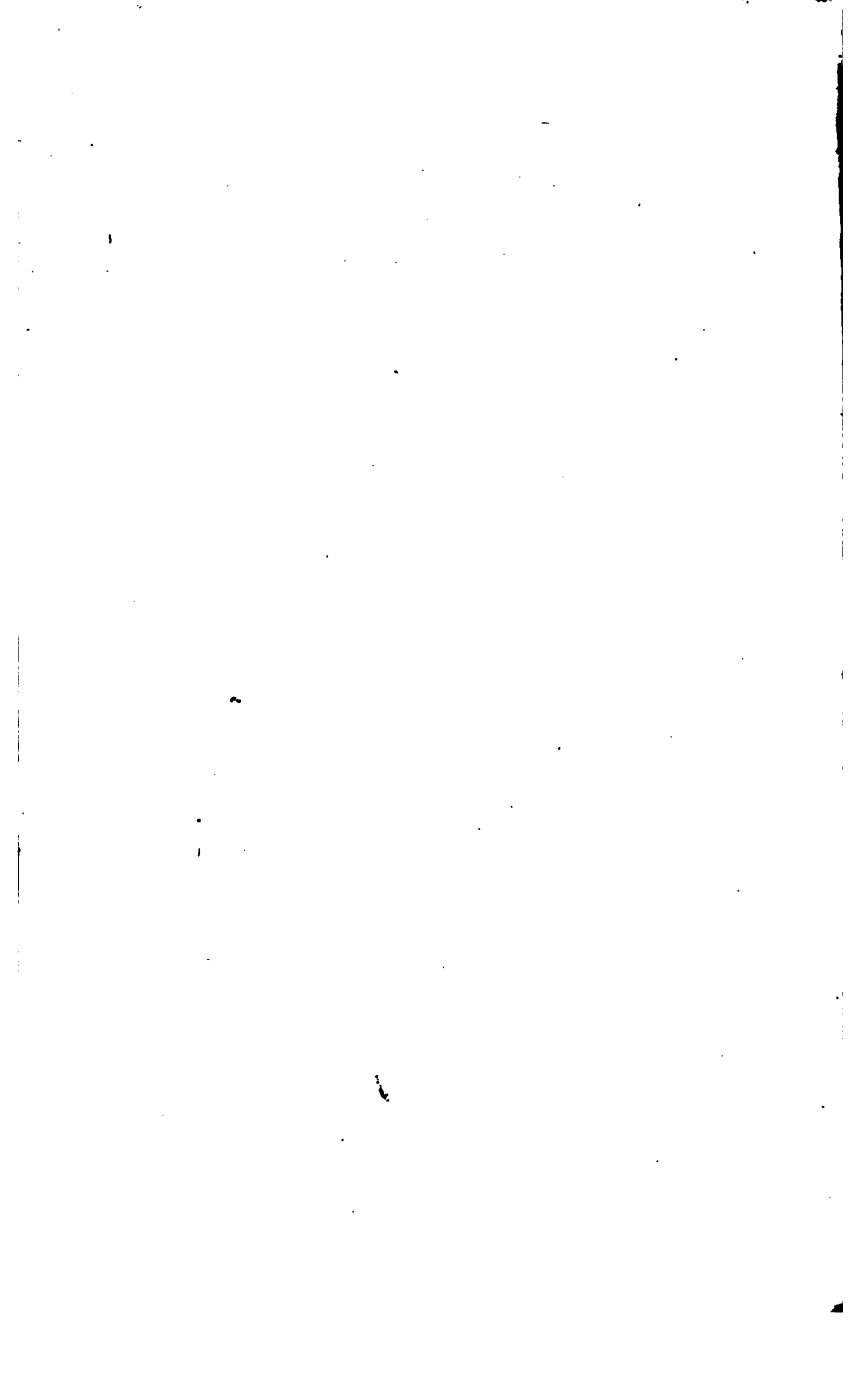
*From J. J. OWEN, D. D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy, New York.*

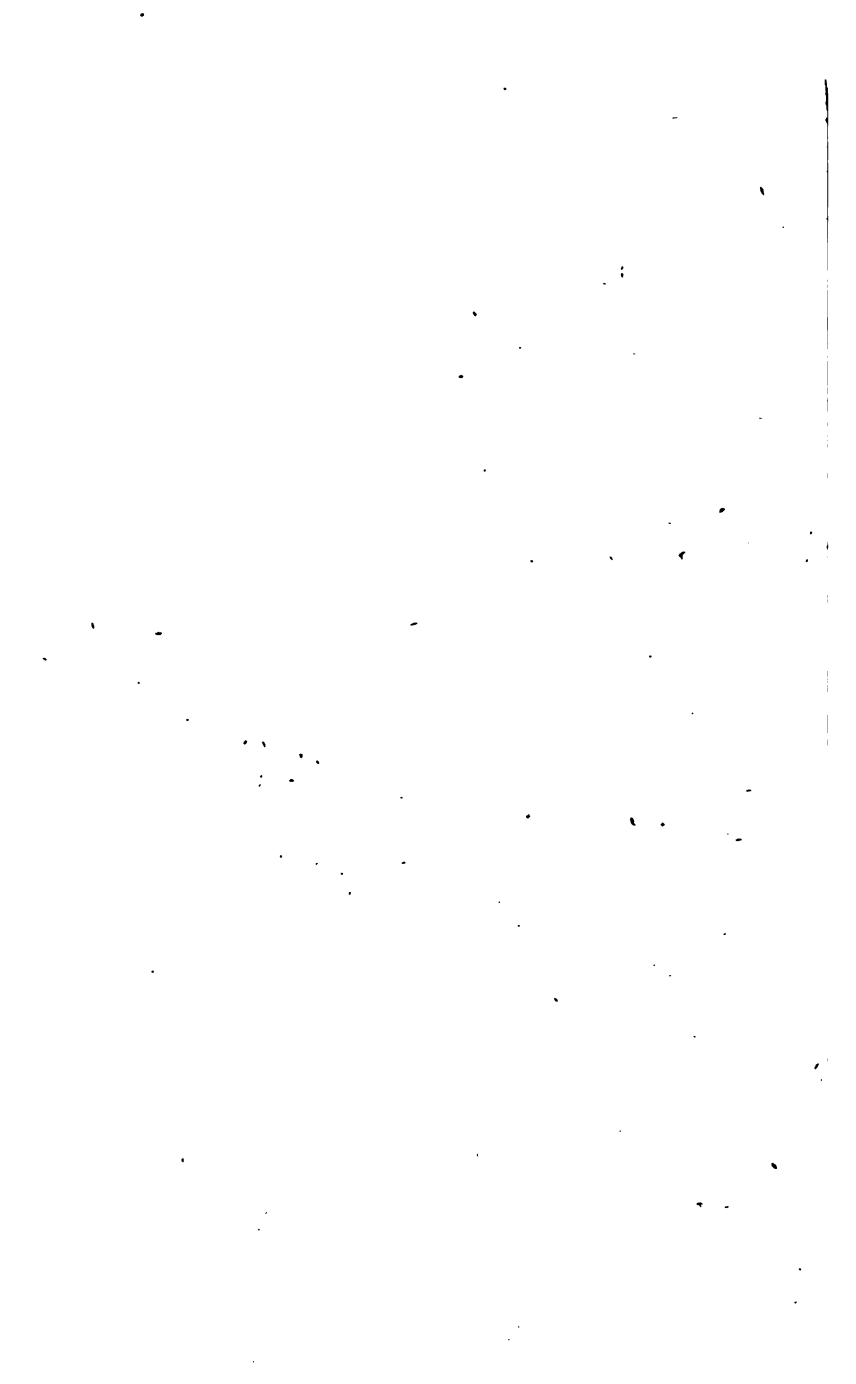
"This Second Latin Book gives abundant evidence of the author's learning and tact to arrange, simplify, and make accessible to the youthful mind the great and fundamental principles of the Latin language. The book is worthy of a place in every classical school, and I trust will have an extensive sale."

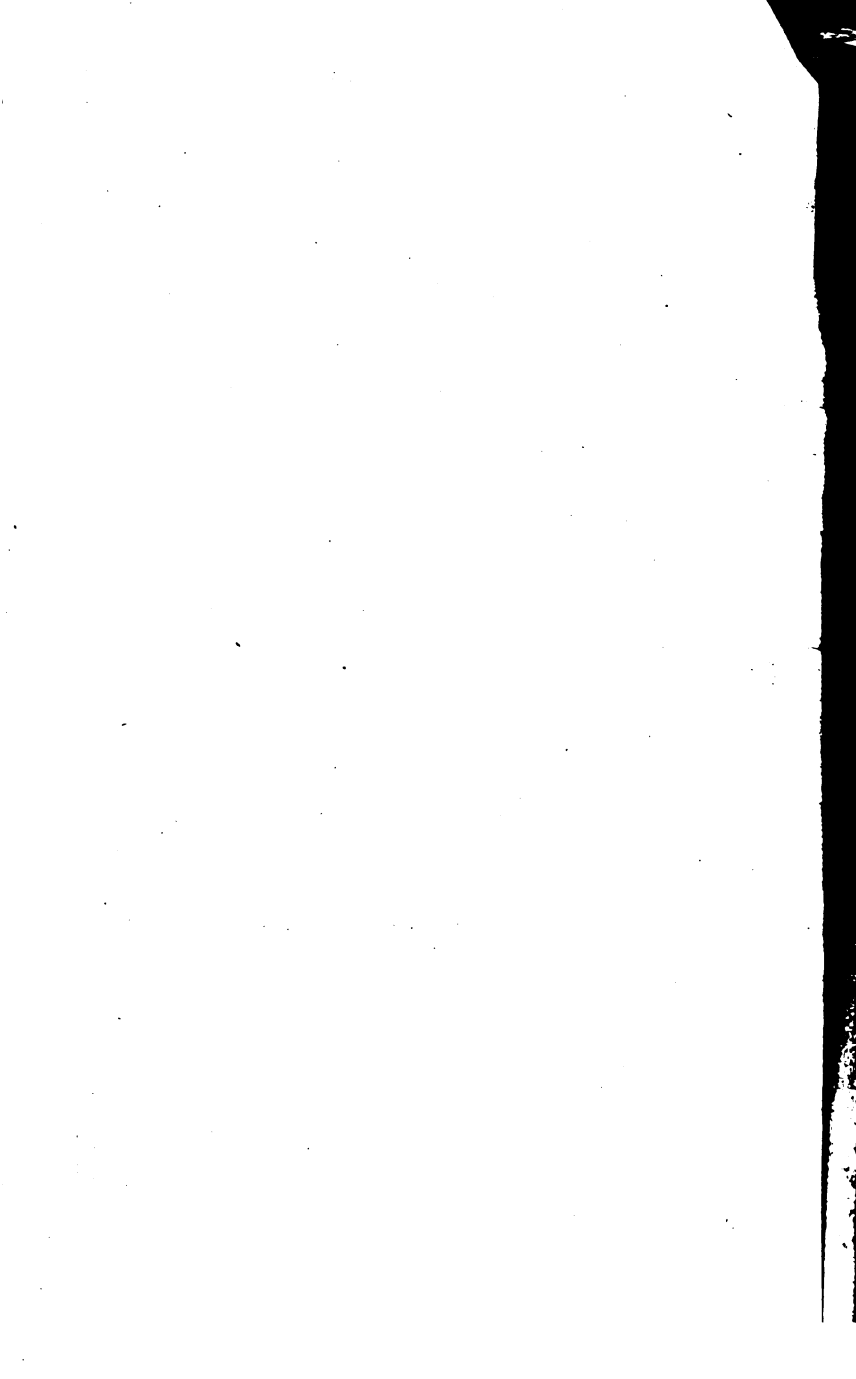
*From PROF. ANDERSON, of Lewisburg University, Pennsylvania.*

"A faithful use of the work would diminish the drudgery of the student's earlier studies, and facilitate his progress in his subsequent course. I wish the work a wide circulation."

27









STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

**Arnold's Greek Reading Book**, containing the Substance of the Practical Introduction to Greek Construing and a Treatise on the Greek Particles; also, copious Selections from Greek Authors, with Critical and Explanatory English Notes, and a Lexicon. 12mo. 618 pages.

**Boise's Exercises in Greek Prose Composition**. Adapted to the First Book of Xenophon's Anabasis. By JAMES R. BOISE, Prof. of Greek in University of Michigan. 12mo. 185 pages.

**Champlin's Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar**. By J. T. CHAMPLIN, Professor of Greek and Latin in Waterville College. 12mo. 208 pages.

**First Lessons in Greek**; \* or, the Beginner's Companion-Book to Hadley's Grammar. By JAMES MORRIS WHITON, Rector of Hopkins's Grammar School, New Haven, Ct. 12mo.

**Hadley's Greek Grammar**, \* for Schools and Colleges. By JAMES HADLEY, Professor in Yale College. 12mo. 366 pages.

———— **Elements of the Greek Grammar**. 12mo.

**Herodotus, Selections from**; comprising mainly such portions as give a Connected History of the East, to the Fall of Babylon and the Death of Cyrus the Great. By HERMAN M. JOHNSON, D. D., 12mo. 185 pages.

**Homer's Iliad**, according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes, by JOHN J. OWEN, D. D., LL. D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy of the City of New York. 1 vol., 12mo. 740 pages.

———— **Odyssey**, according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. Sixteenth Edition. 12mo.

**Kuhn's Greek Grammar**. Translated by Professors EDWARDS and TAYLOR. Large 12mo. 620 pages.

**Kendrick's Greek Ollendorff**. \* Being a Progressive Exhibition of the Principles of the Greek Grammar. By ASAHEL C. KENDRICK, Prof. of Greek Language in the University of Rochester. 12mo. 371 pages.

**Owen's Xenophon's Anabasis**. A new and enlarged edition, with numerous references to Kuhn's, Crosby's, and Hadley's Grammars. 12mo.

———— **Homer's Iliad**. 12mo. 750 pages.

———— **Greek Reader**. 12mo.

———— **Acts of the Apostles**, in Greek, with a Lexicon. 12mo.

———— **Homer's Odyssey**. Tenth Edition. 12mo.

———— **Thucydides**. With Map. 12mo. 700 pages.

———— **Xenophon's Cyropaedia**. Eighth Edition. 12mo.

**Plato's Apology and Crito**. \* With Notes by W. S. TYLER, Graves Professor of Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 180 pp.

*STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.*

**Thucydides's History of the Peloponnesian War**, according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. With Map. 12mo.

**Xenophon's Memorabilia of Socrates**. With Notes and Introduction by R. D. C. ROBBINS, Professor of Language in Middlebury College. 12mo. 421 pages.

— **Anabasis**. With Explanatory Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By JAMES R. BOISE, Professor of Greek in the University of Michigan. 12mo. 393 pages.

— **Anabasis**. Chiefly according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. Revised Edition. With Map. 12mo.

— **Cyclopsædia**, according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. 12mo.

**Sophocles's Oedipus Tyrannus**. With Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By HOWARD CROSBY, Professor of Greek in the University of New York. 12mo. 138 pages.

**HEBREW AND SYRIAC.**

**Gesenius's Hebrew Grammar**. Seventeenth Edition, with Corrections and Additions, by Dr. E. RODIGER. Translated by T. J. CONANT, Professor of Hebrew in Rochester Theological Seminary, New York. 8vo. 361 pages.

**Uhlemann's Syriac Grammar**. Translated from the German. By ENOCH HUTCHINSON. With a Course of Exercises in Syriac Grammar, and a Crestomathy and brief Lexicon prepared by the Translator. 8vo. 367 pages.

**D. APPLETON & CO., 549 & 551 BROADWAY, N. Y.,**

PUBLISHED UPWARD OF

**800 SCHOOL TEXT-BOOKS,**

Including the Departments of English, Latin, Greek, French, Spanish, Italian, Hebrew, and Syriac; of which a complete

**DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE**

*Will be sent, free of postage, to those applying for it.*

A single copy for *examination*, of any of the works marked thus \*, will be transmitted by mail, postage prepaid, to any *Teacher* remitting one-half of its price. Any of the others will be sent by mail, *postage prepaid*, upon receipt of full retail price.

